



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

TX 478.41 .N986 1  
Nutting, Herbert Chester,  
First Latin reader : with exercises /

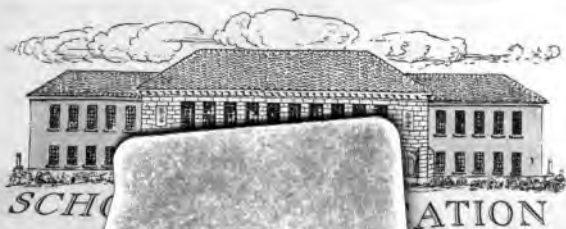
Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 04926 5486

A FIRST  
LATIN READER  
WITH EXERCISES

H. C. NUTTING









A FIRST  
LATIN READER  
WITH EXERCISES

BY

H. C. NUTTING, PH.D.

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY  
OF CALIFORNIA



NEW YORK ·· CINCINNATI ·· CHICAGO  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

592555

COPYRIGHT, 1907, 1913, BY  
H. C. NUTTING.

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL, LONDON.

---

NUTTING LATIN READER.

E. P. 2

## PREFACE

WITH the Primer previously published, this Reader provides for a course of study leading up to Caesar or some other author of like difficulty. Students who are to give five years or more to preparatory Latin would normally devote a year each to the Primer and the Reader ; but the maturer pupils in the four-year course will cover easily in their first year the work outlined in both books.

It is hoped too, that, aside from use in this regular sequence, the Reader will be found to meet the needs of many teachers who are looking for a carefully graded text for supplementary reading or for translation at sight.

The plan for "beginning Latin" embodied in Primer and Reader differs from others most fundamentally, perhaps, in that it concentrates so definitely upon the problem of developing the student's power to read Latin ; and it is quite in harmony with that general design that this second book is called a "Reader," and that in it the Latin-English exercises are massed at one point, with notes at the foot of the page.

Teachers using the Reader can best coöperate toward realizing the writer's aim if each recitation period is divided definitely into two parts, the first to be devoted, without distraction, to the business of learning to read, the other being reserved for grammatical drill and for composition work, oral or written. In this way, without loss in any essential particular, it will be found possible to bring the student along, by natural stages, to the point where he will

attack a simple passage from Caesar or Nepos, not as a Chinese puzzle by laborious effort to be tortured into something remotely resembling sense, but as a story from the reading of which some pleasure and profit is to be derived.

For the development of a system of Latin-English exercises so graded as to serve the purpose for which the Reader is made, of course no Latin author was available; and the text, therefore, is necessarily for the most part original. With the idea of stimulating interest, and to bring into play the necessary vocabulary and syntax while yet meeting halfway the many who do "not care for (foreign) war," the first hundred lessons have been made to deal almost entirely with matters of American history, the initial series (1-45) summing up briefly and chronologically the main events of the years 1492-1783, and the second group (46-100) comprising short anecdotes assembled without regard for chronological sequence. Next follow two narratives from Caesar simplified (101-125), and the concluding series (126-140) is made up of selections from the original text of Caesar, Nepos, Suetonius, Sallust, and Cicero. This final group, of course, is not a part of the gradatim plan, but was added that the student might have the satisfaction of reading some "real Latin." The passage from Suetonius (131), chiefly because of its large vocabulary, will probably be found too difficult for most pupils; if so, the intrinsic interest of the passage may make it seem worth the teacher's while to undertake a translation for the class.

With a view to discouraging the habit of constant recourse to the general vocabulary, a series of lesson preparations has been provided in the form of a word list showing the important new words in each successive exercise: moreover, with the exception of proper names and

numerals, all words which are used in but a single lesson are defined in the footnotes on that exercise. For teachers who are using the Reader as a text for sight reading, the cross references of the notes may prove helpful as providing a means of locating familiar material with which to elucidate the lesson of the day.

In preparing the Latin text, I have derived some help from the handbooks in common use, but my main reliance has been Merguet's "Lexikon zu den Schriften Cäsars." I would also acknowledge gratefully the generous help of my colleague, Dr. M. E. Deutsch, who has read a large part of the text and given me the benefit of several valuable suggestions.

H. C. N.

BERKELEY, CALIFORNIA.



## TO THE TEACHER

FROM the present vigorous discussion touching methods of Latin instruction it seems very clear that there is increasing dissatisfaction with a course of study which begins with memorizing forms and numerous abstract rules, and ends (for students who do not persevere beyond the Caesar year) with a microscopic analysis of very limited portions of Latin text. From the disciplinary point of view, even such a course of study is, beyond doubt, profitable; but it seems likely that criticism will in no large measure be disarmed, until more tangible results can be shown in the matter of the student's power to *read the language*.

In framing the Primer and Reader, therefore, the author has endeavored to formulate a plan for "First Year Latin," which, while retaining the chief merits of the old method, will at the same time hold the pupil's interest, and lay the foundation for a real power to read simple Latin at sight. To meet successfully these additional requirements, two things seem beyond all others essential, namely:

- (1) To provide abundant easy reading matter, carefully graded both in vocabulary and syntax; and
- (2) To relieve the reading lessons of the dragging weight of constant, minute, grammatical analysis.

In conformity with these ideas, the Reader, as well as the Primer, has been provided with a long gradatim series of easy and interesting Latin stories, which, as stated in the Preface, are designed to be handled briskly in class, with a minimum of grammatical comment. Adequate time



will thus remain for discussion of the material provided for *daily* practice in composition, and here the teacher will find a text for all needful grammatical drill.

With the helps provided in the way of footnotes and Word List, some classes will doubtless be able to handle many of the Latin stories of the Reader without previous preparation ; and, whenever this is the case, the practice should in every way be encouraged ; for a story always has added charm when taken up for the first time, especially if it be not made the subject of unnecessary grammatical discussion. As for daily practice in composition, the idea will seem to some, at first sight, impracticable ; but, as a matter of fact, it is really the most practical method of all. For students who are required to write but once a week usually detest the task ; whereas those who have daily practice gain a facility which renders the work a pleasure.

In working out the composition exercises of the Reader, the pupil should be urged to use as little as possible the general English-Latin vocabulary at the end of the volume. For frequent recourse to this source of help there is little excuse ; for, aside from numerals, proper names, and the material supplied in the footnotes, the whole series of composition lessons calls for only about three hundred Latin words, in addition to those carried over from the Primer ; moreover, the footnotes give much help in the way of paraphrase and cross-reference.

It has not seemed wise, either in the Primer or in the Reader, to introduce many abstract rules regarding Latin style. Frequent help, however, is given in the footnotes of the latter book ; and the student, through abundant reading, will learn much by induction. The teacher will need to watch for, and curb, individual peculiarities here and there ; but it will be found generally that this matter takes

care of itself surprisingly well, so far as fundamentals are concerned. And, at this stage of the work, correctness of syntax is far more important than minute refinement of style.

In cases where the Reader is taken up after the lapse of the long summer vacation, it is very desirable that the work of the new school year be begun with a review of forms and of the few last lessons of the Primer; otherwise the opening lessons of the Reader will seem to the pupil unusually difficult. Even with this help, it may prove in some cases that the first of the English-Latin Exercises of the Reader require more than the usual amount of study; if so, thorough work should be done at this point, even though the reading for a time outruns the composition. Where more mature classes are using the Primer and Reader together as texts for a single year's work, it has been found that the Primer can be covered easily at the rate of a Lesson a day. Such classes will naturally handle many of the Latin stories of the Reader at sight; and the composition work of that volume can be reduced one third by omitting the last paragraph of each Exercise.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## LATIN-ENGLISH EXERCISES

### EARLY AMERICAN HISTORY

	PAGE		PAGE
1. Christopher Columbus . . .	1	23. William Penn and the Friends	26
2. Christopher Columbus ( <i>con-</i> <i>tinued</i> ) . . . . .	2	24. Nathaniel Bacon in Virginia .	27
3. Christopher Columbus ( <i>con-</i> <i>tinued</i> ) . . . . .	3	25. Nathaniel Bacon ( <i>continued</i> )	28
4. Christopher Columbus ( <i>con-</i> <i>cluded</i> ) . . . . .	4	26. Nathaniel Bacon ( <i>concluded</i> )	30
5. The Cabots . . . . .	5	27. The Boyhood of George Washington . . . . .	31
6. Captain John Smith . . . .	6	28. Experiences on the Frontier .	32
7. Captain John Smith ( <i>con-</i> <i>tinued</i> ) . . . . .	6	29. A Dangerous Mission . . .	33
8. Captain John Smith ( <i>con-</i> <i>tinued</i> ) . . . . .	7	30. A Dangerous Mission ( <i>con-</i> <i>tinued</i> ) . . . . .	34
9. Captain John Smith ( <i>con-</i> <i>cluded</i> ) . . . . .	10	31. The Beginning of the French and Indian War . . . . .	35
10. Pocahontas . . . . .	11	32. Braddock's Defeat . . . . .	36
11. Henry Hudson . . . . .	12	33. Later Events of the War . .	37
12. Henry Hudson ( <i>continued</i> ) .	13	34. The Outbreak of the Revolu- tion . . . . .	38
13. Colonization in New Eng- land . . . . .	14	35. Operations about Boston . .	39
14. A Soldier's Courtship . . .	16	36. The Battles of Long Island and Trenton . . . . .	41
15. Unrest among the Indians .	17	37. The Retreat from Trenton .	42
16. Old Friends become Enemies	18	38. Burgoyne's Campaign . . .	43
17. The Outbreak of King Phil- ip's War . . . . .	20	39. Valley Forge . . . . .	44
18. A Remarkable Deliverance .	21	40. Help from France . . . . .	45
19. Philip finds Allies . . . .	22	41. Benedict Arnold . . . . .	46
20. Captain Church . . . . .	23	42. A Roman who fought again t his Country . . . . .	48
21. The Death of Philip . . . .	24	43. The Surrender of Cornwallis .	49
22. End of the War . . . . .	25	44. Washington retires to Private Life . . . . .	51
		45. The Father of his Country .	52

## TALES OF LAND AND SEA

	PAGE		PAGE
46. The Settler's Daughter . . .	54	74. The Treasure Seekers . . .	88
47. The Trials of War . . .	55	75. A Dangerous Conspiracy . .	90
48. The Attempt to surprise De- troit . . . . .	56	76. A Dangerous Conspiracy (continued) . . . . .	91
49. The Attempt to surprise De- troit (continued) . . . . .	57	77. A Quick-Witted Messenger .	92
50. A Successful Ruse . . . . .	58	78. Fortune favors the Brave . .	93
51. How the Town was Saved . .	59	79. Andrew Jackson . . . . .	94
52. An Example of Fortitude . .	61	80. Pirates Ashore . . . . .	95
53. A Hasty Leave-Taking . . .	62	81. Carrying the Tribute . . .	97
54. The Capture of a Man-of- War . . . . .	63	82. A Successful Ambuscade . .	98
55. The Fall of New London . .	64	83. An Intrepid Commander . .	99
56. The Fall of New London (con- tinued) . . . . .	65	84. Burned at the Stake . . .	101
57. Captivity among the Indians .	67	85. An Early Morning Surprise .	102
58. A Fresh Supply of Powder . .	68	86. Some Very Distinguished Geese . . . . .	103
59. A Battle against Great Odds .	69	87. An Army of Two . . . . .	104
60. A Night Attack . . . . .	70	88. Horatius at the Bridge . . .	105
61. A Choice of Evils . . . . .	71	89. A Favor Repaid . . . . .	108
62. Lost in the Woods . . . . .	72	90. An Earthquake in Colonial Times . . . . .	109
63. The Battle of Saratoga . . .	73	91. Evils of the Slave Trade . .	110
64. Unwelcome Visitors . . . .	74	92. A Pirate Outdone . . . . .	111
65. The Boyhood of Daniel Boone .	76	93. Colonization in Africa . . .	112
66. The End of the Pequots . . .	78	94. A Prize Won and Lost . . .	113
67. The End of the Pequots (con- tinued) . . . . .	79	95. A Prize Won and Lost (con- tinued) . . . . .	114
68. A Difficult Escape . . . . .	80	96. A Mysterious Disappear- ance . . . . .	116
69. Stories about Daniel Boone . .	81	97. Early Days in Liberia . . .	118
70. An English Privateer . . . .	82	98. An Experience with Rob- bers . . . . .	119
71. A Roman Vandal . . . . .	83	99. The Capture of Stony Point .	120
72. Indian Vengeance . . . . .	86	100. Nathan Hale . . . . .	121
73. A Tale of Brave Women . . .	87		

## STORIES FROM CAESAR RETOLD

## THE WINTER OF 54-53 B.C.

101. Unexpected Trouble . . .	123	103. Division of Opinion in the Roman Camp . . . . .	126
102. A Parley with the Enemy .	125		

	PAGE		PAGE
104. The Advice of the Enemy is Taken . . . . .	127	111. A Messenger eludes the Enemy . . . . .	137
105. The Romans are Ambushed . . . . .	128	112. Caesar heads a Relief Force . . . . .	138
106. The Enemy Prevail . . . . .	130	113. The Besieged learn of Caesar's Approach . . . . .	139
107. Annihilation of the Roman Force . . . . .	131	114. The Enemy raise the Siege . . . . .	141
108. The Gauls attack a Second Camp . . . . .	133	115. They are Outgeneraled by Caesar . . . . .	142
109. The Besieged attempt to Communicate with Caesar . . . . .	134	116. Arrangements for the Rest of the Winter . . . . .	143
110. Heroic Defense of their Camp . . . . .	135		

## AN AFRICAN CAMPAIGN

117. Caesar lands a Force in Africa . . . . .	145	122. Narrow Escape of their Commander . . . . .	152
118. Operations about Utica . . . . .	147	123. King Juba marches to the Relief of Varus . . . . .	154
119. Curio gains an Initial Advantage . . . . .	148	124. The Numidians resort to Strategy . . . . .	155
120. He maintains his Army's Loyalty to Caesar . . . . .	149	125. Curio's Army is Annihilated . . . . .	156
121. The Pompeians suffer a Second Reverse . . . . .	151		

## SELECTED PASSAGES FROM LATIN PROSE AUTHORS

126-128. An Episode from the Gallic War . . . . .	158	131. The Death of Caesar . . . . .	166
129-130. An Episode from the Civil War . . . . .	163	132-133. The Fate of Hannibal . . . . .	169
		134-136. Catiline's Conspiracy . . . . .	172
		137-140. On the Eastern Frontier . . . . .	178
WORD LIST . . . . .			186

## LIST OF MAPS

Gallia . . . . .	124
The Scene of Curio's Campaign in Africa . . . . .	146
Asia Minor . . . . .	179

## ENGLISH-LATIN EXERCISES

EXERCISE	PAGE
I. ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN AND WITHIN WHICH. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE . . . . .	199
II. ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. DOUBLE ACUSATIVE. FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE . . . . .	203
III. TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE . . . . .	207
IV. <i>Dum</i> WITH THE PRESENT INDICATIVE . . . . .	212
V. THE GERUND. DATIVE OF POSSESSION . . . . .	215
VI. REVIEW OF EXERCISES I-V. SEQUENCE OF TENSES . . . . .	218
VII. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE . . . . .	222
VIII. ABLATIVE OF MANNER. REVIEW OF THE GERUNDIVE . . . . .	225
IX. THE INDIRECT OBJECT WITH CERTAIN VERBS . . . . .	229
X. NEGATIVE CONNECTIVE . . . . .	232
XI. DATIVE OF AGENCY. THE GERUNDIVE IN PURPOSE CLAUSES . . . . .	235
XII. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION . . . . .	239
XIII. REVIEW OF EXERCISES VI-XII . . . . .	242
XIV. THE DATIVE OF INTEREST . . . . .	244
XV. LOCATIVE CASE. THE GERUNDIVE IN PURPOSE CLAUSES ( <i>Continued</i> ) . . . . .	247
XVI. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE . . . . .	251
XVII. THE CONDITIONAL SENTENCE . . . . .	254
XVIII. THE CONSTRUCTION WITH VERBS OF FEARING . . . . .	258
XIX. GENITIVE OF QUALITY OR CHARACTERISTIC . . . . .	261
XX. DATIVE OF SERVICE . . . . .	264
XXI. REVIEW OF EXERCISES XIV-XX. DEPENDENT CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE . . . . .	267
XXII. THE ABLATIVE WITH CERTAIN VERBS . . . . .	270
XXIII. RESULT CLAUSES . . . . .	273

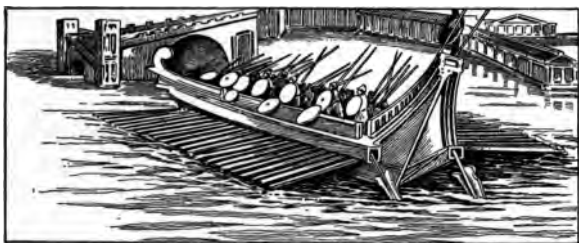
EXERCISE	PAGE
XXIV. TOWN NAMES . . . . .	276
XXV. THE GERUND IN PURPOSE CLAUSES . . . . .	279
XXVI. THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE . . . . .	282
XXVII. REVIEW OF EXERCISES XXI-XXVI . . . . .	285
XXVIII. THE SUPINE . . . . .	287
XXIX. SUMMARY OF PURPOSE CONSTRUCTIONS. USE OF quō . . . . .	290
XXX. ABLATIVE OF WAY BY WHICH . . . . .	294
XXXI. PARTITIVE GENITIVE. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC . . . . .	296
XXXII. NUMERALS . . . . .	300
XXXIII. REVIEW OF EXERCISES XXVIII-XXXII . . . . .	302
XXXIV. NUMERALS ( <i>Continued</i> ). HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE	305
XXXV. SUMMARY OF GERUND AND GERUNDIVE CONSTRU- CTIONS . . . . .	307
XXXVI. INDIRECT QUESTIONS . . . . .	312
XXXVII. THE THIRD PERSON REFLEXIVES . . . . .	316
XXXVIII. ABLATIVE OF QUALITY OR CHARACTERISTIC . . . . .	321
XXXIX. I-STEMS AND U-STEMS . . . . .	324
XL. REVIEW OF EXERCISES XXXIV-XXXIX . . . . .	327
XLI. INSTRUMENTALITY OR INTERMEDIATE AGENCY . . . . .	329
XLII. INDIRECT OBJECT WITH THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE . . . . .	332
XLIII. THE ABLATIVE WITH COMPARATIVES . . . . .	335
XLIV. CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITIONAL SENTENCES . . . . .	338
XLV. THE FUTURE IMPERATIVE . . . . .	341
SUMMARY OF FORMS . . . . .	345
LIST OF VERB CONSTRUCTIONS . . . . .	382
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	385
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY . . . . .	427
INDEX . . . . .	443

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

abl., ablative.  
absol., absolute.  
acc., accusative.  
act., active.  
adj., adjective.  
adv., adverb.  
C., or c., common (gender).  
cf., compare.  
compar., comparative.  
conj., conjunction.  
dat., dative.  
decl., declension.  
demon., demonstrative.  
e.g., for example.  
etc., and so forth.  
F., f., or fem., feminine.  
ff., (and) following.  
ftn., footnote.  
fut., future.  
gen., genitive.  
i.e., that is.  
imperf., or impf., imperfect.  
impers., impersonal.  
indecl., indeclinable.  
indef., indefinite.  
indic., indicative.  
infin., infinitive.  
intens., intensive.

interrog., interrogative.  
l., line.  
lit., literally.  
loc., locative.  
M., m., or masc., masculine.  
N., n., or neut., neuter.  
nom., nominative.  
obj., object.  
p., page.  
part., or partic., participle.  
pass., passive.  
perf., perfect.  
pers., person.  
pl., plural.  
pluperf., pluperfect.  
posit., positive.  
pred., predicate.  
prep., preposition.  
pres., present.  
pron., pronoun.  
reflex., reflexive.  
rel., relative.  
sc., understand, supply.  
sing., singular.  
subj., subject.  
superl., superlative.  
transl., translate.  
Vocab., Vocabulary.





NĀVIS

The above illustration is taken from a Pompeian wall painting. It is interesting particularly as showing the rather primitive steering-gear used by the Romans even for heavy ships of war. In large vessels two helmsmen worked together, each controlling a single sweep. On small boats one man attended to the steering, using either one oar or two, according to the construction of the craft.

# LATIN-ENGLISH EXERCISES

## EARLY AMERICAN HISTORY

### LESSON I

#### *Christopher Columbus*

Quōdam in oppidō Ītalīae ōlim nātus est puer, qui Columbus appellābātur. Diū in patris officīnā laborāvit. Sed prope erat mare, puerque saepe ad lītus ibat, ut vidēret nāvēs, quae ē portū ad terrās exhibant dīversās. In nāvibus erant hominēs multī, et Columbus mare ipse trānsire saepe voluit; tum autem pecūniā nullā habēbat. Sed postea, cum iam iuvenis esset, usque ad Britanniam et Āfricā nāvigāvit.

Illis temporibus nautae timēbant mare Atlanticum, cursumque prope lītus tenēbant. Interdum autem secundum Āfricae ōram longē nāvigātum erat, quod Henricus, rēx Lūsitāniae, invenire viam volēbat, quā nāvēs circum Āfricā prōgressae, ad Asiam pervenire possent.

Line 2. officīnā: officīna, -ae, F., *workshop*.

7. usque ad: *all the way to*, lit. *even to*.

9. illis temporibus: *in those days*.

10. interdum: *not interim*.

11. ōram: *i.e.* lītus (ōra, -ae, F.). — nāvigātum erat: *people had*

*sailed*, lit. *it had been sailed* (impersonal passive).

12. quā: *by which*; antecedent, *viam*.

13. possent: *could*; subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose. In translating the verb *possum*, some other rendering than "be able" should often be chosen.

Quidam tum crēdebant terram esse rotundam, Columbusque etiam spērāre coeperat se trānsīre mare Atlanticum posse, et ita ad Asiam pervenire; nēmō enim intellegēbat terram tam magnam esse, nec Columbus ipse suspicātus est Americam interpōnī.

## LESSON 2

*Christopher Columbus (Continued)*

Interim Henricus rēx mortuus erat. Columbus tamen in Lūsitāniam profectus est, ut rēgī tum ibi rēgnū obtinentī cōsiliū suū aperīret; sed pecūniam, quam petēbat, dare nōlēbat rēx. Ex Lūsitāniā igitur in Hispāniā iter fēcit Columbus; ubi rēx Ferdinandus Isabellaque bellum cum Maurīs gerēbant, nec quisquam advenam libenter audiēbat. Itaque ille, ubi cōgnōvit rēgem et rēginam nōlle ea facere quae spērāverat, ad Galliam versus profectus est; cum autem montēs trānsīret, nūntius est cōsecūtus, quī dixit velle iam Isabellam parāre nāvēs pecūniamque dare. Quā rē audītā, Columbus laetus rediit, nautāsque validōs quaerere coepit; sed paene omnēs, perīculum veritī, cum eō nāvīgāre nōlēbant.

Postrēmō autem ē portū exiit tribus cum nāvibus parvīs, quae Pinta, Nīna, Santaque Mariā appellābantur; cumque

1. quidam: masc. pl., used as a noun. — rotundam: rotundus, -a, -um, round, or spherical.

4. nec: and . . . not.

5. interpōnī: lit. to lie between.

7. obtinentī: pres. part. modifying rēgī.

10. ubi: (but) there.

11. nec quisquam: and nobody.

12. ubi: temporal conjunction.

13. ea: (neut. pl.) the things.

15. velle: was willing.

16. laetus: gladly, or with joy.

A Latin adj. is often best translated by an adverb or a phrase.

17. veritī: perf. part. of vereor; to be translated as a present, the Latin use being somewhat inexact.

paucōs diēs nāvigāset, ad insulās quāsdam pervēnit, in quibus inveniuntur plūrimae avēs, quārum cantus est pulcherrimus. Tum per ignōtum mare fortiter prōgressus est.

## LESSON 3

*Christopher Columbus (Continued)*

Cum multa milia passuum Columbus nāvigāset neque  
5 terram vidisset ūllam, nautae vehementer timēre coepē-  
runt, quod multa audiverant dē nāvibus, quae longē per  
mare Atlanticum prōgressae domum numquam postea redi-  
erant; in Hispāniam igitur statim redire volēbant, dux  
tamen nōluit. Quārē illi primō habuērunt in animō Co-  
10 lumbum etiam in mare iacere; postrēmō autem eōrum  
animi irātī ā duce mītigātī sunt.

Ōlim nauta quidam crēdebāt sē terram vidēre, et omnēs  
gaudēbant; nūbem autem viderat ille, nōn terram. Sed  
paucis post diēbus rāmum invēnērunt et bācās in mari  
15 natantēs, ac Columbus sēnsit sē iam terrae appropinquāre.  
Mox noctū ignem quoque in litore vidērunt, ac māne ad  
insulam pervēnērunt parvam, ubi laetī in harēnam ēgressi  
paucōs diēs morātī sunt.

Inde profectus, Columbus aliās quoque insulās adiit, in  
20 quibus erat ea, quae Cūba appellātur. Gazās tamen inve-  
nīre nōn potuit, quās quaerēbat. Putābat enim sē iam ad

1. nāvigāset: *i.e.* nāvigāvis-  
set.

2. plūrimae: see multus.

4. neque: cf. nec, p. 2, l. 4.

6. multa: *many (stories)*.

11. mītigātī sunt: *were calmed*  
(mītigō, 1).

13. nūbem: nūbēs, -is, *F., cloud*.

14. paucis post diēbus: *a few*  
*days later*, lit. *afterward by a*  
*few days* (abl. of degree of  
difference).

15. natantēs: pres. part. of  
natō. — iam: *at length*.

21. potuit: see the note on pos-  
sent, p. 1, l. 13.

Asiam pervēnisse; quārē incolās eārum insulārum, quās adierat, Indōs appellāvit.

## LESSON 4

### *Christopher Columbus (Concluded)*

Indī Columbum amābant; isque, cum ad Hispāniam reditūrus esset, in insulā quādam colōniam parvam reliquit.  
5 Colōnī tamen iniuriās mox Indīs fēcērunt ac brevī ad ūnum ab eis interfectī sunt.

Interim Columbus ipse domum properābat; subitō autem, cum laetus per mare nāvigāret, tempestāte maximā coortā, nāvēs fluctibus paene complētae sunt. Tum ille scripsit  
10 litterās, quās in dōlia conditās in mare iēcit; crēdebāt enim nūllam iam esse spem, putābatque dōlia posse ad lītus ventīs ferri, civēsque suōs ita certiōrēs fieri dē eis insulis, quās ipse invēnerat. Sed maris violentiam nāvēs sustinuērunt, et Columbus in Hispāniam incolumis pervēnit; ubi rēx et  
15 rēgīna eius rēbus gestīs gaudēbant, eumque fēcērunt insulārum praefectum.

Posteā ad Americam Columbus semel atque iterum nāvigāvit. Rem autem haud fēliciter gessit, inopsque postrēmō mortuus est. Etiam tum terrās, quās invēnerat,  
20 Asiae partem esse crēdebāt.

3. reditūrus esset: *was about to return.*

5. brevī: *i.e. mox.*—ad ūnum: *to a man.*

8. laetus: cf. p. 2, l. 16.

10. dōlia: dōlium, -ī, N., *cask.*—conditās: *freely, he placed . . . (and); lit. what?*

12. certiōrēs fieri: *be informed, or learn, lit. be made more certain.* Supply *posse* with this clause.

13. violentiam: *violentia, -ae, F., force.*

14. incolumis: *for rendering, cf. laetus, l. 8.—ubi: there.*

15. eius rēbus gestīs: *in his exploits.*

16. praefectum: *cf. the predicate accusative (Indōs) with appellāvit, l. 2.*

18. inops (-opis, adj.): *in poverty.*

## LESSON 5

*The Cabots*

Interim vir quidam, nōmine Cabot, ā Britannīā cum nāve parvā nautisque paucis profectus est atque ad Americam pervēnit. Quī nōn solum insulās adiit, sed etiam eam terram, quae nunc Canada appellātur. Postea idem cum filiō ad Americam iterum nāvigāvit, ac multa milia passuum secundum litus prōgressus, Indōs vidit multōs. Interim nautae prope insulās quāsdam morābantur, ut piscis caperent. Quī, cum domum incolumēs redissent, amicis suis multa nārrāvērunt dē rēbus miris, quās viderant; quīn etiam dixerunt sē ursās vīdisse in mare prōgredientēs, ut piscis raperent.

Cabot filius postea omnis in partēs nāvigāvit, ac diū cōnātus est viam invenire, quā circum Eurōpam nāvigāre atque ita ad Asiam pervenire posset; eam tamen viam numquam invēnit, neque nunc nōta est. Ōlim, cum iam esset senex neque ipse diūtius nāvigāre posset, dōna magna dicitur dedisse nautis quibusdam, quōs forte cōgnōverat parvā in nāve ad terrās ignōtās profectūrōs esse; adeō nāvis nautāsque semper amāvit.

1. ā: *from*.

2. quī: *he*. — eam: *the*.

3. quī, cum: (*and*) *when they*.  
— incolumēs: cf. p. 4, l. 14.

9. multa: cf. ea, p. 2, l. 13, and multa, p. 3, l. 6. This noun use of the neuter of adjectives and pronouns is exceedingly frequent in Latin. The English rendering varies with the context.

10. ursās: *ursa*, -ae, *F., bear*.

12. filius: *the younger*.

13. quā: abl. of way by which;  
cf. quā, p. 1, l. 12.

15. neque: cf. nec, p. 2, l. 4.

16. diūtius: (*any*) *longer*.

17. dicitur: lit. *he is said*. This personal passive construction is common in the present, imperfect, and future tenses of verbs of saying, thinking, and the like.

18. profectūrōs esse: cf. reditūrus esset, p. 4, l. 3.

## LESSON 6

*Captain John Smith*

Quod colōnī, quī ex Hispāniā in Americam dēducti erant, aurum multum et argentum ibi inveniēbant, Britannī quoque colōnōs quōsdam mīsērunt, quī castra pōnerent eā in terrā, quae Virginia appellātur. Quōs colōnōs Indi mox  
5 adortī sunt, sagittisque occidērunt paucōs; castra tamen prope ripam posita erant, ac nautae ē nāvibus fēla plūrima inmisērunt in hostēs, quī sē celeriter in silvās recipere coāctī sunt.

Brevi autem erat periculum etiam maius; nam paene  
10 omnis cōsūmptus est cibus, quem colōnī ā Britannīā nāvibus vēxerant. Statim igitur eōrum dux, nōmine Faber, vir fortis, cum scaphā paucisque militibus adversō flūmine longē prōgressus est, ut frūmentum quaereret, quod incolae libenter dabant prō nūgīs quās colōnī sēcum ferēbant.  
15 Postea dux idem, cum iterum profectus esset ut inveniret viam, quā ad Asiam nāvēs pervenire possent (omnēs enim iam intellegēbant Americam nōn esse Asiae partem) fortiter pugnāns ab Indis captus est.

## LESSON 7

*Captain John Smith (Continued)*

Postremō tamen in colōniam incolumis reductus, Faber  
20 postea per litora omnia iter fēcit; spērābat enim semper

3. pōnerent: cf. the note on possent, p. 1, l. 13. — eā: modifier of terrā: for translation, cf. eam, p. 5, l. 3.

4. quōs: *these* (adj.).

10. nāvibus: freely, *in their ships*; strictly, abl. of means.

12. adversō flūmine: *up stream*; lit. what?

14. nūgīs: nūgae, -arum, F., *trifles*.

16. omnēs: *everybody*; cf. the note on quīdam, p. 2, l. 1. The noun use of the masc. pl. is very frequent.

sē flūmen esse inventūrum, quō Americam trānsire et ita ad Asiam pervenire posset. In itineribus et dux et milītēs noctū saepe frigora maxima ferre cōgēbantur; tum, remōtō ignī et haud procul collocātō, humī iacere solēbant eōdem locō, ubi ignis modo fuerat. Interdum aquam dulcem nōn habēbant, eōrumque pānis fluctibus corruptus est.

Ōlim in eōs, cum prope litus quoddam nāvigārent, ab incolis sagittae subitō ex arboribus missae sunt; milītēs tamen, cum postea in litore eōsdem Indōs corbulās manibus tenentēs vīdissent, incolās velle frūmentum sibi dare crēdiderunt. Dux autem, insidiās veritus, milītēs iussit hostēs prius sonō armōrum terrere; tum, cum Indī perterriti in silvās fūgissent, colōnī ad litus vērunt, et in harēnā dōna posuerunt multa. Quae cum Indī invēnissent, gaudēbant, ac colōnīs iam factī amīcī, frūmentum eīs libenter dederunt.

## LESSON 8

*Captain John Smith (Continued)*

Dum haec fiunt, Indī, quī prope colōniam habitābant, colōnōrum cōpiās saepe rapiēbant; quīn etiam interdum

1. esse inventūrum: *would find*.—quō: cf. quā, p. 1, l. 12.

2. et . . . et: *both . . . and*.

3. maxima: for the various renderings of magnus, see the Vocab.—tum: *at such times*.—remōtō: *removed*, 2, -mōvī, -mōtus, *move*.

4. humī: *on the ground*; locative case.—eōdem locō: the prepositions in and ex are often lacking with locō and locis.

5. interdum: cf. p. 1, l. 16.—dulcem: *dulcis*, -is, -e, *fresh*.

6. pānis (-is, M.): *bread*.—

corruptus est: *corrupted*, 3, -rūpī, -ruptus, *spoil*.

9. corbulās: *corbula*, -ae, F., *basket*.—manibus: for syntax, cf. nāvibus, p. 6, l. 10.

14. quae: *these* (noun).

15. factī amīcī: *freely, becoming friendly* (facti from fiō). English often uses a pres. part. where the perfect would be more exact.

16. haec: *these things*.—fiunt: in connection with dum, the pres. indic. is rendered as an imperfect.

17. rapiēbant: *would steal*; a common meaning of the impf. indic.



arma quoque ē colōniā rapta sunt, dōnec ūnus ex Indīs, qui ea tractāre nesciēbat, ita ipse paenē sē interfēcit.

Postremō ē Britannīā vēnērunt colōnī novī, quī Fabrō, dē quō suprā dixi, amīcī nōn erant. A quibus domum redire  
5 coāctus, numquam postea ille ad Virginiā revēnit. Sed per mare Atlanticum saepe navigāvit, atque ōlim pervēnit usque ad terram, quae nunc Britannia Nova appellātur. Ibi nautae, locō idōneō complūris diēs morātī, piscēs cēperunt multōs, quōs sāle conditōs postea in Britanniam  
10 reportāvērunt. Interim dux parvā in scaphā multa milia passuum secundum litus prōgressus, frūmentum pellēsque ab incolis emēbat.

Quī, cum dēmum in Britanniam redire vellet, Indōs complūris in nāvēs accēpit ac sēcum domum redūxit. Quō ubi  
15 est perventum omnēsque iam ē nāvibus ēgressi sunt, ūnus ē praepositis Indōs paucōs sē sequi nāvemque iterum cōnscendere iussit; tum clam ad Hispāniā cum captivīs miseris profectus est. Ibi autem cum Indōs vēndere cōnārētur, sacerdotēs quīdam, quī dē eius cōnsiliō certiōrēs facti  
20 erant, ad nāvem statim properāvērunt; ā quibus captivi servāti sunt.

1. ex: *of*.

2. tractāre: (*how*) to handle.  
—ipse . . . sē: freely, *his own self*.

4. domum: *i.e.* to England.

5. revēnit: the prefix re- often means "back"; cf. reportāvērunt (l. 10), redūxit (l. 14), and re(ā)ire (l. 4).

7. usque ad: *as far as*.

8. locō: cf. the note on p. 7, l. 4.

9. sāle conditōs: *salted down* (conditō, 4, *season*; sāl, sālis, m., *salt*); conditōs modifies quōs.

11. pellēs: pellis, -is, f., *skin*, or *pelt*.

13. quī, cum: *when . . . he*.  
—vellet: *was ready*; for other meanings of the word see the Vocab.

14. in nāvēs accēpit: translate freely. —sēcum: *i.e.* sē + cum. —quō: *there*; lit. *whither*.

15. est perventum: cf. the impersonal passive on p. 1, l. 11, and translate according to the context here. —omnēs: cf. p. 6, l. 16.

16. praepositis: praepositus, -i, m., *officer*.

19. certiōrēs facti erant: cf. p. 4, l. 12.



SACERDŌS

Above is shown the statue of a Vestal Virgin found at Rome in the ruins of the Temple of Vesta, a goddess upon whose altar a pure bright fire was always kept burning, and whose public worship was in the hands of virgin priestesses chosen in childhood for a term of thirty years' service. The Vestal Virgins were held in the highest honor, even the consuls yielding them precedence when they appeared in public; and a condemned criminal was saved, if he were but fortunate enough to meet some of them as he was being led away to execution.

## LESSON 9

*Captain John Smith (Concluded)*

Faber interim colōniam in Britanniam Novam dēducere parābat, brevīque cum militibus ac nautīs sēdecim ad Americam versus profectus est. Cum autem mare trānsiret, subitō tempestās magna est coorta, ac nāvēs fluctibus paene  
5 frāctae sunt; quārē domum redire coāctus est.

Sed paulō post cum ūnā nāve parvā iterum profectus, multōs diēs ad Americam versus fēliciter nāvigāvit. Tum, pīrātis procul vīsīs, frūstrā effugere cōnātus est. Pīrātae tamen inventī sunt militēs esse, quōs ipse ōlim in Eurōpā  
10 dūxerat; quī igitur ducem suum veterem volēbant sēcum nāvigāre, is autem ad Americam cursum tenēre māluit. Sed paucis post diēbus Gallī quīdam, quī per maria omnia prae-  
dam quaerēbant, eius nāvem cēpērunt, ipsumque suam nāvem longam coēgērunt cōnscendere. Ibi cum morārētur, eius  
15 nautae, quī domum redire iam diū volēbant, clam dedērunt vēla, incolumēsque in Britanniam pervēnērunt. Ubi tamen poenās postea dedērunt cum dēmum redisset Faber, quī cum Gallis diū nāvigāre coāctus erat. Numquam postea ille colōniam dēducere cōnātus est.

2. ad . . . versus: *for*; cf. p. 2, l. 13.

6. paulō post: *a little later*, lit. *afterward by a little*; cf. paucis post diēbus, p. 3, l. 14. — profectus: cf. the note on factī, p. 7, l. 15.

9. inventī sunt . . . esse: *i.e. proved to be*; lit. *what?* — Eurōpā: note the case.

14. morārētur: *was detained*.

15. iam diū: in connection with such adverbial words and phrases as *iam, iam diū*, etc., an imperf. has almost the force of a pluperf. — dedērunt vēla: *sc. ventis, i.e. set sail*.

16. incolumēs: cf. p. 4, l. 14 — ubi: see the note on p. 4, l. 14.

## LESSON 10

*Pocahontas*

Prope colōniam, quam Britannī in Virginiam dēdūxerant, habitābat quidam rēx Indus, cui erat filia pulchra. Puella, quae Pōcahonta appellābatur, colōnōs amāvit, ōlimque servāverat eum ducem, dē quō suprà multa dixi; nam trāditum est, cum ille ab Indis captus esset, hostēsque cum interficere vellent, rēgis filiam suum corpus interposuisse. Id tamen multi crēdunt numquam esse factum, Fabrumque postea mentitum esse. Sed frūmentō certē et carne Pōcahonta colōnōs saepe iūvit, et quondam ad oppidum nūntium misit, cum hostēs oppidānōs occidere pararent.

Interdum colōnī, quōrum cōpiae semper parvae erant, fame paene periērunt; quī etiam ōlim, quamquam libenter equōs quoque edēbant, hominēs multī mortuī sunt. Tum, impetum Indōrum timentēs, oppidānī ipsam rapuērunt; Pōcahontam mēnsēsque multōs prō obside tenuērunt, ut pater, filiā captā, amīcus esse cōgerētur. Puellam, dum in oppidō morātur, ūnus ex colōnīs amāre coepit. Quī, cum eam in mātrimonium dūxisset, ad Britanniam cum uxōre est profectus; ubi paulō post Pōcahonta mortua est.

2. cui erat: freely, *who had*:  
lit. what?

4. multa: *much*; cf. multa,  
p. 5, l. 9. — trāditum est: *it is re-*  
*lated* (trādō is short for trānsdō,  
lit. *hand over, pass along*).

6. suum: emphatic position,  
*her own*. When a possessive adj.  
is employed for clearness merely,  
it is apt to follow the modified

noun; when it precedes the noun,  
it is often best rendered as *suum*  
here.

7. id: *i.e.* the incident. —  
multī: cf. the note on *quidam*,  
p. 2, l. 1.

15. prō: *as*.

17. morātur: for the force of  
the tense, see the note on *fiunt*,  
p. 7, l. 16.

## LESSON 11

*Henry Hudson*

Hōc ferē tempore Batāvī, quī volēbant viam invenire, quā circum Eurōpam ad Asiam nāvigārī posset, parāvērunt nāvem, cui erat nōmen Lūna Dīmīdia, et Hudsōnem, virum Britannicum, ducem fēcērunt.

5 Ille primō circum Eurōpam nāvigāre frūstrā cōnātus, ad Americam deinde profectus est, quod ibi audiverat esse freta, quibus nāvēs in Asiam trānsire possent. Quō ubi perventum est, multa milia passuum secundum lītus nāvigāvit; cumque loca multa explōrāsset, postrēmō pervēnit ad insu-  
10 lam, ubi nunc est oppidum, quod Eborācum Novum appellātur. Hic Indī subitō adortī sunt nautās, quī cum scaphīs portum explōrābant, sagittisque hominem interfēcērunt ūnum.

Quō factō, dux duōs Indōs rapuit nāvemque cōnscendere  
15 coēgit. Tum insulā relictā, adversō flūmine profectus est; cum autem haud longē nāvigāsset, captivī ē nāvi sē iēcērunt in aquam, et nandō ad rīpam incolumēs pervēnērunt. Interim nāvis lēniter prōgrediēbātur, moxque in cōspectū erant montēs, quōrum incolae frūmentum cōpiāsque aliās  
20 nautīs libenter vēdidērunt.

1. hōc . . . tempore: for syntax, cf. illis temporibus, p. 1, l. 9.

2. nāvigārī posset: lit. *it could be sailed*; cf. the impersonal passive nāvigātum erat, p. 1, l. 11.

3. Dīmīdia: *Half* (dīmīdius, -a, -um).

7. quō: cf. p. 8, l. 14.

9. cum explōrāsset: *having explored*. For the form of the verb, cf. nāvigāsset, p. 3, l. 1.

14. quō: *this* (noun).

15. adversō flūmine: cf. p. 6, l. 12.

17. nandō: gerund, *by swimming*; the phrase nandō . . . pervēnērunt may be rendered freely "swam."

## LESSON 12

*Henry Hudson (Continued)*

Cum inde diēs paucōs flūmine adversō nāvigātum esset, dux ipse ē nāvi in ripam ēgressus incolās convēnit, quī libenter sagittās suās frēgērunt omnis, ut advenae intellegerent sē esse amicōs. Ibi haud diū morātus, Hudsō iterum lēniter prōgressus est; sed postrēmō flūmen invēnit angustius fieri, ac sēnsit sē hāc ad Asiam pervenire nōn posse. Itaque ad mare rediit, brevīque domum profectus est.

Paucīs post mēnsibus Batāvi nāvēs aliās et hominēs misērunt, quī cum Indīs negōtiārentur; ac posterō annō dux idem, cum ā Britannīā ad Americam iterum profectus esset, mare maximum sub septentrionibus invēnit, quod nunc eius nōmine appellātur. Ibi mēnsēs multōs hiemāre coāctus est. Tum dēmum, cum cibus iam omnis cōsūmptus esset, nautae scelerātī, duce in scaphā relictō, in altum vēla dedērunt.

Hudsōnem nēmō postea vidit; sed nautae, paucīs āmissis, incolumēs domum pervēnērunt:—quamquam primō fame omnēs paene perierant; paucīs enim avibus exceptis, nōn habēbant quod ēssent, dōnec in cōspectum vēnit nāvis, cuius magister eōs frūmentō aliisque rēbus iuvāre potuit.

4. haud diū: freely, *but a short time*.

6. angustius: predicate adj., agreeing with flūmen, l. 5. — hāc: sc. viā; cf. the note on quā, p. 5, l. 13.

9. negōtiārentur: cf. the note on possent, p. 1, l. 13.

10. cum . . . profectus esset: cf. p. 12, l. 9, and the note.

11. mare: bay. — maximum: mighty; absolute use of the superlative. In a similar way, com-

paratives may indicate a high degree in general, without distinctly comparing one thing with another. — sub septentrionibus: i.e. toward the north (septentrionēs, -um, M., the "Great Bear").

14. altum: the deep (sea).

15. āmissis: i.e. by death.

17. paucīs . . . exceptis: freely, with the exception of a few.

18. quod ēssent: (anything) to eat (ēssent from edō). As antecedent for the relative, supply id (acc.).

## LESSON 13

*Colonization in New England*

Paucis post annis Britannii complures, qui apud Batavos diu habitaverant, in Americam cum liberis atque uxoribus emigrare constituerunt. Qui, cum pervenissent ad litus eius terrae, quae nunc Britannia Nova appellatur, impetum  
 5 Indorum veriti, legatum, nomine Standisium, cum militibus paucis miserunt, qui loca undique exploraret. Illi igitur multa milia passuum secundum litus progressi sunt, cum navigarent interdiu, noctesque autem in litore agerent.

10 Primò terrae incolas raro viderunt; olim tamen, cum manè proficisci pararent unusque ex militibus omnium arma in scapha iam collocavisset, Indi subito ē silvā magnō clamore eruperunt, sagittisque vulneraverunt paucos. Sed milites statim ad scapham cucurrerunt, ut arma caperent,  
 15 hostesque celeriter fugere coacti sunt.

Postremo ad portum tutum perventum est, ubi tribus ante annis multi habitaverant Indi; qui iam ad unum morbo perierant. Quā de re certiores facti, coloni reliqui quoque ad eum locum venerunt, ibique ē navi in litus egressi, dis  
 20 egerunt gratias castraque posuerunt. Est in litore etiam nunc saxum, quod Americani semper coluerunt colentque

2. liberis atque uxoribus: sc. suis.

3. qui, cum: cf. p. 5, l. 8.

6. exploraret: note the mood.

8. cum navigarent: translate by a participial phrase.

10. raro: adv., *seldom*.

11. omnium: used as a masc. noun, modifier of arma.

14. ut arma caperent: *i.e. to arm themselves*.

17. ad unum: *utterly*; cf. p. 4, l. 5.

18. quā de re: *i.e. de hāc re*.

19. dis: from deus.

21. coluerunt: colō, 3, colui, cultus, *venerate*.



IŪNŌ, RĒGĪNA DEŌRUM

The chief deities worshiped by the Romans were twelve in number: namely, Jupiter, Neptune, Vulcan, Mars, Mercury, Apollo, Juno, Minerva, Vesta, Ceres, Venus, and Diana. Besides these, many minor divinities were recognized.



semper, quod hīc dēmum ē nāvi ēgressi sunt Britannī illi, quī postea maiōrēs peregrinantēs appellāti sunt.

## LESSON 14

### *A Soldier's Courtship*

Hieme proximā morbō aut fame colōnī complūrēs periē-  
runt, quōrum in numerō erat Standisī quoque uxor. Ille,  
5 uxōre mortuā, in mātīmōnium volēbat dūcere quandam  
puellam pulchram, cui erat nōmen Prissilla; sed, cum sē  
sentīret militem asperum esse, rem ipse tractāre nōluit,  
iuvenemque quandam mīsīt, quī puellae patrem convenīret.

Iuvenis, quī forte ipse quoque Prissillam amāre coeperat,  
10 amicō tamen deesse nōlēbat. Quārē maestus profectus est,  
lēniterque per litus ad puellae domum versus ambulāvit.  
Quō cum pervēnisset rēsque esset prōposita, pater statim  
sē nōn nōlle dixit. Cum autem iuvenis cum Prissillā ipsā  
dē virtūte lēgātī eiusque rēbus gestis loquerētur, illa diū  
15 tacita audīvit, tum ridēns: "Nōnne prō tē," inquit, "dic-  
tūrus es?" Quā vōce ille vehementer commōtus domum  
ad lēgātum rediit. Quī primō amicum verbis acerbis

1. quod: conjunction.

2. maiōrēs: as noun, *Fathers*.  
— peregrinantēs: *Pilgrim* (pere-  
grīnor, 1, *travel abroad*).

4. quōrum in numerō: *i.e.*  
*among whom*. — Standisī: *filius*  
and proper names in -ius and -ium  
have regularly this short form of  
the gen.; so also some common  
nouns in -ium. Accent, *Standisī*.

6. cum: causal conjunction; cf.,  
however, the note on p. 14, l. 8.

10. maestus: cf. the rendering  
of *laetus*, p. 2, l. 16.

11. domum: *residence*; with  
*domum* in this meaning, the prepo-  
sition cannot be omitted (as in l.  
16).

12. quō: cf. the note on p. 8,  
l. 14. — rēs: (*his*) *errand*.

13. nōn: with nōlle. — cum Pris-  
sillā: we would say "*to* Pris-  
cilla."

14. eius: *i.e.* of *Standish*. — rē-  
bus gestis: cf. p. 4, l. 15.

15. nōnne: *i.e.* nōn + ne. —  
dictūrus es: *going to speak*; cf.  
reditūrus esset, p. 4, l. 3.

accēpit, postrēmō tamen sēnsit nōn illius culpā rem ita cecidisse. Itaque paucis post mēnsibus ā iuvene Prissilla in mātrimonium ducta est, Standisius autem sibi uxōrem aliam sūmpsit.

## LESSON 15

*Unrest among the Indians*

5 Indī, quī prope colōniam habitābant, paene omnēs inimici erant, sed vehementer timēbant lēgātum Standisium, dē quō suprà dixi; nam is, dux fortissimus, libentissimē bellum semper gessit, neque umquam periculum ūllum recūsāvit. Quī tamen nōn erat crūdēlis; ōlim enim, cum ad oppidum  
10 Indōrum inimicōrum profectus esset hostēsque vicisset, trēs Indōs vulnerātōs domum sēcum redūxit, ut eōrum vulnera ibi cūrārentur.

Hōc ferē tempore colōnī alii, ā Britannīā profecti, haud procul condidērunt oppidum alterum. Tum dēmum Indī  
15 vehementer commōtī, conciliō convocātō, oppida ambō incendere colōnōsque ipsōs interficere cōstituērunt; sed rēx quīdam, quī colōnōs amābat, ad Standisium properāvit, eumque dē hostium cōsiliō certiōrem fēcit. Periculō cōgnitō, lēgātus statim cum militibus paucis ad alterum oppidum  
20 profectus est. Ibi Indī, cum vidissent militēs esse paucōs, arbitrātī sē facile Standisium terrere posse, ei ostendērunt

1. illius culpā: *through (any) fault of his, i.e. of the iuvenis (culpa, -ae, f.). — rem: the affair.*

8. neque umquam: *and . . . never; cf. the rendering of nec quisquam, p 2, l. 11. In translation, nec (neque) should always, if possible, be resolved thus into connective and negative.*

15. conciliō: contrast cōsiliō, l. 18.

18. periculō cōgnitō: *freely, having learned of the danger.* A literal rendering of cōgnitus in the abl. absol. construction would often be awkward.

21. arbitrātī: cf. the use of veritī, p. 2, l. 17.

sicās, ac verbōrum quoque contumēliās adiūnxērunt. Sed paucīs post diēbus, cum quīdam Pecuot cum lēgātō loquerētur, is, signō militibus datō, Pecuotis sicam subitō rapuit, eāque ipsum interfēcit; simul militēs, comitēs Pecuotis adorti, eōs omnēs occidērunt. Quō factō, Indi reliquī perterriti fūgērunt, nec diūtius dē caede colōnōrum cōgitābant ūlli.

## LESSON 16

*Old Friends become Enemies*

Ei rēgi, ā quō colōnī dē suō periculō cōnsiliisque Indōrum certiōrēs factī sunt, duo erant filii, quī quoque colōnīs diū amici erant. Patre autem mortuō, iuvenēs suspicārī coepērunt bene ēmissee colōnōs, quibus silvās Indi vēndiderant; tum novam religiōnem civēs suōs amplectī haud libenter vidērunt: itaque mox dē bellō cōgitābant.

Quod ubi cōgnitum est, ē colōniā militēs missī sunt, qui frātre maiōrem, nōmine Alexandrum, prō obside in oppidum sēcum redūcerent. Ille autem ibi morbo affectus est gravī; cumque postea domum redisset, apud suōs brevī mortuus est. Quō factō, Alexandrum venēnō periisse arbitrātī, Indi sicās secūrēsque suās acuere statim coepērunt.

1. verbōrum . . . contumēliās:  
*i.e. insulting words*; lit. what?  
—adiūnxērunt: adiungō, 3, -iūnxī,  
-iūunctus, *add.*

2. quīdam: *a certain.*

3. is: *i.e. Standish.*

4. eā: note the case.—ipsum:  
*him.* The intensive pronoun  
points a contrast between Pecuot  
and his companions (comitēs).

5. quō: cf. p. 12, l. 14.

6. nec diūtius: *and no longer*:  
cf. the note on p. 17, l. 8.—caede:  
*a massacre.*

10. patre . . . mortuō: translate  
by a clause introduced by "when"  
or "after."

11. bene ēmissee: *i.e. had made  
a good bargain*; lit. what?

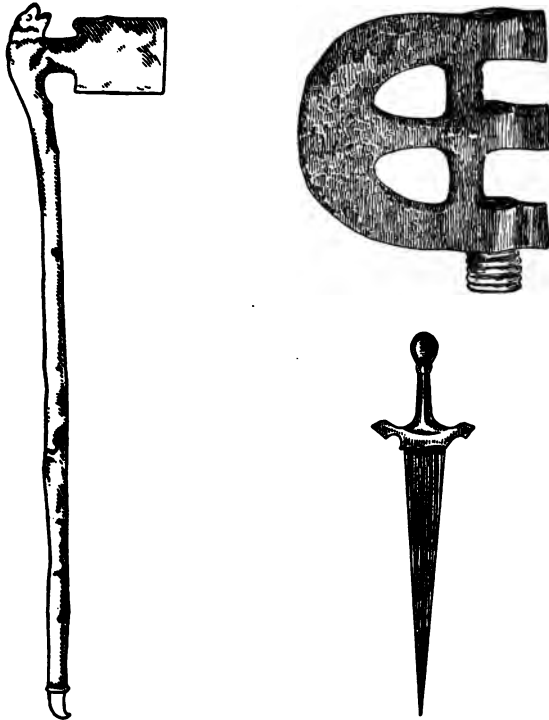
12. tum: *furthermore.*—civēs  
suōs: subject of the infin.

13. cōgitābant: note the tense.

14. quod: cf. quō, l. 5.

17. gravī: modifying morbo.  
—suōs: as noun, *his own people.*

19. acuere: acuō, 3, acui, acū-  
tus, *sharpen.* This proceeding,  
of course, portended war.



SECURÆ ET SICA

Two ancient battle-axes are shown above, one complete, the other lacking a handle. The dagger was found in a tomb in Etruria.

Tum dēnum oppidānī alterum frātre, quī Philippus appellābātur, ad colōniam dēdūxērunt, eumque coēgērunt arma omnia trādere, quae ipse comitēsque ferēbant; nec vērō dimisērunt hominem, dōnec pollicitus est sē reliqua quoque arma trāditūrum, quae domī Indī habēbant.

## LESSON 17

*The Outbreak of King Philip's War*

Philippus, quī patre et frātre mortuīs iam ipse rēx erat, irātus domum profectus, Indōs ad arma vocāvit. Quī eum libenter secūtī sunt; quīn etiam ōlim quendam civem suum interfēcērunt, quod rēgis cōnsilia colōnīs prōdiderat.

10 Complūra iam erant colōnōrum oppida; sed Indī primō tantum villis admōvērunt ignis bovēsque rapuērunt: nam, ā sacerdotibus monitī, hominem occidere nūllum ausi sunt, dōnec ā colōnīs ūnus ex ipsōrum numerō vulnerātus est. Tum dēnum, omnibus oppidīs oppugnātīs, caedēs maxima  
15 est facta, ac colōnī miserī, aliī cum aquam peterent, aliī cum ā villis in oppida fugerent, undique occisī sunt.

Ōlim hostēs, cum in castellum quoddam impetum fēcissent sagittāsque ārdentēs misissent in tēctum, postrēmō ipsī quoque castellō ignem admovēre cōnātī sunt. Quā rē  
20 animadversā, colōnī, quī sē fortiter multās hōrās dēfende-

4. hominem: *the man*.

5. trāditūrum: sc. esse. — domī: *at home*; for the case, cf. humī, p. 7, l. 4.

8. suum: *of theirs*.

12. hominem: standing in contrast to villis and bovēs of the preceding clause.

13. ipsōrum: *their own*

15. aliī . . . aliī: *some . . . others*. — cum: *as*.

17. hostēs, cum: *when the enemy*. Note the changed order of the English. — in: *upon*.

19. ipsī: modifying castellō. — quā rē: *this*.

rant, omnem salūtis spem iam dēpōnēbant; sed subitō imber coortus est maximus, quō ignēs sunt extinctī. Quārē Indī cōnātū dēsistere coactī sunt.

## LESSON 18

*A Remarkable Deliverance*

Hōc ferē tempore aliō in oppidō latēbat imperātor quīdam, 5 quī ē Britannīā paulō ante fūgerat, quod rēx Britannōrum. eum volēbat interficere. Homō scilicet nōlēbat oppidānōs cōgnōscere sē ibi latēre. Sed ōlim, cum colōnī in templō adessent omnēs, tūtō sē ē latebrīs exire posse crēdēbat; itaque ē fenestrā prōspēxit. Primō nēminem vidit; tum subitō 10 animadvertit multōs Indōs per agrōs clam properantēs, ut oppidum oppugnārent.

Quibus ille rēbus vehementer commōtus, ex aedibus statim ērūpit ac colōnōs ad arma vocāvit. Quī cum celeriter ē templō cucurrissent, advenā duce cum Indīs fortiter 15 pugnāvērunt, hostēsque postrēmō in silvās fugere coactī sunt.

Imperātor interim, postquam Indōs fugere intellēxit, ad latebrās statim sē recēpit, nec postea ā colōnīs invenīri potuit. Quī igitur crēdidērunt ducem ē caelō ā dīs missum 20 esse, quī sē adiuvāret, sicut multis ante annīs Castor et Pollūx ōlim subitō adfuērunt in aciē auxiliumque Rōmānīs

1. dēpōnēbant: note the tense.  
— imber (-bris, m.): shower.

3. cōnātū dēsistere: give up  
(lit. desist from) the attempt.

6. homō: cf. hominem, p. 20,  
l. 4.

12. quibus . . . rēbus: transl.  
as singular (cf. quā rē, p. 20, l. 19).

13. cum . . . cucurrissent: cf.  
the note on p. 14, l. 8.

14. advenā duce: abl. absol.,  
lit. the stranger (being) leader;  
transl. freely.

18. invenīri: note the last letter  
of the word.—potuit: for the trans-  
lation, cf. the note on possent,  
p. 1, l. 13.

19. quī: cf. the rendering of  
quī in the note on p. 5, l. 3.—  
ducem: a leader.

tulērunt, cum illi hōrās multās pugnāssent cum hostibus, neque eōs in fugam dare potuissent.

## LESSON 19

### *Philip finds Allies*

Dum haec geruntur, Indi quīdam longinquī, quibus erat castellum maximum, armīs aliisque rēbus Philippum iuvāre coepērunt. Quō cōgnitō, colōnī, quamquam iam hiems erat, id castellum statim oppugnāre cōstituērunt; nam putābant hanc quoque gentem primā aestāte bellum gerere parāre, cōsiliaque hostium ipsi praeoccupāre volēbant.

Itaque viā nivālī cum exercitū validō profecti, per silvās ad castellum iter fēcērunt. Ibi ācerrimē est pugnātum, ac colōnī multī interfectī sunt; castellum tamen expugnātum est, Indōrumque cōpiae omnēs ignī sunt cōsūptae: quibus rēbus factis, colōnī vulnerātōs sēcum ferentēs domum lēniter sē recēpērunt.

Hōc dētrīmentō vehementer commōti, Indi iam undique convēnērunt, oppidaque colōnōrum oppugnāre coepērunt singula. Subitō veniēbant in cōspectum; tum, colōnīs occīsīs villisque incēnsīs, celeriter in silvās sē recipiēbant, cum interim militēs, quī arma graviōra ferēbant, nullō modō cōsequī poterant. Itaque diū colōnī miserī undique

3. *dum*, etc.: cf. p. 7, l. 16.

5. *quō*: neuter.—*cōgnitō*: cf. the note on p. 17, l. 18.

7. *primā*: *the early*, lit. *the first (part of)*.

8. *ipsi*: may be omitted in translation.

9. *viā*: for syntax, cf. *quā*, p. 5, l. 13.—*nivālī*: *nivālis*, -is, -e, *snowy*.

10. *ācerrimē est pugnātum*: freely, *a desperate battle was fought*; lit. *what?*

13. *vulnerātōs*: as noun, *the wounded*.—*ferentēs*: nom. case.

17. *singula*: modifying *oppida*.—*veniēbant*: for the translation, cf. the note on *raziēbant*, p. 7, l. 17

19. *cum*: *while*.

20. *cōsequī*: sc. *eōs* (i.e. *Indōs*).

interfecti sunt; Standisius enim iam pridem mortuus erat: sed postrēmō dux alius inventus est, qui feliciter cum Indis bellum gerere sciēbat.

## LESSON 20

*Captain Church*

Cercās, qui iam dux colōnōrum factus est, nōn modo cum  
 5 hostibus feliciter bellum gerere sciēbat, sed etiam Indīs  
 interdum sociōs sibi asciscere potuit. Quō cōnsiliō ōlim  
 profectus, ad quandam gentem pervēnit haud longinquam,  
 cuius rēgīnae diū fuerat ipse amicus; quārē spērābat eius  
 civibus facile sē persuādere posse, ut colōnōs adiuvārent.  
 10 Ibi tamen ab Indīs impetus ācerrimus in Cercam eiusque  
 comitēs factus est; qui igitur in palūde coacti sunt latēre,  
 dōnec in scaphā vērunt milītēs complūrēs, qui eōs ex  
 periculō ēriperent.

Cercās, quamquam cōnsilium tum perficere nōn potuerat,  
 15 convenire tamen rēginam iterum cōnārī cōstituit. Itaque  
 paucis post mēnsibus ūnō cum milite Indisque tribus pro-  
 fectus, in eiusdem gentis finēs dēnuō iter fēcit; quō ubi  
 est perventum, comitibus in scaphā relictis, ad rēginam ipse  
 prōgressus est. Cum eā dum loquitur, Indi multī, qui per

3. gerere: cf. the use of the  
 infin. with *nesciēbat*, p. 8, l. 2.

4. Cercās: gen. *Cercae*, etc.  
 —modo: the adv., *only*.

5. etiam: *also*.

6. sociōs: (*as*) *allies*. — cōn-  
 siliō: *design*.

8. rēgīnae: dat. case.—ipse:  
*he*. — eius: *i.e.* the queen's.

9. persuādere: *persuade*, lit.  
*make (it) agreeable* (hence the dat.

civibus). — posse: replacing the  
 fut. infin., which is lacking in this  
 verb.

14. Cercās, quamquam: cf. the  
 note on *hostēs*, cum, p. 20, l. 17.

15. convenire: dependent on  
 cōnārī.

17. dēnuō: *i.e.* iterum. — quō:  
 cf. p. 8, l. 14.

19. cum: preposition. — per:  
*around in*.



herbam latuerant, subitō armātī exsiluērunt. Quī tamen, cum intellēxissent Cercam minimē esse territum, humī tum sēdērunt conciliōque habitō polliciti sunt sē colōnōs adiūtūrōs in bellō, quod illi cum Philippō gerēbant.

## LESSON 21

*The Death of Philip*

- 5 Cercās cum hīs sociīs suisque militibus iam omnēs in partis iter fēcit per silvās, et undique hōstes in fugam dedit. Quārē postrēmō Philippus ipse paucis cum comitibus per vallīs multa milia passuum in palūdēs longinquās fugere coāctus est; numquam enim colōnīs sē dēdere cōstituerat: quīn etiam ōlim, cum quīdam ex eius amīcis dicere ausus esset pācem cum eis faciendam esse, rēx irātus hominem suā manū occīdit. Cuius rei acerbitāte commōtus, frāter mortuī statim ad colōnōs perfūgit eōsque certiōrēs fēcit dē palūde, ubi Philippus tum latēbat.
- 15 Itaque dux colōnōrum, quī multōs diēs frūstrā quaesiverat rēgem modoque domum redierat ut uxōrem cōsōlārētur, iterum celeriter profectus est, militēsque suōs prope illam palūdem sine morā instrūxit. Quā rē animadversā, Philippus eiusque comitēs per vallēs longius fugere cōnātī sunt; 20 rēx vērō infēlix, interceptus ā militibus quī in silvā collocātī

1. quī tamen, cum: *but when*  
 . . . they; cf. quī, cum, p. 8,  
 l. 13.

2. humī: cf. p. 7, l. 4. — tum:  
 may be omitted in translation.

5. suis: *his own*; cf. suum,  
 p. 11, l. 6, and the note.

10. quīdam: *a certain one*.

12. hominem: cf. p. 20, l. 4.  
 — suā cf. suis, l. 5. — rei: for

the various meanings of rēs, see  
 the Vocab.—acerbitāte: acerbitās,  
 -ātis, F., *harshness*.

13. mortuī: *of the dead*  
 (*man*); part., used as a noun, masc.  
 sing.

16. modo: (*but*) *just*.

18. quā rē: cf. p. 20, l. 19.

20. vērō: *i.e.* tamen. — infēlix  
 (-īcis, adj.): *ill-starred*.

erant, ā frātre eiusdem Indī interfectus est, quem ipse occiderat. Caput Philippī secūrī abscisum colōnī sēcum domum tulērunt; ubi suprā portam positum est, ut omnēs vidērent rēgem rē vērā mortuum esse.

## LESSON 32

*End of the War*

- 5 Quō dētrīmentō perterritus lēgātus Philippī, quī paucis cum comitibus ē palūde effūgerat, in silvis procul latēbat. Quem Cercās diū frūstrā quaesivit; sed postrēmō Indum senem cēpit et puellam, quōs viam ostendere coēgit: quō modō in lēgātī castra subitō perventum est.
- 10 Ibi Cercās, quamquam comitēs perpaucōs sēcum habēbat, arma Indōrum, quae humī collocāta erant, audācter rapuit. Quō factō, lēgātus magnā vōce: "Captus sum," inquit. Cercās vērō: "Ubi est cēna? nam vēnī ut vobiscum cēnārem." Tum lēgātus: "Equinam carnem māvīs," inquit,
- 15 "an būbulam?" Quō auditō, Cercās scilicet dixit sē māllo būbulam.

Carne sine morā cōsumptā, reliquī (noctū enim impetus factus erat) mox humī iacēbant sōpītī; sed Cercās et lēgātus diū vigilābant. Postrēmō Indus surrēxit et silentiō ēgres-

2. abscisum: agreeing with caput.

3. suprā: preposition, over.

4. rē vērā: in very fact (vērus, -a, -um, lit. true, or actual).

5. lēgātus: lieutenant.

7. quem: him.

8. senem: aged (from senex).

10. perpaucōs: the prefix per- is intensive.

12. magnā: i.e. loud.

13. Cercās vērō: sc. inquit.

14. equinam: equinus, -a, -um, (of) horse.—māvīs: what form of mālō?

15. an: conjunction, or.—būbulam: būbulus, -a, -um, (of) cow.

19. Indus: the Indian.—silentiō: abl., used as adv.

sus est; quārē alter crēdebāt eum exisse ut arma alia sūmeret. Brevi autem aderat lēgātus manibus ferēns insignia quae quondam Philippus gesserat. "Haec nunc tua sunt," inquit, insigniaque ante Cercae pedēs humi posuit. Ita  
5 bellum cōfectum est.

## LESSON 23

*William Penn and the Friends*

Dum haec in Britannia Novā geruntur, in aliās Americae partēs ex Eurōpā veniebant colōnī multi; in quibus erant complūrēs, quī sē Amicōs appellābant. Cuidam virō clārō, quī hanc religiōnem erat amplexus, rēx Britannōrum tum  
10 magnam pecūniam dēbēbat; quod aes aliēnum ut solveret, in Americā prōvinciam novam hōc ferē tempore cōstituit, virumque illum lēgātum fēcit; quae prōvincia ē nōmine lēgātī Pennsylvēnia appellāta est.

Lēgātus, quod religiō Amicōrum gentibus Eurōpae grāta  
15 nōn erat, colōnōs plūrimōs statim ad Pennsylvēniam prae-misit, paucisque post mēnsibus in prōvinciam ipse profectus est; ubi urbem condidit, quae Philadelphia appellātur. Propter religiōnem Amicī crēdunt bellum gerere nefās esse, atque omnibus cum hominibus cōmiter vivere volunt; itaque

1. alter: *the other* (i.e. Church).

2. aderat: *was back* (again). — manibus: forsyntax, cf. nāvibus, p. 6, l. 10. — insignia: *trappings* (insigne, -ia, N.).

3. gesserat: *had worn*. — tua: tuus, -a, -um, yours.

6. dum haec, etc.: cf. p. 7, l. 16.

7. veniebant: note the tense.

— in: *among*.

10. magnam: (a) large (sum

of). — dēbēbat: dēbeō, 2, -ui, -itus, owe. — quod: *this* (adj.). — ut: the acc. preceding belongs to this purpose clause.

11. cōstituit: *established*.

12. lēgātum: *governor*. — ē: freely, after.

14. grāta: freely, popular (with); lit. what?

17. ubi: *there*.

18. nefās esse: *that it is a crime* (nefās, indeclinable noun).

per multōs annōs continuōs in prōvinciā erat pāx, etiam cum lēgātus ille mortuus esset.

Dē cōmitātē lēgātī multa narrantur; quī etiam trāditum est illum, cum ōlīm per prōvinciam iter faceret, parvam puellam vīdisse ad templum euntem, eamque in ipsius equō positam ad templum ita dēdūxisse.

## LESSON 24

*Nathaniel Bacon in Virginia*

Dum in Britannīā Novā bellum gerit Philippus, in Virginiā quoque Indī impetūs saepe in colōnōs faciēbant, multōsque agricolās, quī procul ab oppidīs habitābant, cum cruciātū occidērunt. Quō periculō commōtī, colōnī multa milia passuum nūtiōs ad caput prōvinciae misērunt, quī lēgātum ōrārent, ut mitteret militēs, quī hostīs coercērent. Lēgātō autem nullō modō persuādēri potuit ut colōnōs adiuvāret, quod cum Indīs ipse negōtiābātur nec quaestum dīmittere volēbat; quī etiam iuvenis quīdam, nōmine Bēcō, quī ā Britannīā tribus ante annīs in prōvinciam vēnerat, cum dixisset sē velle in Indōrum finis dūcere colōnōs paucōs, quī iam ipsī arma cēperant, ā lēgātō domī est iussus manēre.

Iuvenis autem, sine morā ad castra colōnōrum clam pro-

1. *per*: freely, *for*. — *continuōs*: continuus, -a, -um, *consecutive*. — *cum*: *after*.

3. *multa*: cf. p. 5, l. 9. — *trāditum* est: cf. p. 11, l. 4.

5. *euntem*: from *eō*. — *eam*: *her*. — *ipsius*: *his own*.

6. *positam*: part. (from *pōnō*), agreeing with *eam*.

11. *caput*: *capital*.

13. *persuādēri potuit*: lit. *could it be made agreeable*; cf. *persuādēre*, p. 23, l. 9.

15. *volēbat*: cf. *velle*, p. 2, l. 15.

17. *cum*: translate much earlier in the English sentence.

18. *ipsi*: *on their own motion*, i.e. without waiting for the governor to act.

fectus, cum primum in eorum conspectum venit summo assensu omnium dux factus est. Qui igitur, quamquam sciebat legatum postea iratum se fortasse interfectorum, in finis tamen Indorum copias duxit, hostesque in fugam undique dedit. Quod ubi est auditum, legatus ex oppido celeriter profectus est, ut Becnem caperet suppliciumque de eo sumeret, quod iniussu suo bellum cum Indis gereret.

## LESSON 25

### *Nathaniel Bacon (Continued)*

Brevi autem ad caput provinciae legatus celeriter redire est coactus; nuntiatum enim est oppidanis, quos domi reliquerat qui iuveni duci amicissimi erant, res novas ibi agitare. Quibuscum legatus tum pacem fecit; postquam vero Beco demum est bello longinquo domum rediit, coloni, legatum adhuc esse iratum arbitrati, noctes diesque ducis cari aedes custodiebant; eumque, cum paulo post decurio factus esset, multi comites armati ad oppidum secuti sunt. Ibi tamen legatus, qui quoque copias coegerat, Becnem statim rapuit, mox autem ab oppidanis iratis dimittere coactus est. Sed iuvenis, paucis post diebus certior factus

1. cum primum: *i.e. as soon as.*

2. omnia: as (masc.) noun, modifying assensu. — qui: cf.

p. 5, l. 3.

3. iratum: *in (his) anger.* — fortasse: adv., *perhaps.* — interfectorum: sc. esse.

4. copias: *(his) troops.*

5. quod: *this* (noun).

6. supplicium: supplicium, -i, n., *punishment.*

7. de: lit. *from.* supplicium sumere is the converse of poenas dare.

10. iuveni: here as adjective. — res novas: *revolution*; lit. what?

11. agitare: agito, i, *plan.* — quibuscum: cf. secum, p. 8, l. 14.

13. arbitrati: cf. the use of veriti, p. 2, l. 17. — noctes diesque: *night and day.*

14. decurio (-onis, m.): *member of the legislature.*

16. coegerat: *had called together.*



BALLISTA

Ancient "artillery" was not very formidable, as may be seen from the above illustration, which gives a modern artist's conception of an attack upon a walled town. Roman "cannon" were simply huge catapults, some of which threw stones or masses of metal, others projected heavy darts.

lĕgātum parāre sē iterum in custōdiam dare, clam noctū fūgit ex oppidō, nec posterō diē ab inimicīs suis invenīri potuit.

Colōnī scilicet undique libenter convēnērunt, ut ducem cārum adiuvārent; isque iam mēnsēs multōs, modo cum  
 5 Indis modo cum lĕgātō, fēliciter bellum gessit. Ōlim, cum obsidēret urbem, quod erat caput prōvinciae, ballistāsque circum mūrōs collocāre vellet, uxōres inimicōrum ē praediis proximis dēductas ante militēs suōs posuisse dicitur, ut sine periculō suōrum opus perficerētur.

## LESSON 26

### *Nathaniel Bacon (Concluded)*

10 Lĕgātus, cum eā in urbe multōs diēs obsessus esset, postrēmō cum comitibus omnibus nāvis cōscendit, quae in flūmine propinquō ad ancoram cōsistēbant, ac sine morā profectus est, ut auxilium peteret. Quō factō, Bēcō, quī sentiēbat lĕgātum mox cum sociīs esse reditūrum, ur-  
 15 bem statim incendit; ipse autem, labōribus periculisque frāctus, paulō post mortuus est.

Tum eius comitēs, cum intellegerent lĕgātum solēre inimicōs etiam mortuōs contumēliis afficere, corpus ducis cārī tulērunt ad flūmen et in aquam mersērunt; quārē lĕgātus,  
 20 cum redisset ad urbem amicōsque Bēcōnis multōs interfēcisset, ipsius iuvenis corpus invenire nōn potuit.

2. invenīri: note the last letter of the word.

4. modo . . . modo: at one time . . . at another.

6. quod: relative, agreeing with the predicate noun.

8. dicitur: cf. p. 5, l. 17, note.

9. suōrum: to (lit. of) his men.

10. lĕgātus, cum. cf. hostēs, cum, p. 20, l. 17.

17. cum intellegent: cf. the note on p. 14, l. 8.—solēre: cf. solēbant, p. 7, l. 4.

18. mortuōs: (when) dead.

19. mersērunt: mergō, 3, mersi, mersus, bury, lit. sink.

20. multōs: many (of).

Paucis post annis ille lēgātus pessimus quoque poenās dedit; nam ā rēge domum revocātus, summā ignōminiā affectus ibi mortuus est. Interim Virginia reliquaeque prōvinciae paulatim validiōrēs fiēbant. Sed antequam dē bellō loquor, quod postea ā colōnis cum Britannis gestum est, quaedam dīcenda sunt de puerō, quī imperātor summus Americanōrum futūrus erat.

## LESSON 27

*The Boyhood of George Washington*

Hic puer, quī Vasingtō appellābātur, in Virginiā nātus est sexāgintā ferē annis post bellum, quod cum lēgātō eius prōvinciae gesserat Bēcō ille, dē quō modo dixi. Puerō erat frāter maior, quī tribūnus mīlitum factus ad bellum abierat, quod Britannī cum Hispānis tum gerēbant eis in insulis, ad quās Columbus primum nāvēs appulit.

Vasingtō, postquam frāter ad exercitum profectus est, dē bellō saepe cōgitābat; cumque lūdēbant pueri ac simulābant sē esse militēs, semper erat ille imperātor. Postea vērō, puer magnus et validus factus, celerrimē dīcitur currere potuisse neque equum timuisse ūllum.

Frāter iam volēbat Vasingtōnem nautam fieri, māter autem nōluit; itaque ille domi aliquamdiū mānsit et didicit omnia, quae ibi in lūdō trādēbantur. Sed paucis post an-

4. *fiēbant*: note the tense.

6. *quaedam*: (neut. pl.) *something*.

7. *futūrus erat*: *was destined to be*; cf. p. 4, l. 3, and p. 16, l.

15.

8. *nātus est*: cf. p. 1, l. 1.

9. *post*: here preposition.

16. *imperātor*: pred. nom.

17. *vērō*: *moreover*.—*et*: omit in translation.—*factus*: render by a clause introduced by "when."—*dīcitur*: cf. p. 30, l. 8.

21. *omnia*: *everything*.—*lūdō*: *lūdus*, -i, M., *school*.—*trādēbantur*: *i.e. was taught*; lit. *what?*



nīs vir quīdam, cui erat maximum praedīum longinquum, hominem conducere voluit, quī terminōs praediī suī cōstitueret; ac Vasingtō, quī hanc quoque artem didicerat, ab eō conductus in praedīum missus est.

## LESSON 28

*Experiences on the Frontier*

5 In praediō, quod instar prōvinciae erat, habitābant agricolae pauci, at multi Indī. Hīc Vasingtō mēnsēs multos per silvās et montēs longē iter fēcit, ac saepe equō vectus rīvōs et flūmina trānsiit; noctū autem solēbat sub caelō prope ignem humi iacēre, quod casās colōnōrum nōn amābat. 10 Ōlim cum ita sōpītus iacēret, subitō ignis in foenum cecidit, ex quō lectus eius factus erat; quō ex periculō ipse tamen servātus est ab agricolā quōdam, quī tum vigilābat.

Trēs annōs in praediō morātus est Vasingtō, ibique mōrēs Indōrum cōgnōscere coepit; quārē, ubi domum ūndēviginti 15 annōs nātus rediit, ā lēgātō Virginiae tribūnus militum factus est: nam Virginiā tōtā reliquisque prōvinciīs colōnī arbi-trābantur bellum cum Gallīs mox gerendum esse. Britannī enim multi iam trānsierant montēs cōnsēderantque in vallis-bus, quae a Gallīs prius explōrātae erant; quibus rēbus

2. terminōs: terminus, -i, M., boundary.

3. hanc . . . artem: i.e. of surveying.

6. hīc: the adverb.

8. autem: moreover.

9. humi: cf. p. 7, l. 4 — amābat: fancy; for other meanings of this word, see the Vocab.

10. foenum: foenum, -i, N., straw.

11. ex quō: (out) of which. . . quō ex periculō: for word order, cf. eā in terrā, p. 6, l. 3.

14. ūndēviginti annōs nātus: at nineteen years of age, lit. having been born nineteen years.

15. tribūnus militum: a major.

16. Virginiā tōtā: throughout all Virginia. The prep. in is often omitted when the abl. is modified by tōtus.

Galli commōti, cum hanc regiōnem dimittere nōllent, ca-  
stella complūra ibi pōnēbant, quae Britannōs arcērent.

## LESSON 29

*A Dangerous Mission*

Quamquam spēs pācis iam paene sublāta erat, lēgātus  
Virginiae cōstituit tamen nūntium mittere, sī ūllō modō  
5 rēs sine bellō compōnī possent. Itaque Vasingtō, sine  
morā dēlēctus quī hanc rem difficilem tractāret, paucis cum  
comitibus per silvās fortiter profectus est; cumque montēs  
quoque trānsisset, Indīs quibusdam ad concilium vocātis  
persuāsit ut ad Gallōrum castra sē sequerentur.

10 Quō ubi perventum est, Gallī nūntium cōmiter accēpē-  
runt, respondērunt tamen sē numquam nisi bellō coāctōs  
ex illis finibus discessūrōs. Quārē Vasingtō, quī Gallōrum  
cōpiās maximās summā sollicitūdine animadverterat, do-  
mum statim properāre coepit; cum vērō ad montēs per-  
15 ventum esset, impedimentis relictis, ūnō cum comite et  
duce Indō etiam celerius prōgressus est.

Via scilicet erat ipsa periculōsa (nam hiems iam erat):  
alterum autem fuit periculum maius; colōnis enim inimī-  
cus erat dux. Quī ōlim, cum advesperāsceret, tēlum subitō

1. cum . . . nōllent: translate  
by a participial phrase.

2. pōnēbant: note the tense.—  
arcērent: note the mood.

4. si: (if) *perchance*.

5. compōnī: compōnō, 3, -po-  
sui, -positus, *settle*.

6. tractāret: note the mood.

8. Indīs: cf. the note on per-  
suādēre, p. 23, l. 9.—vocātis:  
modifier of Indīs.

11. nisi: introducing the part.  
coāctōs.

13. cōpiās: *stores*, or *supplies*.  
—sollicitūdine: sollicitūdō, -inis,  
F., *anxiety*.

14. vērō: *and*.

16. duce: *guide*.

18. alterum: *another*; contrast  
the commoner meaning of alter  
on p. 34, l. 1.—colōnis: construe  
with inimicus.

in Vasingtōnem misit. Quō factō, colōnus alter Indum interficere volēbat. At Vasingtō, quī tēlō vulnerātus nōn erat, hominem discēdere incolumem passus est; iam autem nōn solum interdiū sed noctū quoque iter faciendum arbitrābatur, quod periculum sentiēbat maximum esse.

## LESSON 30

*A Dangerous Mission (Continued)*

Paulō post ad flūmen magnum perventum est; quod cum rate trānsirent, Vasingtō forte in aquam frigidam cecidit, unāque cum comite in insulā parvā morārī coactus est, dōnec diēs postera illūxit: tum dēmum per glaciem,  
 10 quae in flūmine natābat, summō cum periculō ad rīpam alteram ambō vērunt. Deinde, equō ab Indīs emptō, facilius fēcērunt iter, et postrēmō incolumēs domum pervērunt. Ubi lēgātus, cum dē pertinaciā Gallōrum certior factus esset, molestē ferēs illōs tam audācter respondisse,  
 15 Vasingtōnem iussit militēs trāns montēs dūcere ad castella eisdem in locis pōnenda, ē quibus ipse modo redierat.

Interim colōnī aliī, ē prōvinciā clam per montēs profectī, in illis regiōnibus longinquīs locum quendam, castris maximē idōneum, audācter occupāvērunt. Quī vērō brevī  
 20 ā Gallis sē dēdere coacti sunt; nam Vasingtō, quamquam iam cōgēbat cōpiās atque intellegēbat omnia sibi esse facienda

1. in: *at*.7. rate: *ratīs, -ia, F., raft*; for syntax, cf. *nāvibus*, p. 6, l. 10.10. in: *upon the surface of*. — natābat: cf. *natantēs*, p. 3, l. 15.11. ab: *from*.12. facilius: *i.e. more comfortably*.13. ubi: cf. *ubi*, p. 4, l. 14.14. illōs . . . respondisse: *that they had replied*.15. ad castella . . . pōnenda: *to establish forts*.16. quibus: the antecedent is *locis*.21. sibi: *dat. case, this being the regular agency construction with the gerundive. The whole*

ut hīc locus dēfenderētur, civibus tamen suis satis mātūrē auxilium ferre nōn potuit.

## LESSON 31

*The Beginning of the French and Indian War*

At paucis post diebus, per loca aspera summō labōre prōgressus, in hostium finēs pervēnit Vasingtō, castraque sibi parva posuit. Deinde paulō longius profectus explōrātōrēs cēpit paucos; tum autem certior factus Gallōs Indōsque adesse plūrimos, iterum sē in castra recēpit. Quō factō Galli, cum sociis Indis celeriter cōsecūtī, in castra impetum fēcērunt ācerimum; sed postrēmō, colōnis multās hōrās frūstrā oppugnātis, ē castris Vasingtōnem cum armis eā condiciōne exīre passī sunt, ut exercitum ex hīs finibus statim redūceret. Ille igitur invitus domum iter facere coāctus est.

Posterō autem annō ē Britannia legiōnēs complūrēs misae sunt ad Gallōs expellendos ex eis locis, unde illi modo Vasingtōnem discēdere coēgerant. Imperātor factus erat vir Britannicus, nōmine Braddoc, dux fortis, quī tamen cum Indis bellum gerere nesciēbat. Crēdēbat vērō sē omnia scire, neque ā Vasingtōne aut reliquis colōnis sē monērī volēbat; quārē, cum ad bellum profectus esset, quamquam multa milia passuum per viās periculōsās silvāsque maximās iter legiōnibus erat faciendum, explōrātōrēs praemittere

phrase may be rendered freely  
*that he must exert himself to the  
utmost for the defense, etc.*

1. suis: modifier of civibus.

8. Indis: here as adj.

10. eā condiciōne . . . ut: *on these terms, that.*

12. invitus: cf. the note on laetus, p. 2, l. 16.

14. ad Gallōs expellendos: purpose clause; cf. the similar phrase on p. 34, l. 15.

17. gerere: cf. the infinitive with nesciēbat, p. 8, l. 2.—  
omnia: *all (about the subject).*

18. sē: omit in translation.

21. legiōnibus: for syntax, cf. sibi, p. 34, l. 21.

nōluit, nec grātiās colōnis ēgit, quī operam suam ultrō polliciti sunt: nam nē cōspēctum quidem legiōnum suārum putābat Indōs esse lātūrōs.

## LESSON 32

### *Braddock's Defeat*

Postrēmō vērō, cum in finēs hostium longē iter factum  
esset, subitō in silvis Indōrum ululātus est audītus; tum  
tēla plūrima inmissa sunt, ac militēs Britannicī, quī ho-  
stem nūllum vidēbant, undique cadere coepērunt. Colōnī  
interim in silvam celeriter inrūpērunt, arboribusque inter-  
positis cum Indīs ācriter pugnābant; at imperātor legiōnēs  
10 in viā habēbat instrūctās, nec suōs locō cēdere passus est,  
quamquam caedem maximam fieri sentiēbat. Itaque illi  
paene omnēs aut interfecti sunt aut vulnerāti, ac Braddoc  
ipse vulnus accēpit, ex quō paulō post mortuus est. Va-  
singtō militēs perterritōs primō cohortārī cōnātus, imperā-  
15 tōre vulnerātō exercitūs reliquiās ad castra redūxit, ubi  
impedimenta maxima relictā erant. Ibi, conciliō convocātō,  
tribūnī centuriōnēsque celeriter ē finibus hostium sibi dis-  
cēdendum esse statuērunt.

Quō proeliō admoneor ut dicam dē incommodō maximō,  
20 quod ā Rōmānis acceptum est apud lacum Trasumenrum,

7. vidēbant: we would say  
"could see."

8. arboribus . . . interpositis:  
freely, *getting behind trees*; lit.  
what?

10. habēbat: *kept*. — suōs: cf.  
suōrum, page 30, l. 9. — locō:  
*from their places*; cf. the note on  
p. 7, l. 4.

12. aut . . . aut: *either . . . or*.

14. imperātōre vulnerātō: trans-  
late by a phrase introduced by  
"after."

17. discēdendum esse: imper-  
sonal use of the gerundive.

19. ut: *to*.

20. apud: *at*. — lacum Trasumennum: in north central Italy.

cum Hannibal, dux Poenōrum, ibi insidiās clam fēcisset. Secundum lītus est viā angustā, tum agrī apertī. In locō apertō Hannibal castra posuit, milītēs autem multōs in latebris prope viam collocāvit. Tum, cum Rōmānī temerē viā angustā ad Hannibalis castra versus iter facerent, subitō Poenī ē latebris ērūpērunt et hostis perterritōs in lacum compulērunt.

## LESSON 33

*Later Events of the War*

Etsī in proeliō, dē quō suprā dixī, Galli victōriam erant adeptī Britannique ex illīs regiōnibus celerrimē sē recēperant, Vasingtōnis tamen virtūtem omnēs laudābant. Quem igitur colōnī, cōpiis tōtā ex prōvinciā coāctis, summum fēcērunt ducem et in montēs cum exercitū ad hostis arcendōs misērunt; ubi bellum cum Gallīs eōrumque sociis mēnsēs multōs fēliciter gessit: tribusque post annīs, cum iam imperātōrēs complūrēs ē Britannīā ad Americam missī essent, ūnā cum lēgātis aliīs legiōnēs quāsdam ille ē Pennsylvēniā trāns montēs dūxit atque hostēs ex eis locis discēdere coēgit, ubi illi quondam Britannis tantum dētrīmentum intulerant.

Quō incommodō acceptō, Gallī tamen minimē animō dēmissī bellum alibi ācritēr gessērunt; nam Indī, quī erant paene omnēs amīcī, eōs omnibus modis adiuvābant. Sed

2. in locō apertō: freely, *in the open*; lit. what?

5. viā angustā: for syntax, cf. the note on quā, p. 5, l. 13; here the abl. may be rendered "along."

8. erant adeptī: adipīscor, 3, adeptus sum, *gain, or secure*.

10. quem: not relative in the English translation.

18. Britannis: dat. case; translate "upon."

20. animō dēmissī: lit. *cast down in mind, i.e. discouraged*. The abl. case here expresses specification.

postrēmō, multis dētrimentis frācti, pācem petiērunt; quam mox adepti sunt, Canadā aliisque regiōnibus Britannis trāditis.

Vasingtō interim ab exercitū domum redierat, ubi in mātirimōnium dūxit mātironam quandam, quae Marta appellābātur; tum annōs paucōs in praediō suō mānsit ōtiōsus.

## LESSON 34

### *The Outbreak of the Revolution*

Nunc mihi dicendum est dē bellō, quod colōnī paucis post annis cum Britannis ipsis gessērunt. Diū rēx senātusque Britannōrum ā prōvinciis vectigālia quaedam exigere  
 10 erant cōnāti, etsi hae lēgēs lātae erant in conciliō, in quō suffrāgium ferre Americānō nūlli licēbat. Id colōnī molestē ferēbant; ac postrēmō, cum iam tanta iniūria nōn diūtius ferenda vidērētur, omnibus ex prōvinciis in unum locum viri dēlēcti, in eis Vasingtō, ad cōnsilium commūne capiendum  
 15 convocāti sunt. Hī, conciliō habitō, litterās ad rēgem Britannōrum misērunt, quibus postulābant ut colōnis iūra eadem concēderentur, quae domi cīvēs reliquī obtinēbant. Quibus litteris acceptis, rēx irātus nōn solum iūra concēdere

1. petiērunt: *i.e.* petivērunt.  
 —quam: *this* (noun).

2. adepti sunt: cf. the note on p. 37, l. 8. — Britannis: dat. case.

6. ōtiōsus: translate by another part of speech.

9. vectigālia: vectigālia, -ium, N., *taxes*.

10. lēgēs: lēx, lēgis, F., *measure, or law*.

11. suffrāgium ferre: *cast a vote* (suffrāgium, -i, N.). — id: *this* (state of affairs).

13. ferenda: *bearable*; lit. what? — in unum locum: with convocāti sunt, l. 15.

14. in eis: cf. in, p. 26, l. 7. — cōnsilium . . . conciliō: contrast the meaning of the two words.

15. litterās: for the force of the plural, see the Vocab.

16. quibus: *in which*; strictly, abl. of means.

17. obtinēbant: *freely, enjoyed*.

nōluit, sed etiam in Americam misit militēs multōs, quī ā colōnīs audāciae poenās repeterent.

Apud oppidum parvum, nōmine Lexingtonem, primum pugnātum est, magnā cum caede Britannōrum; nam agricolae, murīs interpositīs, tēla plūrima inmisērunt in hostēs, quī ita sex milia passuum sē recipere coactī sunt ad urbem, unde paulō ante profectī erant. Quibus rēbus factis, concilium idem, quod ad rēgem litterās miserat, quaerere coepit imperātorem, quī omnīs cōpiās Americānās dūceret. Cī-  
 10 vēs scilicet memoriā tenēbant rēs gestās Vasingtōnis in bellō, quod paucīs ante annīs cum Gallīs Indisque gestum erat; quārē ille summō assēnsū omnium dux brevī factus est.

## LESSON 35

### *Operations about Boston*

Sed antequam Vasingtō in Britanniam Novam pervenire  
 15 potuit, iterum, ācritur pugnātum est in quōdam colle, ubi postea Americānī columnam maximam eōrum nōmine statuērunt, quī ibi prō libertāte vītam suam largītī sunt. Eō in proeliō Britannī vicērunt; sed nē hostēs quidem satis laudāre poterant virtutem colōnōrum, quī impetum veterā-  
 20 nōrum tam audācter excēperant.

Vasingtō, postquam illūc pervēnit, hostīs mēnsēs multōs

2. audāciae: *for* (lit. *of*) *their insubordination*.

3. apud: *near*.—primum: the adverb.

6. ita: *i.e.* under a hot fire.

7. concilium: (*deliberative*) *body*.

9. cīvēs: (*his*) *fellow-citizens*.

10. memoriā tenēbant: *i.e.* *had not forgotten*.

16. columnam: *columna*, -ae, *F.*, *monument*. — nōmine: *in honor*.

17. statuērunt: *i.e.* *posuērunt*. — vītam: *translate as though the noun were plural*.

18. eō: *modifier of proeliō*.

21. Vasingtō, postquam: *cf. the note on hostēs, cum, p. 20, l. 17.* — illūc: *adv., thither*.





COLUMNA

In the picture is shown a monument about a hundred feet in height, erected at Rome in 104 A.D., in honor of the emperor Trajan. On its sides are sculptured scenes descriptive of one of Trajan's important campaigns, a fact which makes this column a very important source of information about the details of Roman military life.

intrā mūnitiōnēs Bostōnis continuit. Tum, cum eius cōpiae maiōrēs factae essent, subitō noctū prope urbem clam collem quendam occupāvit, atque ibi vāllum summā celeritāte exstrūxit; quīn etiam ubi diēs illūxit duxque hostium mūnitiōnēs novās animadvertit, vehementer commōtus ille: “Hī colōnī ūnā nocte,” inquit, “tanta opera perfēcērunt, quanta meus exercitus mēse tōtō perficere nōn potest.” Hōc vāllō exstrūctō, cum cotidiē tēla plūrima ballistīs Americanōrum in urbem mitterentur, hostēs brevī nāvēs cōnscendere ꝛatque ē portū fugere coācti sunt.

Colōnī adhūc bellum gesserant ut iūra cīvium Britannicōrum sibi concēderentur; iam vērō, cum neque rēx neque senātus eōs audire vellet, dē Britannīā dēsciscere novamque condere rem pūblicam cōstituērunt.

## LESSON 36

*The Battles of Long Island and Trenton*

5 Interim Britannī Novum Eborācum terrā marique oppugnāre parābant. Haud procul est magna insula, quae Longa appellātur. Ibi ē nāvibus ēgressī hostēs cum Americānis ācritēr pugnāvērunt. Quō proeliō victus Vasingtō nōn solum ex insulā discēdere sed etiam Novum Eborācum 20 dimittere coāctus est. Hīs rēbus factis, colōnī omnēs animō

6. tanta . . . quanta: *such . . . as.*

7. potest: *could*, a common idiomatic use of the pres. indic. of this verb. — hōc vāllō, etc.: the abl. absol. may be translated by a “when” clause, and the following words by a participial phrase.

8. ballistis: abl. of means.

12. cum: causal. — neque . . . neque: *neither . . . nor.*

13. dē: *from*. — dēsciscere: *dēsciscō*, 3, -scīvī, -scitum est, *separate*.

14. rem pūblicam: *commonwealth*.

15. terrā marique: *by land and sea*, the abl. expressing place where.

20. animō . . . dēmissi: cf. the note on this same phrase, p. 37, l. 20.

vehementer erant dēmissi; quārē Vasingtō, quamquam tōtō cum exercitū Britannicō in aciē pugnāre nōn audēbat, putāvit tamen aliquid sibi faciendum esse, quod spem cīvibus suis adferret. Quam facultātem mox nactus est. Nam  
 5 Britannī, quī invitī cum Americānīs ipsī pugnābant, multōs Germānōs condūxerant, quī in exercitū stīpendia facerent; quōrum Germānōrum pars quaedam haud procul ā Novō Eboracō in hibernīs iam collocāta erat. Quō cōgnitō, Vasingtō noctū profectus, etsī erat tempestās maxima flūmen-  
 10 que quoddam trānseundum erat, ad eōrum castra versus audācter iter fēcit; quō in itinere duo hominēs frīgore periē-  
 runt. Hostēs, quī nihil suspicābantur diemque fēstum celebrābant, ab Americānīs facillimē captī sunt. Tum dēmum colōnī iterum spem magnam habēre coepērunt.

## LESSON 37

*The Retreat from Trenton*

15 Paulō post Vasingtō, cum ausus esset iterum prōgredi ad eundem locum ubi Germānōs illōs cēperat, periculum adiit maximum. Nam subitō aderant Britannī plūrimī, nec propter natantem glaciem flūmen trānsire Americānī poterant. Tum imperātor Britannicus, quī Cornivallis appellā-  
 20 bātur, cum Vasingtōnem crēderet iam dēmum circumventum esse, glōriāns, "Crās," inquit, "ā mē iste vulpēs capiētur."

2. aciē: *regular engagement.*

4. adferret: note the mood.

—quam facultātem: *freely, an opportunity for which.*

5. invitī: *with reluctance.* — ipsī: *in person.*

9. erat: *there was.*

12. diem . . . fēstum: *a holiday (fēstus, -a, -um).*

16. illōs: *i.e. those mentioned in l. 7.*

20. cum . . . crēderet: *translate by a participial phrase; so also on the next page, l. 11. In Latin the pres. part. is used much less freely than in English.*

21. crās: *adv., to-morrow.* — vulpēs (-is, c.): *fox.*

- At Vasingtō suōs iussit sub vesperum in castris ignis facere, ut cotidiē solēbant, cum interim paucī maximō cum strepitū circum vāllum opus fēstinārent; quod eō cōnsiliō iussit, ut Britannī arbitrārentur ibi impetum hostium excipere
- 5 Americānōs parāre. Nocte tamen intempestā colōnī, sine strepitū ūllō ex castris ēgressī, viīs dēviīs iter fēcērunt circum exercitum Britannicum, atque in agrōs apertōs incolumēs pervēnērunt. Itaque māne imperātor Britannōrum “vulpem istum” invenīre nōn potuit; Vasingtō enim etiam
- 10 tum oppidum oppugnābat alterum, ubi quīdam Britannī alii castra posuerant. Quārē Cornivallis, cum sentiret sē ēlūsum esse, celerīter sē recēpit, ut impedīmenta cōservāret sua, quae ad pugnam profectus post tergum longē reliquerat.

## LESSON 38

*Burgoyne's Campaign*

- Posterō annō alius imperātor Britannicus ex Canadā per
- 15 prōvinciam Noveborācēensem legiōnēs quāsdam dūcere cōnātus est. Cui omnia primō fēliciter ēvēnērunt; Taeconderōga enim capta est ūnā cum cōpiīs omnibus, quās eō Americānī comportāverant. Cum autem Germānī multī ē Britannicō exercitū in proximam prōvinciam
- 20 missi essent ut equōs aliāsque cōpiās colōnōrum raperent,

2. ut : *as.* — solēbant : *sc.* facere. — pauci : here used as a (*masc. pl.*) noun.

3. vāllum : of course, of their own camp. — fēstinārent : fēstinō, *i.*, hurry along. — quod : *i.e.* id quod, a thing which. — cōnsiliō : *design.*

10. oppugnābat : note the tense.

13. ad pugnam : for a battle (*merely*), *i.e.* not for a campaign.

16. cui : for whom. — omnia : note the gender.

18. eō : there, lit. thither ; cf. the note on quā, p. 8, l. 14.

agricolae, quī ā pueritiā arma ferre solitī erant, undique statim convēnerunt; Germānisque magnō cum dētrimentō ex illā prōvinciā discēdere coāctīs, imperātorem ipsum mox ācerimē adortī sunt Americānī, quōrum in diēs cōpiaē  
5 maiōrēs fiēbant.

Quō proeliō victī hostēs, quī iam omnibus ex partibus obsidēbantur, in Canadam redire primō frūstrā cōnātī, postrēmō Americānīs in dēditionem vērunt. Tum scilicet colōnī omnēs ecfrenātē gaudēbant, quod periculum  
10 maximum effūgisse vidēbantur. Sed alibi hostēs ācriter gerēbant bellum; cuius ēventus adhūc maximē dubius erat.

## LESSON 39

### *Valley Forge*

Dum geruntur haec, dē quibus modo dixī, Britannī Philadelphiam oppugnāre parābant, quae urbs tum erat caput rei pūblīcae Americānae. Unde Vasingtō, cuius cōpiaē  
15 numerō erant multō inferiōrēs, hostēs nūllō modō arcēre poterat; quārē senātus ad aliud oppidum sē recēpit, ac Philadelphia nūllō dēfendente ā Britannīs capta est.

4. in diēs: *from day to day*.

6. omnibus ex partibus: *on all sides*.

8. Americānīs: dat. case.

9. quod: conjunction.

10. vidēbantur: sc. sibi, *i.e.* *they seemed to themselves*; freely, *they thought that they*, etc.

11. gerēbant: note the tense. — maximē dubius: by the prefixing of maximē, an adj. (or adv.) is raised to the superlative degree.

12. haec: neut. pl.

13. quae urbs: *the city which*; lit. what?

15. numerō: for syntax, cf. animō, p. 37, l. 20. — multō: (*by*) *much*.

16. senātus: *Congress*.

17. nūllō: supplying the missing abl. of nēmō. — dēfendente: sc. eam (*i.e.* *Philadelphiam*). For the pres. part., being active in meaning, may take an object even when used, as here, in the abl. absol. construction.

Paucis post diebus circiter quinque milibus passuum ab eadem urbe acriter pugnatum est, sed tum quoque Vasingtō discessit inferior. Quī igitur, cum hiems iam adesset, milites suos in hibernis collocavit in quādam valle, ubi menses 5 multos summā cum inopiā omnium rerum necessariarum miserrimē victum est. Nam nōn solum in aerariō nulla erat pecūnia, sed in castris mox frumentum quoque deficere coepit; militesque miseri, quibus erant saga nulla, saepe noctes totas prope ignem vigilare coacti sunt. Quin etiam 10 traditum est, cum agmen in hiberna iter faceret, multorum pedes nudos in nive vestigia cruenta fecisse.

Sed iam demum ex Eurōpā socii Americānis auxilium ferre parabant; multi enim etiam aliis ex gentibus molestē ferēbant Britannos iura civium colonis concedere 15 noluisse.

## LESSON 40

*Help from France*

Ita hoc ferē tempore factum erat ut Galli, qui Britannos minimē amābant, cum Americānis facerent foedus atque 1 trans mare imperatorem cum classe mitterent, qui colonos

1. quinque milibus passuum: abl. of degree of difference. — ab: (away) from.

2. pugnatum est: a battle was fought; lit. what?

3. cum: as, or since.

5. cum: freely, under the stress of.

6. miserrimē: miserē (adv.), wretchedly. — victum est: impersonal pass. (from vivō). — aerariō: aerarium, -ri, n., public treasury.

8. quibus: dat. case; cf. cui, p. 11, l. 2.

10. multorum: as (masc.) noun; cf. multi, l. 13.

12. Americānis: indirect obj. with auxilium ferre.

13. aliis ex gentibus: i.e. of other nationalities.

16. factum erat: it had come to pass.

17. cum: preposition. — foedus: foedus, -eris, n., alliance.

adiuvāret. Quibus rēbus cōgnītīs, Britannī illī, quī Philadelphiae cōnsēderant, cum sentīrent flūmine classe obsessō sē undique oppugnārī posse, celeriter sēsē coniūnxērunt cum cōpiis aliīs, quae in prōvinciā proximā collocātae erant. Ita  
5 Philadelphia rursus in Americānōrum potestātem pervēnit.

Adhūc Britannī crēdiderant colōnōs facile vīcī posse; sed iam dēmum sēnsērunt sē rem difficillimam tractāre; cumque in prōvinciīs, quae ad meridiem spectant, colōnī rārī multis cum servis in praediīs maximis habitārent, in  
10 eās cōstituērunt exercitūs suōs mittere, sī ibi rem gerere fēlicius possent. Nec vērō eōs cōsiliū fefellit; nam Gorgia unā cum aliīs quibusdam prōvinciīs brevī est occupāta, et ubicumque in aciē pugnātum est, Americānī victī sunt. Quibus dētrīmentīs minimē animō dēmissī, colōnī  
15 iam manūs parvās coēgērunt, quae in silvis palūdibusque latēbant, dōnec occāsionem rei bene gerendae nanciscerentur; tum subitō impetū factō aut capiēbant Britannōs aut eōs in fugam dabant.

## LESSON 41

### *Benedict Arnold*

Dum haec geruntur, in prōvinciā Noveborācēnsī quīdam  
20 imperātor Americānus, nōmine Arnoldius, dux audāx ac

1. quibus rēbus: *this*. — Philadelphia: locative case.

2. flūmine . . . obsessō: translate by a conditional clause.

3. oppugnārī: note the last letter of the word. — posse: *could*. — sēsē: *i.e.* sē.

8. cum: *since*, or *inasmuch as*.

10. eās: referring to prōvinciīs, l. 8. — sī: cf. sī, p. 33, l. 4.

11. nec vērō, etc.: *freely, and the plan was successful*; lit. what?

13. ubicumque: conjunction, *wherever*.

15. manūs: *companies*, or *bands*.

16. latēbant: cf. the note on rapiēbant, p. 7, l. 17. — rei bene gerendae (gen. case): *freely, successful action*. — nanciscerentur: translate the subjunctive "could."

strēnuus, Britannīs parābat prōdere castra, quae colōnī in ripā flūminis Hudsonis posuerant, quōque ab Americānis comportāta erant omnia, quae ad bellum necessariā erant; nam castra nātūrā locī munitissima erant, ac fūnis quoque **S**ferreus ibi trāns flūmen ductus erat, nē nāvēs hostium longius adversō flūmine nāvigāre possent.

Britannī, cum iam diēs prōditiōnis appropinquāret, nūntium misērunt, quī ducem convenīret Americānum, litterāsque ab eō reportāret. Incolumis ad Arnoldium pervēnit **10** nūntius; sed cum ad Britannōs redīret, ab Americānis tribus captus est: quī captivum sine morā in castra proxima dēdūxērunt, quamquam ille miser omnibus modis ab eis salūtem impetrāre cōnātus est. Quā dē rē certior factus, Arnoldius ad Britannōs quam celerrimē perfūgit; quō **15** rum in exercitū imperātor brevī factus est.

Nūntius interim, causā cōgnitā, capitis est damnātus; litterās enim, quās manū ducis Americānī scrīptās ferēbat, dēlēre nōn potuerat, antequam in castra ā colōnis tribus ductus est. Arnoldius, cum contrā suōs civēs ācerrimē bellum **20** gessisset, postrēmō apud Britannōs mortuus est, etiam eis ipsīs invīsus quōs tantā perfidiā adiuvāre cōnātus erat.

1. castra, quae, etc.: namely, West Point.

2. quōque: *i.e.* quō + que, and into which; for quō, cf. the note on p. 8, l. 14.

3. omnia: note the gender. — ad: *for*.

4. nātūrā: note the case. — fūnis (-is, M.): *chain*.

5. ferreus (-a, -um): *iron*. — ductus erat: *had been stretched*.

7. prōditiōnis: prōditiō, -ōnis, *F., betrayal*; cf. the verb prōdō, l. 1.

12. ille miser: *he, poor fellow*.

14. quam celerrimē: *as quickly as possible*. — quōrum in exercitū: *and in their army*.

16. cōgnitā: *tried*. — capitis: *i.e. to death*. The charge or (less often) the penalty may be expressed, as here, by the genitive.

17. manū: *abl. of means with scrīptās*.

19. cum . . . gessisset: *after waging*. — suōs: observe the emphatic position (cf. the note on suum, p. 11, l. 6).

21. eis ipsīs: *dat. case; construe with invīsus*.



## LESSON 42

*A Roman who fought against his Country*

Quibus rēbus admoneor ut pauca dicam dē Coriolānō, clārō duce Rōmānō; quī imperātor fortissimus, ā cīvibus iniuriā damnātus, ab urbe discessit sēque coniūxit cum hostibus, quī antea bellum Rōmānis saepe intulerant.

5 Dēnuō mox bellō indictō, hostibus primō rēs undique fēliciter ēvēnerunt, Rōmānique lēgātōs pācis petendae causā ad Coriolānum mittere coācti sunt. Quī autem, propter iniuriā ā cīvibus inlātā adhūc irātus, asperius respondit lēgātōsque maestissimōs domum dimisit; quīn etiam idem  
10 nūntiī ā senātū iterum missi nē in castra recepti quidem sunt.

Quibus rēbus cōgnitis, Rōmāni graviter permōti etiam sacerdōtēs mittere cōstituērunt, si ab eis saltem Coriolāni animus ferōx flecti posset; cum vērō nē hī quidem quicquam impetrāre potuissent, tum māter ipsa uxorque Coriolāni unā  
15 cum aliis mātērōnis complūribus ad hostium castra maestae profectae sunt.

Quō ubi perventum est, mātēris verbis vehementer commōtus Coriolānus pollicitus est sē sine morā cum exercitū ē fīnibus Rōmānōrum discessūrum. Postea apud hostis mul-

1. pauca: *a few (words)*.

2. quī: *this (adj.)*.

3. iniuriā: abl. used adverbially. — urbe: *the city, i.e. Rome*, often thus designated as being *the city* par excellence.

4. Rōmānis: dat. case.

5. dēnuō: *i.e. iterum*.

6. pācis petendae causā: *i.e. ad pācem petendam*. Literally causā means "for the sake of."

8. asperius: *rather harshly (asperē: adv., harshly)*; for the

rendering of the comparative, cf. the note on *maximum*, p. 13, l. 11.

9. lēgātōs: *envoys or ambassadors*. — maestissimōs: pred. adj. — idem: pl.

13. ferōx (-ōcis, adj.): *fierce*. — flecti: flectō, 3, flexi, flexus, *influence*. — vērō: *and*. — quicquam: *any concession*, lit. *anything*.

15. maestae: *in (the garb of) mourning*.

tōs annōs vixit, nec libenter; nam trāditum est eum esse solitum dicere senī miserrimum esse exsilium.

## LESSON 43

*The Surrender of Cornwallis*

Sed ut ad Americānōs redeāmus, ab eis diū ac variā fortūnā bellum cum Britannis gestum est. At paulatim oppida  
5 provinciārum, quae ad meridiem spectant, rursus in potestatem Americānōrum venērunt, ac Cornivallis, quī iam ibi bellum gerēbat, in Virginiam postrēmō sē recipere coāctus est; quā in provinciā summā cum licentiā rapere et agere coepit omnia.

10 Vasingtō autem iam aderat cum exercitū sociisque Gallicis; et Cornivallis in urbe mūnitissimā, quae Eborācopolis appellātur, undique obsessus, oppugnātiōnem duōs mēnsēs aegrē sustinuit. Tum hostēs, cum frūstrā ērumpere cōnātī essent parsque mūnitiōnum ab Americānis esset expugnāta,  
15 sē suaque omnia Vasingtōnī dēdidērunt. Cornivallis autem ipse, nē suis oculis Ignōminiam exercitūs vidēret, eō diē sē esse aegrum simulābat, atque in tabernāculō, dōnec dēditio est facta, maestus morātus est.

Hāc victoriā nūtiātā, Americānī ecfrenātē gaudēbant;  
20 ac senātus in templum convocātus dīs grātiās maximā; ēgit.

1. vixit: from vivō. — nec libenter: cf. the note on p. 17,

l. 8.

2. senī: for an old man; senī is from senex.

3. ut . . . redeāmus: to return.

6. ibi: in that region.

8. licentiā: licentia, -ae, f., lawlessness. — rapere et agere: freely, rob and plunder; strictly,

steal (goods) and drive off (live stock).

11. mūnitissimā: strongly fortified.

13. hostēs: i.e. the English.

16. nē . . . vidēret: freely, in order to avoid seeing.

16. suis: cf. again suum, p. 11, l. 6.

20. dīs: cf. p. 14, l. 19.



MUNITIŌNĒS

Above may be seen the remains of a Roman camp, showing still very well the nature of its defenses ; namely, a *vallum*, strengthened at short intervals by small towers.

Omnēs enim sentiēbant Britannīs pācem iam dēmum esse petendam.

## LESSON 44

*Washington retires to Private Life*

Pāce factā, Carletō, dux Britannicus, quī tum Eborācum Novum praesidiō tenēbat, cum exercitū nāvēs cōnscendere domumque redire ā rēge iussus est.

Illam in urbem Vasingtō lēgātōs suōs paulō post convocāvit. Cumque pauca locūtus eōs valēre iussisset, lēgātī, quī eō duce annōs circiter octō stipendia fēcerant, lacrimās nōn potuerunt diūtius continēre, sed flentēs imperātōrem dextrā tenuerunt. Lēgātīs dimissis, Vasingtō, ut imperium suum dēpōneret, ad urbem statim profectus est, ubi senātus tum habēbātur.

Cum iter faceret, multitudinēs maximae ex oppidīs omnibus ēgressae flōrēs in viā sparsērunt; et inter fausta nōmina etiam pater patriae est appellātus. Sic prōgressus est usque ad urbem, ubi eum senātus exspectābat; tum, imperiō dēpositō, domum sine morā contendit, arbitrātus sē iam in praediō iūre ōtiōsum vivere posse, sicut fēcerat, antequam bellum indictum est.

1. Britannīs: cf. the note on sibi, p. 34, l. 21.

6. lēgātōs: *staff officers*.

7. eōs valēre iussisset: *had bidden them (to) fare well (valeō, 2, valui)*.

8. eō duce: cf. advenā duce, p. 21, l. 14. — circiter: cf. p. 45, l. 1. — stipendia fēcerant: cf. p. 42, l. 6.

10. ut: *for the purpose (of)*.

11. senātus . . . habēbātur:

freely, *Congress was . . . in session*.

13. cum: *as*.

14. sparsērunt: spargō, 3, sparsi, sparsus, *scatter*. — fausta: faustus, -a, -um, *complimentary*.

16. exspectābat: note the tense.

17. arbitrātus: cf. the note on veriti, p. 2, l. 17.

18. iūre: abl. of iūs, used adverbially; cf. iniuriā, p. 48, l. 3.

— ōtiōsum: cf. p. 38, l. 6, note.

## LESSON 45

*The Father of his Country*

Laus maxima Vasingtōnī tribuenda est, quod sē rēgem facere nōluit. Sed eius nōmen manet semperque mānsūrum est in animīs hominū, in aeternitāte temporū, neque aliud umquam ab Americānīs aequē amābitur. Quod ille pater patriae appellātus est, hīc est honor, quī paucis contigit. Nam abhinc multōs annōs Cicerō ita est vocātus, cum vīcisset civīs pessimōs, quī rem pūblicam perdere voluerant; et antiquitus hoc idem cōgnōmen Camillō ā cīvibus grātīs iūre datum est.

- 10 Nam ille vir Rōmānus, dux fortis clārusque, iniuriā in iūs vocātus, abierat in exsilium, vivēbatque apud Ardeātēs, cum Galli plūrimī trāns montēs in Italiā subitō profectī, proeliō acri vicerunt Rōmānōs, urbemque ipsam incendērunt. Tum Camillus, conciliō convocātō, Ardeātēs hortātus est ut  
15 audācter finēs dēfenderent suōs, Rōmānisque fortiter auxilium ferrent. Itaque, illō duce, oppidānī noctū clam profectī, in quōsdam Gallōs, quī sine custōdiīs in agrō apertō

1. laus (laudis, F.): *credit*.  
— tribuenda est: *is due* (tribuō, 3, tribui, tribūtus, *give*, or *ascribe*).  
— quod: *that* (conjunction).

2. mānsūrum est: cf. futūrus erat, p. 31, l. 7.

3. aeternitāte: aeternitās, -ātis, F., *endless extent*. — temporum: *the ages*. — aliud: (*any*) *other*.

4. aequē: adv., *equally*. — quod: *as for the fact that*.

5. hīc est: *this is*; for the gender, cf. the note on quod, p. 30, l. 6. — paucis: (*only*) *a*

*few*; masc., as noun. — contigit: contingō, 3, -tigi, *fall (to the lot of)*, or *happen (to)*.

7. perdere: perdō, 3, perdidī, perditus, *ruin*.

8. cōgnōmen: cōgnōmen, -inis, N., *title*. — grātīs: *grateful*.

11. Ardeātēs: *people of Ardea* (a town about twenty miles south of Rome).

12. Galli: *the Gauls*, a people inhabiting the country now known as France.

13. urbem: cf. the note on urbe, p. 48, l. 2.

humī iacēbant sōpīti, maximō clāmōre fēcērunt impetum, eōsque in fugam dedērunt. Ac paulō post reliquī quoque hostēs, quī in castrīs ad Rōmam morātī erant, ā Camillō paene ad ūnum occīsī sunt.

3. ad Rōmam: *near* (or *at*) *Rome*.    4. ad ūnum: cf. p. 4, l. 5

## TALES OF LAND AND SEA

### LESSON 46

#### *The Settler's Daughter*

In Britannia Novā quondam agricolae, quī semper impetūs timēbant Indōrum, in agrōs cotidiē sēcum arma ferre solēbant; ac prope quendam vicum in colle ēditō castellum quoque positum erat, quō, sī quandō opus esset, colōnī liberōs uxōresque statim dēdūcerent. Quō ex castellō ōlim sīgnum subitō datum est Indōs adesse. Hōc auditō, agricolae, equis in agris sine morā relictis, ad villās cucurrerunt, et mulierēs ac liberōs quam celerrimē in castellum dēdūcere coepērunt.

10 At vir quīdam, cui erat filia tantum, ad castellum cum eā pervenire nōn potuit, priusquam Indī in cōspectum vēnērunt; itaque puellam parvam in arbore cavā collocāvit, nē hostēs eam invenire possent, ipseque, ut auxilium cīvibus suis ferret, per agrōs fortiter contendit.

15 In proeliō, quod est ibi commissum, ab Indīs captī, in silvās longinquās dēductī sunt agricolae pauci, in eis ille vir, dē quō modo dixi. Oppidānī scilicet crēdidērunt filiam ūnā cum patre captam esse: sed ille multis post mēnsibus

3. ēditō: ēditus, -a, -um, *high*.

4. quō: cf. quō, p. 47, l. 2.  
—sī quandō: *if at any time, or whenever*. — opus esset: *there should be need*.

7. sine morā: *i.e. instantly*.

8. quam celerrimē: cf. p. 47,

l. 14.

11. priusquam: *i.e. antequam*.

15. est . . . commissum: *i.e. commissum est*.

16. in eis: cf. p. 38, l. 14.

ex Indōrum vicō clam effūgit; cumque postrēmō domum pervēnisset neque in oppidō filiam potuisset invenīre, cīvīs suōs ad arborem cavam dēdūxit. Ibi reperta sunt ossa tantum et sagitta ūna.

## LESSON 47

*The Trials of War*

- 5 Ab hostibus trāsmarinīs quī ōlim bellum cum colōnis Americānis multōs annōs gessērunt, facinora atrōcia facta esse dīcuntur plūrima. Nam cuidam colōnō erant duo equī pulcherrimī, quōs ille maximā dīligentiā cūrābat; at imperātor hostium, quī hoc oppidum praesidiō tenēbat, 10 quīque erat omnibus oppidānis superbiā maximē invīsus, illōs equōs quondam ad sē dūcī iussit, quod nūntium cum litterīs ad castra longinqua mittere vellet. Sed ūnum ex equīs nēmō posteā vidit, alterque paucis post hōris in viā moribundus haud procul repertus est.
- 15 Praedam quoque ē villīs undique rapere solēbant hostēs; sed eōs quondam duo servī Āfrī callidē ēlūsērunt; postquam enim militēs appropinquāre nūntiātum est, hī servī fidēlēs, tabulā abreptā, argentum domini celeriter sub aedibus condidērunt. Ūnus autem ex eīs sub aedibus ar- 20 gentum vix ab alterō accēperat, cum subitō hostēs in cōnspectum vērunt. Itaque ille, quī suprā stābat, tabu-

3. ossa: os, ossis, N., bone.

5. trāsmarinīs: trāsmari-  
nus, -a, -um, from across the sea.

6. atrōcia: atrōx, -ōcis, adj.,  
dastardly.

7. dīcuntur: note the pl. verb.

10. quīque: i.e. quī + que. —  
omnibus oppidānis: dat case;

construe with invīsus. — superbiā:  
abl. of cause.

11. quod . . . vellet: on the  
ground that he wanted.

16. callidē: adv., cleverly.

18. tabulā: tabula, -ae, F., board.

21. ille: the one. — tabulam  
cf. l. 18.



lam statim dēmīsīt, nē quid hostēs suspicārentur; ac servus alter, quī nūllō modō ēvādere poterat, trīs diēs noctēsque sub aedibus dicitur sine aquā cibōve mānsisse.

## LESSON 48

*The Attempt to surprise Detroit*

Postquam bellum, quod ā Britannīs cum Gallīs Indisque  
 5 gerēbātur, paene cōfectum est, multaque castella longin-  
 qua in potestātem Britannōrum vērunt, quīdam rēx  
 Indōrum, nōmine Pontiac, dux fortis et ācer, castella illa  
 recipere Britannōsque ita ex eīs regiōnibus expellere sē  
 posse spērāre coepit; quārē, conciliis undique convocātis,  
 10 Indōs hortātus est ut sē fortiter sequerentur atque hostis  
 invisōs ad ūnum interficerent.

Cum iam ad caedem faciendam Indī omnia expedirent,  
 ē castellō quōdam mulier forte ēgressa barbarōs in taber-  
 nāculis arma parāre animadvertit. Quā rē nūntiātā, lēgātus  
 15 Britannicus, quī ibi praeerat, nihil tamen verēbātur, dōnec  
 puella Inda, quae eum amābat, castellum maesta intrāvit,  
 cōnsiliumque tōtum Indōrum ostendit. Tum vērō castel-  
 lum custōdiis maiōribus firmātum est, nec nimis mātūrē;  
 nam posterā nocte procul in silvīs audiri poterat cantus

1. dēmīsīt: not dīmīsīt. —  
 quid: *i. e.* aliquid. After nē and  
 sī, the short forms quis, quid, etc.,  
 are regularly used.

3. dīcitur: cf. dīcuntur, p. 55,  
 l. 7.

4. bellum, quod, etc.: namely,  
 the French and Indian War.

8. recipere: a compound of  
 capi. This and the following  
 infin. depend on posse, l. 9.

9. posse: *could*.

10. sē: *him*.

14. quā rē: *this observation*.

15. nihil . . . verēbātur: freely,  
*felt no concern*; lit. what?

18. nimis: adv., *too*. The  
 whole phrase may be rendered  
*freely and none too soon*.

19. audiri: note the last letter  
 of the word.—cantus: cf. p. 2,  
 l. 2.

hostium, quī circum ignēs saltābant: sic enim Indī sē ad caedem incitāre solēbant.

## LESSON 49

*The Attempt to surprise Detroit (Continued)*

Māne ad castellum cum comitibus circiter sexāgintā vēnit Pontiac, conciliumque postulāvit. Haud magnō intervallō sequēbātur reliqua multitudō Indōrum, quī simulābant sē extrā mūnitiōnēs pilā lūsūrōs.

Portis castelli patefactis, Pontiac, quī nihil suspicābātur, unā cum comitibus, quī omnēs arma vestimentis tēcta ferēbant, sine morā intrāvit; deinde autem vehementer permōtus milites omnēs et complūrēs negōtiātōrēs cum armis circumstāre animadvertit. Postquam vērō ad principia dēductus est ac vīdit duōs trēsve tantum adesse centuriōnēs, audācter cum lēgātō loquī coepit.

Priusquam ad castellum perventum est, comitēs rēx monuerat sē, cum pauca prius dē pāce locūtus esset, lēgātō zōnam datūrum; quō signō impetum statim in lēgātum centuriōnēsque faciendum esse, cum interim Indī cēteri, quī extrā mūnitiōnēs relictī erant, per portās inrumperent praesidiumque adorīrentur.

2. caedem: (*the business of*) *murdering*.

4. intervallō: translate the abl. "at" (strictly, abl. of manner).

6. pilā: (*at*) *ball*; abl. of means (pila, -ae, f.). — lūsūrōs: sc. esse.

8. quī omnēs: *all of whom*. — vestimentis: abl. of means; but translate "under."

10. cum armis: *i.e. (fully) armed*.

11. circumstāre: *i.e. in such a way as to encircle* Pontiac and his followers. — principia: *principia, -ōrum, n., headquarters*.

15. pauca: note the gender; cf. multa, p. 5, l. 9.

16. zōnam: *zōna, -ae, f., belt*. — datūrum: *would offer*. — quō signō: abl. of time when; translate "at."

17. cēteri: *i.e. reliqui*.

Cum vērō porrigere zōnam ille cōnārētur, lēgātus signum dedit, et subitō prīncipia sonō armōrum complēta sunt. Tum dēnum barbarī, quī iam plānē sentiēbant omnia cōnsilia sua patefacta esse, vultū dēmissō ē castellō silentiō sunt ēgressī, atque in silvās properāvērunt; ubi ē cōspectū Britannōrum mox āmissī sunt.

## LESSON 50

*A Successful Ruse*

Colōnī, cum bellum gererent, hostis saepe fallāciis ēlūsērunt. Sicut dux quīdam Americānus, quī mēnsēs multōs cum exercitū fuerat, uxōris conveniendae causā ōlim clam domum profectus est. Cuius adventū cōgnitō, oppidānī, quī paucī hostibus favēbant, certiōrem fēcērunt lēgātum Britannicum, quī castrīs praeerat proximīs, ducem illum in oppidō latēre.

Itaque sine morā cum legiōne noctū profectus, lēgātus ad oppidum celeriter contendit; ubi statim aedibus Americānī ignēs admōtī sunt. Quō animadversō, ille scilicet crēdēbat spem omnem iam esse sublātā: sed filia ex aedibus fortiter ēgressa lēgātō, "Māter mea," inquit, "aegra est. Dā mihi, obsecrō, salūtem eius saltem miserae."

1. zōnam: see p. 57, l. 16. — signum dedit: *i.e. made a motion.*

2. prīncipia: see p. 57, l. 11.

7. fallāciis: *tricks or trickery* (fallācia, -ae, f.).

8. sicut: *as, for instance.*

9. causā: cf. the note on p. 48, l. 6.

10. oppidānī: (*his*) *townsmen.*

11. quī paucī: cf. quī omnēs, p. 57, l. 8.

12. praeerat: cf. p. 56, l. 15.

The word means literally "to be before" or "to be over," notions which, in Latin, call for the dative.

14. legiōne: (*his*) *regiment.*

15. Americānī: as noun, gen. sing.

16. ignēs: translate as sing., and turn the whole phrase into the active form. — quō: neuter.

19. obsecrō: *I beg (you)* (obsecrō, 1). — eius . . . miserae: *of her, poor woman.*

Quā rē impetrātā, mulier cum lectō lēniter ēlāta est; militēs autem, nē dux ipse ūllō modō effugere posset, aedēs interim omnibus ex partibus circumstābant: quīn etiam haud procul sunt morātī, dōnec aedēs tōtae igni cōn-sūmptae sunt. Tum laetī ad castra sē recēpērunt, inter sē glōriantēs ūnum saltem Americānum scelerātum poenās dedisse. At incolumis erat ille; nam, cum uxor efferrētur, sub lectō manibus genibusque ambulāverat, neque eum viderat quisquā. Sic astūtiā filiae servātus mox ad ex-  
ercitum tūtō rediit.

## LESSON 51

*How the Town was Saved*

Multis post annis, quam ea, quae modo dixi, facta sunt, duae puellae Americanae, quae aliō in oppidō prope mare habitābant, facinus memorābile ausae sunt. Ōlim enim, cum pater eārum longē abesset, in cōnspectum subitō vēnit  
nāvis longa Britannica; ex quā, cum in portum pervēnisset, militēs multī scaphis vectī ad litus celeriter contendērunt atque Americānōrum coepērunt incendere nāvigia, quae tum forte in portū ad ancoram cōnsistēbant.

Fugam iam parābant oppidānī cēteri; at puellae illae,

1. rē: *concession*.—ēlāta est: from *efferrō*.

3. omnibus ex partibus: cf. p. 44, l. 6.

4. tōtae: cf. the note on *laetus*, p. 2, l. 16.

5. inter sē: *among themselves*.

8. manibus, etc: abl. of means; translate "upon" (*genu, ūs, N., knee*).—neque . . . quisquam: cf. p. 2, l. 11

9. astūtiā: *astūtia*, -ae, F., *quick wit*.

11. post . . . quam: *i.e. postquam*.—ea: *the events*.

13. facinus: not as on p. 55, l. 6 (see the *Vocab.*). The phrase, as a whole, should be rendered freely.

19. parābant: *were making preparations for*. What are other meanings of this word?



MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS

Among the ancients, music was a comparatively undeveloped art. The scantiness of the music of the stage is indicated by the above scene from a comedy, where the actor in the foreground is manipulating a tambourine (*tympanum*), while another in the rear plays upon double pipes (*fibiae*).

In the Roman army, music was not employed as an accompaniment for the march ; but various trumpets were used for sounding signals. In the picture below may be seen the long straight trumpet (*tuba*) used by the infantry.



tibiā tympanōque arreptīs, secundum litus clam properāvē-  
runt, ac colle parvō interpositō clārē canere coepērunt.  
Quō sonō auditō, Britannī vehementer commōtī armātōs  
plūrimōs appropinquāre arbitrābantur (nam Americānī mul-  
5 taeque gentēs aliae tibiā tympanōque canere solent, cum in  
proelium prōgrediuntur). Quārē, veritī nē interciperentur,  
hostēs, nāvigiis oppidānōrum relictīs, celerrimē sē ad suam  
nāvem longam recēpērunt; nam nōn diūtius de iniūriis in-  
ferendis cōgitābant, sed sine morā nāvem solvērunt atque  
10 in mare apertum prōgressī sunt. Ita ā puellis duābus  
oppidum servātum est.

## LESSON 52

*An Example of Fortitude*

Indī Americānī summum cruciātum sine gemitū pati  
possunt, atque Indī Asiāticī nūdī dicuntur inter nivēs vitam  
agere, neque ēdere gemitum, etsi ignēs admoveantur. Illi  
5 tamen cruciātū fortiter ferendō Rōmānōs nullō modō supe-  
rant. Nam ōlim, cum diū neque fēliciter bellum cum rēge

1. tibiā: tibia, -ae, F., *flute*. —  
tympanō: tympanum, -i, N., *drum*.

2. interpositō: cf. p. 36, l. 8.  
— clārē: adv., *loudly*.

5. tibiā tympanōque: see l. 1;  
for syntax, cf. *manibus*, p. 59, l. 8.

6. nē: (after a verb of fear-  
ing) *that*.

7. suam: cf. *suum*, p. 11, l. 6.

8. inferendis: *inflicting*; cf.  
the force of the gerundive as seen  
in the use with *ad* and *causā* in  
purpose clauses.

9. solvērunt: lit. *loosed*, or  
*released*; see the Vocab.

13. nūdī: pred. adj. — vitam:  
translate as pl.

14. ēdere: not *edere*. — etsi:  
*even though*. — ignēs: translate as  
sing. — admoveantur: sc. eis;  
subjunctive, because part of the  
indirect discourse. Render the  
whole phrase freely.

15. ferendō: *in (the matter  
of) bearing*; cf. *inferendis*, l. 8.  
The ablative expresses specifica-  
tion.

16. neque fēliciter: *and unsuc-  
cessfully*; cf. the note on p. 17,  
l. 8.

Porsinnā gestum esset, C. Mūcius, clārus iuvenis Romānus, Tiberim cōstituit sōlus trānsire rēgemque hostium, sī posset, interficere. Itaque tēlō veste tēctō profectus est; cumque flūmen clam trānsisset, in castra hostium incolumis pervēnit. Ibi tamen rēgem ā comitibus internōscere nōn potuit, ac prō Porsinnā scribam occidit; deinde frūstrā effugere cōnātus ad rēgem ipsum dēductus est. Quī cum vellet penitus cōgnōscere cōsilia, quae in sē inita erant, ignēs iussit admovērī, ut iuvenis omnia prōdere cōgerētur. 10 Ille autem ultrō dextram in ignem porrēxit, cruciātumque sine gemitū passus est. Quō visō rēx, tantam fortitudinem admirātus, captivum incolumem dīmisit, ac paulō post ā Rōmānīs pācis condiciōnēs petivit, quod cum gente, ex quā erant iuvenēs tantae virtūtis, diūtius bellum gerere nōllet.

## LESSON 53

### *A Hasty Leave-Taking*

15 Prīmō bellō, quod Britannī cum Americānīs gessērunt, hostēs, cum ex Canadā per prōvinciam Noveborācēnsē

1. Porsinnā: king of Etruria, a district of Italŷ just north of Latium.—C.: *i.e.* Cāius (*Gaius*).

2. Tiberim: acc. sing. of Tiberis.—sī: *if*.

3. veste: *i.e.* vestimentō: cf. p. 57, l. 8.

5. internōscere: internōscō, 3, -nōvī, -nōtus, *distinguish*.

6. scribam: scriba, -ae, M., *clerk*.

7. ad: *before*.—quī: the king.—cum vellet: translate by a participial phrase.

8. penitus: adv., *fully*.—in: *against*.—inita erant: ineō, -ire, -iī, -itus, *enter into*.

9. omnia: *everything*.

11. quō: neut.

13. quod: *because (as he said)*.—ex quā . . . iuvenēs: *freely, the young men of which*.

14. tantae virtūtis: the gen. expresses characteristic or quality; translate first literally and then freely.

15. prīmō bellō: abl. of time when.

ad mare iter facere cōnābantur, ā sociis Indīs multum adiūtī sunt; barbarī enim paulum ante exercitum prōgressī, villis undique incēnsīs, colōnōs summā crūdēlitate occidēbant. Quārē agricolārum omnium suspēnsī erant animī.

- 5 Dum rēs ita sē habent, in praediō quōdam servus Āfer ōlīm subitō ex hortō perterritus fūgit, dominumque certiōrem fēcīt sē Indum in herbā latentem vīdisse. Quō audītō, dominus statim ad frātris villam profectus est, ut cum eō cōnsilium commūnicāret; interim uxor filium iussit  
10 equōs carrumque parāre. Tum, postquam rediit pater, pauca in carrum imposuērunt, aedibusque ac bōbus relictis, ad ripam flūminis satis magnī, quod prope fluēbat, sine morā prōgressī sunt. Id cum trānsissent, celeriter inde per agrōs contendērunt unā cum colōnīs aliis, quī in  
15 his regiōnibus diūtius morārī nōn audēbant. At nē sic quidem sine labōribus periculisque effūgērunt; nam in itinere, tempestāte subitō coortā, māter liberīque sub caelō noctem agere coactī sunt: sed postrēmō in prōvinciam proximam incolumēs pervēnērunt.

## LESSON 54

*The Capture of a Man-of-War*

- 20 Ōlīm multī armātī Americānī ad Canadā versus iter faciēbant, ut ibi cum Gallis pugnārent. Quī postrēmō pervēnērunt ad lacum, quī trānseundus erat, sī longius prō-

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Indīs: here adj.  | 11. pauca: note the gender.                                       |
| 3. occidēbant: cf. rapiēbant,                                  | — bōbus: from bōs.  |
| p. 7, l. 17.   | 12. satis: quite.   |
| 5. rēs: matters.   | 14. aliis: not reliquīs or cēteris.                               |
| 8. villam: farm; cf. the commoner meaning of the word in l. 3. | 18. noctem agere: cf. vitam agere, p. 61, l. 13.                  |
| 9. commūnicāret: commūnicō,                                    | 20. armātī: strictly, noun; but the phrase may be rendered freely |
| 1. make . . . jointly.   |   |



gredi veilent; in lacū autem ultrō citrōque nāvis longa Gallica nāvigābat, nē quis ibi scaphīs trānsire posset.

Americānī scilicet nāvem longam sibi statim capiendam esse intellēxerunt. Conciliōque convocātō, cum variae sententiae dictae essent, subitō lēgātus quīdam, maximae virtutis vir, imperātōrī “Ego,” inquit, “sī mihi militēs sex et cuneōs complūrīs dabis, celeriter rem cōficiam.” Militibus cuneisque datīs, lēgātus nocte intempestā ad nāvem longam clam scaphā vectus est; ubi cuneōs sic inseruit, ut gubernā-  
10 cula nūllam in partem movērī possent.

Māne Americānī lacum trānsire coepērunt. Quō animadversō, Gallī, quī nihil suspicābantur, vēlīs passīs in hostēs impetum facere cōnātī sunt; at nāvis, ventīs statim ad litus dēlāta, facile capta est ā quibusdam Americānīs, quī ad id  
15 ipsum in litore morātī erant. Nāve longā captā, scaphae Americānōrum sine ūllō incommodō ad litus ulterius pervēnērunt, militēsque rursus ad Canadam per montēs silvāsque lēniter prōgressī sunt.

## LESSON 55

### *The Fall of New London*

Cum Britannī Novum Eborācum praesidiō tenērent, 20 colōnī classis onustās rēbus omnibus, quae ad bellum necessāriae sunt, secundum litus Novae Britanniae ad

1. ultrō: not as on p. 62, l. 10; see the Vocab.

2. nē quis: so that no one; cf. the note on quid, p. 56, l. 1.

4. sententiae: cf. sentiō.

8. nocte intempestā: cf. p. 43, l. 5.

9. inseruit: inserō, 3, -serui, -sertus, force in. — ut: introduc-

ing a clause of result. — gubernācula: cf. the illustration facing p. 1.

10. movērī: note the last letter of the word.

12. passīs: from pandō.

13. ventīs: abl. of means.

14. id ipsum: this very purpose.

16. ulterius: modifier of litus.

occidentem nāvigantēs interdum vidēbant; tum, ē portibus liburnicis celerrimē vectī, onerāriās capiēbant, sī quae forte, tardius prōgressae, intervāllō maiōre sequēbantur nāvēs longās, quae eis praesidiō missae erant. Id Britannī diū molestē tulerant; cumque insula Longa iam tōta subācta esset, nē postea umquam colōnī in nāvēs suās impetum facere auderent, Novum Londīnium dēlēre cōstituērunt.

Itaque ab insulā noctū profectī, fretum clam trānsiērunt; sed ventīs adversis impeditī portum nōn potuērunt intrāre, donec diēs postera illūxit. Tum celeriter ē castellis sīgnum colōnis datum est hostēs adesse, et agricolae armātī omnibus ex partibus in oppidum convēnērunt. Quī, cum Britannī ē nāvibus ēgressī essent, ad litus versus fēcērunt iter, mūrisque interpositīs tēla plūrima in hostēs inmisērunt. At Britannī, quī numerō erant multō superiōrēs, mox inrūpērunt in oppidum atque ignēs undique aedibus templisque admōvērunt. Quō vīsō, colōnī, ut uxōrēs liberōsque in loca tūta dēdūcerent, ex oppidō in agrōs sē recēpērunt.

## LESSON 56

*The Fall of New London (Continued)*

Prope oppidum erant castra quaedam, quae Americānī praesidiō haud magnō tenēbant. Quō cum hostēs pervē-

1. nāvigantēs: modifying *clasis*, p. 64, l. 20. — *interdum*: not *interim*. — *vidēbant*: *used to sight*.

2. capiēbant: cf. *raپیēbant*, p. 7, l. 17. — *sī quae*: *if any*; cf. the note on *quid*, p. 56, l. 1.

3. tardius . . . maiōre: absolute comparatives (cf. the note on p. 13, l. 11). — *intervāllō*: cf. p. 57, l. 4.

4. eis praesidiō: *as an escort*

*for them*, lit. *for a protection to them*, praesidiō being a dat. of service. — *id*: *i.e.* this preying upon their shipping.

5. subācta: *subigō*, 3, -ēgī, -āctus, *subdue*.

6. nē . . . umquam: *so that never*.

8. fretum: *sound*.

15. numerō: cf. p. 44, l. 15.

16. ignēs: translate as sing.

nissent, colōnōs statim sē dēdere iussērunt. Datō autem respōnsō minimē grātō, ācerrimē ibi pugnātum est: sed Britannī, quī, ut suprà dixī, numerō multō erant superiōrēs, postrēmō cōnscendērunt mūnitiōnēs, castraque expugnāvērunt; quī etiam virtūte colōnōrum, quī animō obstinātō restiterant, adeō exacerbatī sunt, ut summā crudelitāte occiderent deditōs quōsdam, quī arma iam prōiēcērant.

Deinde tamen, castra funditus dēlenda esse arbitrātī, 10 vulnerātōs prius efferre coepērunt; sed id tantā saevitiā, ut hominēs miserī in carrum alius super alium abicerentur. Tum ā Britannis circiter vigintī carrus dūcī coeptus est ad villam quandam, ubi vulnerātī ab amicis cūrārī possent. At praeceps erat via, ac postrēmō ā militibus carrus diūtius 15 retinērī nōn poterat, sed per dēclive celeriter dēlātus, in arborem inlīsus est. Ipsā concussiōne quīdam ē vulnerātis interfectī esse dīcuntur; ac cēterōrum ululātus etiam trāns portum audītus est.

Sed iam undique colōnī plūrimī ad oppidum auxili ferendī 20 causā properābant, hostēsque celeriter ad nāvīs sē recipere coactī sunt.

2. respōnsō: noun, derived from respondeō.

3. ut: *as*.

6. adeō: cf. p. 5, l. 18. — exacerbatī sunt: exacerbo, 1, *exasperate*.

7. deditōs: *as* noun; cf. vulnerātōs, l. 10.

9. funditus: adv., *totally*, or *utterly*. — arbitrātī: cf. veritī, p. 2, l. 17.

10. id: *sc. fecērunt*.

12. coeptus est: the passive forms of this verb are used

when the dependent infinitive is passive.

13. possent: note the mood.

14. praeceps (-cipitis, adj.): *steep*.

15. per dēclive: *along the slope*; dēclive being used as a neut. noun (from dēclivis, -is, -e, *steep*). — dēlātus: *i.e. rolling down*; lit. what?

16. concussiōne: concussio, -ōnis, *f., shock*. — ē: *of*.

19. auxili: cf. the note on Standisī, p. 16, l. 4.

## LESSON 57

*Captivity among the Indians*

Priusquam prōvinciae Americānae validae sunt factae, Indī oppida longinqua saepe adoriēbantur; miseraque erat fortūna eōrum colōnōrum, quī ab eis captī sunt. E quibus ūnus haec ferē dē sē commemorat:

- 5 "Ōlim," inquit, "cum barbarī. subitō in cōspectum vēnissent, ego cum oppidānis cēteris fugā petivī salūtem, et in palūdem proximam quam celerrimē contendī. Sed in lutō prōlapsus, ā tribus Indīs captus sum, atque ūnā cum reliquis captivīs in silvās longē sum dēductus; ubi diēs multōs  
 6 per montēs summō cum labōre fēcimus iter, cum interim contumēliās acerbissimās cotidiē ferre cōgēbāmur.

- "Noctū hostēs captivōs humī supinōs collocābant, cu-  
 neisque in terrā dēfixīs, manūs pedēsque artē religābant, nē  
 quis nostrum per tenebrās effugere cōnārētur. Interdum  
 5 autem tanta erat inopia cibī, ut barbarī, veritī nē frūmen-  
 tum dēficeret, nōs etiam ignī mandāre semel iterumque in  
 animō habērent. At ego, postquam frīgore fameque sum  
 paene necātus, paucīs post mēnsibus ā dominō novō emp-  
 tus, postrēmō domum incolumis pervēnī."

2. adoriēbantur: cf. capiēbant, v. 65, l. 2.

4. haec: neut. pl. — commemorat: *i.e.* nārrat. The whole phrase may be rendered freely *discourses somewhat as follows*, etc.

5. inquit: present tense.

6. fugā: abl. of means; we would say, "*in flight*"; cf. other renderings of this abl., p. 57, ll. 6 and 8.

7. quam: cf. p. 47, l. 14. — lutē: lutum, -ī, N., *mud.*

11. contumēliās: cf. p. 18, l. 1.

13. artē: adv., *tightly*. — nē quis: cf. the same phrase on p. 64, l. 2.

14. nostrum: from ego.

15. autem: *moreover*. — nē: cf. p. 61, l. 6.

16. mandāre: mandō, 1, *con-sign*. — semel iterumque: see the Vocab.

## LESSON 58

*A Fresh Supply of Powder*

Ōlim puella, quae Elizabēta appellābātur, oppidānis suis ita salūti fuit. Subitō ab Indis oppidum erat oppugnātum, colōnīque statim sē recēperant in castellum parvum, quod barbari diū expugnāre frūstrā cōnāti sunt. At dēficere iam  
 5 coeperat pulvis ille paene magicus, quō celeritāte exitiālī tēla Americānōrum aliārumque gentium multārum longissimē feruntur. Quārē colōnī vehementer erant animō dēmissi; quamquam enim in villā haud longinquā cōpia pulveris satis magna relictā erat, nēmō eam putābat  
 10 ūllō modō ad castellum tūtō adferri posse, quod Indi in insidiis undique latēbant. Multī tamen periculum subire volēbant, sed Elizabēta: “Ego ībō,” inquit; “puella enim sum, mēque carēre facilius potestis.”

Cōnsiliō ā duce probātō, puella mox ē castellō palam  
 15 ēgressa est, lēniterque ad villam versus ambulāvit. Quārē novā permōti, Indi primō ēventum taciti exspectābant, et Elizabēta nūllō impediēte ad villam facillimē pervēnit; cum autem, pulvere arreptō, ad castellum rursus celeriter currere coepisset, tum barbari, quī iam sē ēlūsōs sentiēbant,  
 20 tēla plūrima undique coniēcērunt. Sed puella fortis sine

2. ita: *in the following way*.  
 —salūti: lit. *for a safety*; cf. praesidiō, p. 65, l. 4, and see the Vocab. —erat oppugnātum: contrast expugnāre, l. 4.

5. quō: abl. of means.  
 7. animō dēmissi: cf. p. 37, l. 20.

10. modō: freely, *chance*. For other renderings, see the Vocab.

11. subire: subeō, -ire, -ii, -itus, *risk*, lit. *undergo*.

12. volēbant: *were willing*.  
 13. mē . . . carēre: *spare me*, lit. *be without me*; mē is abl. case. —potestis: *you could*; cf. potest, p. 41, l. 7.

16. rē: *performance*.  
 17. nūllō impediēte: cf. nūllō dēfēdente, p. 44, l. 17.

vulnere intrā portam castellī recepta est, colōnique pulvere sublevātī impetūs Indōrum potuerunt sustinēre, dōnec amīci auxili ferendī causā ex oppidīs finitimīs frequentēs convēnērunt.

## LESSON 59

*A Battle against Great Odds*

**5** In quōdam lacū maximō, cuius in lītore positum est oppīdum Taeconderōga, ācriter quondam ab Americānis cum Britannīs pugnātum est. Americānis parvae erant nāvēs et paucae; at dux Britannicus, quī facile ē Canadā cōpiās adferre poterat, multās nāvēs longās summā diligentīā instrūctās parāverat; sē enim Taeconderōgam brevī expugnātūrum spērābat.

Imperātor tamen colōnōrum, vir maximae virtūtis, etsī numerō erat multō inferior, committere proelium minimē dubitāvit; sed cum hōrās multās esset pugnātum noxque **15** iam adesset, nāvēs vix nābant Americānae, tēlaque paene dēfēcerant. Quō quidem tempore Britannī, noctem veritī, proeliō dēstitērunt; sed ad ancoram haud prōcul cōsistēbant, nē colōnī per tenebrās effugere cōnārentur.

At Americānī nocte intempestā, lucernīs extinctīs, silentiō **20** dedērunt vēla, et magnō circuitū hostēs vitāverunt. Itaque māne, cum Britannī proelium redintegrāre vellent, vix in cōspectū erat nāvis ūlla; quārē illi, ancorīs sublātīs, summā celeritatē insequi coepērunt. Postquam autem Americānōs fugientēs paene adsecūtī sunt, cōstitit ea

2. sublevātī: sublevō, 1, *help out*.

6. Americānis: dat. case.

9. instrūctās: *equipped*.

12. maximae virtūtis: cf. *taetae virtūtis*, p. 62, l. 14.

17. proeliō: for syntax, cf. *cōnātū*, p. 21, l. 3.

19. lucernīs: lucerna, -ae, F., *lantern*.

24. fugientēs: participle as adj.

nāvis, quā vehēbātur dux ipse colōnōrum, et sōla hostium sustinuit impetum, dōnec reliqua classis Americāna in portum mūnitum pervenire potuit; quīn etiam nē illam quidem praedam cēpērunt Britanni; nam suō nāvigiō, cum ad litus appulsum esset, Americāni ipsī ignis admōvērunt.

## LESSON 60

### *A Night Attack*

Bellō primō, quod ā Britannis cum Americānis gestum est, in flūmine quōdam Carolaenae Ulteriōris insula parva praesidiō Britannicō tenēbātur: interim dominus insulae, vir locuplēs reiue publicae amantissimus, molestē scilicet  
 10 ferēbat castra hostium in praediō suō collocāta esse, eō magis quod militēs interdum sē insolenter gerēbant.

Postrēmō Americāni cōstituērunt adversō flūmine nāvigare cōpiāsque Britannicās, sī possent, ex insulā expellere. Itaque clam profectī, nāvibus nocte intempestā ad insulam  
 15 silentiō appulsīs, impetum ācerrimum subitō fēcērunt. Quā rē novā permōti Britannī ad arma celeriter cucurrērunt; et dominus quoque insulae, quī nesciēbat amicōs adesse, impetum ab hostibus factum arbitrātus, unā cum uxōre liberisque in silvās tardius sē contulit; ipse enim pedibus

4. suō: cf. suum, p. 11, l. 6.

5. appulsum esset: cf. appulit, p. 31, l. 13.

6. bellō primō: cf. p. 62, l. 15.

7. Ulteriōris: lit. *Farther* (from the point of view of the capital of the United States), i.e. *South*.

9. rei . . . publicae amantissimus: *most loyal to his country*, lit. *most loving of the common*

*wealth* (objective gen.); amantissimus is the superlative of the part. amāns.

10. eō magis: *and all the more*, lit. *on this account (the) more*.

11. insolenter: adv., *insolently*, or *impudently*.

16. rē: *action*.

19. tardius: absol. compar. — pedibus captus: *being crippled*, lit. *being incapacitated in his feet*.

captus ā servīs tum sellā ferēbātur. Ubi sic ad casam longinquam perventum est, māter subitō clāmāvit puerum infāntem in aedibus relictum esse. Quō auditō, filia fortiter per tenebrās profecta celeriter domum cucurrit; cumque inter tēla amicōrum et hostium in aedēs pervēnisset, puerum ē cūnīs rapuit incolumemque ad mātrem sēcum redūxit.

## LESSON 61

### *A Choice of Evils*

Parvō in oppidō Novae Britanniae habitābat quidam agricola, cui erant liberī octō. Is ōlim, cum subitō nūntiātum esset Indōs appropinquāre, ex agris ad bona liberōsque servandōs summā celeritatē properāvit; aegra enim domi uxor iacēbat.

Quō igitur cum pervēnisset, liberis convocātis atque ad castellum proximum statim praemissis, ipse uxōrem ad iter parāre cōnātus est. Sed iam in cōnspectū erant Indī, neque diūtius ūlla erat salūtis spēs. Itaque uxōre bonisque relictis, agricola, qui iam antea statuerat cum liberis sibi vīvendum aut prō eis moriendum esse, equum cōnscendit, atque ad castellum versus quam celerrimē contendit. Liberōs mox adsecūtus est, et omnēs, etsi Indī vestigiis sequēbantur, in castellum incolumēs pervēnērunt; nam

1. sellā: sella, -ae, F., *sedan chair*; for syntax, cf. rāvibus, p. 6, l. 10.

2. clāmāvit: cf. clāmor.

3. infāntem: infāns, -antis, adj., *infant*.

6. cūnīs: cūnae, -ārum, F., *cradle*. — mātrem: (*her*) *mother*.

10. servandōs: agreeing with the nearer noun. For the form of

the phrase as a whole, cf. ad Gallos expellendōs, p. 35, l. 14. — aegra: pred. adj.

17. vīvendum: sc. esse. Note that this and the following gerundive are impersonal; but translate *that he must*, etc.

19. vestigiis sequēbantur: *i.e. were following the trail* (lit. *in their footsteps*).



quotiēns propius accesserant barbarī, pater cōsistēbat in viā, cōsque armīs terrēbat. Sed interim uxor aegra, mulier magnae fortitudinis, ūnā cum captivīs aliīs ab Indīs in silvās dēdūcēbātur.

## LESSON 62

*Lost in the Woods*

5 Multōs abhinc annōs quīdam puer parvus mātrem insciente in silvam clam profectus, diū ibi sēcum sub arboribus lūsit. Quī, cum iam advesperāsceret, viam reperire nōn potuit ac brevi intellēxit sub caelō sibi noctem agendam esse. Itaque ex foliīs lectum fēcit, cumque per arborēs lūnam stellāsque  
10 aliquamdiū suspēxisset, postrēmō somnō gravissimō quīēvit. Māne iterum viam invenire frūstrā cōnātus, famem bācis sustinuit; quō modō quīque diēs per silvās errāvit. Deinde noctū ignem animadvertit, et celeriter prōgressus in vicum Indōrum subitō pervēnit. Ā quibus cōmiter acceptus, mul-  
15 tōs diēs ibi morātus est.

Dum haec fiunt, lēgātus prōvinciae ūnā cum comitibus paucīs puerī quaerendī causā in scaphā profectus erat, oppidaque Indōrum finitima adibat omnia. Quae rēs puero salūtī fuit; nam postrēmō repertī sunt quīdam barbarī,  
20 quī nūntiāverunt ipsum incolumem esse viamque ostendē-

1. propius: absol. compar., *too near*. — accesserant: translate as if a perfect. — cōsistēbat: note the tense, and contrast the force of the imperfect dēdūcēbātur, l. 4.

5. abhinc: cf. p. 52, l. 6. — insciente: insciēns, -entis, adj.: lit. *not knowing*; translate the abl. absol. freely.

6. profectus: *slipping away*. — sēcum: *i.e. by himself*.

9. stellās: stella, -ae, F., *star*.

10. suspēxisset: suspiciō, 3, suspēxi, suspectus, *watch*, lit. *look up at*. — somnō gravissimō: abl. of manner.

18. rēs: *proceeding*. — puero salūtī fuit: cf. oppidānis . . . salūtī fuit, p. 68, l. 1.

20. ipsum: *he*. — viam: *i.e. the way to reach him*.

runt. Puerō sic receptō, lēgātus sicās dedit eis Indīs, ā quibus ille servātus erat. Barbarī scilicet dōnis tam grātis gaudēbant, puer autem domum reductus est.

## LESSON 63

*The Battle of Saratoga*

- Saepe prō patriā fortissimē pugnāvit iste Arnoldius, qui  
 5 postea Britannīs prōdere cōnātus est ea castra mūnitissima, quae in ripā flūminis Hudsōnis posita sunt: et nōn numquam etiam salūtī cīvibus suis fuit; tantopere enim ā militibus amābātur, ut ipsō adventū suō ad victōriam eōs incitāre posset.
- Ōlim Saratōgae, cum eius ordinem adēmisset imperātor, quōcum simultātem gerēbat, ille, sonō proelii ad aurēs adlātō, "Ego," inquit, "sī dux esse nōn possum, at saltem manipulāris erō;" quae cum dixisset, iniussū imperātōris equum cōnscendit celerrimēque in proelium vectus est: ubi  
 5 militēs, duce vetere cōgnitō, clāmōre sublātō laetī secūtī sunt, atque impetum ācerrimē fēcērunt in eam partem, ubi aciēs hostium cōnfertissima vīsa est. Ibi summā virtūte pugnāns Arnoldius est vulnerātus, victōria autem ab Americānis parta est.

2. ille: the boy.

3. gaudēbant: *were delighted*.

— autem: omit in translation.

4. iste: *that* (in the disparaging sense), a frequent meaning of this word; cf. p. 42, l. 21.

6. nōn numquam: *i.e. sometimes*.

8. ipsō: *mere*.

10. Saratōgae: for syntax, cf.

Philadelphiae, p. 46, l. 1. — adēmisset: adimō, 3, -ēmi, -emptus, *take away*.

11. quōcum: *i.e. quō + cum*. — simultātem gerēbat: *he was at odds* (simultās, -ātis, F., *quarrel*).

13. iniussū imperātōris: cf. iniussū suō, p. 28, l. 7.

16. partem: *direction*.

17. vīsa est: from videor.

Etsi vulnera Arnoldi nōn erant exitiālia, tempus tamen mortī opportūnissimum erat. Odium enim perfīdiae, quā ille postea ūsus est, glōriam eius rērum gestārum semper obruet; quī etiam trāditum est (ut suprā commemorāvī) nē Britannōs quidem, quī eius perfīdiā victōriam sē nactūrōs spērāverant, hominem ūllō in honōre habuisse, postquam bellum cōfectum esset.

## LESSON 64

*Unwelcome Visitors*

Britanni, cum iam iterum cum Americānis gererent bellum pugnisque nāvālibus saepe victi essent, postrēmō cōstituērunt usque ad Lovisiānam classem mittere, si ibi fēlicius rem gerere possent. Quārē appulsis nāvibus ad eum locum, ubi in mare fertur flūmen maximum, quem Indi patrem aquarū vocābant, milites multī in litus ēgressi praedia finitima explorāre coepērunt.

15 Sic factum est ut quīdam adulēscēns Americānus, quī in villā ōtiōsus hōrā diēi ferē quārtā morābātur, milites complūris in hortō latentēs subitō animadverteret. Quā rē novā graviter commōtus, comitēs ut sine morā latebrās

1. Arnoldi: cf. Standisi, p. 16, l. 4. — tempus: *occasion*. — tamen: may be omitted in translation.

2. mortī: note the case. — odium (-i, N.): *contempt*. — perfīdiae: objective gen.; translate "for." — quā: the case regularly used with ūtor.

4. obruet: obruō, 3, -rui, -rutus, *dim*, lit. *overwhelm*.

7. cōfectum esset: for mood, cf. the note on *admoveantur*, p. 61, l. 14.

9. nāvālibus: nāvālis, -is, -e, *naval*.

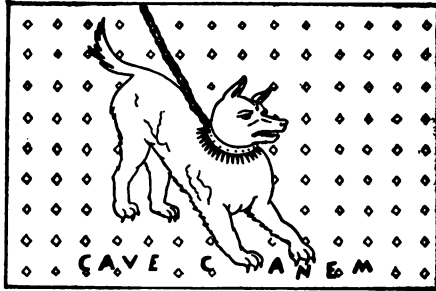
10. usque ad Lovisiānam: freely, *to far-away L.* — si: *in the hope that*; cf. si, p. 33, l. 4.

12. fertur: *rolls*; cf. *dēlātus*, p. 66, l. 15. — quem: for gender, cf. the note on *quod*, p. 30, l. 6.

15. factum est ut: *it happened that* (factum est from *fiō*).

16. hōrā diēi ferē quārtā: *i.e.* about 10 A.M. See the note on p. 75.

17. rē: *happening*.



CANIS

Just inside the street door of a Pompeian house is found worked into the mosaic of the pavement this representation of a watchdog. The words *Cavē canem* signify "Beware of the dog."



HŌRAE

The Romans divided the time between sunrise and sunset into twelve equal hours—long in summer, and short in winter. Above is shown a sundial used to mark the time in the great public baths at Pompeii.

quaerent hortatus est, et ipse primō fugā salūtem petivit; sed ab hostibus statim circumventus, sē dēdere tum nōn dubitavit. At paulō post fenestrā patefactā ērūpit, cumque tēla hostium undique in eum conicerentur, incolumis 5 pervēnit in palūdem, ubi Britannī armīs impediti summō labōre sequēbantur.

Itaque iuvenis, cum dēmum ab hostibus intervallō satis magnō abesset, arborem nactus idōneam in quā latēret, celeriter cōnscendit. Brevī autem sonum exiguum sub 10 arbore audivit; cumque dēspēxisset, ibi vidit canem, quam maximē amābat. Quārē periculum veritus, comitem fidēlem, quae per palūdem dominum secūta erat, invitus necāvit, multisque cum lacrimīs sub foliīs tēxit. Deinde aliquamdiū tacitus in arbore morātus est; postquam autem Britannī 15 quaerendō dēfessī ad villam sē recēpērunt, magnō circuitū custōdiās hostium vitāvit, eōrumque dē adventū certiōrem fēcit imperātorem Americānum, quī oppidum haud longinquum praesidiō tum tenēbat.

## LESSON 65

*The Boyhood of Daniel Boone*

Abhinc annōs circiter ducentōs in Pennsylvēniā nātus est 20 puer, quī postea factus est explōrātor clārissimus. Quīn etiam ā primā pueritiā ille arma ferre cōnsuēverat, ac in

1. fugā: cf. p. 67, l. 6.
2. tum: *i.e.* for the time being.
3. fenestrā patefactā: abl. of way by which; translate *through*.
- cum: concessive.
7. ab: *from*.
8. abesset: *i.e.* was separated.
10. dēspēxisset: dēspiciō, 3, -spēxi, -spectus, look down; cf. suspēxisset, p. 72, l. 10.

12. invitus: cf. p. 35, l. 12.
14. postquam: freely, *when at length*. — quaerendō: cf. nandō, p. 12, l. 17.
15. magnō circuitū, etc.: cf. p. 69, l. 20.
20. factus est: from fīō.
21. primā: *early*; cf. p. 22, l. 7. — cōnsuēverat: *i.e.* solēbat.

silvis ambulāns ferās saepe occidit. Ōlim, cum vespere primō domum nōn redisset, vicinī, veritī nē puer ab Indīs aut ferīs esset interfectus, frequentēs convēnērunt, complūrisque diēs errāvērunt per silvās, sī ūllō modō eum invenire possent; quī postrēmō pervēnērunt ad casam rāmīs caespitibusque aedificātam ā puerō ipsō, quī frūstum carnis in ignem porrigēns humi sine timōre sōlus sedēbat. Nam ē viā nōn errāverat; sed cōsultō sē longius contulerat in silvās, quod procul ab oppidīs sine comitibus etiam tum libenter habitābat.

Paucīs post annis pater multa milia passuum ad loca longinqua cōstituit in silvās ēmigrāre, quod ipsī quoque urbēs oppidaque minimē grāta erant. Quās ad sedēs novās ubi perventum est, puer, cum pater frātresque arborēs exciderent agrōsque ad satūs accipiendōs parārent, ferīs interfectīs carnem ē silvā cotidiē domum reportābat. Interdum noctū quoque vēnātus esse dicitur: quō quidem tempore facibus ārdentibus ūti solēbat; lūmina enim, ut saepe ab explorātōribus audivimus, ad ferās ē latebrīs ēliciendo endās magnō ūsuī sunt.

2. nē: cf. the note on p. 61, l. 6.

5. rāmīs caespitibusque: abl. of means with aedificātam; translate (freely) "of."

7. sine timōre: *i.e. unconcerned*; cf. timeō.

8. longius: absolute comparative.

9. etiam tum: *i.e. even when so young.*

10. libenter habitābat: *i.e. he had a liking for living.*

11. pater: sc. eius.

12. in silvās: acc., because of the verb of motion (ēmigrāre); we

would say "in the woods." — ipsī: *him*; construe with grāta.

13. quās: *this.*

15. satūs: satus, -ūs, M., *crop.*

16. reportābat: note the tense.

17. vēnātus: note the case (and that dicitur is personal). — quō . . . tempore: *i.e. at night*; freely, *on such occasions.* In translating, quidem may be omitted.

18. facibus: fax, facis, F., *torch*; for syntax, cf. quā, p. 74, l. 2. — ut: *as.*

19. ab: *from.*

20. magnō ūsuī: cf. the note on praesidiō, p. 65, l. 4.

## LESSON 66

*The End of the Pequots*

Nātiō Indōrum crūdēlissima, quae haud procul ā Novō Londiniō habitābat, quondam insidiās collocāre ac colōnōs singulōs undique interficere subitō coepit. Quibus rēbus nūntiātis, ē prōvinciā proximā manus exigua missa est, quae agricolis auxiliō esset poenāsque ab Indīs repeteret. At militēs longē ā litore prōgredi nōn audēbant; quī igitur, parvō frūmentī numerō direptō tabernāculisque paucis incēnsis, ē finibus hostium brevī domum sē recēpērunt. Barbarī vērō, hāc iniuriā graviter permōti, incendia ac caedēs 10 undique etiam crūdēlius iam miscuērunt.

Tum dēnique ē prōvinciā missa est classis, cuius prae-fectus iussus erat militēs expōnere in quōdam portū parvō, quī haud longē ā castris Indōrum aberat. Ille autem, hostēs ita cōnsilium suum facile cōgnōscere posse arbitrātus, 15 praeter illum portum nāvigāvit, cumque classis ē cōspectū barbarōrum longē discessisset, tum dēmum nāvēs ad litus appulit. Deinde in terram ēgressus, sine morā per silvās viā dēviā cum exercitū profectus est, ut ā tergō hostēs adorīrētur. In itinere quāsdam Indōrum nātiōnēs finitimās 20 adiit, ē quibus multi armātī operam suam polliciti sunt.

5. auxiliō: cf. *ūsui*, p. 77, l. 20, and see the Vocab. — poenās . . . repeteret: cf. p. 39, l. 2.

7. numerō: *amount*. — direptō: diripiō, 3, -ripui, -reptus, *plunder* (cf. rapiō).

9. incendia . . . caedēs: translate as singulars. With *incendium* cf. *incendō*.

10. crūdēlius: crūdēliter, adv, *savagely*.

11. prōvinciā: *i.e.* eādem prōvinciā.

12. iussus erat: *i.e.* was under orders. — expōnere: expōnō, 3, -posui, -positus, *land*.

14. ita: *i.e.* if he followed orders. — posse: cf. note, p. 23, l. 9.

18. viā dēviā: cf. *vis dēvia*, p. 43, l. 6. — ā tergō: cf. the use of *ex* in the phrase *omnibus ex partibus*.

Sic postrēmō perventum est ad sēdēs hostium, quī. rati propter timōrem colōnōs praetervectōs esse, iam minus diligenter castra sua custodiēbant.

## LESSON 67

*The End of the Pequots (Continued)*

Noctū castris appropinquāvērunt colōnī. Intus erant  
 5 uxōrēs quoque liberique Indōrum, intusque audiri poterat  
 cantus barbarōrum, quī, circum ignis saltantēs, victōriās  
 superiōrēs celebrābant. Colōnī aliquamdiū tacitī exspectā-  
 vērunt; tum, cum diēs iam illūcēsceret Indique saltandō  
 dēfessī somnō quiēscerent gravī, subitō in castra portis  
 10 duābus inrūpērunt.

Quō impetū repentinō commōti, hostēs tamen celeriter ē  
 lectis exsiluērunt, tabernāculisque interpositis, tēla in militēs  
 conicere fortiter coepērunt plūrima. Quō animadversō, dux  
 colōnōrum statim intellēxit cōnsilium sibi mūtandum esse,  
 15 suōsque tabernāculis ignēs admovēre iussit, deinde celeriter  
 ēgressōs undique castra circumstāre. Quō modō Indi mi-  
 seri, igni ē castris fugere coācti, ā colōnīs paene ad ūnum  
 interfecti sunt; et si quī forte aciem perrūperant, eōs socii  
 Indi libenter occidērunt.

20 In proeliō multi quoque ē colōnīs sunt vulnerāti, atque  
 exercitus statim Novum Londinium sē recipere coactus est;

1. rati: *i.e.* arbitrāti.

6. saltantēs: cf. saltābant,  
 p. 57, l. 1.

7. superiōrēs: here, of time.  
 — exspectāvērunt: *waited*.

8. saltandō: for syntax, cf.  
 mandō, p. 12, l. 17.

9. somnō . . . gravī: cf.

p. 72, l. 10. — portis: cf. the  
 note on fenestrā, p. 76, l. 3.

18. si quī . . . , eōs: lit. *if any*  
 . . . , *them* (cf. the note on quid,  
 p. 56, l. 1).

19. Indi: as adj. — libenter oc-  
 cidērunt: *freely, were glad to kill*.

21. Novum Londinium: town



quō, ut iussum erat, nāvēs iam redierant, ut ibi ducem militēsque exspectārent. Sed hostēs paucis post mēnsibus alterā pugnā victi sunt, neque umquam postea iniuriā ullam colōnis facere potuerunt; quī etiam brevī in manūs parvās  
5 divisi, aliī in aliam nātiōnem asciti sunt.

## LESSON 68

*A Difficult Escape*

Quondam puerī duo sine timōre in agrīs apertīs cotidiē laborābant; nam, etsi colōnī tum bellum cum Gallīs Indisque gerēbant, in hīs regiōnibus nēmō barbarōs ullōs nūper viderat. Sed olim duo Indī subitō ex arboribus erūperunt  
10 proximis, puerisque arreptis sē celerrimē in silvam recēperunt. Quā rē novā perterritus puer minor flēre coepit; sed alter, qui plānē sentiēbat flētum nihil prōfutūrum esse, frātre hōrtātus est ut sē fortiter gereret. Per silvam unā cum captivis iam properābant barbarī. Quī, postquam sic  
15 diēs multōs iter fecerunt, ad lacum pervēnērunt longinquum, ubi cum aliis civibus suis hiemāre cōstituerant.

Ibi dum morantur, linguam barbarōrum discere coeperunt puerī. Quō modō maior primā aestāte repperit Indōs in animō habēre in Canadam dūcere captivōs, eōsque ibi in

names in the acc. and abl. do not require prepositions to express the ideas "to" and "from."

1. iussum erat: note the gender.

2. alterā pugnā: we would say "in" rather than "by."

3. neque umquam: cf. the note on p. 17, l. 8.

4. colōnis: dat. case.

5. aliī in aliam: *some into one . . . , some into another.*

11. minor: *i.e. the younger*; cf. maior, l. 18.

12. flētum: flētus, -ūs, M., *crying*; cf. fleō. — nihil: adverbial acc., *not . . . at all*, lit. *in no respect*. — prōfutūrum esse: *prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, help, or avail*.

16. suis: *of theirs*.

18. maior: cf. minor, l. 11. — primā aestāte: cf. p. 22, l. 7.

servitūtem Gallis vēdere. Quārē, cibō armisque arreptis, frātrēs duo ex hibernis noctū clam fūgērunt; ubi autem diēs illūxit, in arbore cavā sē somnō dedērunt.

Interim Indī cum canibus undique puerōs quaerēbant.  
 5 At frāter maior, cum canēs propius ad arborem accessissent, ē somnō lātrātū excitātus, callidō ūsus cōnsiliō frustum carnis eis prōiēcit. Quae rēs pueris salutī fuit; cum enim canēs carnem dēvorārent, barbari nihil suspicantēs arborem prae-  
 10 teriērunt. Quō visō, pueri rursus profecti per silvās errā-  
 vērunt, dōnec fame labōribusque paene cōfecti sunt; tum in quoddam oppidum colōnōrum sibi antea ignōtum subitō pervēnērunt.

## LESSON 69

*Stories about Daniel Boone*

Ille explōrātōr clārus, cuius dē pueritiā paulō ante dixi, inter ferās Indōsque paene tōtam ēgit aetātem. Ūlim ē  
 15 Carolaenā Citeriōre trāns montēs ūnā cum aliis explōrātō-  
 ribus quīnque audācter in vallēs longinquās contendit; ubi ūnō cum comite ab Indīs captus, postquam ab eis septem diēs summā diligentīā custōditus est, noctū clam surrēxit, comiteque ē somnō excitātō, incolumis ad casam pervēnit,  
 20 quam ipse cēteriūque explōrātōrēs paulō ante fēcerant.

Paucis post annis eāsdem in regiōnēs colōnōs cum uxō

1. servitūtem: servitūs, -ūtis, F., slavery; cf. servus.

2. autem: and.

5. propius: quite close; what use of the compar.?

6. lātrātū: lātrātus, -ūs, M., barking. — ūsus: translate as if ūsus est . . . et.

7. quae: this.

11. sibi: construe with ignōtum.

13. cuius: modifier of pueritiā.

14. aetātem: not aestātem.

15. Citeriōre: (citerior, -ior, -ius), lit. *Nearer, i.e. North*; cf. the note on Ulteriōris, p. 70, l. 7.

20. cēteri: contrast the force of aliis, l. 15.

- ribus liberisque dēdūxit ad locum, qui castellō maximē idō-  
neus vidēbātur. Ubi aliquamdiū fortunā prōsperā ūsus est;  
sed quondam eius fīlia, quae errābat in agrīs, ut flōrēs car-  
peret, ūnā cum puellis aliis ab Indīs capta, in silvās com-  
5 plūra milia passuum ducta est. Dum autem iter faciunt,  
puellae prūdentēs omnibus locīs aut rāmōs frēgērunt parvōs  
aut humī pannōs reliquērunt; quae rēs magnō ūsui erat patri-  
bus irātis, quī haud longō intervāllō vestigiis insequēbantur  
Barbaris victis, puellae laetae domum reductae sunt.
- 10 Paulō post ille explōrātor ipse iterum captus, diū apud  
Indōs vivere coactus est. Sed postrēmō, cum per aquam  
prōfluentem cucurrisset, nē vestigia ūlla faceret, ad amicōs  
incolumis pervēnit. Multis autem ante mēnsibus uxor  
liberique, patrem iam pridem mortuum ratī, ad propinquōs  
15 suōs in Carolaenam Citeriōrem maestī sē recēperant.

## LESSON 70

*An English Privateer*

Abhinc multōs annōs, etsi illō ipsō tempore bellum  
iūstum cum Hispānis nōn gerēbātur, quīdam praefectus  
Britannicus per maria nāvigābat omnia, gazamque ac nāvēs  
Hispānōrum omnibus locis spoliābat; itaque accidit ut, cum

6. prūdentēs: prūdēns, -entis, adj., *wide-awake*. — omnibus locis: cf. the note on eōdem locō, p. 7, l. 4; translate *everywhere*. — aut . . . aut: cf. p. 36, l. 12.

7. pannōs: pannus, -i, m., *strip of cloth*.

8. intervāllō: cf. the note on p. 57, l. 4. — vestigiis: cf. p. 71, l. 19.

12. prōfluentem: prōfluēns, -en-

tis, part., *running*, lit. *flowing forward*.

14. ratī: modifying the whole phrase uxor liberique. — propinquōs: here, as noun.

15. in: cf. the note on in silvās, p. 77, l. 12. — Citeriōrem: cf. p. 81, l. 15.

16. illō ipsō: *that particular*.

17. iūstum: iūstus, -a, -um, *regular*.

secundum litus Americae Ulteriōris nāvigāret, urbēs illius regiōnis adiret multās, incolāsque magnam vim aurī argentique trādere cogeret.

Līmae duodecim nāvigia in portū ad ancoram consistēbant; quae cum ille spoliāret, certior factus aliam nāvem gazā onustam haud procul abesse, praedā ē duodecim nāvigiiis cōnfestim in suum receptā, ē portū statim solvit, summāque celeritāte coepit insequi; divitiās enim etiam maiōres sē iam captūrum spērābat.

10 Mox in cōspectū erat nāvis fugiēns; quae nūllō modō ēvādere potuit, cum Britannī celeritāte tantopere superārent. Nāve trāditā, divitiae maximae intus repertae sunt; quin etiam gubernātor ipse duo pōcula argentea habuisse dicitur. Quae cum praefectus vidisset, gubernātōri, “Duo  
15 pōcula tū habēs,” inquit; “alterum mihi dandum est.” Tum gubernātor miser, qui omnia trādenda plānē intellegēbat, invitus praefectō in manūs pōcula trādidit ambō.

## LESSON 71

*A Roman Vandal*

Quibus rebus admoneor ut dē pessimis facinoribus Verris, hominis plānē scelerāti, pauca nunc dicam. Nam ille,

4. Līmae: a town name; what case?

7. suum: sc. nāvigium. — solvit: cf. nāvem solvērunt, p. 61, l. 9.

8. divitiās: divitiae, -ārum, *F., treasures.*

10. fugiēns: cf. fugientēs, p. 69, l. 24.

11. cum: causal. — celeritāte: for syntax, cf. *anīmō*, p. 37, l. 20. — tantopere: cf. p. 73, l. 7.

12. divitiae: cf. l. 8.

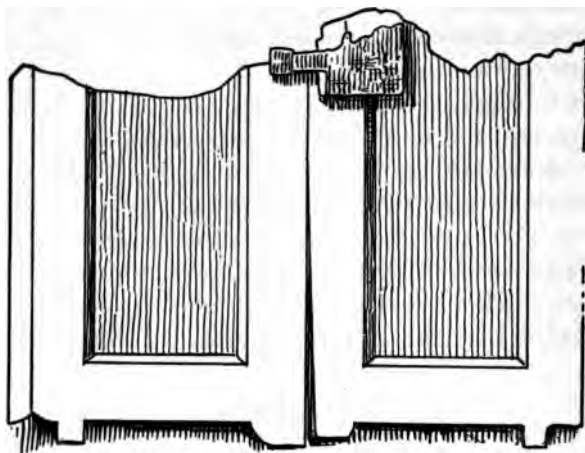
13. gubernātor: cf. gubernāculum. — ipse: *even.*

15. alterum: *one* (of the two).

16. trādenda: sc. esse. — plānē: *full well.*

17. praefectō: dat. case; translate as if a genitive.

19. hominis: in apposition with Verris. — plānē: *utterly*; cf. the rendering in the note on l. 16. — pauca: note the gender.



FORĒS

These remnants of a house door serve to show why the word for "door" is plural in Latin. Roman house doors were arranged almost always to open inward rather than outward; on the inside there was a more or less primitive lock or bolt, and sometimes a bar too was used.

cum praetor in Siciliā esset, omnibus locis oppida templa-  
que spoliāvit; quin etiam tantae erat avāritiae, ut nē pau-  
perrimi quidem Siculi bona vidēre posset, quā statim ea  
possidēre vellet. Interdum autem ā suis comitibus est  
5 ēlūsus.

Sicut memoriae trāditum est eum olim certiorem factum  
cuidam Siculo esse duo pōcula argentea; quō auditō, etsi  
aedēs eiusdem hominis nūper spoliatae erant, nūntium  
statim misit, quī pōcula ad sē sine morā dēferri iubēret.  
10 Siculus igitur, veritus nē sibi malum accideret maius, cōn-  
festim cum pōculis ad praetorem profectus est. Quō ubi  
pervēnit, praetor forte iam quiescēbat; sed ante forēs am-  
bulābant quidam ex ipsius amicis, hominēs improbi, quōrum  
tamen cōnsiliō ille multum ūti cōsuēverat: quī Siculo  
15 statim, "Ubi sunt pōcula?" inquirunt. Tum homō miser  
primō queri coepit bona omnia sibi ēripī, deinde eōs vehe-  
menter hortātus est ut sibi auxiliō essent. Quō auditō, illi  
"Quantum nobis dabis," inquirunt, "si pōcula tibi nōn ēri-  
piuntur?" Tum Siculus spē ērēctus, praemium satis ma-

1. praetor (-ōris, M.): (as)  
governor. — templa: see the pic-  
ture of a Sicilian temple shown on  
p. 96.

2. tantae . . . avāritiae: for  
syntax, cf. p. 62, l. 14. — pauper-  
rimi: pauper, -eris, adj., poor.

3. quin . . . vellet: without  
wishing, lit. but that (quin) he  
wanted.

4. possidēre: possideō, 2,  
-sēdī, -sessus, possess. — suis:  
note the position of the word. —  
est ēlūsus: was cheated.

6. memoriae trāditum est: it  
is recorded, lit. it is handed down  
to remembrance.

10. malum: as noun, modified  
by malus.

11. ad praetorem: to the gov-  
ernor's residence (cf. l. 1).

12. forte: with the verb, render  
"chanced to"; cf. the free treat-  
ment of libenter, p. 77, l. 10.

13. ipsius: i.e. Verris. — impro-  
bi: improbus, -a, -um, unprincipled.

14. ūti: freely, depend upon.  
— cōsuēverat: cf. p. 76, l. 21.

16. sibi: dat. of disadvantage;  
we would say "from him."

17. auxiliō: cf. p. 78, l. 5.

18. quantum: as noun.

19. ērēctus (-i, -um, part.):  
elated, or inspired.

gnum pollicitus est, pōculaque brevī domum <sup>1</sup>aetus reportāvit comitēs enim praetōris, cum ille ē somnō experrēctus esset, audācī mendāciō ūsī nōn dubitāverunt cōnfirmāre pōcula sibi nōn digna vidērī, quae in eius mēnsā pōnerentur.

## LESSON 72

### *Indian Vengeance*

5 Indī Americānī nōn solum cum colōnīs saepe bellum gessērunt, sed inter sē quoque pugnāre cōnsuēverant ācerimē. Sicut in Britannīā Novā rēx quīdam, nōmine Miantōnimō, diū per insidiās cōnātus est interficere Uncam, rēgem finitimum, ut ipse solum duārum nātiōnum rēgnum  
10 obtinēret; cum autem ista cōnsilia eum fefellissent omnia, subito magnō cum exercitū in vicinī finēs quam celerrimē contendit: Uncās vērō, dē eius adventū ab explorātōribus certior factus, cōpiās coēgerat et sine morā ad pugnam profectus est.

15 Ubi aciēs duae instrūctae sunt, Uncās, paulum ante suōs prōgressus, sē velle dixit solum cum Miantōnimōne solum dīmicāre, ut sine dētrimentō cēterōrum rēs dīiudicārī posset. Quod cum ille recūsāret, Uncās cōsultō in terram prōlapsus est, eiusque militēs, clāmōre sublātō, super ducem

2. experrēctus esset: experrēcor, 3, -perrēctus sum, *wake up*.

3. mendāciō: mendācium, -i, N., *lie*. — ūsī: translate as if a present.

4. digna . . . quae: with subjunct., *worthy to* (dignus, -a, -um). — mēnsā: mēnsa, -ae, F., *table*

8. insidiās: see the Vocab.

9. duārum: *the two*

10. fefellissent: from fallō.

12. Uncās: for the declension, cf. the note on Cercās, p. 23, l. 4.

16. velle: *was willing*. — solum: pred. adj. with dīmicāre; what other part of speech has the same form? (cf. l. 5).

17. cēterōrum: we would say "*to the others*." — dīiudicārī: dīiudicō, 1, *decide*, or *settle*.

18. quod: *this (proposal)*. — ille: Miantonimo

iacentem sagittās plūrimās coniēcērunt in hostis; quī re-  
 pentinā rē perterriti sē cōnfēstim in silvās palūdēque con-  
 tulērunt. Quā in fugā periērunt multi, rēxque ab Uncā  
 ipsō captus est. Ab inimicō salūtem petere dux victus  
 5 scilicet nōlēbat, et paulō post secūrī percussus est: quō  
 quidem tempore Uncās, cum inimicum humi moribun-  
 dum vīdisset, eius umerum sicā appetivisse dicitur, frū-  
 stumque carnis inde abscīsum vultū laetō dēvorāsse; tan-  
 tae enim saevitiae sunt mōrēs Indōrum.

## LESSON 73

*A Tale of Brave Women*

10 Abhinc multōs annōs, cum in prōvinciīs, quae ad occi-  
 dentem spectant adhūc rārī essent colōnī, explōrātōrēs quī-  
 dam, domō trāns montēs profectī, per regiōnēs ignōtās  
 multa milia passuum iter fēcērunt, et postrēmō locum idō-  
 neum nactī, prōcul ab amicīs in ripā pulcherrimī flūminis  
 15 castellum parvum collocāvērunt; quibus rēbus factis, nūn-  
 tiōs mīsērunt, quī eōdem mulierēs liberōsque dēdūcerent.

Hiems iam appropinquābat; omnēs tamen cum nūntiīs  
 libenter domō ēgressi sunt, et nāvigiīs parvis vectī secundō

1. iacentem: *prostrate*; lit. what? — *repentinā rē*: sc. hāc.

4. ab: *of*.

5. secūrī percussus est: *i.e.* *was executed*; lit. what?

6. quidem: omit in translation.

7. sicā: abl. of means.

8. inde: *i.e. from it*. — vultū laetō: cf. p. 58, l. 4. — dēvorāsse: for the form, cf. nāvīgāsset, p. 3, l. 1.

10. occidentem: cf. p. 65, l. 1.

12. domō: the acc. and abl. of domus have the construction of town names (cf. the note on p. 79, l. 21).

16. eōdem: bearing the same relation to idem, as eō to is, and quō to qui.

17. omnēs: *i.e.* the women and children.

18. secundō: cf. the force of the prep. secundum, and contrast that of adversō (flūmine).



flūmine ad castellum versus per aquam glaciē impeditam summō labōre contendērunt. Barbarī interim paene cotidī ē rīpis tēla coniciēbant; et postrēmō multī ē colōnōrum numerō exitiālī morbō affectī sunt. Quā rē cōgnitā, hostēs 5 ē rīpā scaphīs audācter prōgressī, nāvīgium cēpērunt quō aegrī vehēbantur, hominēsque miserōs interfēcērunt omnēs.

Tantīs in periculīs nōn virī solum sed etiam mulierēs virtutem maximam praestitērunt. Sicut, cum scapha quaedam in saxō absconditō adhaesisset, mulierēs duae exsiluerunt in aquam frigidam, scaphamque dē saxō dētrūsērunt, cum alterius vir hostēs armīs dēterrēbat. Atque in liburnicā quādam puella vix adulta omnibus salūtī fuit; cum enim ab Indis tēla conicerentur plūrima, virique sē tegere cōnārentur, haec virgō fortis, cum liburnicam vī flūminis 15 ad rīpam dēferri animadvertisset, gubernāculis arreptīs nāvem in cursū tenuit, dōnec vulnerāta est; quīn etiam nētum quidem gemitum ūllum ēdidit, neque ē manibus gubernācula ēlābi passa est.

## LESSON 74

### *The Treasure Seekers*

Et hāc et aliīs aetātibus hominēs crēdulī cōnsuēverant in 20 cavernīs maris frūstrā quaerere nāvēs, quae ōlim gazā

6. aegrī: as noun; cf. *vulnerāti*, etc.

11. alterius: *of one* (of the two). — vir: *husband*.

12. adulta: *adultus*, -a, -um, part., *grown up*.

13. sē tegere: *i.e. get under cover*.

14. virgō (-inis, F.): *maiden*. — cum . . . animadvertisset: translate by a partic. phrase.

15. gubernāculis: cf. p. 64. l. 9

16. in cursū: *i.e. in the channel*.

18. ēlābi: *ēlābor*, 3, -*lapeus sum, slip*; cf. *prōlābor*.

19. et . . . et: cf. p. 7, l. 2. — aetātibus: *i.e. temporibus*. — crēdulī: *crēdulus*, -a, -um, *credulous*.

20. cavernīs: *caverna*, -ae, F., *cavern*.

onustae in mari naufragium fecisse dicuntur; interdum autem fortunā prosperiōre ūsi sunt. Sicut abhinc multōs annōs quidam negotiātor, ē Britannia Novā paucis cum comitibus profectus, ad locum nāvigāvit longinquum, ubi 5 gaza maxima multis ante annis naufragiō āmissa esse dicēbātur. Quō cum vēnisset, arborem altissimam statim excidit scaphamque fecit, quae ad freta finitima exploranda ūsuī esset.

Aliquamdiū nihil repertum est. Ōlim tamen, cum nautae 10 tōtō diē diligenter laborāvissent ac spē omni paene sublātā ad nāvem sē defessi cōferrent, quidam ex eis forte submersam animadvertit algam fōrmōsam, cuius pulchritūdine captus servum Indum ē scaphā exsilire eamque carpere iussit; ille vērō, ubi cum algā sē ex aquā ēmersit, sub mari 15 cōfirmāvit sēsē multa arma vidisse. Quō auditō, omnēs ecfrenātē gaudēbant, cum sentirent sē iam dēmum nāvigium invēnisse, quod mēnsēs multōs quaesiverant. Quārē statim in mare exsiluērunt Indi alii; ā quibus brevī ē nāvigio lāminae argenteae complūrēs ēlātae sunt. Posterō diē 20 nautae, cum eōdem primā lūce cum praefectō redissent, ē mari vim argenti incredibilem ūnā cum gemmīs plūrimis facile recēpērunt.

1. naufragium: naufragium, -i, N., *shipwreck* (nāvis + frangō).

2. ūsi sunt: *they have had*.

8. ūsuī esset: see the Vocab.

10. tōtō diē: translate as if acc. — omni: freely, *entirely*.

11. quidam: as noun (sing.). — forte: cf. the note on p. 85, l. 12. — submersam: submersus, -a, -um, part., *submerged*, i.e. *under the surface*.

12. algam: alga, -ae, F., *sea-weed*. — fōrmōsam: fōrmōsus, -a,

-um, *graceful*. — pulchritūdine: pulchritūdō, -inis, F., *beauty*.

13. servum: *helper*.

14. sē . . . ēmersit: *emerged*, or *came up* (ēmergō, 3, -mersi -mersus).

15. sēsē: i.e. sē.

19. lāminae: lāmina, -ae, F., *plate*, or *strip*.

20. primā lūce: cf. *vespere primō*, p. 77, l. 1.

21. gem nis: gemma. -ae, F., *jewel*

## LESSON 75

*A Dangerous Conspiracy*

Ōlim in finibus Indōrum ab Americānīs cōstitutā est prōvincia maxima, ex quā pars quaedam etiam nunc Indiāna appellātur. Prōvinciā cōstitutā rēx Indus, nōmine Tecumsa, quī nē cīvēs suī brevī patriam tōtam dimitterent  
 5 timēre coeperat, omnibus locīs palam dicere nōn dubitāvit sine cōsēnsū omnium nātiōnum Indīs agrum nullum vēndendum esse; ac postrēmō, conciliis undique convocātis, barbarōs hortātus est ut sē sequerentur hostisque invisōs ē finibus suis expellerent.

10 Deinde, cum ad caput prōvinciae lēgātī conveniendī causā iter fēcisset, quamquam in lēgātī aedium vestibulō ipsī comitibusque subsellia posita erant, ibi sedere nōluit: terram enim cōfirmāvit esse Indōrum mātrem, sēque in eā stāre malle; itaque lēgātus ad colloquium in silvam  
 15 prōgredi coāctus est. Ibi dum colloquuntur, Tecumsa vehementer est irā commōtus, eiusque comitēs secūrīs cōnfestim arripuerunt. Sed Americānī paucī, quī adstābant, statim expediērunt arma, militēsque summā celeritāte ad lēgātum dēfendendum adcurrērunt; quibus rēbus territi,  
 20 Indī nihil tum ausī sunt. At lēgātus, quī plānē sentiēbat cum barbarīs sibi mox dīmicandum esse, cōpiās satis magnās

4. nē: depending on timēre,

1. 5.—tōtam: translate by an adv.

5. omnibus locīs: cf. p. 82, l.

6.

6. cōsēnsū: cōsēnsus, -ūs, M., concurrence.—Indīs: dat. case.

11. vestibulō: vestibulum, -ī, N., entrance court.

12. ipsī: Tecumseh.—subsella: subsellium, -ī, N., bench.

17. paucī: the few.

18. expediērunt: i.e. expediērunt.—ad . . . dēfendendum: cf. the construction with causā, l. 11.

19. adcurrērunt: adcurrō, 3, -currī, -cursum est, run up.

quam celerrimē cōgere coepit. Tecumsa interim, ut omnīs Indōs ad arma vocāret, reliquās gentēs diligenter iam circumibat.

## LESSON 76

*A Dangerous Conspiracy (Continued)*

Priusquam rēx Indus cum sociis redire potuit, lēgātus, sibi initium bellī esse faciendum ratus, cōsiliō callidō ūsus est; nam ex urbe ad pugnam profectus, legiōnēs flūmine adversō pauca mīlia passuum dūxit, tum subitō in ripam trānsiit alteram. Putābat enim (id quod factum est) barbarōs insidiās collocātūrōs eā in ripā, in quā primō iter <sup>10</sup> facere ipse coepisset. Cōpiis igitur flūmen trāductis, sine detrīmentō ūllō contendit ad oppidum, ubi domicilium Tecumsa habēbat.

Cum lēgātus propius accessisset, rēgis frāter, quī tum oppidō praeerat, nūntium misit, quī diceret posterō diē <sup>5</sup> Indōs condiōnēs pācis petītūrōs. Itaque Americānī prope oppidum posuērunt castra, armisque expeditis sē somnō dedērunt. At vigiliā circiter quārtā subitō audītus est ululātus Indōrum, quī undique castra iam obsidēbant; quō sonō ad aurēs adlātō, militēs ē somnō excitātī ignis

5. *initium*: *initium*, -i, N., *beginning*. The whole phrase may be rendered freely, *thinking that he ought to take the initiative in the war*; lit. what?

8. *id quod factum est*: *as actually proved to be the case*, lit. *the thing which (actually) happened*.

9. *eā*: modifying *ripā*. — in *quā*: *upon* (or *along*) *which*.

10. *flūmen trāductis*: *i.e. trāns*

*flūmen ductis* (cf. *trādō* for *trānsdō*).

11. *domicilium*: *domicilium*, -i, N., *residence*.

14. *praeerat*: cf. p. 58, l. 12, and the note.

17. *vigiliā . . . quārtā*: *i.e. toward morning*, the night being divided into four equal watches.

19. *quō sonō ad aurēs adlātō*: cf. p. 73, l. 11. — *ignis*: *the (camp) fires*.

cōnfestim extinxērunt, nē ab hostibus cōspici possent. Sic tris ferē hōrās in nocte obscurā ab Americānis fortissimē pugnātum est; tum primā lūce, ēruptiōne factā, in fugam coniēcērunt hostīs, oppidumque incendērunt.

- 5 Oppidō incēnsō Tecumsa, postquam rediit, cōsilia sua perficere nullō modō potuit; paucis autem post mēnsibus, cum Americāni Britannis bellum indixissent, in exercitū Britannicō lēgātus factus est.

## LESSON 77

### *A Quick-Witted Messenger*

Ōlim, cum in prōvinciis, quae ad merīdiem spectant,  
 10 Americāni cum Britannis diū gessissent bellum ac saepe  
 superātī essent, dux quīdam Americānus ad imperātōrem  
 alium litterās mittere volēbat; at primō reperiri poterat  
 nēmō, qui eas dēferre auderet, quod undique hostēs viās  
 obsidēbant. Postrēmō autem mulier quaedam, "Ego lit-  
 15 terās adferam," inquit; "quidvis audere mālō, quam domi  
 animō morārī suspēnsō."

Equō adductō, nūntia sine morā cōnscendit, ac, cōnfestim  
 profecta, in itinere ab hostibus intercepta est. Quam cap-  
 tam militēs maximā diligentiā custodiērunt, dōnec mulier  
 20 vocārī posset, quae litterās quaereret, si quae forte nūntiae  
 vestimentis tēctae essent.

Dum vērō mulier exspectātur, nūntia litterās celeriter

1. possent: subject, militēs  
 (see p. 91, l. 19).

7. cum . . . indixissent:  
 translate by a partic. phrase.—  
 Britannis: translate the dat.  
 "upon."

8 lēgātus: an officer.

13. auderet: would venture.

15. quam: (rather) than.

17. nūntia (-ae, F.): messenger.

18. captam: i.e. after her  
 capture.

20. posset: could.—si quae: cf.  
 p. 65, l. 2.

perlēgit, cumque eās discerpsisset, frāgmenta chartae ēdit singula. Quae rēs eī salūtī fuit: altera enim mulier, cum postrēmō vēnisset, nihil scilicet invenire potuit; quārē mīlītēs, veniā contumēliae petītā, nūntiam incolumem abire passī sunt. Illa autem summā celeritātē ad castra Americāna contendit, imperātōremque certiōrem fēcīt dē rēbus omnibus, quae in litterīs scrīptae erant.

## LESSON 78

*Fortune favors the Brave*

In exercitū Americānō ōlim erat centuriō quīdam, nōmine Iasper, quī semper in periculīs maximīs libenter versābātur. Sicut, cum Britannī castra quaedam oppugnārent, vēxillumque Americānum tēlis abreptum in terram extrā mūnitiōnēs cecidisset, inter tēla, quae plūrima hostēs coniciēbant, ē castris ērūpit ille, vēxillumque arreptum in vāllō rursus posuit.

15 Ac paulō post, cum cōgnōvisset Americānōs paucōs ā Britannīs capitis damnātōs Savannam ad mortem dēdūcī, ūnō cum comite profectus, ad fontem haud procul ab eā urbe in insidiīs latēbat, ut cīvibus suis, sī posset, auxiliō esset. Mox in cōspectum vēnērunt captivī, quōs mīlītēs decem

1. discerpsisset: discerpō, 3, -cerpsī, -cerptus, *tear up*. — frāgmenta: frāgmentum, -ī, N., *bit*. — chartae: charta, -ae, F., *paper*.

2. fuit: *proved to be*.

4. contumēliae: translate the gen. "for" (cf. audāciae, p. 39, l. 2).

6. contendit: *pushed on*.

9. libenter versābātur: freely, *delighted to be*.

11. vēxillum (-ī, N.): *flag*, cf. the Roman flags shown on p. 162.

12. plūrima: freely, *thick and fast*.

16. capitis: cf. p. 47, l. 16, and the note. — Savannam: see the note on p. 79, l. 21. — ad mortem: *i.e. to execution*.

custodiēbant; ē quibus octō, ubi ad fontem perventum est, armis sub arboribus relictis, aquam haurire properāvērunt. Tum Iasper eiusque amicus ērūpērunt ē latebris, duōbusque custōdibus occisis militēs cēterōs sē dēdere coēgērunt: 5 deinde cum captivis Britannicis atque cīvibus, quōs servāverant, cōnfēstim ad castra Americāna sē contulērunt.

Haud semper autem Iasperō rēs tam fēliciter ēvēnērunt; paucis enim post annis interfectus est, cum summā audaciā prōcucurrisset ex aciē atque in hostium vāllō vēxillum 10 dēfixisset Americānum.

## LESSON 79

*Andrew Jackson*

Nunc mihi pauca dīcenda sunt dē rēbus gestis Americāni cuiusdam, nōmine Iacsōnis, quī obscurō locō nātus, postremō rei pūblicae princeps factus est. Quī adhūc puer in bellō, quod primum Britannī cum Americānis gessērunt, 15 fortiter versātus, unā cum frātre ab hostibus captus, in carcere morbo gravi affectus est. Māter autem brevi efficere potuit ut filii ambō cum captivis Britannis commūtarentur.

Multis post annis, cum Britannī iterum cum Americānis

1. quibus: *i.e.* militibus. — ad: *near*.

2. haurire: hauriō, 4, hausī, haustus, *draw*.

3. duōbus: *the two*.

7. Iasperō, etc.: cf. the similar phrase, p. 43, l. 16.

8. cum: conjunction.

9. vēxillum: cf. p. 93, l. 11.

12. locō: *station*; for syntax, cf. the note on p. 7, l. 4.

13. adhūc: (*while*) *still*. — in bellō, quod primum: *i.e.* in primō bellō, quod.

16. efficere . . . ut: *freely, arrange that*; lit. *what*?

17. captivis: translate as adj. — commūtārentur: commūtō, 1, *exchange*; in connection with this verb, cum may be rendered "*for*."

19. iterum: *i.e.* from the year 1812 on.

bellum gererent, Indi, quōdam castellō Americanōrum expugnātō, nōn solum armātōs sed etiam mulierēs liberōsque summā crudelitātē occidērunt. Quā caede nūtiātā, Iacsō, dilēctū habitō, quam celerrimē profectus est, ut hostīs coercēret; cumque multa milia passuum iter fēcisset, etsi militēs labōrandō dēfessī semel iterumque negābant sē longius prōgressūrōs, pervēnit postrēmō ad castra munitissima, quae in ripā flūminis Tallapūsae posuerant Indi. Ubi ācriter pugnātum est; castra tamen sunt capta, hostēsque paene ad ūnum aut ibi periērunt aut in Flōridam fugere coācti sunt. Victōriā potītus Iacsō summā cōmitātē rēgem Indōrum accēpit, quī equō vectus castra intrāre est ausus petītum ut frūmentō Americānī iuvārent mulierēs liberōsque Indōs, quī in silvīs latentēs famem aegrē iam tolerābant.

## LESSON 80

*Pirates Ashore*

Quondam in mari Atlanticō secundum lītus Americānum ultrō citrōque nāvigābant pirātae, quī omnibus locīs nāvēs vel Americānās vel Britannicās spoliābant; ē quibus ūnus, summae audāciae homō, liburnicis praeerat complūribus. Is ōlim oppugnāre cōstituit oppidum longinquum, quod numquam antea spoliātum erat, cuiusque incolae locuplētēs esse dicēbantur.

Sine dētrīmentō liburnicae in portum vērunt; tum

4. dilēctū: dilēctus, -ūs, M., *levy*.

5. etsi: modifying the preceding clause.

6. labōrandō: gerund.

11. victōriā: the same construction as with ūtor.

13. petītum: supine; another way of saying ut peteret. — frūmentō: (a contribution of) grain.

14. latentēs: in their hiding places: lit. what?

17. nāvigābant: kept sailing





TEMPLUM

The above building, found in Sicily, is of Grecian architecture. It is known as the Temple of Concord. Roman temples were regularly constructed on Greek models.

autem captivus quidam, qui minus diligenter custodiēbatur, in mare clam exsiluit, ac nandō incolumis pervēnit ad litus : qui sine morā oppidānōs dē cōsiliis pirātārum certiōrēs fēcit. Quō nūntiō acceptō, oppidānī summā diligentīā  
 5 bona sua cēlāre coepērunt. Deinde, postquam pirātae ē nāvibus ēgressī militēs paucōs, qui oppidō erant praesidiō relictī, in fugam coniēcērunt, cīvēs ipsī, aedibus clausīs, tēla in hostēs primō coniēcērunt plūrima ; sed postrēmō, timōre dētrimenti etiam maiōris coactī, sē maesti dēdidē-  
 10 runt. Quōs omnis pirātae, victoriā potitī, in templa quaedam coēgērunt. Ubi illi fame sunt paene necatī ; victōrēs enim interim tam bene sē habēbant, ut omninō captivōrum miserōrum obliviscerentur.

## LESSON 81

*Carrying the Tribute*

Abhinc multōs annōs Americānī, antequam rēs pūblica va-  
 5 lida facta est, tribūtum pendere solēbant cuidam rēgī Africānō, nē pirātae eārum regiōnum (quī sub eius imperiō erant) nāvēs suās spoliārent. Ōlim, cum praefectus Americānus tribūtī istius ferendī causā ad Africam nāvigāsset, rēx ille, qui forte nūntium cum dōnō Byzantium hōc ferē tempore

1. minus : *not very* ; what use of the compar.?

4. nūntiō : *news*, or *information*.

5. cēlāre : cēlō, 1, *conceal*, or *hide*.

6. paucōs : cf. paucī, p. 90, l. 17. — praesidiō : cf. p. 65, l. 4.

10. quōs omnis : cf. quī omnēs, p. 57, l. 8.

11. coēgērunt : *crowded*. — victōrēs : victor, -ōris, m., *victor*.

12. tam bene sē habēbant : *were having so good a time*.

15. facta est : *freely, had grown*. — pendere : pendō, 3, *pendi, pēnsus, pay*.

16. nē : *so that . . . not*.

19. Byzantium : see the note on p. 79, l. 21.

ad rēgem suprēmum mittere volēbat (nam ipse quoque tribūtum pendere cōgēbātur), ab Americānis postulāvit ut nāve suā hanc rem susciperent. Praefectus scilicet sē nōlle respondit; sed rēx, “Nōne servī estis?” inquit: “nōne 5 tribūtum mihi penditis? Hanc rem mehercle nisi cōnfestim suscipiētis, nāvēs omnēs Americānae, quae in marī Mediterrāneō nāvigant, ā pirātis statim capientur.” Praefectus igitur animō haud aequō Bȳzantium proficisci coactus est: ubi autem rēx suprēmus Americānōs summō accēpit honore; 10 cumque discēderent, ducī etiam dedit diplōma.

Cum nāvis paucīs post diēbus ad lītus Africae rursus appulsa esset, rēx Africānus, quī iam oblītus erat sē pollicitum esse nihil amplius ab Americānis postulātum irī, praefectum iussit iterum Bȳzantium nāvigāre; cumque id 15 recūsāret, etiam mortem praesentem minātus est. Tum praefectus diplōma porrēxit; quō visō, tantus timor rēgis animum occupāvit, ut veniā contumeliārum petītā Americānōs sine morā redire domum paterētur.

## LESSON 82

### *A Successful Ambuscade*

Eō tempore, quō colōnī cum Philippō, rēge Indōrum 20 clārō, bellum gerēbant, oppidō quōdam ā barbaris incēnsō,

1. rēgem suprēmum: *i.e.* the Sultan.

2. pendere: cf. p. 97, l. 15 — ab: *of*.

4. nōne: *i.e.* nōn + ne: this combination assumes the answer “yes.”

5. mehercle: interjection, *by my halidom*; lit. (*so help*) *me, Hercules*.

8. Bȳzantium: translate the acc “for”; cf. p. 97, l. 19.

10. diplōma: acc. sing. of diplōma, -atis, N., *passport*.

13. postulātum irī: what inf.?

15. recūsāret: *object to*; subject, praefectus. — minātus est: minor, 1, *threaten*.

16. diplōma: cf. l. 10.

17. contumeliārum: cf. p. 93, l. 4, and the note.

19. quō: *when*, lit. *during which*.

magna vīs frūmentī ab eis integra in agrīs relictā est. Quō cōgnitō, imperātor colōnōrum, tantam frūmenti cōpiam nōn temerē dimittendam ratus, ab oppidō finitimō lēgātum cum militibus proficisci iussit, ut frūgēs ad bellī sēdem reportāret. 5 Ille igitur iūmenta carrōsque statim coēgit multōs, ac cōnfestim in agrōs illōs contendit; ubi nūllō impediēte frūmentum omne in carrōs sine morā impositum est.

Postquam tamēn cōpiās redūcere coepit, lēgātus silvās veritus (per quās tria milia passuum iter faciendum erat) 10 milites primō armīs expeditīs prōgredi iussit. Cum vērō agmen ē silvā incolume ēvāsisset, omnia pericula suōs iam effūgisce arbitrātus, viā minus diligenter explōrātā, in insidiās subitō incidit, quās hostēs fēcērant in palūde quādā, per quam rīvus parvus fluēbat. Quem ad locum 15 ubi perventum est, repente auditus est undique ululātus Indōrum, tēlaque plūrima inmissa sunt. Quā rē novā permōtī milites nūllō modō resistere potuerunt, praesertim cum numerō barbarī multō essent superiōrēs. Quin etiam ē proeliō colōnī vix septem octōve effūgērunt; quārē propter clādem ibi acceptam hīc locus postea "rīvus cruentus" 20 appellābātur.

## LESSON 83

*An Intrepid Commander*

Eōdem bellō quīdam colōnī in scaphis ōlim eō cōnsiliō profecti sunt, ut cum Indīs finitimis aut pācem facerent,

3. finitimō: *i.e.* to the burned town.

4. frūgēs: frūx, frūgis, *F.*, *fruit* (of the earth); pl, *crop.* — bellī sēdem: *i.e.* the base of operations.

5. iūmenta: iūmentum, -ī, *N.*, *beast of burden.* — multōs: see the note on ratī, p. 82, l. 14.

12. arbitrātus, etc.: use but one part. in the English sentence.

13. incidit: incidō, 3, -cidī, *fall into* (in + cadō).

14. rīvus: *brook.*

19. octōve: *i.e.* octō + ve

22. eōdem bellō: for syntax cf. primō bellō, p. 62, l. 15.

aut eis indicerent bellum, si Philippum adiuvare perseverarent. E scaphis egressi, per agrös contendebant coloni, cum subito ululatus auditus est, et barbari impetü repentinö militēs ad litus sē recipere coēgērunt: nam in 5 eö quoque proeliö Indi numerö erant multö superiörēs; dux enim colonörum quīdecim tantum militēs sēcum tum habēbat.

Is autem, vir summae cōstantiae, locum idōneum nactus, suös hortätus est nē sē animö dēmitterent, et ipse 10 äcrit̄er dīmīcāvit. Dum rēs sic geritur, animadvertit forte ūnum ē comitibus ita territum, ut nüllö modö pugnāre posset. Quö visö, hominem iussit lapidēs comportāre, quī prö mūnitiōne ūsuī essent: quod cum iste faceret, sagitta subito lapidem percussit, quem manibus 15 ferēbat; quö mirāculö permötus (nam vitam ā dīs ita servätam esse existimābat), animös homö resūmpsit, summaque virtüte ünā cum cēteris pugnāvit.

Brevi tēla colonörum dēficere coepērunt; sed nāvis adventü opportünö servātī sunt. Dux tamen, cum nöllet 20 Indös putāre sē timöre discessisse, etiam tum in agris paulum morätus est ad petasum petendum, quem ad fontem paulö ante reliquerat.

1. eis: cf. the note on Britan-  
nis, p. 92, l. 7.

4. ad: *toward*.

8. locum: *position*.

9. animö: for syntax, cf.  
the more familiar phrase, animö  
dēmissus.

11. forte: cf. the note on  
p. 85, l. 12.

12. quö: neut. — lapidēs: lapis,  
-idis, M., *stone*.

13. prö: *as, or for*. — ūsuī: cf.  
p. 89, l. 8. — essent: note the

mood. — iste: the soldier.

14. manibus: cf. p. 7, l. 9.

15. mirāculö: mirāculum, -i, N.,  
*providence*, lit. *strange happen-  
ing*.

16. animös: *courage*. — resūmp-  
sit: resūmō, 3, -sūmpsi, -sūmptus,  
*recover*.

19. cum nöllet: translate by a  
partic. phrase.

20. timöre: abl. of cause.

21. petasum: petāsus, -i, M.,  
*broad-brimmed hat*.

## LESSON 84

*Burned at the Stake*

Dē crūdēlitate Indōrum multa nārrantur. Sicut, cum oppidum colōnōrum quoddam ā Gallīs barbarisque esset expugnātum, ampliusque quīnquāgintā oppidānī captī essent, hostēs cum captivīs miserīs cōnfestim domum cōtendērunt. Dum autem iter faciunt, ūnus ē captivīs, homō obēsus, quī onus grave ferre coactus tardius sequēbātur, sē posse clam effugere ratus, onus subitō in viā dēposuit atque in arbore cavā latēre cōnātus est.

Hic autem ab Indis brevī repertus, veste dētractā per nivem nūdus prōgredi est coactus; quō modō usque ad noctem iter factum est. Tum barbarī, captivō ad arborem religātō, ignem pedetemptim admovēbant, dōnec homō moribundus vīsus est; deinde rursus paulum redūcēbant, quō diūtius cruciārētur. Quin etiam, nē hōc quidem contentī, frūsta abscidērunt viscerum, ut cruciātū captivī oculōs suōs pāscerent, cum interim canerent aut saltārent ridentēs; et postrēmō, nē contumēlia ūlla deesset, corpus

3. *amplius*: *i.e.* *more (than)*; cf. such expressions as "above a thousand."

6. *obēsus* (-a, -um): *stout*. — *tardius*: absol. compar.

7. *onus*: *onus*, -eris, N., *load*.

9. *hic*: the adv. — *veste*: *i.e.* *vestment*.

11. *iter factum est*: translate by an active form.

12. *ignem*: *the fire*. — *admovēbant*: *kept moving up*.

13. *redūcēbant*: *sc. eum (i.e. ignem)* For the force of this imperfect, cf. *rapiebant*, p. 7, l. 17.

14. *quō*: replacing *ut*, as it regularly does when the purpose clause contains a comparative. — *cruciārētur*: *crucio*, 1, (*keep in*) *torture*. — *hōc*: (neut.) noun.

15. *contentī*: *contentus*, -a, -um, with abl., *content (with)*. — *frūsta*: not *frustrā*. — *viscerum*: *viscus*, -eris, N., (sing. and pl.) *flesh*.

16. *pāscerent*: *pāscō*, 3, *pāvi*, *pāstus*, with abl., *feast . . . (upon)*. Strictly, *cruciātū* is abl. of means.

17. *deesset*: what is the literal force of the word (*dē* + *sum*)?

mortui in favillam residere passi sunt, quō postea maiore amici dolore afficerentur, cum eius cāsum vidērent miserrimum.

## LESSON 85

*An Early Morning Surprise*

Olim Galli Indique castellum quoddam hieme expugnāre  
5 cōstituerant. Quārē per nivem altam summō labōre prō-  
gressi, nocte intempestā in silvā haud procul ab oppidō  
castra collocāverunt; deinde, impedimentis praesidiō pau-  
cis relictis, vigiliā quārtā ferē exāctā ad mūnitiōnēs pede-  
temptim accesserunt. Nam per nivem gelū rigidam iter iam  
10 faciendum erat, timēbantque nē sonus ā colōnis audirētur;  
quam ob rem ab imperātore iussi erant paulum prōgredi,  
tum paulum stāre, tum iterum paulum prōgredi, ut strepi-  
tus exercitūs per nivem iter facientis sonus tantum ventō-  
rum vidērētur. At nihil suspicābantur colōnī; quīn etiam  
15 custōdēs ipsī somnō gravissimō quiescēbant. Itaque hostēs  
facillimē in castellum pervēnērunt; nix enim ūnā ex parte  
tam alta fuit, ut mūnitiōnēs vix exstārent. Tum dēmum,  
ululātū acrī sublātō, barbari colōnōs perterritōs cōnfestim dē-  
trāxerunt ē lectis, et undique caedēs incendiaque miscuērunt.

1. mortui: as noun (gen. masc.). — favillam: favilla, -ae, f., embers. — residere: residō, 3, -sēdī, sink down. — quō: cf. p. 101, l.

14. — maiore: (all the) greater.

2. amici: nom. pl.

4. hieme: abl. of time when or within which.

7. paucis: as (masc.) noun.

8. exāctā: from exigō; construe with vigiliā, and cf. the note on p. 91, l. 17.

9. gelū: gelus, -ūs, m., frost. —

rigidam: rigidus, -a, -um, crusted. lit. stiff.

10. nē: note the nature of the governing verb.

13. facientis: modifying exercitūs. — sonus: pred. nom. with vidērētur (sc. esse). — tantum: the adv.

16. ūnā ex parte: cf. omnibus ex partibus, p. 44, l. 6.

17. exstārent: exstō, 1, —, project, or appear (above).

19. caedēs. etc. cf. p. 78, l. 9.

In castellō praedā multā hostēs potiti sunt atque ad vesperum, caede incendiisque aliquandō dēfessi, sē ad silvam contulērunt. Victōria tamen nōn incruenta pāta erat: nam intrā castellum erant complūra tēcta minōra; 5 quōrum ūnum cum barbari expugnāre frūstrā cōnārentur, tēlis inde coniectis multi interfecti erant.

## LESSON 86

*Some Very Distinguished Geese*

Quibus rēbus admoneor dē impetū, quem Galli antiqui abhinc multōs annōs in Capitōlium fēcērunt, cum exercitūs vicissent Rōmānōs, urbemque ipsam incendissent. Primō 10 interdiū hostēs adorti sunt, summāque audaciā saxa aspera ascendērunt; sed Rōmāni dēsuper eōrum aciem tam facile tantāque caede dēiēcērunt, ut numquam postea idem audērent.

Deinde autem, cum multōs diēs Capitōlium obsessum 15 esset nec praesidium (quamquam summa erat cibi inopia) sē dēdere vellet, noctū Capitōlium oppugnāre hostēs cōstituērunt. Itaque sēmitā asperā, quam paucis ante diēbus

1. praedā: for syntax, cf. victōriā, p. 95, l. 11. — ad: *toward*.

2. aliquandō: *i.e. dēsum*.

3. incruenta: incruentus, -a, -um, lit. *bloodless*; translate freely. — pāta erat: from pariō.

5. quōrum: neut.

7. Galli: as on p. 52, l. 12. — antiqui: antiquus, -a, -um, *ancient*.

8. cum: *after*. — exercitūs: note the ū.

9. ipsam: *proper*. The Romans were so demoralized that

they made no attempt to hold any part of Rome other than the lofty and isolated Capitol.

10. interdiū: in contrast to noctū, l. 16. — hostēs: subject of the verb.

11. dēsuper: adv., *from above*.

12. idem audērent: *repeated the venture*; lit. *what?*

14. deinde: *later*.

15. nec: *and yet . . . not*.

17. sēmitā: abl. of way by which (sēmita, -ae, *F., footpath*).



Gallus quidam forte animadverterat, tertiā ferē vigiliā ūnus miles inermis paulum ascendit; cui deinde arma trādita sunt. Is sequentēs adiuvābat, illi rursus aliōs. Quō modō Galli complūrēs ad summum collem tantō silentiō pervēnērunt, ut custōdēs nihil sentirent; quīn etiam nē canēs quidem excitāti sunt. Sed repente ānserēs Iūnōnis sacri clangōrem clārum ēdidērunt: quae rēs Rōmānis salūti fuit; nam M. Mānlius, vir summae cōstantiae, sonō acrī audītō, comitēs ad arma vocāns cōnfestim in primum Gallum impetum fēcit ācerrimum, eumque dē saxō prōiēcit. Gallus cāsū suō aliōs quoque dēturbāvit; et hostēs, magnō dētrimentō acceptō, etiam hōc cōnātū dēsistere coācti, in castra maestī sē recēpērunt.

## LESSON 87

### *An Army of Two*

Longum est cōnsilia nārrāre, quibus ūsi sunt colōnī eis in bellis, quae cum Britannis et Indis gessērunt. Sicut ōlim, cum per prōvinciam Noveborācēnsē nāvis Britannica adversō flūmine nāvigāret, in ripā forte stābant liberī duo; quī veritī nē, si agricolās armātōs exspectāssent, auxilium

2. inermis (-is, -e): *without (his) arms*, lit. *unarmed*.

3. sequentēs: acc. masc., *those following*. — illi: supply a verb from the preceding clause.

4. summum: *the top of*; cf. the use of *primā*, p. 22, l. 7.

6. ānserēs: ānser, -eris, M., *goose*. — sacri: sacer, -era, -erum, with gen., *sacred (to)*. — clangōrem: clangor, -ōris, M., *cry*.

7. ēdidērunt: from ēdō (not edō).

8. M.: *i.e.* Mārcus.

11. cāsū: *fall*. — dēturbāvit: dēturbō, 1, *carry off (one's) feet*.

12. cōnātū dēsistere: cf. p. 21, l. 3.

14. longum est: *'twould be a long (tale)*; cf. the similar idiomatic use of the present indicative of *possum*, e.g. p. 41, l. 7.

17. forte: cf. the note on p. 85, l. 12.

18. exspectāssent: *should wait for*; lit. *should have waited for*.

sērō adferrētur, cōstituērunt, sī possent, Britannōs ipsi dēterrēre.

Post domum, quae in prōmunturiō posita erat, silva erat parva. Itaque liberī, cum ad aedēs cucurrissent, armīs  
5 cōnfēstim arreptīs, portā posticā in silvam clam ēgressi sunt; tum autem palam ē silvā in aedēs cum armīs prope-  
rāvērunt. Quod idem cum saepius fēcissent, Britannī, quī cōnspiciēbant procul nec quicquam plānē vidēre poterant, manum magnam in aedēs convēnisse ratī, pedetemptīm  
10 tamen prōgredi perseverāvērunt: dum vērō praeter prō-  
munturium nāvigant, subitō alter ex liberis inmisit tēlum ac gubernātōrem graviter vulnerāvit; quī cum prōlapsus gu-  
bernācula ē manibus dīmīssisset, nāvis ē cursū flūmine se-  
cundō ferrī coepta est. Quam ob rem Britannī, sē sic omnis  
15 interficī posse arbitrātī, animō minimē aequō sē recēpērunt ad oppidum, unde nūper profectī erant.

## LESSON 88

### *Horatius at the Bridge*

Quae rēs memorābilis mē admonet dē facinore simili sed maiōre, quod Rōmae antiquitus ab Horātiō quōdam factum esse trāditur. Cum enim bellum ā rēge Porsinnā esset  
20 Rōmānis indictum, Iāniculum impetū repentinō captum est

1. sērō: adv., *late*; in this context, *too late*.

3. domum: (*their*) *home*. — posita erat: *had been built*.

5. portā: *door*; for syntax, cf. sēmītā, p. 103, l. 17. — posticā: posticus, -a, -um, *back*.

7. idem: note the gender, and cf. p. 103, l. 12. — saepius: *over and over again*; what use of the compar.?

8. quicquam: neut. of quisquam (cf. p. 2, l. 11).

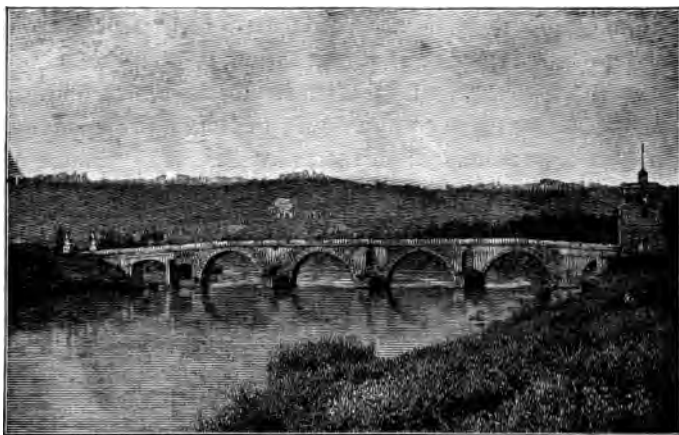
11. alter ex: *one of* (the two)

13. secundō: cf. p. 87, l. 18.

14. coepta est: cf. the note on coeptus est, p. 66, l. 12.

18. Rōmae: note that this is a town name.

20. Iāniculum: a hill on the west bank of the Tiber, opposite Rome.



PŌNS

Until the second century B.C., the only bridge across the Tiber at Rome was of wood. Afterward several stone bridges were built, one of which is shown above.

lōmānique perterriti trāns Tiberim in urbem quam celerimē fugere coepērunt. Tum Horātius, qui sentiēbat hostēs, isi pōns esset perruptus, urbe quoque statim potitūrōs, ivis suōs hortātus est ut pontem igni ferrōque perrumpēnt, cum ipse impetum hostium sōlus sustinēret.

Itaque cum duōbus amicis fidēlibus, quōs pudor eum ēserere nōn patiēbātur, ad primum aditum pontis fortiter rōgressus, audācissimē ibi cōstitit. Quā audāciā obstupefacti, hostēs primō paulum morātī sunt, deinde impetum criōrem fēcērunt; Horātius vērō, minās contumēliāsque vōciferāns, summā virtūte dimicābat, nec locō cessit priusquam post tergum pōns perruptus est. Tum in Tiberim rēmātus dēsiliit, et ad rīpam alteram incolumis pervēnit, quō paulō ante, exiguā parte pontis adhūc relictā, amicōs luo sē recipere coēgerat.

Sic memoriae trāditum est; Līvius autem (ā quō haec iarrantur) facinus hoc apud posterōs plūs glōriae quam ideī habuisse palam cōfitebatur.

1. quam celerrimē: translate freely.

3. pōns (pontis, M.): *bridge*. — esset perruptus: cf. *expectāssent*, p. 104, l. 18; for mood, cf. *moveantur*, p. 61, l. 14.

4. ferrō: *ferrum*, -ī, N., *iron*; *reely, the ax.*

5. cum: *while*.

6. pudor (-ōris, M.): *shame*.

7. patiēbātur: we would say "*would not allow*"; cf. *vidēbant*, p. 36, l. 7. — aditum: *aditus*, -ūs, M., *approach*. — pontis: cf. l. 3.

8. obstupefacti: *obstupefactus*, -a, -um, part., *amazed*.

10. minās: *minae*, -ārum, F.: *threats*.

11. vōciferāns: *vōciferor*, 1, *shout out*. — dimicābat: *fought on*. — locō: cf. the note on p. 7, l. 4.

13. dēsiliit: *dēsiliō*, 4, -silui, *leap down*.

14. quō: the adv.; cf. p. 47, l. 2. — exiguā parte, etc.: translate by a "*while*" clause.

16. memoriae, etc.: cf. p. 85, l. 6, and translate freely. — haec: neuter.

17. apud posterōs: *i.e. in the following generations*; lit. what? — plūs: see *multus*. — glōriae: partitive gen.

18. cōfitebatur: *cōfiteor*, 2, -fessus sum, *admits*.

## LESSON 89

*A Favor Repaid*

Ōlim Indus ignōtus in dēversōrium ēsuriēns vēnit; cum autem diū frūstrā vēnātus esset, cibum emere nōn potuit. Sed colōnus quīdam, quī animadverterat fame hominem esse paene cōfectum, caupōnam iussit cibum dare, ipseque pecūniam solvit. Indus colōnō grātiās maximās ēgīt pollicitusque est sē semper beneficium memoriā custōditūrum.

Paucis post annis colōnus ipse ab Indis captus est et in Canadam dēductus; ubi ā dominō in silvās saepe lignātiōnis causā missus est. Ōlim, cum procul ab aedibus laborāret, subitō in cōspectum vēnit Indus quīdam, quī eum hortātus est ut paulō post in locum certum ad colloquium venīret. Colōnus haud invitus pollicitus est; tum insidiās veritus cōsiliū mūtāvit, neque ad locum vēnit cōstitutum. Paucis post diēbus Indus eum iterum convēnit, iterumque hortātus est ut aliō diē ad locum dēstinātum īret.

Quō ubi perventum est, Indus sē sequī iussit, ac per silvās celeriter profectus est. Alter, etsi timor eius occupābat animum, finemque itineris omninō nesciēbat, est tamen secūtus; cumque diēs multōs per silvās iter fēcissent, poststrēmō ad oppidum pervēnērunt, quod colōnus laetus ut suum cōgnōvit. Tum dux, "Ego is sum," inquit, "quem tū abhinc multōs mēnsis cibō iūvistī. Hōc modō referō grātiām."

1. ēsuriēns (-entis, part.): hungry. — cum: *inasmuch as*.

4. cōfectum: *exhausted*. — caupōnam: caupōna, -ae, F., *mistress of (the) inn*.

8. lignātiōnis: cf. the use of the gerundive with causā to express purpose.

14. Indus: *the Indian*.

15. dēstinātum: dēstinātus, -a, -um, *designated*.

16. sē: obj. of sequī.

17. eius: modifier of animum.

18. finem: contrast finēs.

20. ut suum: *as his own*.

21. is: *the man*.

22. grātiām: contrast the meaning of grātiās, l. 5.

## LESSON 90

*An Earthquake in Colonial Times*

Cum iam colōnī plūrimī Britanniam Novam incolēbant, ōlim noctū, dum hominēs ferē omnēs somnō gravi quiēscunt, repente mōtus terrae maximus factus est. Sonō horrendō ad auris adlātō, colōnī graviter permōtī ē lectīs cōnfestim  
 5 exsiluērunt, tēcta ratī undique labefactāri; quī etiam erant quī timērent nē vēnisset diēs mundi ultima aut certē adesset. Interim in marī nautae mōtum sēnsērunt, crēdebantque nāvīs suās in saxa abscondita dēlātās esse; in agrīs autem bovēs, cum mūgītūs maximōs ēderent, omnis in partēs per-  
 10 territī cucurrērunt.

Quīdam cōnfīrmant sē tum vīdisse ignem per terram currere; ac certē quōdam locō erat terrae hiātus, ex quō pulvis levis fūmō similis aliquamdiū efferēbātur. Diēbus proximīs complūrēs cōnsecūtī sunt mōtūs, sed minōrēs;  
 15 multique hominēs, quī adhūc religiōnem sprēverant, propter timōrem ad cultum deōrum sē convertērunt. Trāditum quoque est, aquam cuiusdam fontis, quī terrae mōtū humī dēpressus erat, postea hieme interdum glaciem factam

3. mōtus (-ūs, M.): lit. *movement*.

5. labefactāri: labefactō, 1, *shake down*. — erant quī: *there were (some) who*. The subjunctive is used regularly after any tense of *sunt* quī or *nēmō* est quī.

6. mundi: mundus, -i, M., *the world*.

8. autem: *moreover*.

9. cum . . . ēderent: note the ē, and translate by a partic. phrase. — mūgītūs: mūgītus, -ūs, M., *bel-  
lowing*.

11. quīdam: here, noun. — per: *along*.

12. hiātus (-ūs, M.): with gen., *cleft (in)*, lit. *yawning (of)*.

13. levis (-is, -e): *ligh*: (of weight). — efferēbātur: *i.e. kept rising*; lit. *what?*

16. cultum: cultus, -ūs, M., *worship*.

17. humī: *into the ground*: what is the commoner meaning?

18. dēpressus erat: dēprimō, 3, -pressī, -pressus, *sink*. — glaciem factam esse: *i.e. froze solid*.

esse, quamquam antea omni tempore anni uberius fluere consueverat.

## LESSON 91

### *Evils of the Slave Trade*

Gentēs, quae Africam incolunt, quondam inter se saepe dimicabant, captivique a negotiatoribus empti, navibus in terrās sunt transportati diversās, ubi dominis novis traditi summis laboribus aetatem in agris agebant. Dum autem navigant, condicio captivorum miserrima erat; nam traditum est dominos, qui quaestum volebant facere quam maximum neque aliud curabant, valitudinī salutique servorum operam minimam dedisse.

Qui igitur miseri in locis angustis foedisque procul a luce caelique spiritū saepe cludebantur. Quin etiam interdum, ut naves quam plurimos portarent, inter se vinctis iuncti, supini diēs noctesque iacere coacti sunt, spatio minimo tantum relictō, ubi pauci vice alternā se exercere possent: quorum cruciatus, tempestate coorta, maximus erat; tum enim foris omnibus clausis vix respirare poterant, multique

1. *quamquam*: *whereas*. — *uberius*: adv. (positive not in use), *very freely*.

4. *navibus*: *by ship*.

6. *laboribus*: translate as sing. — *aetatem*: cf. *vitam* with the same verb, p. 61, l. 13. — *dum . . . navigant*, etc.: *freely, it was, however, while they were on shipboard, that, etc.*

9. *aliud*: *anything else*.

11. *qui . . . miseri*: *the poor wretches*. — *locis*: *quarters*. — *foedis*: *foedus*, -a, -um, *foul*.

12. *caeli*: (*open*) *air*. — *spiritū*: *spiritus*, -ūs, M., *breath*.

13. *inter se*: *i.e. to one another*. — *iuncti*: *iungō*, 3, *iunxi*, *iunctus*, *bind*.

15. *pauci*: *i.e. small groups*. — *vice alternā*, abl. phrase, *in turn*. — *exercere*: *exerceō*, 2, -ui, -itus, *exercise*. — *possent*: note the mood. 16. *quorum*: (*but*) *their*. — *tempestate coorta*: translate by a "when" clause.

17. *foris*: *forus*, -i, M., *gangway*. — *respirare*: *respirō*, 1, *breathe*.

moriēbantur. Quō modō saepe factum est ut vivī, vinculis retentī, inter mortuōs iacere cōgerentur, dōnec posterō diē nautae solverent mortuōs corporaque in mare abicerent.

## LESSON 92

*A Pirate Outdone*

Illis temporibus, cum servī plūrimī ex Āfricā in terrās  
5 dīversās trānsportārentur, saepe in marī coniūrātiōnem  
inter sē nautae fēcērunt, dominōque nāvis aut coniectō in  
vincula aut interfectō, ducem novum ipsī dēligēbant; quō  
modō pīrātae factī secundum litus Āfricae ultrō citrōque  
nāvigābant et nāvēs gentium spoliābant omnium.

- 10 Quōrum ē numerō quidam in portum olim vectī longin-  
quum, ubi in litore collocāta erant castra parva Britannica,  
lēgātum tēla aurumque ē castris ad sē mittere summā  
superbiā iussērunt. Ille vērō, vir maximae cōstantiae,  
aurum respondit sē nōn datūrum esse, sed tēla libenter mis-  
15 sūrum, sī eōrum nāvis propius accessisset. Tum pīrātae  
īrā commōtī castra ācerrimē adortī sunt, ac lēgātus Britan-  
nicus, postquam tēla dēfēcērunt ē castris sē recipere coāc-  
tus, postrēmō ab hostibus captus est; quī eum cum  
custōdibus cōnfēstim ad ducem misērunt. Iste scilicet

1. moriēbantur: cf. rapiēbant,  
p. 7, l. 17.—factum est ut: cf.  
p. 74, l. 15.

3. solverent . . . abicerent:  
translate both the subjunctives  
"should."

5. marī: *the high seas.*

8. pīrātae: predicate nom.

9. nāvēs: *commerce.*

10. ē: *of.*

12. aurum: do not confuse  
aurum with auris.

14. libenter: cf. the note on  
p. 93, l. 9.

15. accessisset: cf. esset per-  
ruptus, p. 107, l. 3.

16. īrā commōtī: *freely, filled  
with wrath.*

18. cum custōdibus: *i.e. under  
guard.*—ducem: (*their*) chief.



hominem horrendis exsecratiōibus accēpit, quod animō tam obstinātō rēsistere ausus erat; lēgātus autem minimē territus audācter respondit atque etiam maiōribus exsecratiōibus quam dux ipse ūsus est. Quae rēs ei salūtī fuit; 5 nam pirātae cēteri, novā rē dēlectātī, cachinnōs sustulērunt maximōs et ultrō vitam hominī concessērunt, quod male dicendō ducem ipsum superāre potuerat.

## LESSON 93

*Colonization in Africa*

Americānī Britannīque, cum dēmum plānē coepissent cōgnōscere mala, quae ab emptiōne servōrum oriuntur, 10 colōniās in Āfricam statuērunt dēdūcendās esse, in quās libertinī mitterentur; illisque temporibus erant etiam qui servōs ferē omnēs postrēmō sic in patriam reducī posse existimārent.

Colōniae, quae primō sunt eō dēductae, nōn erant validae, 15 et saepe cum incolis Āfricānis pugnandum erat. Sicut olim, cum colōnī quīdam prōmunturiō insulāque emptīs

1. exsecratiōibus: exsecratiō, -ōnis, F., curse.

5. novā rē: at the unexpected turn (of events); abl. of cause. — dēlectātī: dēlectātus, -a, -um, part., highly amused, lit. delighted. — cachinnōs: cachinnus, -i, M., roar of laughter.

7. dicendō: abl. of specification.

9. mala: as (neut.) noun; cf. the somewhat similar use of the neut. bona. — emptiōne servōrum: freely, traffic in slaves; lit. what?

— oriuntur: orior, 4, ortus sum, arise (cf. coorior).

10. in Āfricam . . . dēdūcendās esse: freely, ought to be planted in Africa.

11. libertinī: libertinus, -i, M., freedman. — mitterentur: note the mood.

12. patriam: i.e. (their) rightful country. — posse: could.

13. existimārent: cf. the note on erant quī, p. 109, l. 5.

14. eō: the adv.; for meaning, cf. quō, p. 107, l. 14.

oppidum parvum in litore condidissent, nātiōnēs proximae molestē ferēbant peregrinōs illic cōnsēdisse; verēbantur enim nē iūra sua vetera āmitterent, emptiōque servōrum (quā ex rē quaestum magnum faciēbant) mox tōta reprimētur. Quārē, armātis undique convocātis, in oppidum colōnōrum repente impetum fēcērunt ācerimum. Intrā mūnitiōnēs erant dux aeger et trīgintā quinque tantum hominēs, quī arma ferre possent; at illi, cum in proeliō quindecim ex ipsōrum numerō aut vulnerātī aut interfectī essent, hostēs praedā occupātōs postrēmō in fugam coniēcērunt. Paucis autem post diēbus oppugnātiō ā barbaris redintegrāta est; quī nē tum quidem rem bene gessērunt. Itaque, pāce iam dēmum factā, haec quidem colōnia paulatim numerō vīribusque aucta est.

## LESSON 94

*A Prize Won and Lost*

15 Ōlim, cum nāvis longa Americāna per mare Mediterrāneum nāvigāret, nautae procul vēlum vidērunt; quō visō, praefectus, liburnicās pīrātārum haud procul abesse ratus, suōs summā celeritāte insequi iussit. Dum autem vēlis rēmisque contendunt, subitō nāvis in saxīs absconditis  
20 adhaesit, neque ūllō modō dētrūdī poterat. Quō cāsū

2. molestē ferēbant, etc.: *i.e. were much wrought up that*, etc.  
— illic: adv., *there*.

4. tōta: translate as if an adv.

6. intrā: *behind*.

8. cum: *after*.

9. ipsōrum: *their*.

10. occupātōs: *busied*.

12. nē . . . quidem: see the Vocab.

13. haec quidem colōnia: freely,

*this particular colony*; lit. *what?* (Do not confuse *quidem* with *quidam*.)

14. vīribus: contrast the meaning of *vis* and *vīrēs* (see the Vocab.).

19. rēmis: *rēmus*, -ī, M., *oar*. Roman ships often had both *sails* and *oars*, and *vēlis rēmisque* came to be a standing phrase for "at full speed."

secundum litus nūtiātō, pīrātae oppugnandī causā undique convēnerunt, et Americāni, etsī, ut nāvem levārent, in mare iēcerant omnia, postrēmō sē dēdere coācti sunt.

Quā victoriā partā, rēx pīrātārum, veritus nē aliae nāvēs longae oppidum suum oppugnārent, Americānōs miserōs mūnitiōnēs firmāre coēgit, cum interim ā pīrātis captivī tantā diligentīā custodiēbantur, ut, quamquam diēs noctēsque dē fugā cōgitābant, rem numquam perficere possent.

Eis nautis, quī noctū quoque labōrāre volēbant, pecūniā dedit rēx, cum opera sua vellet quam mātūrrimē perfici; illi autem pecūniā acceptam statim prōfūdērunt, et ēbrii per oppidum vagantēs iniūriās oppidānis saepe intulērunt. Tum miris modis poenās dedisse dīcuntur; hominis enim supīnī sola pedum verberābantur, idque saepe tam vehementer ut sanguis exiret. Interdum autem, pecūniā lictōribus datā, storeis interpositis nautae verberābantur, cum interim lēgātus huic rei praepositus (quī tamen extrā forēs carceris morārī solēbat) ex clāmōribus iūdīcābat hominēs cruciātūs patī maximōs.

## LESSON 95

### *A Prize Won and Lost (Continued)*

Interim pīrātae longam nāvem Americānam dē saxīs dētrūserant; quam ob rem captivī scilicet etiam molestius

1. oppugnandī causā: freely, to the attack. What part of the verb is oppugnandī?

2. levārent: levō, 1, *lighten*.

10. vellet: *he was anxious (that)*. — mātūrrimē: from mātūrē.

11. prōfūdērunt: prōfundō, 3, fūdī, -fūsus, *squander*. — ēbrii: *drunken*, -ī, -um, *intoxicated*.

13. miris modis: transl. as sing. — hominis: modifying pedum, l. 14.

14. supīnī: (*placed flat*) on his back. — sola: solum, -ī, N., *sole* (of the foot). — verberābantur: verberō, 1, *beat*. — idque: freely, and that too; strictly, id is subject of fiēbat supplied.

15. sanguis (-inis, M.): *blood*. — exiret: freely, *flowed*. — lictōribus: lictor, -ōris, M., *policeman*.

16. storeis: storea, -ae, F., *mat*.

ferēbant nāvem suam in hostium potestātem vēnisse: itaque eōrum dux, Bēnbrigius nōmine, litterās clam misit, quibus hortātus est alium praefectum Americānum, quī eōdem in marī nāvigābat, ut cīvibus auxiliō veniret praedamque ē manibus hostium ēripere cōnārētur. Ille, litteris acceptis, suspiciōnis vitandae causā liburnicam misit; quae nocte intempestā portum ingressa, ad nāvem longam cursū tam incertō nāvigāvit, ut pirātae quī in eā custodiās agēbant, veriti nē liburnica in nāvem inliderētur, magnā vōce gubernatōrī imperārent ut ancorās iaceret. Is autem respondit ancorās āmissās esse.

Quō respōnsō dēceptī, pirātae liburnicam vagantem propius accēdere patiēbantur, cum subitō ex eā septuāgintā armātī gladiis dēstrictis in nāvem longam ascendērunt atque in hostis perturbātōs impetum fēcērunt ācerrimum. Pirātae fortissimē dimicāverunt; brevī autem paene ad ūnum occisī sunt. Tum, cum reliquī sē in mare iēcissent, ignēs multis simul locis nāvi longae Americāni ipsī admōverunt, quattuorque tantum vulnerātis, liburnicā salvā ad classem sē recēpērunt.

Paulō post oppidum ipsum classe est oppugnātum, atque invītus rēx pirātārum captivōs Americānōs incolumēs abire patī coāctus est.

3. quibus: cf. the note on p. 38, l. 16.

4. cīvibus auxiliō: cf. the same construction with the verb sum.

6. liburnicam: this being the type of vessel used by the pirates themselves (cf. p. 113, l. 17).

8. eā: i.e. nāve longā.

9. magnā: see the Vocab. for the varied meanings of this adj.

12. respōnsō: noun.—dēceptī:

dēcipiō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptus, *throw off (one's) guard*.—vagamem: *erratic*; lit. what? (cf. vagantēs, p. 114, l. 12).—propius: absol. compar., *very close*.

14. dēstrictis: dēstrictus, -a, -um, part., *drawn*.

19. quattuor: as noun.—salvā: i.e. incolumī; translate the abl. by "with."

22. invītus: translate by a phrase.—incolumēs: *scot free*.

## LESSON 96

*A Mysterious Disappearance*

Colōniis multis iam in Americam dēductis, Galli etiam in Indōrum finēs sacerdotēs mittere cōsuēverant, nōn solum ut barbarī ad suam religiōnem converterentur, sed etiam ut illi amīcī essent, si quandō cum Britannis dimiscandum esset. Quī hominēs sānctī interdum maximis in periculis versābantur; sicut ōlim in regiōnibus longinquis, quae postea civitātis Noveboracensis pars factae sunt, sacerdotēs complūrēs, quī cum negōtiatōribus paucis castellum parvum ibi tenēbant, subitō certiōrēs factī sunt Indōs peregrinos omnīs occidere cōstituisse.

Palam fugere nōn audēbant sacerdotēs, neque eis ūllae erant nāvēs, quibus ad Canadam veherentur. Itaque clam intrā castellum scaphās facere statim coepērunt; deinde, postquam omnia ad fugam iam sunt parāta, barbarōs ad convīvium vocāvērunt. Illi convēnērunt laeti; cumque ēdissent omnia, quae sacerdotēs apposuerant, domum regressi in tabernāculis mox sōpitī iacēbant. Tum Galli silentiō scaphās ad ripam portāvērunt, et flūmine secundō ad Canadam versus profecti sunt.

Māne Indi vidērunt castellum clausum; quā rē animadversā, primō sacerdotēs vōta facere crēdebant. Postremō tamen, fenestris ingressi, intus esse nēmīnem

1. colōniis . . . dēductis:  
translate by a "when" clause.

4. si quandō: cf. p. 54, l. 4.

5. sānctī: sānctus, -a, -um,  
*pious*.

6. versābantur: freely, *were exposed (to)*.

11. eis: dat. case.

14. omnia: note the gender.

15. convīvium: convīvium, -i, N., *feast*. Cf. the illustration on the opposite page.

21. vōta facere: *to be at prayers* (vōtum, -i, N., *prayer*).

22. fenestris: cf. the note on p. 76, l. 3.



CONVIVIUM

The Oriental fashion of reclining at meals was much in vogue among the Greeks and Romans. The above illustration is taken from a wall decoration at Pompeii.

timōre maximō sēnsērunt; nesciēbant enim Gallīs ūllās esse scaphās, cōsque arte magicā effūgissee iūdicābant.

## LESSON 97

### *Early Days in Liberia*

Cum in Āfricā abhinc multōs annōs condita esset rēs pūblica, quae Liberia appellātur, incolae eius regiōnis novae civitatī inimicissimī erant. Nam advenae statuerant emptiōnem servōrum reprimendam esse, Āfri autem quae-stum suum dīmittere nōlēbant.

Ōlim prope colōniam quandam subitō multitudō barbarōrum armātōrum per silvam viam rumpere audīta est. Sed in oppidō arma multa apud sacerdotem quendam condita erant; quī, ūnā cum duōbus fabrīs, quī eisdem in aedibus habitābant, tēla cōnfestim in hostis inmittere coepit, multōsque vulnerāvit. Dux tamen Āfrōrum paucīs cum comitibus fortiter prōgressus iam coepit perrumpere pālōs, quī circum aedēs in terrā dēfixi erant. Illum autem ūnus ex fabrīs statim tēlō interfēcit, barbarique ceterī, hōc cāsū perterritī, cōnfestim vertērunt terga et quam celerrimē in silvam sē contulērunt. At paulō post, molestē ferentēs ducem mortuum in colōnōrum potestāte relictum, corporis quaerendī

1. timōre maximō: *to their great alarm*; lit. what?

4. Liberia: note the significance of the name (cf. libertās).

6. emptiōnem servōrum: cf. p. 112, l. 9. — reprimendam: translate the gerundive "must."

9. viam: (*their*) way. — rumpere: translate as if a present part. (rumpō, 3, rūpi, ruptus, lit. break).

10. apud: *at the house of*; what are other meanings of this word?

11. fabrīs: *faber, -brī, M., carpenter*.

12. tēla . . . inmittere coepit: *opened fire*.

14. pālōs: *pālus, -ī, M., stake*; pl., *palisade*.

19. in . . . potestāte: *freely, in the hands*. — relictum: *sc. esse*.

causā rediērunt, summāque virtūte identidem impetum in aedēs fecērunt ācerrimum, dōnec, cum hōram amplius dimicātum esset, subito proeliō dēstitērunt et rursus maestī in silvam regressī sunt.

## LESSON 98

*An Experience with Robbers*

5 Quondam in ripis illius flūminis, quī linguā Indōrum pater aquarū appellābātur, pirātae multī in spēluncīs latēbant, ut nāvigia spoliārent, quae illis temporibus mercibus variīs onusta ultrō citrōque nāvigābant; quīn etiam quōdam locō castra parva fecerant, ibique summā audaciā  
10 nāvēs vel maximās adoriēbantur.

Quem locum olim negōtiātor locuplēs, ventum idōneum nactus, vēlis passis incolumis est praetervectus; quī autem ad ripam nāvem suam appellere nōn ausus est, dōnec duo diēs inde adversō flūmine nāvigāvit. Interim vērō pirātae,  
15 quī nāvem viderant praetereuntem, nec praedam tam pulchram dimittere volēbant, rēctā viā per silvam erant secūtī, et locō opportūnō in insidiis iam latēbant; quī, nāve

1. identidem: adv., *time and again*.

2. hōram amplius: cf. p. 101, l. 3, and the note.

3. proeliō: cf. p. 69, l. 17.

5. quī: for gender, cf. quod, p. 30, l. 6. — linguā: we would say, "*in the language*."

6. spēluncīs: spēlunca, -ae, F., *cave*.

7. mercibus: merx, mercis, F., (sing. and pl.) *merchandise*.

9. ibi: *at that point*.

10. vel: *even*. — maximās: *of the largest size*.

12. nactus: *freely, with the aid of*; lit. what? — passis: see the Vocab. under pandō.

13. duo diēs: *for the space of two days*.

15. praetereuntem: from praetereō.

16. rēctā: rēctus, -a, -um, *straight*, or *direct*. The robbers were able to gain upon the trader because of the bends in the river.



ad ripam appulsā, ē silvā subitō ērūpērunt, ac nautās captōs ad castra sua nāvem reducere coegērunt.

Ibi negōtiātōris coquus Āfer cōnsiliō callidō ūsus est; nam simulābat dominum sibi iniūriās intulisse, sēque gaudere eum captum esse: quō modō in amicitiam pirātārum inrēpsit, quī crēdēbant hominem socium fidēlem esse futurum. Sed ōlim, cēnā omnibus in nāve appositā, coquus repente proximum pirātam in flūmen prōiēcit; quō signō nautae cēterōs quoque in aquam dētrūsērunt. Pirātae ad ripam nandō pervēnērunt; negōtiātor autem nāvem cōnfestim solvit ac summā celeritatē domum profectus est.

## LESSON 99

### *The Capture of Stony Point*

Ōlim Britannī castra satis magna occupāverant in ripā flūminis Hudsōnis, haud procul ā castellis complūribus, quae adhūc tenēbant Americānī victī. Quārē colōnī, ca-  
15 stella sua magnō esse in periculō ratī, castra statim sibi dēlenda esse existimābant. Quam ad rem cōficiendam dēlectus est quīdam Antōnius, vir fortissimus, quī antea facinora saepe ausus erat audācissima.

Omnibus rēbus parātis, Americānī, per silvās clam pro-  
20 fectī, sōlis occāsū prope castra Britannica in latebris cōn-

1. captōs: translate as if cēpērunt et.

3. coquus (-ī, M.): cook. — ūsus est: put into execution.

6. inrēpsit: inrēpō, 3, -rēpsi, worm (one's) way.

7. omnibus: i.e. for the whole party.

8. quō signō: cf. p. 57, l. 16.

10. nandō: cf. p. 12, l. 17

15. magnō: modifier of periculō.

16. dēlenda esse: for the translation, cf. the note on reprimendam, p. 118, l. 6.

18. ausus erat: freely, had performed.

20. sōlis: sōl, sōlis, M., sun. — occāsū: abl. of time when (occāsus, -ūs, M., lit. setting).

sēderunt, ibique hōrās complūris morātī sunt; tum tertiā ferē vigiliā silentiō ad castra accessērunt, cum interim duce ūterentur servō Afrō, quī Pompēius appellābātur.

Ūnā cum servō praegrediēbantur duo militēs, quī vestimenta agricolārum gerēbant. Quārē custōdēs nihil suspicantēs hominēs propius accēdere passi sunt; Pompēius enim erat omnibus nōtus, quod antea ad castra saepe vēnerat ut vēnderet bācās: quīn etiam sīgnum eī ā Britannis interdum datum erat. Ita factum est ut sine strepitū custōdēs ā militibus duōbus caperentur; et legiōnēs ipsae paene in castra vēnērunt, priusquam Britannī sēnsērunt hostēs adesse. Tum autem celeriter concurrērunt ad arma et fortissimē dimicāverunt.

In proeliō Antōnius graviter vulnerātus est; castra autem sunt expugnāta ab Americānis, quī brevī deīēcērunt opera omnia, quae Britannī magnā dīlīgentiā ibi effēcerant.

## LESSON 100

*Nathan Hale*

Postquam Britannī Longā insulā tōtā potītī sunt, Vasingtō tamen Novī Eborāci aliquamdiū morātus est, cum discēdere nōllet, dōnec dē cōnsiliis hostium certior factus

2. cum . . . ūterentur: translate by a partic. phrase. — duce: (as) *guide*.

3. quī . . . appellābātur: *named*.

4. praegrediēbantur: praegredior, 3, -gressus sum, *go on ahead*.

5. nihil suspicantēs: *i.e. without suspicion*.

6. propius: cf. the force of the word on p. 115, l. 12.

7. omnibus: as (masc.) noun dat. case.

8. sīgnum: *countersign*.

9. datum erat: *had been communicated*. — factum est ut: cf. p. 74, l. 15. — sine strepitū: *without (making any) disturbance*.

12. concurrērunt: sc. Britannī.

18. Novī Eborāci: locative case; cf. domī and humī.

19. factus esset: cf. *expectās* sent, p. 104, l. 18.

esset. Diū ille hominem frūstrā quaerēbāt, quī veste mūtātā castra Britannica speculandī causā adire vellet; postremō autem ad hanc rem suscipiendam lēgātus adulēscēns repertus est: quī, vestimentis magistrī puerōrum sūmptis, liburnicā vectus ad insulam incolumis pervēnit. Ubi Britannī, quī nihil suspicābantur, hominem liberē circum castra omnia ambulāre passi sunt. Ille autem diligenter faciēbat dēscripsiōnēs; commentāriōs vērō, nē sibi essent dētrimentō, sī in manūs hostium vēnisset, Latīnē scrīpsit. 10 Tum paucīs post diēbus, rē bene cōfectā, ad locum rediit, unde ad continentem trānsitūrus erat.

Dum autem ibi liburnicam exspectat, in dēversōriō ā perfugā quōdam cōspectus est, quī Britannōs sine morā dē eius latebris certiōrēs fēcit. Itaque ab hostibus cōfē- 15 stim missa est nāvis longa, quae hominem interciperet. Scaphā ē nāvi ad litus appulsā, lēgātus scilicet amicōs adesse crēdebāt; quārē ē latebris palam prōgressus, in litore facile captus est. Is paulō post ā Britannis capitis damnātus, fortissimē sē gerēbat; cumque tempus moriendī iam 20 adesset, aequissimō animō “Hoc solum mē paenitet,” inquit, “quod mihi est ūna vīta tantum, quam prō patriā largiar.”

1. ille: omit in translating. — qui . . . vellet: *willing*. — veste mūtātā: *i.e. in disguise*.

2. speculandī causā: *i.e. as a spy*; lit. *what?*

4. magistrī puerōrum: *a tutor*.

6. liberē: *adv., freely, or at will*.

8. dēscripsiōnēs: *dēscriptiō, -ōnis, F., (a) drawing* (cf. *scribō*). — commentāriōs: *commentārii, -ōrum, M., notes*.

9. dētrimentō: *dat. of service* (cf. *praesidiō*, p. 65, l. 4); *translate freely*. — vēnisset: cf. *factus esset*,

p. 121, l. 19. — Latīnē: *adv., in Latin*.

11. trānsitūrus erat: *was to cross*.

18. is: omit in translating. — capitis damnātus: cf. the note on p. 47, l. 16.

19. moriendī: *freely, of execution*.

20. aequissimō: *fully composed*. — mē paenitet: *causes me regret* (*paenitet, 2, paenituit*).

21. quod: *that*. — largiar: *subjunctive*. For the phrasing of the whole clause, cf. p. 39, l. 17.

# STORIES FROM CAESAR RETOLD

## THE WINTER OF 54-53 B.C.

### LESSON 101

In 58 B.C. Julius Caesar became governor of northern Italy and the vast country extending from the Alps to the North Sea, and spent the next nine years in disciplining various tribes of that great territory.

#### *Unexpected Trouble*

Caesar, cum in Galliā bellum gerēbat, tōtam aestātem hostēs premere solitus est, tum, ut vīrēs militum cōservaret, exercitum in hiberna dēdūcēbat: nam caelum eārum regiōnum hieme asperrimum est; quārē ille iūdicābat  
5 aestāte sibi cum hostibus esse dimicandum, reliquōs autem annī mēnsēs in hibernis militēs retinendōs esse. Ōlim, cum trānsisset in Britanniam multōsque diēs cum incolis eius insulae bellum gessisset, aestāte exāctā ad continentem rediit. Ibi certior factus est propter siccitātem in Galliā  
10 summam esse frūmentī inopiam. Itaque exercitum in partēs complūrēs dīvisum in dīversis civitātibus hiemandi causā collocāvit.

1. cum: at the time when. — aestātem: not aetātem. The acc. may be rendered "throughout."

2. vīrēs: do not confuse vis and vir.

3. dēdūcēbat: note the tense. — caelum: climate.

4. asperrimum: i.e. as compared with that of Italy. — ille: omit in translating.

6. Ōlim: freely, one year.

8. aestāte exāctā: freely, at the very end of the season; cf. vigiliā . . . exāctā, p. 102, l. 8.

9. siccitātem: siccitās, -ātis, F., drought.

11. dīvisum: freely, after dividing, etc.; lit. what? — in . . . collocāvit: quartered upon. — dīversis civitātibus: the tribes of

**GALLIA**

in factō, dux quidam Gallōrum, nōmine Ambiorix, cum  
 tus tot in partēs divisus esset, Rōmānōs iam dēnum  
 superārī posse ratus, ūna castra longinqua subitō  
 ortus; impetus autem fortiter exceptus est ā nostris,  
 quītēs hostium cōnfēstim in fugam dedērunt. Quā  
 iectī, Galli clāmāvērunt sē colloquium velle; quō au-  
 tēgātī quī illis castris praeerant, extrā mūnitiōnēs nōn  
 vērunt eōs mittere, quī cum Ambiorige colloquerentur.

## LESSON 102

*A Parley with the Enemy*

colloquium missus est C. Arpinēius, eques Rōmānus,  
 Iūnius, Hispāniēnsis, quī iam ante ā Caesare ipsō  
 dēlēctus erat, ut cum Ambiorige ageret.

cum extrā mūnitiōnēs ēgressi essent, rēx cōfirmāvit  
 ūniversōs cōstituisse eō ipsō diē omnia hiberna  
 ris simul oppugnāre, nē qua legiō alteri legiōni

re numerous, and more or  
 lependent of one another.  
 ling his force for the win-  
 vas Caesar's idea, in view  
 scanty crops, to distribute  
 dely than usual among the  
 ribes the burden of supply-  
 grain needed by his soldiers.  
 im: causal.

nginqua: this particular  
 No. 4 on the map) was  
 about two hundred miles  
 Caesar's headquarters at  
 briva.

etrīs: the story being told  
 e point of view of the  
 ..

5. quā spē: the same con-  
 struction as with dēsistō (e.g.  
 p. 119, l. 3); translate freely.

7. castris: for syntax, cf.  
 p. 58, l. 12.

8. eōs: men.

9. C.: i.e. Cāius (Gaius).—  
 eques Rōmānus: a Roman knight,  
 i.e. a member of the middle order  
 in the Roman state.

10. Q.: i.e. Quintus.

12. rēx: i.e. Ambiorix.

13. ūniversōs: freely, gener-  
 ally; lit. what?

14. nē qua: so that no; cf.  
 the note on quid, p. 56, l. 1.—  
 legiō: legion (a body of about

subsidiō venire posset; sē tamen invitum castra oppugnāsse, sed voluntāti ceterōrum Gallōrum civitatem suam resistere nōn potuisse. "Nec tamen," inquit, "Caesaris in mē beneficiōrum immemor sum; itaque vōs magnopere hortor, ut quam celerrimē exercitum vestrum ad proxima hiberna dēducātis. Magna enim manus Germānōrum Rhēnum nūper trānsiit, quōrum multitudīni nullō modō resistere poteritis. Quārē salūti vestrae statim cōsultite." Simul pollicitus est sē Rōmānōs per finis suōs incolumēs iter facere passūrum.

Quā orātiōne habitā, discessit Ambiorix; nūntiī autem rediērunt in castra lēgātōsque dē rēgis verbis certiōrēs fēcērunt.

## LESSON 103

### *Division of Opinion in the Roman Camp*

Q. Sabinus et L. Cotta lēgātī, rē repentinā permōtī, ea verba, etsī ab hoste dicta erant, tamen nōn negligenda esse existimābant; itaque, cōsiliō convocātō, quid optimum factū esset diū disputātum est.

Tribūnī centuriōnēsque complūrēs nihil sibi temerē agen-

4000 infantry, supplemented usually by a small detachment of cavalry, mostly foreign). In the camp attacked, the force amounted to a legion and a half; the other camps were manned by a legion apiece.

1. subsidiō: dat. of service.
2. voluntāti: voluntās, -ātis, F., wish; for syntax, see the Vocab. under resistō.
3. in mē (acc.): to me.
4. immemor (-oris, adj.): unmindful.

5. vestrum: vester, -tra, -trum, your.

7. trānsiit: has crossed.
12. lēgātōs: the commanders.
14. L.: i.e. Lūcius. — lēgātī: cf. l. 12.

15. negligenda: negligō, 3, neglēxi, neglēctus, disregard, or ignore.

16. cōsiliō: council of war.
17. factū: supine, to do.—set: subj. in indirect question.
18. tribūnī (sc. militum):

- dum, neque ex hibernis iniussū Caesaris discēdendum iūdicābant; cum enim castra mūnitissima essent, crēdēbant sē Germānis facile resistere posse, dōnec Caesar cum legiōnibus subsidiō veniret. Sabinus autem, veritus nē Galli cum  
 5 Germānis sē coniungerent, statim discēdendum cēnsuit; sciēbat enim Germānis magnō dolōri fuisse victōriās superiōrēs Rōmānōrum, neque arbitrābātur Gallōs, qui tot contumeliās ā Rōmānis accēperant, sē cum hoste quōvis coniungere dubitātūrōs.
- 10 Ōrātiōne in utramque partem habitā, cum Cotta sententiae collēgae suī ācritē resisteret, Sabinus postrēmō irātus “Fiat,” inquit, “ut vōbīs vidētur; ego nōn is sum, qui mortis periculō magnopere terrear.”

## LESSON 104

*The Advice of the Enemy is Taken*

- Quibus verbis commōti, omnēs statim ē cōnsiliō surrēxērunt, lēgātōsque vehementer hortāti sunt nē suā pertināciā rem in summum periculum dēdūcerent: neque enim ūllum

(*military*) *tribunes*. Of these there were six for each legion; in rank they stood next to the legion commander. — *centuriōnēs*: *centurions* (subordinate officers, ranking from captain down).

3. *legiōnibus*: *troops*.

6. *dolōri*: dat. of service. — *superiōrēs*: as on p. 79, l. 7.

8. *ā*: at the hands of. — *ē*: obj. of *coniungere*, l. 9. — *hoste*: sc. *Rōmānōrum*. — *quōvis*: from *quīvis*.

10. *in utramque partem*: freely, *pro and con*. — *cum . . . resisteret*: translate by a partic. phrase. —

*sententiae*: for syntax, cf. *Germānis*, l. 3.

11. *collēgae*: *collēga*, -ae, M., lit. *colleague*; here, *brother officer* (namely, Sabinus).

12. *fiat*: let it be. — *ut . . . vidētur*: as (*it*) seems best. — *is . . . quī*: cf. *eōs* . . . *quī*, p. 125, l. 8.

16. *rem*: *matters*. — *neque*: in combination with *enim* and other postpositive words, *neque* usually replaces *nōn*. In the translation of this particular clause, combine the negative with *ūllum* (= *nūllum*).



hostem sibi timendum esse, si modo omnēs idem probārent; in dissēnsiōne autem nūllam esse spem.

Cum iam ad mediam noctem disputātum esset, tum dēmum Sabinī sententia superāvit, ac māne castra mōtum  
5 iri militibus prōnūtiātum est. Cōsūmpta est vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cum militēs bona colligerent sua, nec satis scirent quid in hibernis relinquendum, aut quid sēcum portandum esset. Deinde primā lūce ē castris longissimō  
10 agmine maximisque impedimentis profecti sunt; plērique enim nōn suspicābantur Ambiorigem omnia ea, quae dē Germānōrum adventū dixerat, mentitum esse, cum spēraret ita sē Rōmānōs ex hibernis ēlicere posse.

At interim hōstēs, quī ex nocturnō strepitū intellēxerant lēgātōs cōstituisse cōnfestim castra movēre, in silvās  
15 paulum sē recēperant insidiisque locō idōneō collocātis adventum Rōmānōrum cupidē exspectābant.

## LESSON 105

### *The Romans are Ambushed*

Ita factum est ut, cum maior pars agminis Rōmānōrum in magnam vallem dēscendisset, Galli subitō ē latebris

1. timendum esse: *need be feared*, a common force of the gerundive, esp. in negative phrases. The indirect discourse at this point is due to the idea of saying (*dixerunt*) implied in *hortāti sunt*, p. 127, l. 15. — modo: consult the Vocab. under *si*. — idem probārent: *i.e. should agree upon one plan*; lit. what?

2. dissēnsiōne: dissēnsiō, -ōnis, f., *disagreement*.

4. mōtum iri: what part of the verb?

5. vigiliis: we would say "*in wakefulness*." What is another meaning of this word?

6. colligerent: colligō, 3, -lēgi, -lēctus, *get together*. Translate this clause by a partic. phrase.

7. relinquendum: sc. *esset*; for mood, cf. *esset*, p. 126, l. 17. — aut: we would say "*and*."

8. longissimō: and, therefore, *straggling*.

11. cum spēraret: cf. the cum-clause in l. 6.

- Erumpent, atque iniquissimō nostris locō proelium committeretur. Sabinus, qui adhuc nihil suspicatus erat, acerrimō hostium impetū vehementer commōtus, in omnibus partēs properāvit ac cohortēs dispōnere cōnātus est: Cotta  
 5 Vērō, qui cōgitāverat haec posse in itinere accidere, ob eamque causam cēnsuerat ex hibernis nōn discēdendum esse, virum magnum interim sē praebēbat; omnibus enim modis commūni cōsulēbat salutī, ac fortissimē officia et imperātōris et militis simul praestābat.
- 10 Tum, quod propter longitūdinem agminis nōn facile prōvidērī poterat quid quōque locō faciendum esset, lēgātī suis imperāvērunt ut, impedimentis relictis, in orbem cōsisterent. Quod cōnsilium (etsi eōdem imperātōrēs summī in eius modī cāsū ūti solent) tum haud fēliciter accidit; nam  
 15 hōstēs, nōn sine maximō timōre impedimenta ā Rōmānis relictā esse ratī, etiam ācrius iam dimicāvērunt.

1. nostris: dat. case; construe with iniquissimō.—mitteretur: note the termination, which indicates the case of proelium.

3. acerrimō: translate the superlative "exceedingly."

4. cohortēs: ten cohorts constituted a legion (p. 125, l. 14, note).

5. haec: neut.—ob eamque causam: the prep. ob does not combine with -que, which is, therefore, passed on to the following word.

7. virum magnum: pred. acc.—praebēbat: praebē, 2, -ul, -itus, show.

8. commūni . . . salutī: for syntax, cf. p. 126, l. 8.—et . . . et: correlative.

9. militis: a soldier (in the ranks).

10. longitūdinem: longitūdō, -inis, F., extent (cf. longus).

11. prōvidērī: note the last letter of the word.—quōque: from quisque.—faciendum: cf. the note on p. 128, l. 1.

12. in orbem: i.e. so as to form a circle.

13. eōdem: referring to cōnsilium.

14. modī: sort.

16. etiam ācrius: (all the) more fiercely.

## LESSON 106

*The Enemy Prevail*

Accēdēbat ut militēs multī ab signīs discēderent et bona sua cārissima ab impedimentis arripere cōnārentur : cēteri autem, quamquam ā Fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā, Ambiorīx suōs procul tēla conicere iussit nec propius accēdere. Quam ob rem, cum iam aliqua cohors excesserat ex orbe atque impetum fēcerat, summā celeritāte fugiēbant hostēs; cum autem cohors rursus ad  
10 aciem sē recipere coeperat, tum Galli, undique coorti, nostrōs ācerimē premēbant.

Cum sic ā primā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnātum esset, T. Balventius, vir fortis et magnae auctōritātis, trāgulā graviter vulnerātus est; Q. Lūcānius, fortissimē pugnāns,  
15 dum circumventō filiō subsidiō venit, est interfectus; ac L. Cotta lēgātus, cum militēs hortārētur, fundā percussus est. Quibus rēbus permōtus Sabīnus, cum procul Ambiorīgem suōs cohortantem cōspēxisset, interpretem suum

1. accēdēbat: impersonal use, *it was added (that)*; freely, *matters were made worse by the fact (that)*.  
— ab signīs: *i.e.* from their places in the line. Each cohort had its own special standards.

4. quotiēns . . . prōcurrerat: cf. p. 72, l. 1, with the note on the pluperfect.

5. ab: cf. the use of this prep. in the phrase ā tergō. — cadēbat: note the tense.

7. propius: absol. compar.

8. excesserat: excēdō, 3, -cessī,

-cessum est, *move out*. — orbe: cf. p. 129, l. 12.

10. aciem: *i.e.* orbem. — coorti: freely, *closing in*.

12. hōram octāvam: cf. the note on p. 74, l. 16.

13. T.: *i.e.* Titus.

15. circumventō: translate by a relative clause.

16. fundā: funda, -ae, *F., sling*; see the illustration on p. 140.

18. suōs: reflexive to Ambiorīgem. — interpretem: *interpreter*, -etis, C., *interpreter*.

Cn. Pompēium ad eum misit rogātum, ut sibi militibusque parceret.

## LESSON 107

*Annihilation of the Roman Force*

Rēx respondit nihil Rōmānīs timendum esse, sēque Sabīni ipsius salūtem praestāre, si ille ad colloquium venire vellet. Quō audītō, Cotta tamen negāvit ad armātum hostem sē itūrum, atque in eō perseverāvit. Sabīnus autem tribūnōs militum centuriōnēsque quī adstābant sē sequī iussit; cumque propius Ambiorigem accessisset, iussus arma abicere, pāruit, ac suis ut idem facerent imperāvit. Dum autem ibi dē condiціōnibus inter sē agunt, Sabinus paulatim circumventus ā Gallīs occīsus est.

Tum vērō hostēs sustulērunt ululātum, impetūque in nostrōs factō ordinēs perturbāvērunt. Ibi L. Cotta pugnāns periit cum maximā parte militum. Reliquī sē in sīberna recēpērunt, unde erant nūper ēgressī. E quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, homō magnārum vīrium, cum cōfertifsimā multitudīne hostium premerētur, aquilam intrā vāllum prōiēcit, ipse prō castris fortissimē pugnāns interceptus est.

20 Rōmānī aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem sustinuerunt;

1. Cn.: *i.e.* Cnaeus (*Gnaeus*).—  
rogātum: cf. petītum, p. 95, l. 13.

4. vellet: cf. the note on ad-  
moveantur, p. 61, l. 14.

6. eō: (neut.) noun.

8. propius: with the force of  
a prep., quite near to.

9. idem: note the gender.

14. cum: *i.e.* unā cum.

16. aquilifer (-eri, m.): stand-

ard bearer, lit. eagle bearer.—  
Aside from the standards of the  
cohorts, each legion carried a sil-  
ver eagle.—vīrium: from what  
nom. sing.? Give some of the  
meanings of the singular.

17. aquilam: aquila, -ae, f.,  
eagle.

18. ipse: autem may be sup-  
plied.

## FIRST LATIN READER



STANDARD BEARERS

The standards carried in the Roman army were numerous and rather diverse (see also the illustration on page 162). As the eagle was the chief standard of the legion, upon it was lavished all the enthusiastic devotion which modern soldiers feel for their flag. No disgrace was so deep and terrible as to have the eagle fall into the hands of the enemy.

lēsperātā salūte, ad ūnum omnēs sē ipsi interfēcērunt. quī paulō ante ē proeliō effūgerant, per silvās incertis bus ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hiberna pervēnērunt, eum dē rēbus gestis fēcērunt certiōrem.

## LESSON 108

*The Gauls attack a Second Camp*

: victoriā sublātus, Ambiorix statim cum equitātū in uocōs, quī erant eius rēgnō finitimī, profectus est; noctem neque diem intermisit, peditātumque sē subsequi.

dēmōnstrātā Aduātucisque concitātis, posterō diē in ōs pervēnit, eosque hortātus est, nē sui in perpetuum adi occāsiōnem dimitterent. Interfectōs esse lēgātōs omānōs magnamque partem exercitūs interissee docuit; nēque opprimī posse eam quoque legiōnem, quae cum cerōne in finibus eōrum hiemāret. Quā orātiōne Nervii persuāsit.

**lēsperātā:** dēspērō, 1, *desperat*. — sē ipsi: cf. ipse . . .

, 1. 2. The men probably in one another's swords.

**T. Labiēnum:** in con- with in hiberna, this phrase conveniently be rendered by a . . . For the location of Labi- camp, see the map on p. 124. **estis:** lit. *done*; translate using a relative clause.

**sublātus:** from tollō. — in: *territory of*.

**aduātucōs:** for this and peoples mentioned, see again on p. 124.

**intermisit:** sc. cursum, *i.e.*

*drew rein.* — sē: omit in translation.

9. **concitātis:** concitō, 1, *stir up*.

10. **sui:** gen. pl.

11. **liberandī:** gerundive, taking its form from sui. Render the gen. (freely) "to."

13. **facillimēque:** as governing verb for this clause, dixit may be supplied.

14. **Q. Cicerōne:** another of Caesar's lieutenants (see the map). — **eōrum:** *i.e.* Nerviorum. — **hiemāret:** for mood, cf. admoveantur, p. 61, l. 14.

15. **Nervii persuāsit:** *won over the Nervii*; lit. what?

Itaque cōnfēstim dimissis nūntiis ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, nātiōnēsq̄ aliās, ut quam maximis cōpiis auxiliō statim venirent, repente ad Cicerōnis hiberna hostēs sē ostendērunt; ubi nōnnūlli militēs, morte Sabini Cottaēque nōndum nūntiātā, sine timōre extrā mūnitiōnēs officiis variis operam dabant. Ex hīs quīdam, quī lignātiōnis causā in silvās discesserant, repentinō equitum adventū intercepti sunt. Cēterī autem celeriter concurrerunt ad arma, vāllumque cōscendērunt.

## LESSON 109

*The Besieged attempt to Communicate with Caesar*

- 10 Missae sunt ad Caesarem cōnfēstim ā Cicerōne litterae; obsessis autem omnibus viis, ab hostibus missi intercepti sunt. Noctū ex māteriā, quam mūnitiōnis causā comportāverant, nostrī turrēs circiter CXX incredibili celeritāte exstrūxērunt.
- 15 Posterō diē hostēs, multō maiōribus coāctis cōpiis, castra iterum oppugnāvērunt, fossamque complēre cōnātī sunt. Eādem ratiōne, quā prīdiē, nostrī restitērunt. Hoc idem reliquis deinceps diēbus factum est. Nulla pars noctis labōribus militum carēbat: nōn aegris, nōn vulnerātis

2. aliās: not reliquās or cēterās. — ut: the construction is determined by the idea of urging or commanding implied in the sending of messengers. — maximis cōpiis: abl. case; translate "with."

3. ad: in the neighborhood of.

6. lignātiōnis causā: cf. p. 108, l. 8.

7. equitum: i.e. of the enemy.

9. cōscendērunt: manned.

11. missi: part., as (masc.) noun.

12. noctū: during the (following) night. — māteriā: māteria, -ae, f., timber.

17. quā: freely, as; strictly, abl., in the same construction as eādem ratiōne.

18. reliquis: the following. — deinceps: adv., in turn.

19. labōribus militum: freely, toil for the soldiers. — carēbat: was without, or lacked; cf. the note on mē . . . carēre, p. 68, l. 13.

facultās quiētis dabātur: nec Cicerō ipse, etsi tenuissimā erat valētūdine, nocturnō tempore ad quiētem ūtēbatur, priusquam militum vōcibus sibi parcere coactus est.

Tum ducēs Nerviōrum, quī aliquam causam amicitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloquī sēsē velle nūntiāverunt. Factā potestāte, eadem commemorant, quae paulō ante Ambiorix cum Sabīnō ēgerat. Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte, et cōfirmant sē nihil recūsāre nisi hiberna, atque hanc inveterāscere cōsuētūdinem nōlle; quam ob rem 10 Rōmānis licēre incolumibus ex castris discēdere et quāscumque in partēs velint sine timōre proficisci.

## LESSON 110

*Heroic Defense of their Camp*

At Cicerō, quī iniussū Caesaris castra movēre nōlēbat, Gallis respondit nōn esse cōsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī ūllam accipere ab hoste armātō condiōnem; sī ab armis 15 discēdere atque lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere vellent, spē-rāre sē eōs, quae petissent, impetrātūrōs.

1. quiētis: quiēs, -ētis, F., rest. — tenuissimā: tenuis, -is, -e, slight; here, poor.

2. valētūdine: cf. p. 110, l. 9. The abl. phrase expresses quality or characteristic; cf. the similar use of the genitive.

4. causam: i.e. ground.

6. potestāte: i.e. facultate. — commemorant: i.e. dicunt. In animated narration, the pres. indic. is often thus used for the perfect.

7. cum Sabīnō ēgerat: had treated (in his dealings) with Sabīnus.

9. hanc . . . cōsuētūdinem: i.e. the practice of quartering a division of the army upon them for the winter. — inveterāscere: inveterāscō, 3, -veterāvi, become fixed.

10. incolumibus: pred. dat. — quāscumque: quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whatsoever.

14. ūllam: modifier of condiōnem.

15. lēgātōs: as on p. 48, l. 9.

16. quae: i.e. ea quae, lit. the things which; freely, the concessions which. — petissent: i.e. petivissent; cf. also the note on exspectāssent, p. 104, l. 18.



Hāc spē dēiectī Nervii vāllō pedum decem et fossā pedum quīndecim hiberna circumdant. Eīs autem nūlla erat ferramentōrum cōpia, quae ad eam rem ūsul sunt; gladiis igitur caespitēs circumcidere et manibus sagisque terram exhaurire cōgēbantur. Quā ex rē hominum multitūdō cōgnōscī potest; nam hōris ferē tribus decem mīlium passuum in circuitū mūnitiōnem pedum quīndecim perfēcērunt.

Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē, maximō coortō ventō, hostēs 10 tēla fervefacta in casās iēcērunt; quae celeriter comprehendērunt ignem, et ventī magnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt. Tum Galli, victōriam ratī iam dēmum esse partam, maximō clāmōre vāllum scālis ascendere coepērunt. At tanta erat virtūs nostrōrum, ut, cum 15 maximā tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur, suaeque impedimenta omnia igni cōsumī intellegerent, dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō. Hīc diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen

1. hāc spē dēiectī: cf. the similar phrase, p. 125, l. 5.

2. circumdant: for tense, cf. p. 135, l. 6. — eīs: i.e. Nervii.

3. ferramentōrum: ferramentum, -i, N., iron implement. — eam: such. — rem: business. — ūsul sunt: are needed.

4. circumcidere: circumcidō, 3, -cidi, -cīsus, cut out, lit. cut around.

5. exhaurire: exhauriō, 4, -hausi, -haustus, remove, lit. haul out.

7. pedum quīndecim: freely, fifteen-foot (including both vāllum and fossa, as thus far completed).

10. fervefacta: fervefactus, -a, -um, red-hot. — casās: barracks. — quae: feminine.

11. ventī: gen. case. — magnitūdine: abl. of cause (magnitūdō, -inis, F., force, lit. greatness; cf. magnus); translate "by reason of."

12. distulērunt: sc. eum (i.e. ignem).

13. vāllum: i.e. castrōrum; not the vāllum of l. 1. — scālis: scālae, -arum, F., ladder(s).

14. cum: concessive.

15. maximā . . . multitūdine: freely, a perfect storm.

16. dē vāllō: i.e. from (his position upon) the rampart. — dēcēderet: dēcēdō, 3, -cessi, -cessum est, withdraw.

17. nostrīs: dat. case; translate "for."

hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium  
interiret aut vulnerārētur.

## LESSON III

*A Messenger eludes the Enemy*

Quantō erat in diēs gravior oppugnātiō, tantō crēbriōrēs  
litterae nūntiique ad Caesarem mittēbantur; ē quibus nōn-  
5 nūlli, in cōspectū nostrōrum militum intercepti, cum cru-  
ciātū necātī sunt. Intrā hiberna autem erat Nervius  
quidam, nōmine Verticō, qui ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat, cum  
primum castra oppugnāta sunt. Hic servō spē libertātis  
magnisque persuāsit praemiis, ut litterās ad Caesarem dē-  
10 ferret. Ille celeriter profectus, et Gallus inter Gallōs sine  
ullā suspiciōne versātus, ad Caesarem incolumis pervēnit.  
Ab eō dē periculis Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnitum est.

Caesar, acceptis litteris hōrā ferē undecimā diēi, nūntium  
cōnfestim in Bellovacōs mittit ad M. Crassum, cuius  
15 hiberna aberant ab eō milia passuum quīque et vīginti;  
iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficisci celeriterque ad sē  
venire. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, qui ei

1. ut: *that*. — eō diē: *i.e.*  
the day referred to on p. 136, l. 17  
as hic diēs.

3. quantō . . . tantō: with  
the comparatives, *the . . . the*, lit.  
*by how much . . . by so much*. —  
erat: *became*. — in diēs: cf. p. 44,  
l. 4. — crēbriōrēs: crēber, -bra,  
-brum, lit. *frequent*: transl. as adv.

8. servō: sc. suō (*i.e.* "of  
his"); dat. case, to be construed  
with persuāsit, l. 9.

10. ille: the slave. — Gallus:  
(*since he was*) a Gaul. — inter  
. . . versātus: freely, *mixing*

with; lit. what? — sine: *without*  
(*exciting*).

12. periculis: translate as sing.

13. hōrā . . . undecimā diēi:  
cf. the note on p. 74, l. 16.

14. in: cf. the note on p. 133,  
l. 5. — mittit: cf. commemorant, p.  
135, l. 6. — ad M. Crassum: see  
the map on p. 124.

15. eō: *i.e.* Caesare.

16. iubet: sc. eum (*i.e.* Cra-  
sum). — ad: *to (join)*.

17. alterum: sc. nūntium. —  
ad C. Fabium: see the map again.  
— ei: *i.e.* Fabiō.

nūntiet, ut legiōnem in Atrebatēs addūcat, quōrum per finēs sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēnō ut, si rei pūblicae commodō fieri possit, cum legiōne ad finēs Nerviōrum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quae  
 5 paulō aberat longius, nōn arbitrātur expectandam; equitēs circiter CCCC ex proximis hibernis cōgit.

## LESSON 112

*Caesar heads a Relief Force*

Hōrā ferē tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī adventū Caesar certior est factus. Eō diē milia passuum viginti prōgressus est. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeposuit, legiō-  
 10 nemque ei trādidit, quod ibi relinquebat impedimenta exercitūs, obsidēs civitātum, litterās pūblicās, frūmentumque omne, quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā comportāverat. Paulō post Fabius, ut imperātum erat, in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. At Labiēnus, morte Sabīnī et clāde  
 15 cohortium cōgnitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiac vēnissent, veritus nē, si ex hibernis fugae similem pro-

1. legiōnem: sc. suam. — in Atrebatēs: *i.e.* F. was to march south to join Caesar, as the latter moved eastward.

2. ut: in this connection, scribit implies imperat also; hence the ut-clause.

3. rei pūblicae commodō: lit. with the well-being of the common-wealth; freely, without endangering the public weal. — possit: it may. — legiōne: sc. suā.

7. hōrā . . . tertiā: *i.e.* of the day following. — antecursōribus: antecursor, -ōris, M., courier.

9. praeposuit: with dat., left in charge (of).

11. civitātum: *i.e.* the Gallic states; translate the gen. "from." — litterās: documents.

12. eō: the adv.

13. imperātum erat: note the gender.

14. occurrit: sc. ei (*i.e.* Caesar:).

15. cohortium: freely, to the cohorts. — cum: causal. — ad . . . vēnissent: had marched upon — Trēverōrum: see the map on p 124.

16. fugae: dat. case; construe with similem.

fectionem fecisset, hostium impetus sustineri non posset, litteras Caesaris remisit, quibus ostendit quantum esset periculum docuitque omnes peditatus equitatusque copias Treverorum tria milia passuum ab suis castris consedissee.

- 5 Caesar, consilio eius probato, etsi opinione trium legionum deiectus ad duas redierat, omnem tamen communis salutis spem in celeritate ponebat. Venit igitur magnis itineribus in Nerviorum fines. Ibi ex captivis cognoscit quae in Ciceronis hibernis gerantur, quantumque in periculo res sit.

## LESSON 113

*The Besieged learn of Caesar's Approach*

- 10 Itaque cuidam ex equitibus Gallis Caesar magnis praemiis persuasit, ut ad Ciceronem epistulam deferret. Hanc Graecis litteris scriptam misit, ne Gallorum intercepto nostra consilia ab hostibus cognoscerentur. Homini imperavit ut, si hiberna intrare non posset, trahulam cum epistula ad  
15 amentum deligata intra munitiones abiceret. In epistula scripsit se cum legionibus profectum celeriter adfore; Ciceronem hortatus est ut pristinam virtutem retineret.

1. fecisset: cf. *expectassent*, p. 104, l. 18.

2. quibus: cf. p. 38, l. 16. — *esset*: why subjunctive?

4. Treverorum: *belonging to the Treveri*. — suis: *his*.

5. opinio: opinio, -onis, F., *expectation*; cf. the similar phrase, p. 125, l. 5 ff.

6. redierat: *i.e. had been reduced*.

7. venit: what tense? (note the *ē*). — magnis itineribus: *i.e. forced marches*.

8. captivis: *i.e. Gauls whom*

he had arrested as he marched. — quid: neut. interrogative; translate as sing. (*quid*).

10. ex: *of*. — Gallis: with adj. force. The cavalry of the Roman army was recruited largely from foreign nations (cf. the note on *legio*, p. 125, l. 14).

11. epistulam: epistula, -ae, F., *letter*.

12. Gallorum intercepto: translate by a conditional clause.

15. amentum: amentum, -i, N., *strap*. — deligata: deligō, I, *fasten*.

16. adfore: *i.e. adfuturum esse*.



ARMA

The upper illustration is interesting as showing the very **primi-**  
**tive** equipment of some of the light-armed troops. In the **lower**  
 picture may be seen on the spears of the warrior the strap (*amentum*)  
 which was used to assist the hand when the weapons were hurled.

us, cum ad hiberna vēnisset, periculum veritus, ut imperatum, trāgulam cum litteris mittit. Haec cāsū rim adhaesit, neque ā nostris statim animadversa, liē ā milite quōdam cōspicitur; quī eam sine morā erōnem dēfert. Ille, epistolā perlēctā, militēs laetus Caesarem iam subsidiō venīre. Tum fūmī incendiō- rocul cernēbantur; quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem ūs legiōnum expulit.

## LESSON 114

*The Enemy raise the Siege*

I rē cōgnitā per explōrātōrēs, obsidiōne statim relictā, sarem omnibus cōpiis contendunt. Quō animadversō,

Gallum quendam celeriter cum litteris mittit, in quibit hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque multitudinem esarem convertisse. Quibus litteris circiter mediā adlātis, Caesar suōs facit certiōrēs, eōsque ad pūm animō cōfirmat.

terō diē, cum lūce primā mōvisset castra et circiter passuum quattuor prōgressus esset, trāns vallem ma-

riculum: *i.e.* of trying to  
e camp.

tteris: *i.e.* epistolā. —  
e. forte.

l . . . adhaesit: freely,  
upon.

lūm: *later*. — fūmī: trans-  
ingular.

ernēbantur: cf. the ren-  
of vidēbant, p. 36, l. 7. —

s: cf. quae urbs, p. 44, l.  
mnem: *any*. — dubitātiō-

ubtātīō, -ōnis, *F., doubt*.

9. rē: *the situation*. — per:  
freely, *from*; lit. *through*.

10. ad: *against*. — omnibus cō-  
piis: cum may be supplied with  
this abl.

12. omnem . . . multitudinem:  
sc. suam. The whole is obj. of con-  
vertisse.

14. pugnandum: gerund.

15. animō: lit. *in mind*. — cōn-  
firmat: *fortifies*. Render freely.

16. mōvisset: subject, Caesar.

17. magnam: modifying both

gnam et rĭvum hostium multītūdinem vīdit. Erat magni periculī rēs cum tantīs cōpiīs iniquō locō dīmīcāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne liberātum esse Cicerōnem sciēbat, dē celeritāte aliquid sibi remittendum existimābat: quārē cōn-  
sēdit, et, quam aequissimō locō poterat, castra mūnīvit.

## LESSON 115

*They are Outgeneraled by Caesar*

Postridie hostium equitātus prīmā lūce ad castra accessit, proeliumque cum nostrīs equitibus commisit. Caesar autem suīs imperāvit ut cēderent cōsultō sēque in castra recipere; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō munīrī, portās obstruī, omniaque cum simulātiōne timōris agī iussit.

Quibus rēbus invītātī, hostēs cōpiās rĭvum trādūxērunt omnis, aciemque iniquō locō cōstituērunt; tum Caesar, omnibus portis ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō, eōs

vallem and rĭvum, and agreeing with the nearer.

2. rēs: *a matter*. — cōpiīs: sc. Gallōrum. — tum: *furthermore*.

3. obsidiōne: translate the abl. "from."

4. aliquid sibi remittendum: *freely, he should relax somewhat*; lit. what?

5. quam: aequissimō locō poterat: *in as favorable a position as he could*. This fuller form helps to show how quam and the superl. came to mean "as . . . as possible." — mūnīvit: cf. the part. mūnītus.

6. castra: sc. Caesaris.

8. cōsultō: adv.

9. altiōre vāllō: not a new rampart, but the old built higher.

10. obstruī: obstruō, 3, -strūxī, -strūctus, *block up*. — simulātiōne timōris: the purpose of this maneuver is made clear by the following sentence.

12. invītātī: invītātus, -a, -um, part., *invited*; freely, *made bold*. — rĭvum trādūxērunt: *i.ē. dūxērunt trāns rĭvum*; cf. flūmen trāductis, p. 91, l. 10.

13. omnis: modifier of cōpiās.

14. omnibus portis: for syntax, cf. fenestrā, p. 76, l. 2.

celeriter in fugam dedit. Longius autem insequi veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdebant, omnibus suis incolumibus eodem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Turrēs mūnitiōnēsque hostium admīrātur. Legiōne prōductā,  
 5 cōgnōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere; quā ex rē iūdicat quantō in periculō rēs fuerit. Cicerōne militibusque laudātis, centuriōnēs tribūnōsque singulōs appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtutem testimōniō Cicerōnis cōgnōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cotta  
 10 e certius ex captivis cōgnōscit.

## LESSON 116

*Arrangements for the Rest of the Winter*

Dum haec fiunt, ad Labiēnum incēdibili celeritatē dē victoriā Caesaris fāma dēfertur; quī etiam, cum ab hibernis Cicerōnis milia passuum Labiēnus abesset circiter sexagintā, atque ad Cicerōnem post hōram nōnam diēi Caesar  
 15 pervēnisset, ante mediam noctem subitō ad portās Labiēni castrōrum auditus est eōrum clāmor, quī lēgātō grātulārī

1. longius: absol. compar.

2. intercēdebant: intercēdō, 3, -cessi, -cessum est, *intervene*. — omnibus suis incolumibus: abl. absol.; translate "with."

4. hostium: freely, *built by the enemy*.

5. nōn decimum, etc.: order of lit. translation: nōn quemque decimum militem esse reliquum.

7. fuerit: perf. subjunctive; why this mood? Note carefully the force of the tense.

8. ēgregiam: pred. adj. (ēgregius, -a, -um, *conspicuous*).

9. testimōniō: testimōnium, -ī, N., *report*. The abl. expresses means; we would say "from."

10. certius: as noun (neut. sing.); see the Vocab. under cōgnōscō.

11. haec: *this*. — Labiēnum: cf. p. 138, l. 14 ff.

12. fāma (-ae, F.): *report*. — dēfertur: *i.e.* by natives. — cum: concessive.

15. ad: *before*.

16. eōrum: *of those*. — clāmor: translate as pl. — grātulārī: grātulor, 1, *offer congratulation*.



volēbant, quod hostīs Caesar superāvisset. At Trēveri, qui posterō diē hiberna Labiēnī oppugnāre cōstituerant, repentinā rē perterriti noctū domum celeriter sē recēpērunt.

Postridiē Caesar cōtiōne habitā militēs cōfirmāvit, eosque docuit dētrimentum, quod temeritāte lēgātī esset acceptum, aequiōre animō esse ferendum, quod beneficiō deōrum immortalium et virtūte eōrum legiōnēs cēterae cōservātae essent neque hostibus diūtinum gaudium relinquerētur. Fabium cum legiōne remisit in hiberna; ipse cum tribus legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvā hiemāre cōstituit: nam cum animi omnium Gallōrum ad bellum incitātī vidērentur, tōtam hiemem sibi apud exercitum manendum arbitrābātur.

4. cōtiōne habitā: *i.e.* in Cicero's camp.

5. temeritāte: translate the abl. "through."—lēgātī: *i.e.* Sabīnī. —esset acceptum: for mood, cf. *admoveantur*, p. 61, l. 14.

6. aequiōre animō esse ferendum: *i.e.* should be taken the more philosophically; lit. what?

7. immortalium: immortalis, -is, -e, *immortal*. In passages like the present, the use of this adj. is formal and conventional; properly, it contrasts the life of

the gods with the (earthly) life of men.—eōrum: *i.e.* the soldiers addressed.

8. diūtinum: diūtīnus, -a, -um, *long-continued*.—gaudium (-ī, N.): *exultation* (cf. *gaudeō*).

9. Fabium, etc.: see again the map on p. 124.

11. cum: causal.

12. tōtam hiemem: usually this was not necessary, the winter months being normally a season of rest from active field service (see p. 123, l. 3 ff.).

## AN AFRICAN CAMPAIGN

### LESSON 117

During the civil war which broke out between Caesar and Pompey four or five years after the events above narrated, there was fighting in all parts of the civilized world, and more than once Africa was the battleground.

#### *Caesar lands a Force in Africa*

Interim C. Cūriō duās legiōnēs, D equitēs, ex Siciliā in Āfricā trānsportāvit. Ubi eius adventum L. Caesar cum decem longis nāvibus exspectābat; quī autem, cum classis Cūriōnis in cōspectum vēnisset, nāvium multitudinem  
5 veritus, appulsā ad proximum litus trirēme, pedibus Hadrūmētum fūgit: quō nāvēs quoque eius reliquae, fugā ducis cōgnitā, statim sē recēpērunt.

Cūriō Mārcium Rūfum cum classe Uticā praemittit. Ipse eōdem cum exercitū proficiscitur; tridūque iter prō  
10 gressus, ad flūmen Bagradam pervēnit. Ibi C. Canīnium Rebilum lēgātum legiōnēsque relinquit; ipse cum equitātū antecēdit ad Castra Cornēlia explōranda, quī locus peridōneus castris existimābatur.

1. C. Cūriō: one of Caesar's generals.—D.: the numeral: supply -que or et with this clause.

2. L. Caesar: an officer in Pompey's navy.

3. veritus: *appalled at*.—trirēme: sc. suā (trirēmis, -is, F., galley).—pedibus: we would say "on foot"; cf. manibus genibusque, p. 59, l. 8.—Hadrūmētum: consult the map on p. 146; for

syntax, see the note on p. 79, l. 21.

6. quō: the adv.—fugā: *defection*.

8. Uticā: the base of operations of Pompey's forces in Africa.

9. proficiscitur: from Anquil-laria.

12. antecēdit: antecēdō, 3, -cessi, -cessum est, *push ahead*, lit. *go on ahead*.—quī locus: cf. quae urbs, p. 44, l. 13.—peridō-



THE SCENE OF CURIO'S CAMPAIGN IN AFRICA.

Hāc explorātā regiōne, Cūriō Uticae quoque mūnitiōnēs speculātus est; cumque animadvertisset plēnissimis viis undique portārī agique multa, quae repentinī tumultūs timōre ex agris in urbem cōferēbantur, equitātum misit, ut praedā inspērātā potirētur. Simul ex urbe ēmissi sunt DC equitēs Numidae, qui agricolis fugientibus auxiliō essent. Concurrunt equitēs inter sē; neque vērō primum impetum nostrōrum Numidae ferre poterant, sed interfectis circiter CXX reliqui sē in urbem contulērunt.

## LESSON 118

*Operations about Utica*

- 10 Interim Mārcius nāvēs longās Uticam dēdūxerat; cuius adventū cōgnitō, Cūriō prōnūntiārī iussit onerāriis, quae in portū ad ancoram stābant numerō circiter CC, sē in hostium locō habitūrum omnēs, qui nōn statim ad Castra Cornēlia nāvis trādūxissent. Quā prōnūntiātiōne factā, sine morā sublātis ancoris omnēs reliquērunt Uticam et, quō imperātum erat, trānsiērunt. Quae rēs omnium rērum cōpiā exercitum nostrum complēvit.

**neus** (-a, -um): *particularly suitable*; cf. the note on *perpaucōs*, p. 25, l. 10.

2. **plēnissimis**: *plēnus*, -a, -um, *congested*. — **viis**: translate the abl. "along"; cf. *sēmitā*, p. 103, l. 17.

3. **portārī agique**: cf. the note on *rapere et agere*, p. 49, l. 8.

4. **timōre**: freely, *in the panic*; strictly, abl. of cause.

5. **inspērātā**: *inspērātus*, -a, -um, *unexpected*.

6. **Numidae**: with adj. force.

7. **neque**: cf. p. 127, l. 16.

10. **Mārcius**: see p. 145, l. 8.

11. **prōnūntiārī**: cf. p. 128, l. 5; note the final vowel.

12. **numerō**: for syntax, cf. *animō*, p. 37, l. 20. — *in hostium locō habitūrum*: *would regard as enemies*; lit. what?

13. **omnēs**: masc.

14. **nāvis**: *i.e.* the *onerariae* of l. 11. — *trādūxissent*: *i.e.* across the harbor (see the map). For mood and tense, cf. *esset perruptus*, p. 107, l. 3. — **prōnūntiātiōne**. *prōnūntiātiō*, -ōnis, *F., announcement*.

16. **quō**: the adv.

His rēbus gestis, Cūriō sē in castra ad Bagradam recipit, posterōque diē exercitum Uticam dūcit et prope oppidum castra pōnit. Nōndum opere castrōrum perfectō, equitēs ex statīōne nūntiant magna auxilia equitum peditumque ā 5 rēge Iubā missa Uticam venīre; eōdemque tempore vīs magna pulveris cernēbātur, et temporis pūctō primum agmen erat in cōspectū. Quā rē novā Cūriō permōtus equitēs suōs praemittit, quī primum impetum sustineant; ipse, celeriter ab opere dēductis legiōnibus, aciem instruit

## LESSON 119

*Curio gains an Initial Advantage*

- 10 Interim equitēs cum hostibus proelium commisērunt et, priusquam legiōnēs plānē explicārī possent, tōta auxilia rēgis, quae nullō ordine et sine metū iter faciēbant, in fugam coniecta sunt. Equitēs hostium per litus in oppidum prope-rāvērunt, peditum autem magnus numerus interfectus est.
- 15 Proximā nocte centuriōnēs duo ex castris Cūriōnis cum manipulāribus suis duōbus et vīginti ad Attium Vārum per-fugiunt; cui cōfirmant tōtius exercitūs animōs aliēnōs esse

1. ad Bagradam: cf. p. 145, l. 10. In connection with in castra, translate "at the Bagrada"; cf. ad T. Labiēnum . . . in hiberna, p. 133, l. 3.

3. opere: i.e. construction.

4. statīōne: statio, -ōnis, F., outpost.—auxilia: auxiliary forces.

5. Iubā: king of Numidia, friendly to Pompey (cf. p. 147, l. 5 ff.).—venīre: i.e. appropinquare ad.—eōdem . . . tempore: i.e. simul.

6. cernēbātur: cf. cernēbantur, p. 141, l. 7.—temporis pūctō: in

a moment (pūctum, -i, N., point).—primum agmen: vanguard; lit. what?

9. opere: (the work of) construction (cf. l. 3).

11. legiōnēs: sc. Cūriōnis.

12. sine metū: evidently they had not heard of Curio's arrival in Africa.

13. oppidum: i.e. Utica.

16. Attium Vārum: commander of the Pompeian forces at Utica.

17. aliēnōs . . . ā; freely, disaffected toward.

ā Cūriōne, multōsque facultāte datā libenter esse trānsitūrōs. Qua ōrātiōne adductus Vārus posterō diē māne legiōnēs ex castris ēdūcit. Façit idem Cūriō, atque unā valle nōn magnā interpositā suās uterque cōpiās instruit.

- 5 Erat in exercitū Vārī lēgātus quidam, cui nōtī erant multi Cūriōnis mīlitēs. Hanc ille nactus appellātiōnis causam, circumīre aciem Cūriōnis atque omnēs hortārī coepit, ut Vārum sequerentur ; quīn etiam praemium pollicitus est, sī quī ad eum trānsire voluissent. His verbīs audītis, nūllam  
10 in partem ab exercitū Cūriōnis fit significātiō, atque ita suās uterque cōpiās redūcit.

## LESSON 120

*He maintains his Army's Loyalty to Caesar*

At in castris Cūriōnis animī omnium sollicitī erant; quisque enim ad id, quod ab aliō audierat, aliquid suī timōris addēbat.

- 15 Cōnsiliō convocātō, duae sententiae dictae sunt. Erant quī castra Vārī statim oppugnanda cēnsērent; alterī autem

1. facultāte datā: translate as a conditional clause. — esse trānsitūrōs: *i.e. will desert* (to Varus).

3. castris: built just outside the city walls. — ēdūcit: ēdūcō, 3, -dūxi, -ductus, *lead out*. — idem: note the gender.

4. uterque: as noun.

6. appellātiōnis: appellātiō, -ōnis, F., *accosting*; translate here *accosting (them)*. — causam: freely, *excuse (for)*.

8. Vārum sequerentur: *i.e. join the army of Varus*.

9. sī quī: *if any* (noun); cf. the note on quī, p. 56, l. 1. —

eum: *i.e. Vārum*. — voluissent: freely, *were willing*; cf. esset perruptus, p. 107, l. 3. — nūllam in partem: see the Vocab. under pars.

10. significātiō (-ōnis, F.): *sign*. — ita: *i.e. with the loyalty of Cūriō's troops still a matter of doubt*.

12. sollicitī: sollicitus, -a, -um, *unsettled*. — quisque: noun.

13. ad id, quod: freely, *to what*. — suī: cf. suum, p. 11, l. 6; for syntax of the gen. phrase, cf. glōriæ, p. 107, l. 17.

16. cēnsērent: cf. the note on erant quī, p. 109, l. 5. — alterī: *i.e. the other party*.

optimum factū existimābant in Castra Cornēlia legiōnēs redūcere, ut maiōre spatiō temporis interpositō militum mentēs sānārentur, simul ut exercitus, si proeliō victus esset, in Siciliam facile trānsportārī posset. Cūriō tamen “ Neutrum cōnsilium,” inquit, “ probō; neque enim tantī sum animī, ut castra tam mūnita temerē oppugnanda cēseam, neque tantī timōris, ut spem statim dimittam, atque omnia prius experienda arbitror.”

Quārē, dimissō cōnsiliō, cōntiōnem advocat militum; 10 quōrum animōs verbis cōnfirmit, docetque quid sit causae, cūr sibi Caesarique fidēlēs sint. Quā ōrātiōne permōti milites eum etiam dicentem interpellābant, discēdentem vērō ex cōntiōne ūniversi cohortantur ut magnō sit animō nēve dubitet proelium committere et suam fidem virtūtemque 15 experiri.

1. factū: cf. p. 126, l. 17; omit here in translating.

2. maiōre: absol. compar. — mentēs: mēns, mentis, F., *feeling*, lit. *mind*.

3. sānārentur: sānō, 1, *heal*, pass., *become normal*. — simul: *i.e.* *furthermore*.

4. neutrum: neuter, -tra, -trum, *neither* (of two).

5. cōnsilium: contrast the meaning here and on p. 149, l. 15. — neque: cf. p. 127, l. 16.

7. prius: *i.e.* before giving up hope. — experienda: experior, 4, *expertus sum, try*.

9. cōntiōnem: *assembly*. — advocat: advocō, 1, *call together*.

10. verbis: sc. suis. — quīl... causae: *what grounds*; for syntax

of the gen., cf. sui timōris, p. 149, l. 13.

11. sint: lit. *they should be*; translate the clause freely.

12. eum: *i.e.* Cūriōnem. — etiam dicentem: translate this and the following part. by clauses. — interpellābant: *kept interrupting* (interpellō, 1). — discēdentem: sc. eum.

13. cōntiōne: *the meeting*. — ūniversi: freely, *one and all*. — magnō . . . animō: for syntax, cf. the note on p. 135, l. 2. — nēve: *and not to* (nē + ve); cf. neque (in sense = nōn + qu.).

14. fidem: *loyalty*; cf. fidēlēs, l. 11.

15. experiri: *make trial of*; cf. l. 7.

## LESSON 121

*The Pompeians suffer a Second Reverse*

Quibus rēbus cōfirmātus Cūriō cōstituit, cum primum esset data potestās, proeliō rem committere; postrīdiēque militēs prōductōs eōdem locō, quō ante cōstitērant, in aciē collocāvit. Quō animadversō, Vārus quoque cōpiās prōdūxit, nē, si aequō locō darētur occāsiō, dimicandī facultātem dīmitteret.

Erat vallēs inter duās aciēs, ut suprā dēmōnstrātum est, nōn ita magna, at difficilī et arduō ascēnsū. Hanc uterque si adversāriōrum cōpiae trānsire cōnārentur, expectābat, 10 quō aequiōre locō proelium ipse committeret. Postrēmō Vārī equitēs in vallem dēscendere coepērunt. Ad eōs Cūriō equitātum et duās cohortēs mittit; quōrum primum impetum equitēs hostium nōn ferunt, sed admissis equis ad suōs refugiunt.

15 Quā rē animadversā, legiōnēs sē sequi iubet Cūriō, et omnibus cum cōpiis in vallem cōnfestim dēscendit; interim autem hostēs, veritī nē ab equitātū circumvenīrentur, terga vertunt ūniversī, ac summā celeritātē sē in castra recipiunt.

2. esset data: cf. expectāssent, p. 104, l. 18. — proeliō: dat. case.

3. eōdem locō: construe with collocāvit, l. 4. — quō: antecedent, locō.

5. darētur: i.e. should present itself. — dimicandī: gerund.

7. suprā: namely, p. 149, l. 3 ff.

8. ita: so very. — arduō: arduus, -a, -um, steep. — ascēnsū: ascēnsus, -ūs, m., slope. — hanc: object of trānsire, l. 9. — uterque: each (commander).

9. si: in the hope that. — adversāriōrum: adversārii, -i, m., the opposing party. — expectābat: cf. interpellābant, p. 150, l. 12.

10. quō: cf. the note on p. 101, l. 14.

13. hostium: i.e. Varus' party. — admissis: admissus, -a, -um, part., let go, i.e. at full speed.

17. equitātū: sc. Cūriōnis (cf. l. 12).

18. castra: cf. the note on p. 149, l. 3.



optimum factū existimābant in Castra Cornēlia legiōnēs redūcere, ut maiōre spatiō temporis interpositō militum mentēs sānārentur, simul ut exercitus, si proeliō victus esset, in Siciliam facile trānsportārī posset. Cūriō tamen “Neutrum 5 cōnsilium,” inquit, “probō; neque enim tantī sum animī, ut castra tam mūnīta temerē oppugnanda cēnseam, neque tantī timōris, ut spem statim dimittam, atque omnia prius experienda arbitror.”

Quārē, dimissō cōnsiliō, cōntiōnem advocat militum; 10 quōrum animōs verbis cōnfīrmat, docetque quid sit causae, cūr sibi Caesarique fidēlēs sint. Quā ōratiōne permōti milites eum etiam dicentem interpellābant, discēdentem vērō ex cōntiōne ūniversī cohortantur ut magnō sit animō nēve dubitet proelium committere et suam fidem virtūtemque 15 experiri.

1. factū: cf. p. 126, l. 17; omit here in translating.

2. maiōre: absol. compar. — mentēs: mēns, mentis, F., *feeling*, lit. *mind*.

3. sānārentur: sānō, 1, *heal*, pass., *become normal*. — simul: *i.e.* *furthermore*.

4. neutrum: neuter, -tra, -trum, *neither* (of two).

5. cōnsilium: contrast the meaning here and on p. 149, l. 15. — neque: cf. p. 127, l. 16.

7. prius: *i.e.* before giving up hope. — experienda: experior, 4, expertus sum, *try*.

9. cōntiōnem: *assembly*. — advocat: advocō, 1, *call together*.

10. verbis: sc. suis. — quīl... causae: *what grounds*; for syntax

of the gen., cf. suī timōris, p. 149, l. 13.

11. sint: lit. *they should be*; translate the clause freely.

12. eum: *i.e.* Cūriōnem. — etiam dicentem: translate this and the following part. by clauses. — interpellābant: *kept interrupting* (interpellō, 1). — discēdentem: sc. eum.

13. cōntiōne: *the meeting*. — ūniversī: freely, *one and all*. — magnō . . . animō: for syntax, cf. the note on p. 135, l. 2. — nēve: *and not to* (nē + ve); cf. neque (in sense = nōn + qu).

14. fidem: *loyalty*; cf. fidēlēs, l. 11.

15. experiri: *make trial of*; cf. l. 7.

## LESSON 121

*The Pompeians suffer a Second Reverse*

Quibus rēbus cōfirmātus Cūriō cōstituit, cum primum  
 esset data potestās, proeliō rem committere; postrīdiēque  
 militēs prōductōs eōdem locō, quō ante cōstitērant, in aciē  
 collocāvit. Quō animadversō, Vārus quoque cōpiās prō-  
 dūxit, nē, si aequō locō darētur occāsiō, dimicandī facultātem  
 dimitteret.

Erat vallēs inter duās aciēs, ut suprā dēmōnstrātum est,  
 nōn ita magna, at difficilī et arduō ascēnsū. Hanc uterque  
 si adversāriōrum cōpiae trānsire cōnārentur, exspectābat,  
 quō aequiōre locō proelium ipse committeret. Postrēmō  
 Vāri equitēs in vallem dēscendere coepērunt. Ad eōs Cūriō  
 equitātum et duās cohortēs mittit; quōrum primum impetum  
 equitēs hostium nōn ferunt, sed admissis equis ad suōs re-  
 fugiunt.

Quā rē animadversā, legiōnēs sē sequī iubet Cūriō, et  
 omnibus cum cōpiis in vallem cōnfēstim dēscendit; in-  
 terim autem hostēs, veritī nē ab equitātū circumvenīrentur,  
 terga vertunt ūniversī, ac summā celeritātē sē in castra  
 recipiunt.

2. esset data: cf. exspectāssent, p. 104, l. 18. — proeliō: dat. case.

3. eōdem locō: construe with collocāvit, l. 4. — quō: antecedent, locō.

5. darētur: i.e. should present itself. — dimicandī: gerund.

7. suprā: namely, p. 149, l. 3 ff.

8. ita: so very. — arduō: arduus, -a, -um, steep. — ascēnsū: ascēnsus, -ūs, M., slope. — hanc: object of trānsire, l. 9. — uterque: each (commander).

9. si: in the hope that. — adversāriōrum: adversārii, -īrum, M., the opposing party. — exspectābat: cf. interpellābant, p. 150, l. 12.

10. quō: cf. the note on p. 101, l. 14.

13. hostium: i.e. Varus' party. — admissis: admissus, -a, -um, part., let go, i.e. at full speed.

17. equitātū: sc. Cūriōnis (cf. l. 12).

18. castra: cf. the note on p. 149, l. 3.

## LESSON 122

*Narrow Escape of their Commander*

Quā in fugā Fabius Paelignus, miles quidam ex Cūriōnis exercitū, agmen fugientium cōsecūtus, magnā vōce Vārum ita nōmine appellāvit, ut ūnus esse ex eius militibus et velle aliquid dicere vidērētur. Ubi autem Vārus saepius appellātus cōstitit, et quis esset aut quid vellet quaesivit, tum Fabius eius umerum apertum gladiō appetiit. Quod ille periculum sublātō scūtō vitāvit; Fabius autem ā proximīs militibus circumventus interficitur.

Interim fugientium multitudīne portae castrōrum complētae sunt, atque iter erat ita impeditum, ut plūrēs in eō locō sine vulnere quam in proeliō aut fugā interīrent; nōnnūllī vērō erant adeō perterritī, ut prōtinus eōdem cursū per castra in oppidum ipsum contenderent. At Cūriōnis milītēs, ad proelium ēgressī, sēcum nullam cōpiam portāverant eārum rerū, quae ad oppugnātiōnem castrōrum erant ūsuī. Itaque Cūriō exercitum tum in castra reducit.

Cuius discessū vulnerātī ē castris hostium in oppidum reducuntur; quō quidem tempore multī praetereā per simulātiōnem vulnerum propter metum eōdem sēsē recipi-

1. in: *during*.
2. fugientium: sc. hostium.
4. saepius: absol. compar.
5. aut: cf. the note on p. 128, l. 7.
6. apertum: *unprotected, i.e. the right*.—ille: Varus.
7. scūtō: scūtum, -ī, n., *shield*.
10. iter: *roadway*.
11. sine vulnere: *i.e. wound inflicted by the enemy*.
12. adeō: the adv. — eōdem cursū: *i.e. without stopping*.

13. castra: see again the note on p. 149, l. 3. — ipsum: *proper*.
14. proelium: *a battle (in the open)*. — ēgressī: sc. ex castris; translate the part. by a relative clause.
16. tum: *for the time being*.
17. discessū: abl. of time when; translate "on."
18. quidem: omit in translating. — per: *freely, under*.
19. eōdem: adv., *to the same shelter*.



SCŪTA

This illustration, taken from the carvings on the column of Trajan (see page 40), shows how Roman soldiers, by locking their shields (*scūta*), formed a solid roof over their heads as they came up under a wall from which the enemy were sending down a shower of missiles.

unt. Quā rē animadversā exercitūque timōre cōgni  
Vārus, būcinātōre tabernāculisque paucis in castris  
speciem relictis, tertiā vigiliā reliquum quoque exercitū  
silentiō in oppidum reducit.

## LESSON 123

*King Juba marches to the Relief of Varus*

- 5 Postridiē eius diēi Cūriō obsidēre Uticam coepit. Iam ad urbem perveniunt ā rēge Iubā nūntiī, quī illum esse magnis cum cōpiis dīcant oppidānōsque dē dēfēnsiū urbis hortentur. Nūntiābantur haec eadem Cūriōnī. tamen primō rēgem nihil contrā sē ausūrum exīstimāb  
10 sed ubi certior est factus cōpiās Iubae ab Uticā mī quinque et viginti mīlia passuum abesse, relictis mūnitiōibus sēsē in Castra Cornēlia recēpit. Hūc comport coepit omnia, quae ad obsidiōnem sustinendam ūsuī er:  
Dum haec fiunt, ex oppidānis perfugis audivit Iub  
15 aliō bellō esse revocātum, et Saburram, eius praefectū parvis cum cōpiis Uticae appropinquāre. Quō aud cōnsilium temerē mūtāvit, proeliōque rem committere c

2. būcinātōre: būcinātor, -ōris, M., *trumpeter*. — ad speciem: *i.e.* to keep up the appearance of occupancy.

5. eius diēi: omit in translating. The gen. depends upon the diē which enters into the composition of *postridiē*.

6. Iubā: see the note on p. 148, l. 5.

8. haec eadem: neut.; translate as singular.

10. minus: *less (than)*; cf. the use of *amplius*, p. 101, l. 3.

12. Castra Cornēlia: see a the map on p. 146.

13. omnia: *all sorts of this* — obsidiōnem: of the same dētion as the verb *obsidēre*, l. 5.

14. perfugis: with adj. *fr deserting*.

15. aliō bellō: abl. of me Apparently this item of news regarding Juba's movements deliberately fabricated, the "deceptions" from the city having been planned for the express purpose of deceiving Curio.

stituit. Quārē equitātum omnem primā nocte ad castra Saburrae praemittit; quī hostis necopinantēs adortus, magnū eōrum numerum occidit. Quō factō, ad Cūriōnem Equitēs redeunt captivōsque ad eum reducunt.

## LESSON 124

*The Numidians resort to Strategy*

5 Cūriō, cohortibus quīque castris praesidiō relictis, omnibus cum cōpiis quārtā vigiliā profectus, sex mīlia passuum iam ipse prōgressus erat. Quī, victōriā equitātus cōgnitā, etiam celerius iter fēcit; Iubam enim crēdebāt longē abesse, exiguāsque Saburrae cōpiās facile sē opprimere posse  
10 existimābat.

Interim autem Iuba (cuius dē discessū falsō erat nūntiātum, quīque iam haud longē aberat), dē nocturnō proeliō certior factus, duo mīlia equitum eamque peditum partem, cui maximē cōfidēbat, Saburrae subsidiō mittit, ipseque  
15 cum reliquīs cōpiis elephantisque sexāgintā lēnius subsequitur. Suspiciātus brevī Cūriōnem ipsum adfore, Saburra cōpiās equitum peditumque statim instrūxit atque eis imperāvit ut simul atque nostrī in cōnspectum vēnissent, simulatiōne timōris paulatim cēderent.

20 Quō factō, hostēs fugere Cūriō ratus legiōnēs dē collibus

1. ad: *i.e.* to attack.

11. falsō: adv., lit. *falsely*; render the clause freely.

12. quīque: *i.e.* quī + que. — nocturnō proeliō: see l. 1 ff.

14. cōfidēbat: cōfidō, 3, -fusus sum, with dat., *rely (upon)*. — subsidiō: dat. of service.

15. elephantis: elephantus, -i, m., *elephant*.

16. suspiciātus: translate as a present. — ipsum: as contrasted with his cavalry, which had already been in action. — adfore: *i.e.* adfutūrum esse.

18. simul atque: *i.e.* cum primum. — vēnissent: cf. the note on expectāssent, p. 104, l. 18.

19. simulatiōne: translate the abl. "with."

in plānitie[m] dēdūxit; cumque longius esset inde prōgres-  
sus, cōfectō iam labōre exercitū, locō iniquō cōstitit.  
Tum suis signum subitō dat Saburra aciemque explicat.  
Peditātū primō ad speciem tantum ūtitur, equitēs in aciem  
5 nostram inmittit.

## LESSON 125

*Curio's Army is Annihilated*

Repentīnā rē minimē permōtus Cūriō ordinēs circumiit  
militēsque hortātus est ut spem omnem in virtūte pōnerent.  
Hī primō fortissimē dimicābant; sed hostēs, quī numerō  
longē erant superiōrēs, mox aciem nostram circumventam  
10 ā tergō adoriri coepērunt. Tum Cūriō, ubi perterritis om-  
nibus cohortātiōnēs suās nōn audiri intellēxit, ūnam salūtis  
esse spem reliquam arbitrātus, proximōs collēs capere at-  
que eō signa ferre iussit. Sed hōs quoque praeoccupat  
missus ā Saburrā equitātus.  
15 Tum vērō ad summam dēspērātiōnem nostrī perveniunt,  
et Cn. Domitius, praefectus equitum, cum paucis equitibus  
circumsistēns, Cūriōnem ōrat ut fugā petat salūtem, et sē  
ab eō nōn discessūrum pollicētur. At Cūriō numquam sē,

1. longius: absol. compar.  
—inde: *i.e.* from the point where  
he had left the hills.

2. cōfectō: construe with  
exercitū.

4. primō: the adv.

8. dimicābant: *kept up the  
fight.*

9. circumventam: translate as  
if circumvērunt eamque.

10. ā tergō: cf. p. 78, l. 18. —  
omnibus: noun, forming an abl.  
absol. with perterritis.

11. cohortātiōnēs: cohortātiō,  
-ōnis, F., *exhortation.*

12. spem: *chance.* — capere:  
*make for*; as subject, suās may  
be supplied.

13. eō: the adv. —signa: see  
the notes on pp. 130, l. 1, and 131,  
l. 16. — hōs: *i.e.* collēs.

15. dēspērātiōnem: dēspērātiō,  
-ōnis, F., *despair.*

18. numquam sē, etc.: the in-  
direct discourse depends upon cō-  
firmat, p. 157, l. 2.

āmissō exercitū quem ā Caesare accēpisset, in eius cōn-  
spectum reditūrum cōnfirmat, atque ita pugnāns interficitur.

Ē proeliō equitēs nostrī perpaucī effūgērunt ; quibuscum  
nōnnūlli, quī equōrum reficiendōrum causā in itinere paulum  
morātī erant, fugā tōtīus exercitūs procul animadversā, in-  
columēs in castra sē contulērunt. Peditēs ad ūnum omnēs  
interfectī sunt.

4. reficiendōrum : reficiō, 3,  
-fēcī, -fectus, *refresh*.

6. castra : *i.e.* the camp at  
Castra Cornēlia.



## SELECTED PASSAGES FROM LATIN PROSE AUTHORS

### AN EPISODE FROM THE GALLIC WAR

(Caesar, *De Bellō Gallicō*, VI, 7, 8)

#### LESSON 126

Though disconcerted for the time being by Caesar's decisive victory over the Nervii (Lesson 115), the Treveri subsequently more than once threatened the winter camp of Labienus (cf. Lessons 112 and 116, and see the map on page 124).

Dum haec ā Caesare geruntur, Trēverī magnīs coāctis peditātūs equitātūsque cōpiis Labiēnum cum ūnā legiōne, quae in eōrum finibus hiemābat, adorīrī parābant; iamque ab eō nōn longius bīduī viā aberant, cum duās vēnisse legiōnēs missū Caesaris cōgnōscunt. Positis castrīs ā milibus passuum xv, auxilia Germānōrum exspectāre cōstituunt.

Labiēnus, hostium cōgnitō cōnsiliō, spērāns temeritāte eōrum fore aliquam dīmīcandī facultātem, praesidiō quīnque

1. *haec*: *i.e.* events mentioned in the narrative from which this extract is taken.

2. *cum*: translate "and." — *ūnā*: *the one*.

4. *viā*: *than a journey*; abl. with the compar. — *vēnisse*: *i.e.* to reēnforce Labienus.

5. *missū*: *missus*, -ūs, M., lit. *sending*; here, *order*. — *cōgnō-*

*scunt*: cf. *commemorant*, p. 135, l. 6. — *ā*: as adv., *away* (with abl. of degree of difference).

8. *temeritāte*: cf. the adv. *temerē*.

9. *eōrum*: *on their part*. — *dīmīcandī*: *i.e.* before the Germans should arrive. — *praesidiō* . . . *re-*  
*lictō*: abl. absol. — *quīnque* *cohortium*: (*consisting*) of five cohorts.

- Cohortium impedimentis relictō, cum xxv cohortibus magnōque equitatū contrā hostem proficiscitur, et mille passuum intermissō spatiō castra commūnit. Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem difficilī trānsitū flūmen rīpisque praeruptis.
- 5 Hoc neque ipse trānsire habēbat in animō neque hostēs trānsitūrōs exīstimābat. Augēbātur auxiliōrum cotidiē spēs. Loquitur in cōnsiliō palam, quoniam Germāni appropinquāre dicantur, sēsē suās exercitūsque fortūnās
- 10 In dubium nōn dēvocātūrum, et posterō diē primā lūce castra mōtūrum. Celeriter haec ad hostēs dēferuntur, ut ex magnō Gallōrum equitatūs numerō nōnnūllōs Gallicis rēbus favēre nātūra cōgēbat.

## LESSON 127

*The Enemy are Deceived and become Overconfident*

Labiēnus noctū tribūnis militum prīmisque ōrdinibus convocātis, quid suī sit cōnsilī, prōpōnit et, quō facilius

1. *impedimentis*: at this time Labienus had charge of the heavy baggage of Caesar's entire army.
2. *hostem*: sing. for pl., as in English. — *mille*: indeclinable adj., here as genitive.
3. *intermissō*: *i.e.* relictō (namely, between him and the enemy). — *commūnit*: commūniō, 4, *intrench*.
4. *trānsitū*: trānsitus, -ūs, M., *passage* (cf. trānsēō). — *praeruptis*: praeruptus, -a, -um, *rugged*.
7. *spēs*: namely, for the Treveri. — *loquitur*: subject, Labiēnus. — *cōnsiliō*: as on p. 126, l. 16. — *quoniam*: *inasmuch as*.
8. *suās . . . fortūnās*: *i.e.* suam salūtem. — *exercitūsque*: and (that) of the army.
9. *dubium*: *i.e.* periculum; lit. what? — *dēvocātūrum*: dēvocō, 1, *bring*; lit. *call*. — *castra mōtūrum*: *i.e.* he will fall back.
10. *ut*: *inasmuch as*. — *ex*: out of.
11. *Gallōrum*: freely, *recruited from among the Gauls* (cf. the note on p. 139, l. 10). — *Gallicis rēbus*: the Gallic cause.
13. *ōrdinibus*: *i.e.* centuriōnibus.
14. *quid suī sit cōnsilī*: what his plan involves; lit. what? (for cōnsilī, cf. Standisi, p. 16, l. 4). — *prōpōnit*: *i.e.* ostendit. — *quō*: see the note on p. 101, l. 14.

hostibus timōris det suspiciōnem, maiōre strepitū et tum  
quam populi Rōmāni fert cōsuētūdō, castra movērī i  
His rēbus fugae similem profectiōnem efficit. Haec  
que per explorātōrēs ante lūcem in tantā propinqu  
5 castrōrum ad hostēs dēferuntur.

Vix agmen novissimum extrā mūnitiōnēs prōcess  
cum Galli cohortātī inter sē, nē spērātam praedar  
manibus dīmitterent — longum esse, perterritis Rōm  
Germānōrum auxilium expectāre, neque suam patī c  
10 tātem ut tantīs cōpiis tam exiguam manum, praes  
fugientem atque impeditam, adoriri nōn audeant — fī  
trānsire et iniquō locō committere proelium nōn dubi  
Quae fore suspicātus Labiēnus, ut omnēs citrā fī  
ēliceret, eādē ūsus simulātiōne itineris placidē pr  
15 diēbātur.

1. timōris: namely, on his part.

2. fert: *calls for*.

3. similem: pred. adj. — haec: neut.

4. per: freely, *by*; cf. p. 141, l. 9.  
— intantā propinquitāte: freely, *on account of the close proximity* (propinquitās, -ātis, F., *nearness*).

6. agmen novissimum: name-  
ly, of Labienus' army. With this  
phrase cf. primum agmen, p. 148,  
l. 6. — prōcesserat: prōcēdō, 3,  
-cessi, -cessum est: *advance*.

7. inter sē: freely, *one another*.

8. longum esse: *it was need-  
less* (lit. *too long*). The indirect  
discourse is due to the idea of say-  
ing implied in cohortātī, l. 7. Do  
not attempt to translate this paren-

thetical matter (between  
dashes) until the rest of the  
sentence is clear.

10. ut: *that*; depende  
patī. — tantīs cōpiis: see p.  
l. 1.

11. fugientem atque i  
tam: modifying manum, l.  
flūmen: see p. 159, l. 3 ff.

13. quae: neut., *this*. —  
supplying here a future infinitive.  
fīō. — ut: depending on  
diēbātur, l. 14. — omnēs:  
*all*. — citrā: prep., *to the  
side of, i.e. to his side of*.

14. ūsus: *keeping up*.  
neris: here, *retreat*. — p  
adv., *steadily*. — prōgredi  
*continued to move on*.

## LESSON 128

*They are Decisively Beaten*

Tum praemissis paulum impedimentis atque in tumultū quōdam collocātis, "Habētis," inquit, "militēs, quam petistis facultātem; hostem impeditō atque iniquō locō tenētis: praestāte eandem nōbis ducibus virtūtem, quam saepenumērō imperātōrī praestitistis, atque illum adesse et haec cōram cernere existimāte." Simul signa ad hostem converti aciemque dērigi iubet; paucis turmis praesidiō ad impedimenta dimissis reliquos equitēs ad latera dispōnit.

Celeriter nostrī clāmōre sublātō pila in hostēs inmittunt. Illi ubi praeter spem, quos modo fugere crēdebant, infestis signis ad sē ire vidērunt, impetum ferre nōn potuerunt, ac primō concursū in fugam coniecti proximās silvās petiverunt. Quos Labiēnus equitātū cōnsectātus, magnō numerō interceptō, complūribus captis, paucis post diēbus civitātem recēpit. Nam Germānī, quī auxiliō veniebant, perceptā Trēverōrum fugā, sēsē domum recēperunt.

1. tumultō: *tumulus*, -i, m., *hillock*.

2. inquit: subject, Labiēnus. — militēs: voc. case. — quam petistis facultātem: *i.e.* eam facultātem quam petivistis.

4. nōbis ducibus: *i.e.* mē duce (abl. absol.). The use of the first Person pl. for the corresponding sing. is very common. — saepenumērō: *i.e.* saepe; strictly, numerō is abl. of specification.

5. imperātōrī: freely, *before the eyes of your commander in chief* (*i.e.* Caesar). — haec: *this action*.

6. cōram: adv., *in person*. — cernere: *i.e.* vidēre. — signa . . .

converti: a signal to change front.

7. dērigi: *i.e.* instrui (dērigō, 3, -rēxi, -rēctus).

8. ad: *on*.

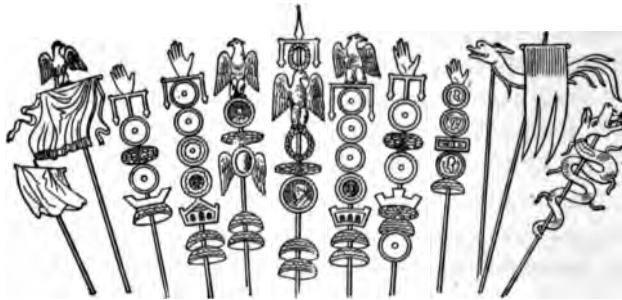
10. praeter: *i.e.* *contrary to*. — spem: *expectation*. — quos: simply as antecedent, *eōs*, *those* (subject of ire, l. 11).

11. ad . . . ire: freely, *advancing upon*. — ac: freely, *but*.

12. concursū: concursus, -ūs, m., *clash* (cf. concurrō).

13. cōnsectātus: cōnsector, 1, *follow up*.

15. recēpit: sc. in dēditiōnem. — perceptā: *i.e.* cōgnitā (percipiō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptus).



SIGNA

With these standards compare those shown in the illustrations on page 132. Flags (*vexilla*) were used for giving signals, and to differentiate small bodies of troops. In the matter of inspiring loyalty among the men, their effect was in general very slight as compared with that of the flag in modern armies.

## AN EPISODE FROM THE CIVIL WAR

(Caesar, *Dē Bellō Cīvīlī*, III, 95-98)

### LESSON 129

When, in 49 B.C., Caesar marched some of his troops south into Italy, and thus precipitated the civil war between himself and Pompey (cf. the episode in Lessons 117-125), Pompey was taken by surprise, and retired into Greece. In the decisive battle of Pharsalus, fought there in the following year, Caesar gained the first advantage, driving the Pompeians back to the shelter of their ramparts.

Caesar, Pompēiānis ex fugā intrā vāllum compulsis, nūllum spatium perterritis darī oportēre existimāns, militēs cohortātus est ut beneficiō Fortūnae ūterentur castraque oppugnārent. Quī, etsī magnō aestū fatigātī—nam ad 5 meridiem rēs erat perducta—tamen ad omnem labōrem animō parātī, impēriō pārūrunt.

Castra ā cohortibus, quae ibi praesidiō erant relictæ, industriē dēfendēbantur, multō etiam ācrius ā Thrācibus barbarisque auxiliis. Nam quī ex aciē refūgerant militēs, 10 et animō perterriti et lassitūdine cōfecti, missis plērique

1. vāllum: *i.e.* of their own camp.

2. spatium: *respite*.—perterritis: modifying eis, supplied.—darī oportēre: *should be allowed* (oportet, 2, -uit, impersonal verb, lit. *it is fitting*).

4. aestū: aestus, -ūs, M., *heat*.—fatigātī: *i.e.* dēfessī (fatigō, 1).

5 meridiem: here, *midday*.—rēs: *engagement*.

6. animō: abl. of specification; translate freely.

7. castra: namely, of Pompey.—industriē: adv., *energetically*.

8. multō: construe with ācrius.

9. -que: *and (other)*.—quī . . . militēs: *i.e.* ei militēs, qui.—aciē: *i.e.* proeliō.

10. lassitūdine: lassitūdō, -inis, F., *weariness*.—missis: *discarded* (cf. dimitto).—plērique: freely,

armis signisque militāribus, magis dē reliquā fugā quam dē castrōrum dēfēnsiōne cōgitābant. Neque vērō diūtius, quī in vāllō cōstitērant, multitudinem tēlōrum sustinēre potuerunt, sed cōfecti vulneribus locum reliquērunt, 5 prōtinusque omnēs, ducibus ūsi centuriōnibus tribūnisque militum, in altissimōs montēs, quī ad castra pertinēbant, cōnfūgērunt.

Caesar, castris potitus, ā militibus contendit nē, in praedā occupātī, reliquī negōtī gerendī facultātem dimitterent. Quā rē impetrātā, montem opere circummūnīre instituit.

## LESSON 130

### *Unconditional Surrender of the Pompeians*

Pompēiānī, quod is mōns erat sine aquā, diffisi ei locō, relictō monte, ūniversī iugis eius Lārisam versus sē recipere coepērunt. Quā rē animadversā, Caesar cōpiās suās divisit,

*in the majority of cases*; the word agrees with *militēs*, though in sense it belongs with the abl. absol. Be careful to make the rendering of this sentence idiomatic throughout.

1. *militāribus*: *militāris*, -is, -e, lit. *military*. *signa militāria* is the full expression for "standards"; usually the adj. is omitted.  
— *dē reliquā fugā*: *i.e.* about *resuming their flight*.

2. *diūtius*: absol. compar.

3. *in vāllō*: *i.e.* to defend it.

4. *locum*: (*their*) *posts*.

5. *ducibus ūsi*: lit. *having* (*as*) *leaders*; translate freely.

6. *altissimōs*: absol. superl.

7. *cōnfūgērunt*: *cōnfugiō*, 3,

*-fūgi*, with in and the acc., *takes refuge (upon)*.

8. *contendit*: *i.e.* *petivit*.

10. *montem*: *i.e.* the particular height upon which the Pompeians had finally assembled. — *circummūnīre*: *circummūniō*, 4, *girdle*.

11. *instituit*: *i.e.* *coepit* (*instituiō*, 3, *-stitui*, *-stitūtus*).

12. *diffisi*: *diffidō*, 3, *-fissus sum*, with dat., *lack confidence (in)*.

13. *iugis*: *iugum*, -ī, N., *ridge*; translate the abl. "along" (way by which). — *eius*: *i.e.* *montis*. — *Lārisam*: a town some miles north, toward which Pompey had already fled, making for the sea. — *versus*: translate as if *ad* . . . *versus* (cf. the note on p. 79, l. 21).

partemque legiōnum in castris Pompēi remanēre iussit, partem in sua castra remisit, IV sēcum legiōnēs dūxit, commodiōreque itinere Pompēiānis occurrere coepit, et prōgressus milia passuum VI, aciem instrūxit. Quā rē  
 5 animadversā, Pompēiāni in quōdam monte cōstitērunt. Hunc montem flūmen subluēbat. Caesar militēs cohortātus, etsi tōtius diēi continentī labōre erant cōfectī noxque iam suberat, tamen mūnitiōne flūmen ā monte sēclūsit, nē noctū aquārī Pompēiāni possent.

10 Quō perfectō opere, illi dē dēditiōne missis lēgātis agere coepērunt. Paucī ōrdinis senātōrii, quī sē cum his coniūn\_xerant, nocte fugā salūtem petivērunt. Caesar primā lūce omnēs eōs, quī in monte cōsēderant, ex superiōribus locis in plānitie dēscendere atque arma prōicere iussit.  
 15 Quod ubi sine recūsātiōne fēcērunt, passisque palmis prōiecti ad terram flentēs ab eō salūtem petivērunt, cōsōlātus cōsurgere iussit et pauca apud eōs dē lēnitāte suā locūtus, quō minōre essent timōre, omnēs cōservāvit.

1. Pompēi: cf. the note on Standisi, p. 16, l. 4. — remanēre: remaneō, 2, -mānsi, -mānsus est, remain.

2. sua: note the position.

3. commodiōre: i.e. than the route taken by the enemy.

6. subluēbat: subluō, 3, —, —, wash the base of.

7. continenti: as adj. (abl. case), unbroken.

8. suberat: i.e. aderat (subsum, -esse, -fui). — sēclūsit: sēclūdō, 3, -clūsī, -clūsus, shut off.

9. aquārī: aquor, 1, get water.

10. opere: i.e. the mūnitiō of l. 8. — dē dēditiōne: construe with agere.

11. senātōrii: senātōrius, -a,

-um, senatorial; the highest order in the Roman state (cf. the note on p. 125, l. 9). — his: i.e. the Pompeian forces.

12. nocte: i.e. noctū.

15. recūsātiōne: recūsātiō, -ōnis, F., protest (cf. recūsō). — palmis: i.e. manibus (palma, -ae, F.) — prōiecti: freely, falling forward.

16. salūtem: i.e. (their) lives. — cōsōlātus: sc. eōs.

17. cōsurgere: i.e. surgere (cōsurgō, 3, -surrēxi, -surrēctum est). — apud eōs: in their hearing, i.e. to them. — lēnitāte: lēnitās, -ātis, F., humaneness.

18. quō: note the compar. in the clause. — minōre . . . timōre: abl. of characteristic.



## THE DEATH OF CAESAR

(Suetonius, *Iūlius*, 81, 82)

### LESSON 131

As a result of the civil war, Caesar became master of the Roman world. Many did not approve of his absolute power, and a plot was formed to take his life. As he left home for the senate house on that fatal day, some one pushed into his hand a document telling of the conspiracy; but he did not stop to examine it.

Plūribus hostiis caesis, cum litāre nōn posset, intē cūriam sprētā religiōne Spurinnamque irridēns et ut falsū arguēns, quod sine ullā suā noxā Idūs Mārtiae adesset, quamquam is vēnisse quidem eās diceret, sed nōn praesens fuisse. Assidentem cōspiratī specie officiū circumstetēr illicōque Cimber Tillius, quī primās partēs susceperat, q

1. plūribus: *i.e.* complūribus.  
— hostiis: *hostia*, -ae, F., *sacrificial victim*. — caesis: *caedō*, 3, *cecidi*, *caesus*, *slay*. — cum: *concessive*. — litāre: *litō*, 1, -āvi, -ātum est, *secure favorable omens*; the condition of the entrails of the slaughtered animals being supposed to portend good fortune or the reverse. — introiit: *introeō*, -ire, -ii, -itus, *enter*.

2. cūriam: *cūria*, -ae, F., *senate house*. — sprētā: from *spernō*. — Spurinnam: a priest who had predicted peril for Caesar on the 15th of March (Idūs Mārtiae, l. 3).

— irridēns (-entis, part.): *deriding*. — ut falsum: *as (a) (prophet)*.

3. arguēns (-entis, part.) *sailing*. — quod: *as on p. 55*, — suā noxā (noxā, -ae, F.): *to him (Caesar)*.

4. is: *i.e.* Spurinna.

5. assidentem: *sc. Caesar* (*assidō*, 3, -sēdi, -sessum est, *one's seat*). — cōspiratī (-i M.): *the conspirators*. — of (showing) respect.

6. illicō (adv.): *i.e. statim* primās partēs: *i.e. the leading rôle*.



CAIUS IULIUS CAESAR

A Roman of distinguished family, and one of the ablest warriors  
the world has known.

aliquid rogātūrus propius accessit, renuentique et gestū in aliud tempus differentī ab utrōque umerō togam apprehendit; deinde clāmantem, "Ista quidem vis est," alter ē Cascis āversum vulnerat, paulum infrā iugulum.

- 5 Caesar Cascae brachium arreptum graphiō trāiēcit, cōnātusque prōsilire aliō vulnere tardātus est; utque animadvertit undique sē strictis pūgiōnibus petī, togā caput obvolvīt, simul sinistrā manū sinum ad ima crūra dēdūxit, quō honestius caderet, etiam inferiōre corporis  
10 parte vėlātā. Atque ita tribus et viginti plāgis cōfossus est, ūnō modo ad primum ictum gemitū sine vōce ēditō; etsi trādidērunt quidam Mārcō Brūtō inruenti dīxisse, "Kal

1. aliquid rogātūrus: *intending to make some request*; lit. what? — renuenti: sc. Caesarī (renuō, 3, -nui, *shake (one's) head*); translate by a clause introduced by "as"; the lit. meaning of the dat. is "for." — gestū: gestus, -ūs, M., *gesture*.

2. differentī: sc. eum, lit. *putting (him) off*. — ab: *at*; cf. the use of *ex* in phrases like *omnibus ex partibus*. — togam: toga, -ae, F., *robe*. — apprehendit: apprehendō, 3, -prehendi, -prehēnsus, *lay hold of*.

3. clāmantem: sc. Caesarem. — ista: for istud (subject of est); cf. the agreement of quod, p. 30, l. 6. — vis: (*downright*) *violence*. — Cascis: the two were brothers (nom. Casca).

4. āversum: *from behind*, lit. *turned away*. — infrā: prep., *below*. — iugulum: iugulum, -ī, N., *neck*.

5. brachium: brachium, -ī, N., *arm*. — graphiō: graphium, -ī, N., *stylus*. — trāiēcit: trāiciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus, *pierce*.

6. prōsilire: prōsiliō, 4, -ui, *leap forward*. — tardātus est: tardō, 1, *stop*. — ut: *i.e. ubi*.

7. strictis: strictus, -a, -um, part., *drawn*. — pūgiōnibus: *i.e. sicis (pūgiō, -ōnis, M.)*. — togā: cf. l. 2.

8. obvolvīt: obvolvō, 3, -volvi, -volūtus, *shroud*. — sinistrā: sinister, -tra, -trum, *left*. — sinum: sinus, -ūs, M., *fold*; translate here as pl., (*its*) *folds*. — ad ima crūra: *i.e. to his ankles (crūs, crūris, N., leg)*.

9. honestius: honestē (adv.), *in seemly fashion*.

10. vėlātā: *i.e. tēctā (vēlō, 1)*. — plāgis: *i.e. vulneribus (plāga, -ae, F.)*.

11. ūnō: construe with gemitū. — modo: *i.e. tantum*. — ad: *at*. — ictum: ictus, -ūs, M., *blow*. — vōce: *articulation*.

12. inruenti: inruēns, -entis, part., *pressing forward*. — dīxisse: sc. eum (*i.e. Caesarem*). — Kal σὺ τέκνον: *you too, my boy?*

ὁ δὲ τέκνον;" Exanimis, diffugientibus cūnctis, aliquamdiū iacuit, dōnec lecticae impositum, dēpendente bracchiō, trēs servoli domum rettulērunt. Nec in tot vulneribus, ut Antistius medicus existimābat, lētāle ūllum repertum est, nisi quod secundō locō in pectore accēperat.

## THE FATE OF HANNIBAL

(Nepos, *Hannibal*, 12, 13)

### LESSON 132

The second Punic War, waged between the Romans and Carthaginians from 218 to 201 B.C., ended in a complete victory for the Romans. The latter, however, were suspicious that Hannibal, the most famous general of the Carthaginians, was simply biding his time to renew the war under more favorable conditions; and so they desired to arrest and hold him as a prisoner. By hastening into exile, Hannibal escaped for some years, and improved the opportunity to stir up a great deal of trouble for the Romans in the East.

Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgātī Prūsiae Rōmae apud T. Quīnctium Flāminīnum cōsulārem

1. exanimis (-is, -e): *lifeless*. — diffugientibus: diffugiō, 3, -fūgi, *scatter*. — cūnctis: *i.e.* omnibus, as noun (cūncti, -ae, -a).

2. lecticae: lectica, -ae, *F., litter*. — dēpendente: dēpendēs, -entis, *part., hanging down*. — bracchiō: cf. p. 168, l. 5.

3. servoli: servulus, -i, *M., young slave*; cf. servus. — rettulērunt: sc. eum. — in: *among*. — ut: *as*.

4. medicus (-i, *M.*): *physician*. — lētāle: *i.e.* exitiāle (lētālis, -is,

-e). — nisi quod: *excepting (one) which*.

5. secundō: *i.e.* *especially vulnerable*; *lit. favorable*. — pectore: pectus, -oris, *N., chest*.

6. quae: *i.e.* *events narrated in previous chapters*. — Asiā: *i.e.* *Asia Minor*. — accidit: *impersonal expression*. — cāsū: *i.e.* *forte*. — Prūsiae (nom. in -a, or -ās): *king of Bithynia* (cf. p. 170, l. 5). The *gen.* may be rendered "from"

7. cōsulārem: cōsulāris, -is, *M., ex-consul*.

cēnārent, atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā, ex eis ūnus diceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāminius senātui dētulit. Patrēs cōscripti, qui Hannibale vivō numquam sē sine insidiis futūrōs existimārent, 5 lēgātōs in Bithyniam misērunt (in eis Flāminium), qui ab rēge peterent, nē inimicissimum suum sēcum habēret sibi dēderet. Hīs Prūsia negāre ausus nōn est. Illud recūsāvit, nē id ā sē fieri postulārent, quod adversus iūs 10 hospitii esset; ipsi, si possent, comprehenderent; locum, ubi esset, facile inventūrōs.

## LESSON 133

*Death rather than Captivity*

Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat, in castellō, quod ei ā rēge datum erat mūneri, idque sic aedificārat, ut in omnibus

1. mentiōne: mentiō, -ōnis, f., mention.

2. diceret: in the same construction as cēnārent, l. 1. — eum: Hannibal.

3. patrēs cōscripti: i.e. the senators (cōscriptus, -a, -um, lit. enrolled). — Hannibale vivō: abl. absol.; translate by a clause introduced by "as long as."

4. existimārent: subjunctive in a causal relative clause.

5. in eis: cf. p. 38, l. 14.

6. inimicissimum suum: their deadly foe. — sēcum habēret: i.e. harbor.

7. sibi dēderet: i.e. eum-que ut sibi dēderet. — his: i.e. lēgātis. — illud . . . nē: this . . . that.

8. id: a thing; antecedent of quod. — adversus (prep.): i.e. contrā.

9. hospitii: hospitium, -i, n., hospitality. — ipsi . . . comprehenderent: sc. eum, i.e. let them arrest him themselves.

10. inventūrōs: sc. eōs (subject). The indirect discourse depends upon the idea of saying underlying recūsāvit, l. 8; cf. longum esse, etc., p. 160, l. 8.

11. enim: referring to what is said in the last clause of Lesson 132. — in: namely, in.

12. rēge: i.e. Prūsā. — mūneri: i.e. dōnō, dat. of service (mūneris, n.). — aedificārat: i.e. aedificāverat.

partibus aedificii exitus habēret, scilicet verēns nē ūsū veniret, quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmānī vēnissent ac multitudine domum eius circumdedissent, puer, ab iānuā prōspiciēns, Hannibalī dīxit plūris praeter cōsuētūdinem armātōs appārēre. Quī imperāvit eī ut omnis foris circumiret ac properē sibi nūntiāret num eōdem modō undique obsidērētur. Puer cum celeriter quid vidisset renūntiāset, omnisque exitus occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuitō factum, sed sē petī neque sibi diūtius vitam esse retinendam. Quam nē aliēnō arbitriō dīmitteret, memor pristinārum virtūtum, venēnum, quod semper sēcum habēre cōsuērat, sūmpsit. Sic vir fortissimus, multis variisque perfūctus labōribus, annō acquiēvit septuāgēsimo.

1. aedificiū: aedificium, -ī, N., structure. — verēns: i.e. veritus. — ūsū veniret: sc. id (subject), i.e. that (thing) would happen.

2. quod accidit: which (actually) did come to pass (namely, the discovery by the Romans of his hiding place). — hūc: cf. p. 154, l. 12.

3. puer: i.e. servus. — iānuā: iānuā, -ae, F., door.

4. plūris: modifying armātōs, l. 5. — praeter cōsuētūdinem: than usual; lit. beyond the ordinary.

5. appārēre: i.e. in cōspectū esse (appārēre, 2, -ui). — quī: i.e. Hannibal. — ei: i.e. puerō. — foris: i.e. exitus (cf. l. 1).

6. properē (adv.): i.e. celeriter. — num: conjunction, whether.

7. puer cum: i.e. cum puer. — renūntiāset: renūntiō, 1, report.

8. sēnsit: subject, Hannibal. — fortuitō (adv.): i.e. cāsū.

9. factum: sc. esse. — retinendam: render the gerundive by "could."

10. quam: i.e. vitam. — nē: freely, to avoid (with part. in -ing). — arbitriō: arbitrium, -ī, N., bidding.

11. virtūtum: freely, career of valor.

12. cōsuērat: i.e. cōsuēverat.

13. perfūctus: perfungor, 3, -fūctus sum, experience. This verb takes the same construction as ūtor and potior. — acquiēvit: acquiēscō, 3, -quiēvi, rest, i.e. die.

## CATILINE'S CONSPIRACY

(Sallust, *Bellum Catilinae*, 40, 41, 60)

### LESSON 134

In 63 B.C. Marcus Cicero (brother of the Quintus Cicero who subsequently figured in the events described in Lesson 108 ff.) had to deal with a rather alarming conspiracy which aimed to revolutionize the government of Rome. The chief conspirator, Catiline, took the field with an army, while Lentulus, who was secretly in sympathy with him, supervised matters in the city. One day Lentulus noticed there two Gallic envoys who had come to Rome to complain that Roman officials were oppressing their people, and he thereupon conceived the idea of further embarrassing the government by inducing these Gauls to stir up a revolt among their countrymen.

Igitur P. Umbrēnō cuidam negōtium dat, utī lēgātōs Allobrogum requīrat eōsque, sī possit, impellat ad societātem bellī, existimāns publicē privātimque aere aliēnō oppressōs, praetereā quod nātūrā gēns Gallica bellicōsa esset, facile eōs ad tāle cōnsilium addūci posse.

Umbrēnus, quod in Galliā negōtiātus erat, plērisque principibus civitātium nōtus erat atque eōs nōverat. Itaque

1. P.: *i.e.* Pūbliō.—dat: subject, Lentulus. — utī: *i.e.* ut.

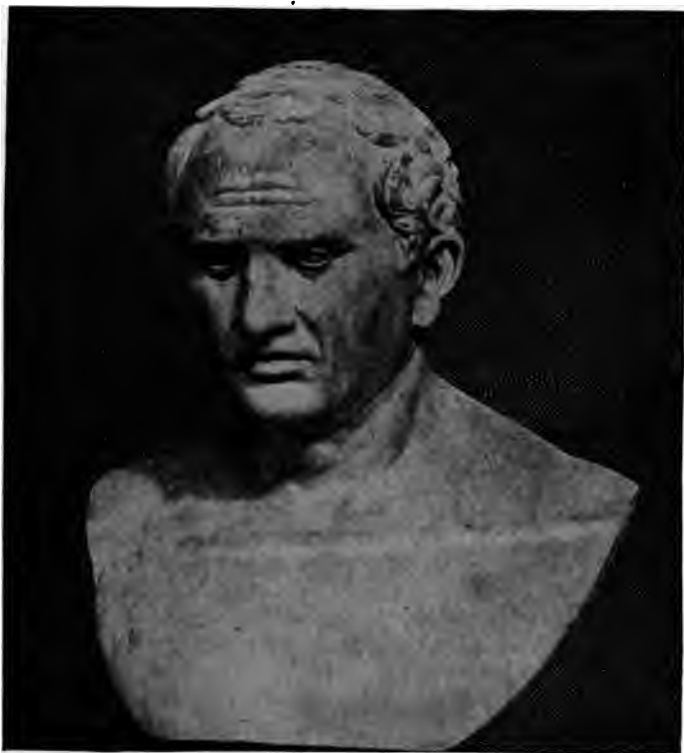
2. Allobrogum: a tribe of southeast Gaul. — requīrat: requirō, 3, -quisivī, -quisitus, *seek out*. — impellat: impellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsus, *incite*. — societātem: societas, -ātis, F., with gen., *partnership (in)*.

3. publicē privātimque: advs., *as a people and as individuals*.

4. oppressōs: modifying eōs (*i.e.* Allobrogēs) supplied. — bellicōsa: bellicōsus, -a, -um, *warlike*.

5. esset: for mood, cf. the note on *admoveantur*, p. 61, l. 14; translate as a present. — tāle: tālis, -is, -e, *such a*.

7. civitātium: cf. the note on p. 123, l. 11. — nōverat: nōscō, 3, nōvī, nōtus: *become acquainted with*.



MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO

The first of his family to reach the consulship, Cicero won some fame as a statesman by suppressing the conspiracy of Catiline ; but his chief and lasting distinction was along literary lines. In oratory he was hardly rivaled in his own generation ; and his writings are a priceless possession.



sine morā, ubi primum lēgātōs in forō cōspēxit, percontātus pauca dē statū civitātis et quasi dolēns eius cāsum, requirere coepit, quem exitum tantis malis spērarent. Postquam illōs videt queri dē avāritiā magistrātuum, accūsāre senātum quod in eō auxiliū nihil esset, miseris suis remedium mortem expectāre, “at ego,” inquit, “vōbīs, sī modo viri esse vultis, ratiōnem ostendam, quā tanta ista mala effugiātis.”

## LESSON 135

*The Envoys are Initiated into the Conspiracy*

Haec ubi dixit, Allobrogēs in maximam spem adducti,  
 10 Umbrēnum orāre ut sui miseretur: nihil tam asperum neque tam difficile esse, quod nōn cupidissimē factūrī essent, dum ea rēs civitatem aere aliēnō liberāret. Ille eōs in domum D. Brūtī perdūcit, quod forō propinqua erat

1. percontātus: percontor, 1, ask.

2. statū: status, -ūs, M., with gen., situation (in). — civitātis: sc. eōrum. — quasi: cf. p. 166, l. 6. — dolēns: doleō, 2, -uī, be concerned about.

3. requirere: inquire (cf. p. 172, l. 2). — exitum: solution, lit., way out (cf. p. 171, l. 1). — tantis malis: dat. case.

4. magistrātuum: magistrātus, -ūs, M., official. — accūsāre: accūsō, 1, rail at.

5. quod: cf. the note on p. 62, l. 13. — eō: i.e. senātū. — miseris: miseriae, -ārum, F., troubles. — remedium: (as) a solution (remedium, -i, N.).

7. viri esse: i.e. play the part

of men. — tanta: freely, overwhelming. — ista: those . . . of yours.

10. orāre: for orāvērunt. — sui: gen. pl. — miseretur: miseror, 2, miseritus sum, with gen., take pity (on). — nihil, etc.: the indirect discourse is due to the idea of saying underlying orāre.

11. neque: translate “or.” — quod nōn . . . factūrī essent: that they would not undertake it; a relative clause of result.

12. dum: provided only. — ea: res: it. — aere aliēnō: translate the abl. “from” or “of.” — ille: Umbrenus.

13. in domum: cf. the note on p. 16, l. 11. — D.: i.e. Decimī.

neque aliēna cōnsili propter Semprōniam : nam tum Brūtus ab Rōmā aberat. Praetereā Gabinium arcēssit, quō maior auctōritās sermōnī inesset. Eō praesente coniūratiōnem aperuit, nōminat sociōs, praetereā multōs cuiusque generis innoxios, quō lēgātis animus amplior esset. Deinde eōs pollicitōs operam suam domum dimittit.

Sed Allobrogēs diū in incertō habuēre, quidnam cōnsili caperent : in alterā parte erat aes aliēnum, studium belli magna mercēs in spē victōriae, at in alterā maiōrēs opēs, tūta cōnsilia, prō incertā spē certa praemia. Haec illis volventibus, tandem vicit fortūna rei pūblīcae. Itaque Q. Fabiō Sangae, cuius patrōciniō civitās plūrimum ūtēbatur, rem omnem, uti cōgnōverant, aperiunt. Cicerō, per San-

1. aliēna : with gen., *unfriendly (to)*. — Semprōniam : wife of Brutus, who was himself not a party to the conspiracy.

2. quō : note the compar. in the clause. Umbrenus was a freedman, hence the need of calling in a conspirator of better social standing.

3. sermōnī : sermō, -ōnis, M., *interview*. — inesset : insum, inesse, inful, with dat., lit. *be (in)* ; translate the phrase freely. — eō : *i.e.* Gabiniō.

4. nōminat : nōminō, I, *name*. — praetereā : (*and*) *in addition*.

5. innoxios : pred. adj. (innoxius, -a, -um, *innocent*). — amplior : amplius, -a, -um, *great* (cf. the adv. *amplius*).

6. suam : modifier of operam. — domum : *i.e.* to their temporary quarters in Rome.

7. in incertō habuēre (for

habuērunt) : freely, *were undecided*. — quidnam : *what . . . really*, -nam being an intensive particle. — cōnsili : for syntax, cf. quid . . . causae, p. 150, l. 10.

8. alterā . . . alterā (l. 9) : *the one . . . the other*. — studium (-ī, N.) : with gen., *liking (for)*.

9. mercēs (-ēdis, F.) : *inducement*. — opēs : namely, those of the government (ops, opis, F., *help* ; pl., *resources*).

10. illis : *i.e.* Allobrogibus.

11. volventibus : volvō, 3, volvī, volūtus, *turn over in (one's) mind* ; cf. the note on dēfēdente, p. 44, l. 17. — tandem : adv., *at length*. — rei pūblīcae : sc. Rōmānae.

12. patrōciniō : patrōcinium, -ī, N., *legal services*. — plūrimum : see multum.

13. uti (*i.e.* ut) : *as*. — cōgnōverant : sc. eam. — Cicerō : see the note at the head of Lesson 134.

gam cōsiliō cōgnitō, lēgātis praecepit, ut studium iūratiōnis vehementer simulent, cēterōs adeant, polliceantur, dentque operam uti eōs quam maximē i fēstōs habeant.

## LESSON 136

The envoys, pretending that it would be difficult to persuade countrymen to revolt unless the matter were put into writing, secured thus from the conspirators evidence sufficient to convict of the ringleaders, five of whom were promptly executed in the prison. Shortly afterward, in the north country, the army of C (see the note at the head of Lesson 134) was brought to bay by government forces, and he chose to try conclusions with a day which on the day of battle was under the command of a veteran named Petreius.

- 5 Sed ubi, omnibus rēbus explōrātis, Petrēius tubā sīg dat, cohortis paulātim incēdere iubet; idem facit hoc exercitus. Postquam eō ventum est, unde [ā] ferent proelium committī posset, maximō clāmōre cum in signis concurrunt: pīla omittunt, gladiis rēs geritur.

1. praecepit (for praecipit): *i.e.* imperat (praecipio, 3, -cēpi, -ceptus). — studium: cf. p. 175, l. 8.

2. cēterōs: *i.e.* the other conspirators in Rome.

3. uti: *that*. — maximē: cf. the note on p. 44, l. 11. — manifestōs: manifestus, -a, -um, *obviously guilty*; translate the phrase freely.

5. sed: *now*. — explōrātis: *inspected*. — tubā: tuba, -ae, F., *trumpet*. See the second illustration on p. 60.

6. dat: if rendered as a past,

use the pluperfect. — cohortis suās. — incēdere: incēdō, 3, -cessum est, *advance*. — hoc *i.e.* Catiline and his follower

7. eō . . . unde: *to a where* (lit. *whence*). — ferent: ferentārii, -ōrum, M., *armed troops* (*e.g.* slingers the top illustration on p. 144)

9. omittunt: *make no use* lit. *omit* (omittō, 3, -misi, -mi Contrast the regular procedure beginning battle, p. 161, —rēs: *the fighting*. — vet *i.e.* of the government army.

terānī, prīstinae virtūtis memorēs, comminus ācritēr Instāre, illi haud timidē resistunt: maximā vī certātūr.

Intereā Catilīna cum expeditis in primā aciē versārī, labōrantibus succurrere, integrōs prō sauciis arcēssere, omnia prōvidēre, multum ipse pugnāre, saepe hostem ferīre: strēnuī militis et bonī imperātōris officia simul exsequēbātūr. Petrēius, ubi videt Catilinam, contrā ac ratus erat, magnā vī tendere, cohorteī praetōriam in mediōs hostis indūcit eōsque perturbātōs atque aliōs alibi resistentis interficit, deinde utrimque ex lateribus ceterōs adgreditur. Mānlius et Faesulānus in primis pignantēs cadunt. Catilīna, postquam fūsās cōpiās sēque cum paucis

1. *comminus*: adv., at close quarters. — *Instāre*: *instō*, 1, -stiti, *press the fight*. Here, and several times below, the pres. infin. replaces a third person of the perf. or imperf. indic.

2. *illi*: *i.e. their opponents*. — *haud timidē*: *i.e. boldly* (*timidē*, adv., *with fear*). — *certātūr*: *i.e. dimicātūr* (*certō*, 1, -āvī, -ātum est).

3. *primā*: *the front of*; cf. the use of *summum*, p. 104, l. 4.

4. *labōrantibus*: part. (sc. *eis*), *those hard pressed*. — *succurrere*: *i.e. auxiliō venire* (*succurrō*, 3, -curri, -cursum est). — *prō*: freely, so replace. — *sauciis*: *i.e. vulnerātis* (*saucius*, -a, -um).

6. *ferīre*: *i.e. percutere* (*feriō*, 4, —, —). — *exsequēbātūr*: *i.e. praestābat* (*exsequor*, 3, -secūtus sum); cf. p. 129, l. 9.

7. *contrā*: adv., lit. *differently*. — *ac*: *than*, lit. *as*. The whole phrase = *praeter spem*, p. 161, l. 10.

8. *tendere*: *tendō*, 3, *tetendī*,

*tentus*, *stretch*; here, *exert (one's self)*. — *mediōs*: *who occupy the center*.

9. *indūcit*: *indūcō*, 3, -dūxī, -ductus, lit. *lead (against)*. — *atque*: connecting the two participles. — *aliōs alibi*: *some in one place, some in another*; cf. *alii in aliam*, p. 80, l. 5.

10. *utrimque*: adv., *on either side*. — *lateribus*: cf. *latera*, p. 161, l. 8, and (for the form of phrase) *omnibus ex partibus*, etc. — *adgreditur*: *i.e. adoritur* (*adgredior*, 3, -gressus sum). Petreius first broke through the center, and then to the right and left made a flank attack upon the remnants of the enemy's line.

11. *Mānlius et Faesulānus*: *Manlius and the citizen of Faesulae* (a town of Etruria), Catiline's chief lieutenants. — *in primis*: *i.e. in the front rank*.

12. *fūsās*: *fundō*, 3, *fūdī*, *fusus*, *scatter*. — *paucis*: *i.e. (but) a handful*.

relictum videt, memor generis atque pristinae suae tātis, in cōfertissimōs hostis incurrit, ibique pugā cōnfoditur.

## ON THE EASTERN FRONTIER

(Cicero, *Ad Familiārēs*, XV, 4)

### LESSON 137

About ten years after the suppression of the conspiracy of C. Cicero, much against his inclination, was appointed governor of and neighboring districts. Below are given extracts from a letter he wrote from the east to a friend at Rome, telling some of his experiences as a provincial officer.

Cum in prōvinciam pr. K. Sext. vēnissem, et pr. annī tempus ad exercitum mihi cōnfestim esse eu- vidērem, bīduum Lāodicēae fuī, deinde Apamēae quī- duum, trīduum Synnadīs, totidem diēs Philomēlii. Quia in oppidīs cum magni conventūs fuissent, multās civi- acerbissimis tribūtīs et gravissimis ūsūrīs et falsō

1. generis . . . dignitātis: for his was an ancient and noble family, and he had himself held high offices.

2. hostis: *i.e.* the government forces. — incurrit: incurro, 3, -curri, -cursum est: *plunge (in among)*.

4. cum, etc.: translate by a partic. clause. — pr. K. Sext.: *i.e.* pridie Kalendās Sextilis, the day before the first of August (Sextilis, -is, -e), namely, July 31, in the year 51 B.C.

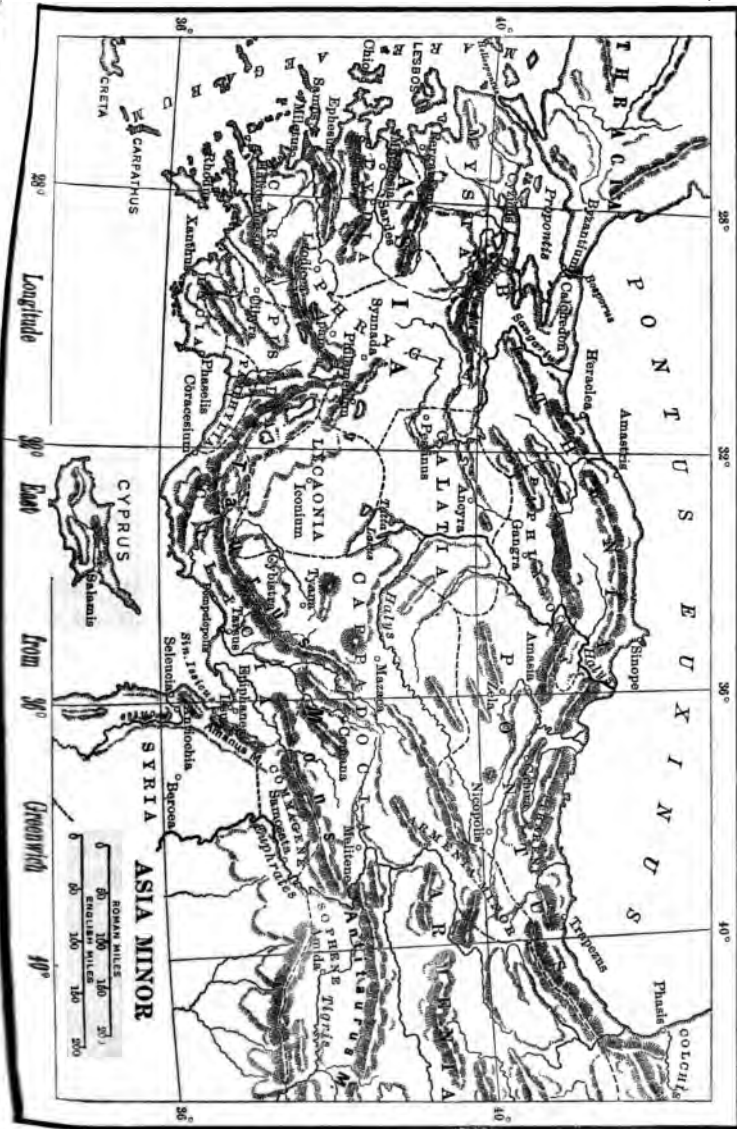
5. cōnfestim: for the winter would now soon come on (cf. p. 123, l. 1 ff.). — eundum: not eundem.

6. bīduum: cf. bīdui, p. 1. 4. — Lāodicēae: see the v. end of the map on p. 179. — stopped.

7. Synnadīs: pl. city have the same form for loc. abl. — totidem: indeclinabl. the same number of. — mēlii: for case, cf. domi.

8. conventūs: conventu M., circuit court. — fui freely, had been held.

9. acerbissimis tribūtīs, for syntax, cf. aere aliēnō, p. 1. 12. — ūsūrīs: ūsūra, -ae, f. of interest.



aliēnō liberāvī. Cumque ante adventum meum sēditione quādam exercitus esset dissipātus, quinque cohortēs sine lēgātō, sine tribūnō militum, dēnique etiam sine centuriōne ūllō apud Philomēlium cōnsēdissent, reliquus exercitus 5 esset in Lycāoniā, M. Annēiō lēgātō imperāvī, ut eās quinque cohortēs ad reliquum exercitum dūceret, coactōque in ūnum locum exercitū, castra in Lycāoniā apud Īconium faceret. Quod cum ab illō diligenter esset factum, ego in castra a. d. vii K. Sept. vēnī, cum intereā superiō- 10 ribus diēbus ex senātūs cōsultō et ēvocātōrum firmam manum et equitātum sānē idōneum et populōrum liberōrum rēgumque sociōrum auxilia voluntāria comparāvissē.

## LESSON 138

*A War Scare*

Interim, cum exercitū lūstrātō iter in Ciliciam facere coepissem, K. Sept. lēgātī ā rēge Commāgēnō ad mē

1. cumque: *and inasmuch as*. — sēditione: sēditio, -ōnis, f., *mutiny*.

2. quādam: *a sort of*. — esset dissipātus: dissipō, 1, *disrupt*. Supply et after this verb, and after cōnsēdissent, l. 4.

4. apud: *i.e. ad*; so also in l. 7.

8. quod: *relative*.

9. a. d. vii K. Sept.: *i.e. ante diem septimum Kalendās Septembrēs, the seventh (we would say, sixth) day before the first of September, namely, August 24, as the calendar was then arranged*. — cum, etc.: *translate by a participle phrase*. — superiōribus: *the preceding*.

10. ex: *in accordance with*. — cōsultō: cōsultum, -ī, n., *decree*. — et . . . et . . . et: *both . . . and . . . and*. — ēvocātōrum: ēvocātus, -ī, m., *recruited man*.

11. sānē: *adv., quite*. — liberōrum: liber, -era, -erum, *independent, or free*. The genitives may be rendered freely "supplied by"; cf. Gallōrum, p. 159, l. 11.

12. sociōrum: *as adj., allied*. — voluntāria: voluntārius, -a, -um, *volunteer*. — comparāvissē: comparō, 1, *get together*.

13. lūstrātō: lūstrō, 1, *review*.

14. K. Sept.: *i.e. Kalendās Septembribus (abl. of time when)*. — Commāgēnō: *an adj.*

umultuōsē neque tamen nōn vērē Parthōs in Syriam se nūntiāvērunt; quō auditō, vehementer sum com- cum dē Syriā tum dē meā prōvinciā, dē reliquā e Asiā.

ue in Cappadociā extrēmā nōn longē ā Taurō apud m Cybistra castra fēcī, ut et Ciliciam tuērer et Cappa- tenēns nova finitimōrum cōnsilia impedīrem.

reā cōgnōvī multōrum litteris atque nūntiis magnās rum cōpiās et Arabum ad oppidum Antiochēam sse, magnumque eōrum equitātum, quī in Ciliciam set, ab equitum meōrum turmis et ā cohorte prae- quae erat Epiphanēae praesidiī causā, occidiōne occi- Quārē, cū vidērem ā Cappadociā Parthōrum cōpiās s, nōn longē ā finibus esse Ciliciae, quam potui maxi- meribus, ad Amānum exercitum dūxī. Quō ut vēnī,

ssī: not mīsi. — tumul- dv., in great alarm. — nōn :ely, without foundation in rē, adv., lit. truthfully). — : two years before, the Ro- d suffered crushing defeat nds of this warlike people. m . . . tum: not only 'also. — dē: with reference ā: note the position of the

siā: as on p. 169, l. 6.  
ppadociā: see the map on  
— extrēmā: extrēmus, -a,  
farthest; translate freely  
rendering of primus, sum-  
)— apud: as on p. 180, l. 4.  
ybistra: in apposition with  
; render, however, as if a  
— tuērer: tueor, 2, —,

7. tenēns: while occupying.  
Cicero anticipated that the Par-  
thian invaders would take this  
more northern route. — nova . . .  
cōnsilia: cf. rēs novās, p. 28, l. 10.  
— finitimōrum: translate the gen.  
“on the part of.”

10. eōrum: of theirs.  
11. turmis: cf. p. 161, l. 7.  
The forces here mentioned Cicero  
had sent south at a venture (cf.  
the note on l. 7).

12. occidiōne occisum: had  
been annihilated (occidiō, -ōnis, f.,  
utter destruction).

14. quam potui maximis: i.e.  
the longest possible; cf. the note on  
p. 142, l. 5.

15. Amānum: a mountain range  
near the eastern border of Cilicia.  
— ut: i.e. ubi.



hostem ab Antiochēā recessisse, Bibulum Antiochēae esse cōgnōvī. Dēiotarum cōnfestim iam ad mē venientem cum magnō et firmō equitātū et peditātū et cum omnibus suis cōpiis certiōrem fēcī nōn vidērī esse causam, cūr abesset ā  
5 rēgnō, mēque ad eum, sī quid novī forte accidisset, statim litterās nūntiōsque missūrum esse.

## LESSON 139

*Mountain Brigands claim the Governor's Attention*

Cumque eō animō vēnissem, ut utrīque prōvinciae, sī ita tempus ferret, subvenīrem, tum id, quod iam antē statueram vehementer interesse utrīusque prōvinciae, pācāre  
10 Amānum et perpetuum hostem ex eō monte tollere, agere perrexī. Cumque mē discēdere ab eō monte simulāssem

1. ab: *from the neighborhood of* (the town name without the prep. would mean rather "from"; cf. the note on p. 79, l. 21). — recessisse: recēdō, 3, -cessi, -cessum est, *fall back*. — Bibulum: the (Roman) governor of Syria. Supply -que with this clause.

2. Dēiotarum: a friendly native king, whose offer of aid Cícero had been glad to accept. — ad: *i.e. to join*. — venientem: translate by a relative clause.

3. et . . . et . . . et: the first of these conjunctions connects the two adjs.; the remaining two may be rendered *and . . . and in fact*. — suis cōpiis: *his following*.

4. nōn vidērī esse causam, cūr abesset: *there did not seem to be (any) occasion for him to absent himself*; lit. what?

5. mē: subject of a new main clause in the indirect discourse. — sī quid: *if anything*. — novī: as (neut.) noun. — forte: cf. the note on p. 85, l. 12.

7. cum: causal. — animō: *purpose*. — utrīque prōvinciae: *i.e. Cilicia and Syria*. — ita tempus ferret: *i.e. I should have opportunity*.

8. subvenīrem: *i.e. auxiliō essem* (subveniō, 4, -vōnī, -ventum est). — tum: *now*. — id . . . agere perrexī (l. 11): *I proceeded to carry out a project* (pergō, 3, perrexī, perrectum est, *proceed*).

9. interesse: interest, -esse, -fuit, with gen., *be to the interest of*. — pācāre: namely, *(the project of) reducing to order*.

10. perpetuum hostem: namely, some troublesome robber hordes

11. -que: translate as if itaque —

et aliās partīs Ciliciae petere, abessemque ab Amānō iter ūnūs diēi et castra apud Epiphanēam fēcissem, a. d. iiii Id. Oct., cum advesperāsceret, expeditō exercitū ita noctū iter fēcī, ut a. d. iiii Id. Oct., cum lūcisceret, in Amānum ascenderem; distribūtisque cohortibus et auxiliis (cum aliis Quīntus frāter lēgātus mēcum simul, aliis C. Pomptīnus lēgātus, reliquīs M. Annēius et L. Tullius lēgātī praeessent), plērōsque necopīnantīs oppressimus: qui occīsī capti que sunt, interclūsī fugā. Eranam autem (quae fuit nōn vicī instar sed urbis, quod erat Amānī caput) itemque Sepyram et Commorim, ācritē et diū repugnantibus, Pompīnō illam partem Amānī tenente ex antelūcānō tempore usque ad hōram diēi X, magnā multitūdine hostium occīsā, cēpimus, castellaque vī capta complūra incendimus. Hīs

2. Epiphanēam: see the map on p. 179. — a. d. iiii Id. Oct.: *i.e.* ante diem quārtum Idūs Octōbrēs, *or* the fourth (we would say, *third*) day before the Ides of October, namely, Oct. 12.

3. expeditō: as adj.; cf. the noun use, p. 177, l. 3. — ita: *i.e.* at such speed.

4. a. d. iiii Id. Oct.: Oct. 13 (cf. the note on l. 2). — lūcisceret: lūciscit, 3, —, —, grow light.

5. distribūtis: distribuō, 3, —, —, ūtus, divide up, or make a division of. — cum aliis Quīntus frāter . . . praessent: my brother Quintus . . . being in command of some, etc. (cf. alii . . . alii, p. 20, l. 15).

6. lēgātus: (as) lieutenant; cf. Quīntus' similar relation to Caesar in the Gallic war. — simul: with mēcum.

8. plērōsque: sc. hostēs.

9. -que: we would say "or." — interclūsī: interclūdō, 3, -clūsī, -clūsus, cut off. — fugā: translate the abl. "from." — Eranam: (along with the town names of l. 11), object of cēpimus, l. 14

10. instar: the size (of); cf. p. 32, l. 5. — quod: (and) which; for the gender, cf. quod, p. 30, l. 6. — item: adv., likewise.

11. repugnantibus: *i.e.* resistentibus (repugnō, 1); abl. absol. with iis (*i.e.* incolis) supplied. The two following clauses also are abl. absolutes.

12. tenente: *i.e.* keeping to. — antelūcānō: antelūcānus, -a, -um, preceding dawn.

13. X: *i.e.* decimam, ordinal and cardinal having the same sign; cf. the dates above.

14. vī capta: *i.e.* expugnata

rēbus ita gestis, castra in rādicibus Amānī habuimus apud  
 Arās Alexandrī quadrīduum, et in reliquiis Amānī delēndis  
 agrisque vāstandis, quae pars eius montis meae prōvinciae  
 est, id tempus omne cōsūpsimus.

## LESSON 140

*Completion of the Destruction of their Strongholds*

5 Cōfectis hīs rēbus, ad oppidum Eleutherocilicum Pindenis-  
 sum exercitum addūxī. Quod cum esset altissimō et  
 mūnitissimō locō, ab iisque incoletur, quī nē rēgibus qu-  
 idem umquam pāruiissent, cum et fugitivōs reciperent, et  
 Parthōrum adventum ācerimē expectārent, ad existimatiō-  
 nem imperī pertinēre arbitrātus sum comprimere eōrum  
 audāciam, quō facilius etiam cēterōrum animī, quī ali-  
 eni essent ab imperiō nostrō, frangerentur.

Vallō et fossā circumdedi, sex castellis castrisque ma-  
 ximis saepi, aggere, vniis, turribus oppugnāvi, ūsusque to-

1. rādicibus: *foothills* (rādix, -icis, F., lit. *root*).

2. reliquiis: *i.e. the remain-  
 ing landmarks*; cf. reliquiās, p. 36,  
 l. 15.

3. vāstandis: vāstō, 1, *lay  
 waste*. — quae pars eius montis:  
*i.e. in ea montis parte, quae*. —  
 meae prōvinciae est: *belongs to*  
 (lit. *is of*) *my province*.

5. Pindenissum: in apposition  
 with oppidum. The exact location  
 of this town is not known.

6. quod cum esset: *since this  
 was (located)*.

7. mūnitissimō: transl. the super-  
 lative. "strongly." — iis . . . quī:  
 with subjunctive, *such (people) as*;

for the position of -que, cf. ob-  
 eamque causam, p. 129, l. 5.

rēgibus: namely, of their own.

8. cum: (*and*) *since*. — fu-  
 gitivōs: fugitivus, -ī, M., *runaway  
 slave*.

9. existimatiōnem: existimati-  
 tiō, -ōnis, F., *prestige*.

10. imperī: (*our*) *government*.  
 — comprimere: comprimō,  
 -pressi, -pressus, *put a stop to*.

11. quō: note the compar.  
 in the clause. — aliēni . . . ab:  
*disposed toward*; cf. p. 148, l. 7

12. imperiō: *rule*.

13. circumdedi: sc. oppidum

14. saepi: saepiō, 4, *saeptus*,  
*saeptus, surround*. — aggere: *surround*

mentis multis, multis sagittariis, magnō labōre meō, sine ūllā molestiā sūmptūve sociōrum, septimō quinquāgēsimo diē rem cōnfēci, ut omnibus partibus urbis disturbātis aut incēnsis, compulsi in potestātem meam pervenirent.

His erant finitimī parī scelere et audaciā Tebarānī. Ab iis, Pindenissō captō, obsidēs accēpī; exercitum in hiberna dīmisi; Quīntum frātre negōtiō praeposui, ut in vicis aut captis aut male pācātis exercitus collocārētur.

ger, -eris, M., *mound* (of earth or other material). — viniis: *vinia*, -ae, F., *penthouse*. — tormentis: tormentum, -i, N., *catapult*. Cf. the ballista shown on p. 29.

1. sagittariis: sagittarius, -i, M., *bowman*. — meō: *on my part*.

2. molestiā: molestia, -ae, F., *inconvenience*. — sūmptū: sūmptus, -ūs, M., *expense*. — sociōrum: *to* (lit. *of*) *the friendly natives* (from whom a Roman governor usually felt at liberty to extort any service he desired).

3. ut: introducing a result

clause. — disturbātis: disturbō, 1, *wreck*.

4. compulsi: freely, in *despair*, lit. *forced (to it)*; sc. hostēs.

5. his: the people just subdued. — parī: pār, *paris*, adj., *equal*. — scelere: scelus, -eris, N., *guilt*, lit. *crime*; the whole abl. phrase expresses quality. — Tebarānī: subject of erant.

7. negōtiō . . . ut . . . exercitus collocārētur: freely, *the business of quartering the army*; lit. what? — aut captis, etc.: translate by a relative clause.

## WORD LIST

The following list shows the new words introduced into each successive reading lesson. Aside from numerals, words found in but one lesson are treated in the notes on that lesson, and do not appear here. For proper names, the general vocabulary should be consulted.

The designation (\*) indicates that the word so marked occurs in four or more lessons.

English words in italics are derived from, or otherwise related to, the Latin words opposite to which they stand. They may be found useful in helping to recall the meaning of the Latin words as given in the general vocabulary.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Many Latin words are formed with the help of a prefix. Though the force of this prefix does not stand out clearly in every case, it is worth while to become familiar with the general meanings of the following:—

*ā-, ab-: away, aside, off.*

*ad-: to, into, near, by, at.*

*circum-: around.*

*con-: with, together (con- being a form of cum). Often denotes completion (e.g. cōficiō [faciō]), or energy of action (e.g. contendō).*

*dē-: from, down.*

*dī-: from, away, separately.*

*ē-, ex-: forth, out, from, up. Often denotes success (e.g. expugnō), or energy of action (e.g. excipio [capiō]).*

*in-: upon, on, in.*

*in-: not, or un-.*

*inter-: between.*

*ob-: before, against.*

*per-: through, across. Often intensive. very, exceedingly.*

*prae-: before, in advance, over.*

*praeter-: by, past.*

*prō-: before, forth, forward, out, fore-.*

*re-: back, again.*

*sub-: under.*

*trans-: across, over.*

Some of the above prefixes take different forms according to the first letter of the word with which they are combined. The following alternative forms should in particular be noted: *ā-, ab-* (*abs-*); *ad-* (*ac-, af-, al-, ap-, ar-, as-, a[s]-, at-*); *con-* (*col-, com-, co-*); *dis-* (*dif-, di-*); *ē-, ex-* (*ec-, ef-, e[x]-*); *in-* (*ig-, il-, im-*); *inter-* (*intel-*); *ob-* (*oc-, op-*); *re-* (*red-*); *sub-* (*sus-, su[s]-*); *trans-* (*trā-*).

In some words united with these prefixes a vowel is regularly altered, e.g.:

*a* or *e* becomes *i*: *as-ficiō* (for *faciō*) and *-tineō* (for *teneō*).

*ae* becomes *i*: *as-cidō* (for *caedō*; cf. *caedēs*) and *-iquus* (for *aequus* in *iniquus*,

	neque, nec*	advena* (ad + veniō)
	nūllus, * nulli-fy	aperiō, * aper-ture
* (-āre), appella-	ōlim*	audiō, * audi-torium
	oppidum*	avis, avi-ation
	pator, * pater-nal	bellum, * re-bell-ion.
* circum-ference	pecūnia, * pecuniary	cantus, chant
	perveniō*	cōgnōscō, * re-cognize
creed	portus*	cōnsequor, * consequence
conj.)	possum, * poss-ibility	cōnsilium, * counsel
	postea, * post-pone	cum* (prep.)
	prōgredior*	dicō, * dic-tation
a, * diverse	prope* (adv.)	diēs, * di-urnal
	prope* (prep.)	dō, * do-nation
	puer, * puer-ile	faciō, * fac-tor
rb)	-que*	fortiter, * forti-tude
	quī* (relative)	gerō, * belli-gerent
	quīdam*	ibi*
xit	quod* (conj.)	igitur*
	rēx, * reg-al	ignōtus, * contrast noted
homi-cide	saepe*	insula, insulate
	secundum* (prep.)	interim*
	sed*	is*
ō, * intelligent	spērō, * de-sperate	itaque*
m*	sui, * sui-cide	iter, * itin-er-ant
nō*	sum, * essence	laetus*
, * inven-tion	suspīcor*	libenter*
	tam*	mōns, * mount
	tempus, * tempor-al	morior, * mori-bund
	teneō, * re-ten-tive	nōlō*
, * juvenile	terra, * terr-estrial	nūntius, * e-nunci-ate
	timeō, * tim-id	obtineō, cf. teneō
	trānseō, * transit	omnis, * omni-potent
	tum*	paene, * pen-insula
	usque*	parō*
l, * magni-tude	ut, uti*	parvus*
marine	via, * imper-vi-ous	pauci, * pauci-ty
* multi-tude	videō, * e-vident	per, * per-forate
' nat-al	volō, * vol-untary	periculum*
nauti-cal		petō, * pet-ition
* naviga-tion		postrēmō*
nav-al		proficiscor*
	2	
	ad . . . versus*	

pulcher\*  
 quaerō,\* *re-quire*  
 quisquam\*  
 redeō\* (red + eō)  
 rēgina, cf. rēx  
 rēgnū,\* *regn-ant*  
 rēs,\* *rebus*  
 suus,\* cf. sui  
 tamen\*  
 trēs,\* *tri-nity*  
 ubi\* (adv.)  
 ubi\* (conj.)  
 validus,\* *valid*  
 vereor,\* *re-verent*

## 3

ā, ab\*  
 adeō\* (verb), cf. eō  
 alius,\* *ali-bi*  
 animus,\* *anim-ated*  
 appropinquō\*  
 atque, ac\*  
 bāca  
 dē\*  
 domus,\* *dom-estic*  
 dux,\* *duke*  
 ēgredior,\* *egress*  
 gaudeō,\* *gaudy*  
 gaza  
 harēna, arena  
 ignis,\* *ignite*  
 incola\*  
 inde\*  
 irātus,\* *irate*  
 iaciō,\* *e-ject*  
 māne\*  
 mille,\* *mile*  
 moror\*  
 mox\*  
 natō  
 noctū,\* *noct-urnal*

nōn\*  
 numquam\*  
 passus\*  
 post\* (adv.), cf. postea  
 primō,\* *prim-acy*  
 putō,\* *com-pute*  
 quārē\*  
 quoque\*  
 rāmus, *rami-fy*  
 sentiō,\* *senti-ment*  
 statim\*  
 ūllus,\* cf. nūllus  
 vehementer,\* *vehement*

## 4

amō,\* *am-iable*  
 brevī,\* *brevis-ty*  
 certus\*  
 cīvīs,\* *civil*  
 colōnia\*  
 colōnus\*  
 compleō,\* *comple-ment*  
 condō\*  
 coorior\*  
 fēliciter,\* *felici-ty*  
 ferō,\* *re-fer*  
 fiō,\* *fiat*  
 fluctus, *fluctu-ate*  
 haud\*  
 incolūmis\*  
 iniūria\*  
 interficiō\*  
 iterum,\* *iter-ate*  
 littera\*  
 pars\*  
 praefectus,\* *prefect*  
 properō\*  
 relinquō,\* *relinquish*  
 scribō,\* *scribe*  
 semel  
 spēs,\* cf. spērō

subitō\*  
 sustineō,\* cf. teneō  
 tempestās,\* *tempest*  
 ūnus,\* *uni-ty*  
 ventus,\* *venti-late*

## 5

adeō (adv.)  
 amīcus,\* *amic-able*  
 capiō,\* *cap-acity*  
 cōnor\*  
 dōnum,\* cf. dō  
 filiū,\* *fili-al*  
 forte,\* *fort-uitous*  
 idem,\* *iden-tical*  
 mīrus, *mīr-acle*  
 nārō,\* *narra-tion*  
 nōmen,\* *nomin-al*  
 nōtus,\* cf. ignōtus  
 nunc\*  
 piscis, *Pisces*  
 quī,\* etiam  
 rapiō,\* *rapine*  
 semper\*  
 senex, *sen-ility*  
 solum,\* *sole-ly*  
 vir,\* *vir-ile*

## 6

adorior\*  
 adversus,\* *adverse*  
 argentum,\* *Argentius*  
 aurum, *auri-ferous*  
 castra,\* *Chester*  
 celeriter,\* *celeri-ty*  
 cibus\*  
 cōgō,\* *cogent*  
 cōnsūmō,\* *consum-ex*  
 dēdūcō,\* *deduct*  
 flūmen\*  
 fortis,\* cf. fortiter  
 frumentum\*

hostile  
\* cf. mittō (be-

milit-ary  
re-mit

(sui) cide  
post-pone  
-o (and con,  
pugna-cious  
\* receipt  
ipa-rian  
\* Sagittarius

silvan

veh-icle

## 7

aqua-tic  
arbor

\* cf. locus (below)  
frig-id  
fugi-tive  
\* ex-hume  
e,\* insidi-ous  
ad-jacent

loco-motive  
\* manu-al

itus,\* cf. terreo  
ow)  
pri-ority

\* reduce  
ob-solete  
\* sono-rous  
\* terr-or  
\* con-vene

## 8

accipio,\* accept  
captivus\*  
clam\*  
complārē,\* cf. plur-al  
cōnacendō,\* (a)scend  
cōpia,\* copi-ous  
dēmum\*  
dōnec\*  
dum\*  
emō,\* red-emption  
habitō,\* habita-tion  
hic\* (pron.)  
idōneus\*  
miser,\* misery  
necio,\* contrast science  
novus,\* nov-el  
quō\* (adv.)  
reportō,\* report  
sacerdō,\* sacerdot-al  
sequor,\* con-sequence  
servō,\* con-serve  
suprā\*  
tractō,\* tract-able  
vëndō,\* vend-er

## 9

dūcō,\* pro-duce  
effugiō,\* cf. fugiō  
frangō,\* frag-ile  
frustrā,\* frustrate  
longus\*  
mālō\*  
paulō\*  
pirāta\*  
poena,\* penal  
praeda,\* preda-tory  
sēdecim  
vēlum,\* veil  
vetus,\* veter-an

## 10

carō,\* carn-al  
certē  
corpus,\* corpor-eal  
edō,\* ed-ible  
equus,\* equ-estrian  
famēs,\* fam-ine  
filia,\* cf. filius  
impetus,\* impetu-ous  
iuvō,\* coad-ju-tor  
mātrimōnium, matri-  
mony  
mēnsis\*  
mentior  
obees\*  
oppidānī,\* cf. oppidum  
pereō,\* cf. eō (verb)  
puella\*  
quamquam\*  
quondam,\* quondam  
(adj.)  
trādō,\* tradition  
uxor,\* uxori-ous

## 11

cōnspectus,\* conspectus  
deinde\*  
duo,\* du-al  
explōrō\*  
ferē\*  
fretum, frith (?)  
hic\* (adv.)  
lēniter,\* leni-ty  
lūna, lunar  
nō\*

## 12

altus,\* alti-tude  
āmittō,\* cf. mittō  
angustus  
annus,\* annu-al



conveniō,\* *convene*  
 excipiō\*  
 hiemō\*  
 magister, *magistr-ate*  
 negotior, *negotiate*  
 (posterus)\*  
 scelerātus  
 sub,\* *sub-tract*

## 13

agō,\* *ag-itate*  
 ante\* (adv.), *anti-cipate*  
 apud\*  
 clāmō,\* *clamor*  
 cōstituō,\* *constitu-tion*  
 currō,\* *in-cursion*  
 deus,\* *dei-ty*  
 ēmigrō  
 ērumpō,\* *eruption*  
 grātia,\* *grace*  
 interdiū  
 lēgātus,\* *de-legate*  
 liberī\*  
 morbus,\* *cholera morbus*  
 nox,\* *equi-nox*  
 reliquus,\* *cf. relinquo*  
 saxum\*  
 tūtus, *tute-lage*  
 undique\*  
 vulnerō,\* *vulner-able*

## 14

acerbus, *acerbi-ty*  
 ambulō,\* *per-ambulate*  
 asper,\* *asperi-ty*  
 aut\*  
 cadō,\* *de-cadence*  
 commoveō,\* *commotion*  
 dēsum  
 hiems,\* *cf. hiemō*  
 inquam\*

loquor,\* *loqu-acity*  
 maestus\*  
 -ne  
 numerus,\* *numer-al*  
 prōpōnō, *propose*  
 proximus,\* *proximi-ty*  
 rideō, *ridi-culous*  
 sūmō,\* *re-sume*  
 tacitus,\* *tacit*  
 tū\*  
 verbum,\* *verb-al*  
 virtūs,\* *cf. vir*  
 vōx,\* *voc-al*

## 15

alter,\* *alter-ation*  
 ambō,\* *ambi-guous*  
 arbitror,\* *arbitra-tion*  
 caedēs,\* *sui-cide*  
 cogitō,\* *cogitate*  
 comes,\* *con-comit-ant*  
 concilium\*  
 contumēlia,\* *contumely*  
 convocō,\* *convoca-tion*  
 crudēlis  
 cūrō,\* *mani-cure*  
 facile,\* *facili-ty*  
 incendō,\* *incend-iary*  
 inimicus,\* *inimic-al*  
 ostendō,\* *osten-tation*  
 recūsō\*  
 sica\*  
 signum\*  
 simul,\* *simul-taneously*  
 unquam\*  
 vincō,\* *con-vince*  
 vulnus,\* *cf. vulnerō*

## 16

afficiō\*  
 amplector (com)*plexus*

bene,\* *bene-fit*  
 dīmittō,\* *cf. mittō*  
 frāter,\* *frater-nal*  
 gravis,\* *grave*  
 polliceor\*  
 religiō\*  
 secūris\*  
 venēnum, *venom*  
 vērō,\* *veri-ly*

## 17

admoveō\*  
 animadvertō\*  
 ardēns, *ardent*  
 audeō,\* *aud-acious*  
 bōs, *bov-ine*  
 castellum,\* *castle*  
 cōnātus, *cf. cōnor*  
 dēfendō\*  
 dēpōnō, *depose*  
 dēsiatō\*  
 extingūō  
 hōra\*  
 moneō, *moni-tor*  
 oppugnō,\* (ob + *pugn-*)  
 prōdō\*  
 salūs,\* *salut-ary*  
 tantum,\* *tant-amount*  
 tēctum, *pro-lect*  
 villa,\* *village*  
 vocō,\* *in-voke*

## 18

aciēs\*  
 adiuvō,\* *co-adju-tor*  
 adsum\*  
 aedēs,\* *edi-fice*  
 ager,\* *agri-culture*  
 auxilium,\* *auxili-ary*  
 caelum,\* *cel-estial*  
 fenestra

\* cf. fugiō  
rātor,\* *imperat-ive*  
rae,\* cf. lateō (be-  
)

\* *latent*

uam,\* cf. post  
v.)

iciō, *prospect*

et\*

'

lum\*

cf. tūtus

### 19

r,\* *acri-monious*

;

nentum,\* *detri-*

st

itus\*

gñō\*

' *gent-ile*

iquus,\* cf. longus

a,\* *mode*

ccupō, *preoccupy*

n

is\* *prime*

science

li,\* *singul-ar*

### 20

cf. ācritēr

us,\* cf. arma

ō

'

'

ō,\* *exul-tation*

\* *fin-al*

, *herbage*

i,\* *minus*

\*

lō,\* *perfect*

persuādeō\*

sedeō, *sedent-ary*

socius\*, *soci-al*

### 21

abscidō, cf. occidō

caput,\* *capit-al* (adj.)

cōnsōlor, *consola-tion*

dēdō\*

instruō,\* *instruction*

intercipiō\*

mora\*

pāx,\* *pac-ific*

perfugiō

porta,\* *portal*

sine,\* *sine-cure*

vallēs\*

### 22

ante,\* (prep.) *ante-*

chamber

audācter,\* *audaci-ty*

cēna

cēnō

cōnfiō\*

perpaucī, cf. paucī

pēs,\* *ped-al*

silentium\*

sōpītus,\* *sop-orific*

surgō, *in-surgent*

vigilō, *vigil*

### 23

aes\*

aliēnus,\* *alien*

clārus,\* *clari-fy*

cōmitās, *comity*

cōmitter

grātus\*

praemittō,\* *premise*

propter\*

prōvincia\*

solvō,\* *dis-solve*

urbs,\* *urb-an*

vīvō,\* *re-vive*

### 24

agricola,\* cf. ager

assēnsus, *assent*

coerceō, *coercion*

cruciātus,\* *cruci-fixion*

iniussū,\* cf. iubeō

maneō\*

ōrō, *ad-ora-tion*

primū,\* cf. primō

quaestus,\* *quest*

superior\*

### 25

adhūc\*

ballista

cārus,\* *chari-ty*

custōdia\*

custōdiō\*

mūrus, *mur-al*

nūntiō,\* cf. nūntius

obsideō,\* *obsess*

opus,\* *oper-ate*

praedium\*

### 26

ancora\*

antequam,\* cf. ante

(adv.)

cōsistō\*

ignōminia, *ignominy*

labor\*

malus,\* *male-factor*

paulātīm\*

propinquus, *propinqui-ty*

revocō, *revoke*

## 27

abeō,\* cf. eō (verb)  
 aliquamdiū,\* cf. diū  
 appellō\* (-ere)  
 ars, *art-ist*  
 conducō  
 discō, *disc-iple*  
 lūdō, *col-lusion*  
 māter,\* *mater-nal*  
 post,\* (prep.) *post-ponē*  
 sexāgintā\*  
 simulō,\* *simulate*  
 tribūnus\*

## 28

arceō  
 at\*  
 casa\*  
 cōsidiō,\* (sub)*side*  
 instar  
 lectus\*  
 mōs, *mor-al*  
 regiō\*  
 rivus,\* *de-riv-ation*  
 tōtus\*  
 undēvigintī

## 29

advesperāscit, cf. *vespers*  
 dēligō\*  
 difficilis\*  
 discēdō,\* (re)*cede*  
 impedimenta,\* *impedi-ment*  
 nisi\*  
 patior,\* *patient*  
 periculōsus, cf. *pericu-lum*  
 respondeō,\* *respond*  
 si\*  
 tollō,\* *ex-tol*

## 30

frigidus, *frigid*  
 glaciēs,\* *glacier*  
 illūcēscō,\* (trans)*lucent*  
 magis\*  
 mātūrē  
 molestē\*  
 occupō,\* *occupa-tion*  
 pertinācia, cf. teneō  
 satīa,\* *satis-factory*  
 trāns,\* *trans-it*  
 ūnā,\* *uni-ty*

## 31

condiciō\*  
 expellō,\* *expel*  
 explorātor\*  
 invitus\*  
 legiō\*  
 nō . . . quidem\*  
 opera,\* *opera-tives*  
 ultrō\*  
 unde\*

## 32

admoneō,\* cf. moneō  
 cēdō,\* *re-cede*  
 centuriō\*  
 cohortor\*  
 compellō, *compulsion*  
 incommodum, *incom-mode*  
 inrumpō,\* cf. ērumpō  
 lacus\*  
 proelium\*  
 reliquiae, cf. reliquus  
 statuō,\* *statute*  
 temerē,\* *temeri-ty*  
 ululātus\*

## 33

alibi, cf. aline  
 dēmittō\*  
 etsi\*  
 inferō,\* *infer*  
 laudō, *laud*  
 mātōna, *matron*  
 ōtiōsus, *otiose*  
 tantus,\* cf. tantum  
 victōria\*

## 34

audācia,\* cf. audācter  
 commūnis, *communi-ty*  
 concēdō\*  
 exigō, *exact* (verb)  
 iūs,\* *jus-tice*  
 licet, *license*  
 memoria\*  
 postulō,\* *postulate*  
 repetō, cf. petō  
 senātus\*  
 sex,\* *sex-tant*  
 videor,\* cf. videō

## 35

celeritās,\* cf. celeriter  
 collis\*  
 contineō, cf. teneō  
 cotidiē,\* cf. diēs  
 exstruō, cf. *structure*  
 intrā,\* *intrans*  
 largior, *larg-ess*  
 libertās  
 meus,\* *meum* (an-tuum)  
 mūnitiō,\* *munitions*  
 publicus\*  
 quantus,\* *quanti-ty*  
 vāllum\*

, cf. *vetus*  
*tal*

36

liquis)\*

\*  
\* *hibern*-ate  
r\*  
*ihil*-ist  
um, *stipend*

37

eniō,\* *circum*-

5,\* cf. *servō*  
*devious*  
o-tism  
*elude*  
(vain)*glori*-ous  
stus\*

cf. *pugnō*

is\*

\* *tergi*-version  
cf. *advesperāscit*

38

tō,\* cf. *reportō*  
cf. *dēdō*  
*dubious*  
tō  
v.)  
*even*-tuate  
t, *event*  
t, cf. *puer*

39

\*  
,\* cf. *circum*

*cruentus*  
*dēficiō*,\* *deficit*  
*inferior*  
*inopia*,\* contrast *op*-ulent  
*multō*,\* cf. *multus*  
*necessarius*  
*nix*\*  
*nūdus*, de-*nude*  
*quinque*\*  
*sagum*  
*vestigium*, *vestige*

40

*classis*\*  
*coniungō*,\* *conjunction*  
*fallō*,\* *fall*-ible  
*meridiēs*,\* *meridian*  
*occāsiō*, *occasion*  
*potestās*,\* cf. *possum*  
*rārus*, *rare*  
*rursus*\*  
*servus*,\* *serv*-ile  
*spectō*,\* *specta*-cle

41

*audāx*, cf. *audācter*  
*causa*\*  
*contrā*, *contra*-dict  
*damnō*,\* con-*demn*  
*dēleō*,\* *dele*-terious  
*impetrō*\*  
*invisus*\*  
*mūniō*,\* cf. *mūnitiō*  
*nātūra*  
*nē*\*  
*perfidia*, *perfidy*  
*quam*\*  
*strēnuus*, *strenuous*

42

*antēā*,\* cf. *ante* (adv.)  
*exsilium*

*graviter*,\* cf. *gravis*  
*indicō*,\* (e)*dict*  
*permōtus*,\* cf. *com*-  
*moveō*  
*saltem*

43

*aeger*\*  
*aegrē*  
*fortūna*\*  
*oculus*, *ocul*-ist  
*eppugnātiō*,\* cf. *op*-  
*pugnō*  
*tabernāculum*,\* *taber*-  
*nacle*  
*varius*\*

44

*contendō*,\* cf. *ten*d  
*dexter*, *dexter*-ous  
*expectō*,\* *expect*  
*fleō*  
*flōs*, *flor*-ist  
*imperium*,\* *empire*  
*inter*,\* *inter*-sect  
*lacrima*, *lachrym*-ose  
*multitūdō*,\* *multitude*  
*octō*,\* *oct*-agon  
*patria*,\* *patri*-ot  
*praesidiūm*\*  
*sic*\*

45

*abhinc*\*  
*antiquitus*, *antique*  
*honor*  
*hortor*,\* cf. *cohortor*

46

*cavus*, *cavi*-ty  
*committō*,\* *commis*  
*muller*\*

priusquam,\* cf. prius  
quandō  
reperiō\*  
vicus,\* War-wick

## 47

abripiō, cf. rapiō  
diligentia,\* diligence  
dominus,\* domin-ate  
ēvādō, evade  
facinus\*  
fidēlis,\* fide-li-ty  
moribundus, cf. morior  
quis\* (indef.)  
stō,\* sta-tionary  
superbia, superb  
-ve\*  
vix\*

## 48

barbarus\*  
expediō,\* expedite  
firmō, con-firm  
incitō, incite  
intrō,\* cf. intrā  
praesum\*  
saltō

## 49

cēteri\*  
circumstō, circumstance  
extrā,\* extra-ordinary  
intervallum,\* interval  
negōtiātor,\* cf. negō-  
tior  
patefaciō  
plānō,\* plain-ly  
porrigō\*  
tegō,\* cf. tectum  
vestimentum,\* vestiment  
vultus

## 50

adventus,\* advent  
efferō,\* elation  
faveō, fav-or

## 51

absūm,\* absent  
arripiō,\* cf. rapiō  
canō, cf. cantus  
memorābilis, memorable  
nāvīgium,\* cf. nāvis

## 52

admīror, admire  
ēdō,\* edit  
fortitūdō, cf. fortiter  
gemitus  
sōlus,\* cf. solum  
superō,\* in-super-able  
vestis, cf. vestimentum

## 53

carrus, carr-iage  
crūdēlitās,\* cf. crūdēlis  
fluō, flu-id  
hortus, horti-culture  
impōnō, impose  
multum,\* cf. multo  
paulum\*  
suspēnsus, suspense

## 54

citrō\*  
cuneus, cunei-form  
dēferō\*  
gubernāculum, guberna-  
torial  
moveō,\* cf. commoveō  
pandō, ex-pand

sententia,\* cf. sentiō  
ulterior,\* ulterior

## 55

impediō,\* cf. impedi-  
menta  
liburnica\*  
occidēna, occident  
onerāria, oner-ous  
onustus\*  
tardē, tardy

## 56

abiciō,\* cf. iaciō  
inlidō (col)lision  
obstinātus, obstinate  
prōiciō,\* cf. iaciō  
resistō\*  
responsum, cf. respon-  
dēō  
retineō,\* cf. teneō  
saevitia  
super, super-impose  
viginti\*

## 57

commemorō  
dēfigō (pre)fix  
necō,\* inter-nec-ine  
prōlābor (re)laps  
religō, cf. liga-ture  
supīnus, supine  
tenebrae

## 58

careō  
coniciō,\* cf. iaciō  
exitiālis  
finitimus\*  
frequēna, frequent

is  
 \* ap-proba-tion  
 pulver-ize

## 59

or  
 us, cf. circum  
 \* dubitate  
 or\*  
 i\*  
 :grō (dis)inte-  
 ine-vit-able

## 60

cf. clāmor  
 \*,\* conference  
 is

## 61

\*,\* accede  
 \*,\* bonny  
 as, quotient

## 62

error  
 , foli-age  
 \*,\* quiescent  
 s,\*, somno-lent

## 63

aur-ist  
 tus  
 glory  
 ulāris  
 cf. morior  
 unus

tantopere, cf. tantum  
 ūtor, \* ut-ensil

## 64

adulēscēne, adolescent  
 canis, canine  
 dēfessus\*  
 exiguus\*  
 quārtus, \* quarter

## 65

aedificō, cf. aedēs  
 caespes  
 cōnsuēscō, \* (de) suctude  
 cōnsultō  
 ducentī  
 ēliciō, elicit  
 excidō, cf. occidō  
 fera, fero-cious  
 frūstum, \* frustum  
 sēdēs, cf. sedē  
 timor, \* cf. timeō  
 ūsus, \* cf. ūtor  
 vēnor, ven-ison  
 vicīnus, vicini-ty

## 66

dēnique  
 diligenter, \* cf. diligen-  
 tia  
 incendium, cf. incendō  
 misceō, pro-misc-uous  
 nātiō, \* nation  
 praeter, \* preter-natural  
 praetervehor, cf. vehō  
 reor, \* rate (verb)

## 67

dīvidō  
 intus, cf. intrā  
 mūtō, \* per-mula-tion

perrumpō, cf. ērumpō  
 repentinus\*

## 68

callidus  
 dēvorō  
 excitō, \* excite  
 lingua, lingu-ist  
 nūper\*  
 praetereō, cf. eō

## 69

aetās, et-ernal  
 carpō, ex-cerpt  
 prōsper(-erus),  
 prosperi-ty  
 septem

## 70

accidō, \* accident  
 argenteus, cf. argentum  
 cōnfēstim\*  
 duodecim, duodecim-al  
 gubernātor, cf gubernā-  
 culum  
 pōculum  
 spoliō\*  
 vis\*

## 71

avāritia, avarice  
 cōfirmō, \* cf. affirm  
 foris, per-for-ate  
 praemium, \* premium  
 queror, quer-ulous

## 72

appetō, cf. petō  
 dimicō\*  
 percutiō, percussion  
 umorus

## 73

absconditus, cf. *condō*  
 adhaerescō, *adhere*  
 dēsterēō, *delet*  
 dētrūdō,\* (in) *trusion*  
 eōdem\*  
 praestō\*  
 secundus,\* cf. *secundum*

## 74

incrēdibilis, *incredible*  
 lūx,\* cf. *illucēscō*

## 75

adstō, cf. *stō*  
 circumeō,\* cf. *eō*  
 colloquium,\* cf. *loquor*  
 colloquor, cf. *loquor*  
 ira, cf. *irātus*

## 76

cōspiciō,\* cf. *cōnspectus*  
 ēruptiō, cf. *ēruptō*  
 obscurus, *obscuri-ty*  
 trādūcō, cf. *dūcō*  
 vigilia,\* cf. *vigilō*

## 77

addūcō,\* *adduce*  
 perlegō, cf. *lectern*  
 quiviā, cf. *volō*  
 venia, *venial*

## 78

custōs,\* cf. *custodiō*  
 decem, *decim-al*  
 fōns, *fount*  
 prēcurreō  
 versor\*, *con-versant*

## 79

carcer, in-*carcer-ate*  
 efficiō, *effect*  
 negō, *negat-ion*  
 potior\*  
 princeps, *princip-al*  
 tolerō, *tolerate*

## 80

claudō,\* *se-clude*  
 obliviscor, *obliv-ion*  
 omnīnō, cf. *omnia*  
 vel

## 81

amplius, *ample*  
 auscipiō  
 tributum

## 82

clādēs  
 integer, *integer*  
 praesertim  
 repente,\* cf. *repentinus*

## 83

cōstantia, *constancy*  
 existimō,\* cf. *estimate*  
 perseverō, *persevere*  
 quīndecim

## 84

cāsus,\* *casu-al*  
 dētrahō, *detract*  
 dolor, *dolor-ous*  
 pedetemptim  
 quīnquāgintā  
 quō\* (conj.)

## 85

eb\*

## 86

ascendō,\* *ascend*  
 dēiciō,\* cf. *laciō*  
 tertius,\* *terti-ary*

## 87

aequus\*, *equ-able*  
 prōmunturium

## 88

dēserō  
 fidēs, cf. *fidēlis*  
 similis\*

## 89

beneficium,\* (bene —  
 faciō)  
 dēversōrium  
 lignātiō  
 referō, *refer*

## 90

convertō\*  
 fūmus, *fume*  
 horrendus, *horr-or*  
 incolō, cf. *incola*  
 spernō, *spurn*

## 91

portō,\* *port-er*  
 spatium,\* *spaci-ous*  
 transportō,\* *transpor.*  
 valētūdō, *valetudin-ari-*  
 vinculum

## 92

coniārātiō  
 male, cf. *malus*

## 93

augeō, *aug-ment*  
 emptiō, cf. *emō*

rinus  
nō, *repress*  
itā

## 94

ō, \* *judic-iary*  
pōnō, *preposition*  
r, *vaga-bond*

## 95

ius, \* *gladi-ator*  
rō, \* *cf. imperātor*  
tus, *cf. certus*  
adior, *ingress*  
urbō, *perturb*  
tuor  
uāgintā  
iciō

## 96

ōnō (ad + pōnō)  
tās, \* *cf. civis*  
redior

## 97

tō, *cf. convertō*

## 98

icitia, *cf. amicus*

## 99

acurrō, \* *concourse*

## 100

ntinēns, *continent*  
rfuga, *cf. perfugiō*  
eculor, *specula-tor*

## 101

ques, \* *cf. equus*  
ester \*

premo, \* *cf. reprimō*  
tot

## 102

cōnsulō, *consult*  
magnopere, *cf. magnus*  
ōrātiō, \* *oration*  
subsidiū, \* *subsidy*  
ūniversi, \* *univers-al*

## 103

cōnseō  
disputō, *disputa-tion*  
quis\* (interrog.)  
uterque\*

## 104

cupidō, *cupidi-ty*  
medius, \* *medio-crity*  
nocturnus, *cf. nox and*  
noctū  
plērique\*  
prōnūtiō, *pronounce*

## 105

cohors\*  
dēscendō, *cf. ascendō*  
dispōnō, *dispose*  
iniquus, \* *cf. aequus*  
officiū, \* *office*  
orbis, *orbit*  
prōvideō, *provide*  
quisque\*

## 106

auctōritās, *authority*  
octāvus, *octave*  
parcō, *parsi-mony*  
rogō, *inter-rog-a-tion*  
trāgula

## 107

pāreō

## 108

dēmōnstrō, *demonstra-tion*  
doceō, \* *doc-tor*  
equitātus, \* *cf. eques*  
intereō, *cf. pereō*  
intermittō, *intermission*  
liberō, \* *cf. libertās*  
nōndum  
nōnnūllī\* (nōn + nūllī)  
opprimō, \* *oppress*  
peditātus, \* *cf. pēs*  
perpetuus, *perpetu-al*  
subsequor, *subsequent*

## 109

addō, *add-ition*  
cōnsuetūdō, \* *cf. cōn-suēsco*  
fossa, *foss-il (adj.)*  
prīdiō, *cf. diēs*  
ratiō, *ration-al*  
turris, \* *turr-et*

## 110

circumdō  
comprehendō, *compre-hend*  
differō (dis + ferō)  
populus, *popul-ar*  
septimus

## 111

commodus, *cf. incem-modum*  
undecimus



**112**  
 occurro, *occur*  
 profectiō, cf. proficiscor  
 remittō,\* *remit*

**113**  
 cernō, dis-*cern*  
 pristinus, *pristine*

**114**  
 obsidiō; cf. obsideō  
 quoniam

**115**  
 decimus, *decim-al*  
 ēmittō, *emit*  
 postridiē,\* cf. pridīē  
 prōdūcō, *produce*  
 simulatiō,\* cf. simulō

**116**  
 cōntiō  
 nōnus  
 temeritās, cf. temerē

**117**  
 trīduum, cf. trēs and diēs  
 tumultus, *tumult*

**118**  
 pedes,\* cf. pēs and pedi-  
 tātus

**119**  
 explicō, (im)*plicate*  
 metus

**120**  
 cūr

**121**  
 refugiō, *refuge*

**122**  
 disceesus, cf. discēdō  
 praetereā, cf. praeter  
 prōtinus  
 speciēs, *speci-ous*

**123**  
 dēfēnsiō, cf. dēfendō  
 hūc  
 necopināns, cf. *opin-ion*

**124**  
 plānitiēs

**125**  
 circumsistō, cf. cōnsistō

**126**  
 bīduum, cf. trīduum

**127**  
 dignitās, *dignity*

**128**  
 infestus  
 latus, *later-al*  
 pilum  
 turma

**129**  
 negōtium, cf. negōtior  
 and ōtiōsus (neg-  
 = nec, i.e. "not")  
 perdūcō  
 pertineō, *pertain*

**131**  
 āvertō, *avert*  
 cōnfodiō, cf. fossa  
 īdūs  
 quasi, *quasi* (adj.)

**133**  
 exitus, cf. exeō  
 memor, cf. memoria  
 septuāgēsimus

**134**  
 forum

**135**  
 arcēsō  
 genus, *genus*

**136**  
 expeditus, cf. exped  
 praetōrius

**137**  
 firmus, cf. firmō  
 intereā, cf. interim  
 Kalendae, *calendar*  
 quadriūm, *quadr-*  
 nium

**139**  
 pācō, cf. pāx

**140**  
 quinquāgēsimus

# ENGLISH-LATIN EXERCISES

## EXERCISE I

(1-2)<sup>1</sup>

### ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN AND WITHIN WHICH — REL- ATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE — I-STEMS

#### MODEL SENTENCES

**Caesar aestāte bellum gerēbat,** Caesar used to wage war in the summer time.

**Quinque diēbus imperātor captus est,** Within five days the general was captured.

*RULE. Time When and Time Within Which are regularly expressed by the ablative case, without a preposition.*

**NOTE 1.** The ablative of Time When has various translations ; thus, in addition to "in" (first) model sentence we may have **diē vicēsimō**, "*on the twentieth day*," **hōrā decimā**, "*at the tenth hour*," etc.

**NOTE 2.** The ablative of Time Within Which must be distinguished carefully from the already familiar *accusative* of Extent of Time (*e.g.* **quinque diēs imperātōrem secūtī sunt**, "*For five days they followed their commander*").

#### MODEL SENTENCES

**Miles missus est, qui Caesarem monēret,** A soldier was sent to warn Caesar (*lit.* who should warn Caesar).

<sup>1</sup> These numbers indicate the Reading Lessons to which an Exercise corresponds.

**Equōs emimus, quōs mittāmus,** We are buying horses to send (*lit.* which we may send).

**Sagittās dabō, quibus ursa occidātur,** I shall provide arrows with which to kill the bear (*lit.* with which the bear may be killed).

**RULE.** *Purpose may be expressed by a relative clause with its verb in the present or imperfect subjunctive.*

**NOTE.** Observe the similarity between *ut*-clauses of purpose and relative clauses of purpose, noting particularly that, in both, the *tense* of the subjunctive is determined in exactly the same way.

**REMARK.** In expressions of purpose, the relative is preferred when the governing clause contains a more or less indefinite expression (*e.g.* "a soldier," "arrows," etc.) to serve as antecedent. The relative construction should be written as often as possible, until it is thoroughly familiar.

#### VOCABULARY<sup>1</sup>

<b>aestās, -ātis, F.,</b> <i>summer, summer time.</i>	<b>ignōtus, -a, -um,</b> <i>unknown.</i>
<b>carrus, -i, M.,</b> <i>wagon.</i>	<b>ītalīa, -ae, F.,</b> <i>Italy.</i>
<b>certē, adv.,</b> <i>certainly, at any rate.</i>	<b>legō, 3, lēgi, lēctus,</b> <i>read;</i> may be construed with indirect discourse.
<b>dux, ducis, M.,</b> <i>leader, commander, guide.</i>	<b>mōns, montis, M.,</b> <i>mountain.</i>
<b>fābula, -ae, F.,</b> <i>story.</i>	<b>moveō, 2, mōvi, mōtus,</b> <i>move.</i>
<b>hiems, hīemis, F.,</b> <i>winter, winter time.</i>	<b>castra movēre,</b> <i>to break camp.</i>
<b>Hispanīa, -ae, F.,</b> <i>Spain.</i>	<b>tempus, -oris, N.,</b> <i>time, season.</i>

**NOTE.** While *imperātor* is a strictly military term, *dux* may be used of a leader of any kind.

<sup>1</sup> In these Exercises a knowledge of the words used in the Primer is, in general assumed. For words that are forgotten, see the English-Latin Vocabulary at the end of this volume.

## I-STEMS

It will be recalled that third declension nouns fall into two classes, (1) Consonant Stems, and (2) I-Stems. The I-Stems include

- a) Masculines and feminines in **-is** which have the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive singular (*e.g.* **nāvis**, gen. **nāvis**).
- b) Feminines in **-ēs** which have the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive singular (*e.g.* **vallēs**, gen. **vallis**).
- c) Neuters in **-e**, **-al**, and **-ar**.

Furthermore, the *plural* of

- d) Masculines and feminines terminating in **-ns** or **-rs**, or consisting of a single syllable ending in either **-s** or **-x** preceded by a consonant.

**NOTE.** Memorize the above statement just as it stands ; and find, in the Vocabulary of this Exercise, a word which falls under (d).

**REMARK 1.** To become thoroughly familiar with the I-Stem endings, it is necessary to write them frequently, even when optional (*e.g.* **-is** for the accusative plural of masculines and feminines). And, in this connection, the inflection of I-Stem *adjectives* (*e.g.* **omnis**) must not be forgotten.

**REMARK 2.** As indicated in the Primer, the ablative singular of masculine and feminine I-Stems varies too much to allow of formulating a general rule. Of the words used in the Primer, **collis**, **hostis**, **nūbēs**, **ovis**, **piscis**, and **vallēs** have **-e** in the ablative ; **avis** has either **-e** or **-i** ; **ignis** and **nāvis** have either **-i** or **-e** ; and **secūris** has **-i**.

## TRANSLATION

1.\* 1. The king is sending sailors to discover the hiding place of the enemy.<sup>1</sup> 2. In winter there are no roads by which to take<sup>2</sup> wagons to the city; but at this season of the year horses can very easily make their way over<sup>3</sup> the mountains. 3. Do not think<sup>4</sup> that the king is willing to give us money with<sup>5</sup> which to buy ships. 4. For two years the soldiers had been detained<sup>6</sup> in the town; but on that day<sup>7</sup> the general had ordered the army to break camp so as to march into Italy.

2.\* "Let's go into the tent, Quintus, and read our book," said Marcus. "Claudia says that in it is a splendid<sup>8</sup> story about three little ships." "Who was the commander?" asked Quintus. "Columbus was the commander," replied Marcus. "He set out from Spain to look for unknown lands, and his little ships were almost broken by the force of the waves. Some people<sup>9</sup> thought him deluded,<sup>10</sup> but certainly he was a very brave man. Come,<sup>11</sup> let's read the book."

1. Use the pl., as usual.

2. Turn the phrase into the passive. The verb *possum* need not be supplied.

3. *make (one's) way over: superō, 1.*

4. Note that this phrase expresses Prohibition.

5. Describe two different ways of rendering "with" into Latin. Which is required here?

6. Use *moror*.

7. Review the gender of the Latin word.

8. Superl. of *pulcher*.

9. *some people: quidem* (pl., as noun). This use of the masculine of adjectives and pronouns is very common in Latin; e.g. *multī*, "many people," *bonī*, "good men," etc.

10. *Lit., thought him to be deluded; (be deluded: errō, 1).*

11. *age* (imperative sing.).

\* These numbers indicate the Reading Lessons to which the Exercises correspond.

## EXERCISE II

(3-4)

ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE—DOUBLE  
ACCUSATIVE—FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

## MODEL SENTENCE

**Paucis post diēbus ad urbem rediit,** He returned to the city a few days later, *or*, after a few days (*lit.* afterward by a few days).

**RULE.** *Degree of Difference is expressed by the ablative case.*

**REMARK.** The ablative of Degree of Difference has many applications in Latin, *e.g.* **multō maior**, "much greater" (*lit.* "greater by much"); but for the present the discussion is limited to *time* expressions.

## MODEL SENTENCE

**Agricolam rēgem fēcērunt,** They made a farmer king.

**RULE.** *Verbs of Making, Appointing, Naming, etc., may take a predicate accusative along with their direct object.*

**NOTE.** In the corresponding passive construction, the direct object, of course, appears as subject of the verb, and the predicate noun too stands in the nominative; *e.g.* **Mārcus rēx puerōrum appellātus est**, "Marcus was called king of the boys" (cf. the familiar predicate nominative with forms of the verb **sum**).

## VOCABULARY

<b>alter, -era, -erum,</b> <i>the other</i>	<b>appropinquō, I, -āvi, -ātum</b>
(of two).	<i>est, draw near, approach;</i>
<b>amō, I, love, like.</b>	<i>construed with the dative,</i>
<b>appellō, I, call, name.</b>	<i>or with ad and acc.</i>

<b>Eurōpa</b> , -ae, F., <i>Europe</i> .	<b>labōrō</b> , 1, -āvi, -ātum est, <i>work, labor</i> .
<b>homō</b> , -inis, C., <i>man</i> .	<b>pars</b> , partis, F., <i>part</i> .
<b>incola</b> , -ae, M., <i>inhabitant, native</i> .	<b>post</b> , adv., <i>afterward, after, later</i> .
<b>incolumis</b> , -is, -e, <i>safe</i> ; often rendered by an adverb, <i>safely</i> .	<b>sentiō</b> , 4, sēnsi, sēnsus, <i>realize</i> ; may be construed with indirect discourse.
<b>interficiō</b> , 3, -fēcī, -fectus, <i>kill</i> .	<b>trāns</b> , prep., with acc., <i>across</i> .

NOTE 1. Remember that *alter* belongs to a group of adjectives peculiar in the genitive and dative singular; (consult, if necessary, the Note on p. 352). With regard to the inflection of *pars*, see the statement on p. 201.

NOTE 2. *Homō* is the general term for "man" in the sense of "individual," or "human being." *Vir*, on the other hand, is a proper designation for a warrior or hero; or it may be used to contrast "man" with "woman," "child," or the like.

NOTE 3. While both *tūtus* and *incolumis* signify "safe," the former properly means "sheltered," and the latter "unharmed"; e.g. *locus tūtus*, "a safe (sheltered) spot," but *imperātor incolumis est*, "the general is safe (unharmed)."

### THE FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

The future active participle of any verb may be formed by changing the ending of the perfect passive participle to -ūrus, e.g. *amātus*, *amātūrus*, -a, -um; *habitus*, *habītūrus*, -a, -um; etc. Turning to the Summary of Forms, note particularly that deponents, as well as other verbs, form this participle; and observe also that *sum* has the form *futūrus*, though (by reason of its meaning) it is a verb that lacks the perfect passive participle.

REMARK. *Fugīō*, too, though lacking the perfect passive participle, yet has the future active form *fugītūrus*, -a, -um.

Used in connection with various forms of the verb *sum*, the future active participle designates an action as *about to* take place at the time indicated by the form of *sum*; *e.g.*:

<b>Exercitus castra mōtū- rus EST,</b>	{ The army <i>is</i> about to break camp, The army <i>is</i> on the point of break- ing camp, The army <i>is</i> ready to break camp, etc.
<b>Exercitūs castra mōtūri ERANT,</b>	{ The armies <i>were</i> about to break camp, The armies <i>were</i> on the point of breaking camp, The armies <i>were</i> ready to break camp, etc.

## TRANSLATION

3. 1. The king was on the point of sending a part of the other<sup>1</sup> army to<sup>2</sup> capture the unknown commander; but after a few hours he set out across the mountains, and on the fifth day arrived home. 2. The settlers,<sup>3</sup> who were now<sup>4</sup> ready to cross the larger river, made a sailor their<sup>5</sup> leader; and when at the third hour of the day they had brought<sup>6</sup> the wagons by ship<sup>7</sup> to the other bank, they marched quickly to the smaller hill. 3. They are about to send men<sup>8</sup> to give axes to the soldiers whom the general has allowed to break camp. 4. In summer, small towns are often destroyed<sup>9</sup> with fire by the Indians; for then the settlers are working in the fields. 5. The inhabitants of all<sup>10</sup> these cities<sup>11</sup> were called<sup>12</sup> Indians by Columbus.

4. "Sit down<sup>13</sup> in the shade, boys," said Claudia. "Did you read that story about the ships of Columbus?" "We have read two thirds<sup>14</sup> of it,"<sup>15</sup> answered Quintus.



"I like Columbus, but I do not like his sailors, who were very bad men; for they even<sup>16</sup> wanted to kill their<sup>17</sup> commander." "But," said Marcus, "when they saw<sup>18</sup> berries in the water and realized that the ship was drawing near to some<sup>5</sup> shore,<sup>19</sup> then at any rate they were glad,<sup>20</sup> I guess,<sup>21</sup> and praised<sup>22</sup> their<sup>5</sup> brave leader." "Did Columbus get back<sup>23</sup> to Europe safely?" asked Quintus. "Columbus returned to Spain safely himself,"<sup>24</sup> replied Claudia; "but all the settlers he<sup>25</sup> had left on an<sup>26</sup> island, the Indians killed."

1. See the Vocabulary of this Exercise.

2. In choosing the relative, note that "a part" is the antecedent.

3. *colōnus*.

4. *nunc* or *iam*?

5. Omit.

6. *vehō*.

7. Use the pl. Name two ways of rendering "by" into Latin; which is called for here?

8. Pl. of *is*.

9. *dēlēō*, 2, *-ēvi*, *-ētus*.

10. Place this modifier after the noun.

11. Note that *urbs* is a word of one syllable ending in *-s* preceded by a consonant.

12. What is the gender of the subject?

13. *sit down*: *sedeō*.

14. *Lit.*, *two parts*. Cf. note 11 above.

15. *of it*: omit.

16. *etiam* (adv.). Put immediately before the word meaning "to kill."

17. *sums*, *-a*, *-um*, placed after the noun (like *meus*, *tuus*, etc.). Until the function of this reflexive possessive adjective is later explained, the word should not be used at all, except when suggested in a footnote, as here. For the present, avoid also the reflexive pronoun *sui* apart from its familiar use in indirect discourse.

18. Imperfect or pluperfect tense?

19. If the accusative is used, remember that the Latin word is neuter.

20. *laetus*.

21. *opīnor*, 1. Here *parem*—  
thetical, as in the English.

22. *laudō*, 1.

23. *get back*: *redeō*.

24. *himself*: intensive pronoun—  
(*ipse*).

25. *i.e.* *all the settlers* WH—  
*he*, etc. In a Latin sentence  
relative cannot be suppressed.

26. *quīdam*.

## EXERCISE III

(5-6)

## TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Using **vocō** as a type, the six infinitives of a Latin verb are as follows :

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present	<b>vocāre</b>	<b>vocārī</b>
Perfect	<b>vocāvisse</b>	<b>vocātus (-a, -um) esse</b>
Future	<b>vocātūrus (-a, -um) esse</b>	<b>vocātum irī</b>

NOTE. The new forms in this list can, for the most part, be learned very readily ; for the perfect infinitive active is found by dropping the final **-m** of **vocāvissem**, the perfect passive is formed by adding **esse** to **vocātus**, and the future active by adding **esse** to **vocātūrus**. The future passive infinitive is a peculiar and little-used formation ; its first element is the accusative of a verbal noun of the same derivation as the perfect passive participle.

Of the three infinitives of deponent verbs, the future needs to be made a subject of special study. In Exercise II it was pointed out that deponents have a future *active* participle ; and it now remains to note that, utilizing this participle, they make a future infinitive that is *active* (not passive) in form. Thus, the three infinitives of **moror** are : present, **morārī** ; perfect, **morātus (-a, -um) esse** ; but future, **morātūrus (-a, -um) esse**.

With the verbs here cited as models, form all the infinitives of **habēō**, **mittō**, **rapīō**, and **audiō** ; also of **polliceor**, **proficiō**, **patior**, and **adorior**. Aside from **fiō**, irregular verbs call for little attention in this connection.

RULE. *In Indirect Discourse the various tenses of the infinitive designate action as present, past, or future FROM THE POINT OF VIEW of the subject of the governing verb of saying, thinking, hearing, etc.*

Thus, to choose the tense of the infinitive correctly in indirect discourse, only one thing is necessary ; namely, to put one's self in the position of the person who says, thinks, or hears, and thus discover whether he regards something as *in progress* (present infinitive), or as already *accomplished* (perfect infinitive), or as *yet to be* (future infinitive).

## MODEL SENTENCES

**Colōnus dicit, The settler says**

- (1) **nautam vocāre**, that the sailor *is* calling.
- (2) **nautam vocāvisse**, that the sailor *has* called.
- (3) **nautam vocātūrum esse**, that the sailor *will* call (*is going to* call, etc.).

**Colōnus dixit, The settler said**

- (1) **nautās vocārī**, that the sailors *were being* called.
- (2) **nautās vocātōs esse**, that the sailors *had been* called.
- (3) **nautās vocātūm irī**, that the sailors *would be* called.

REMARK. Note that in the perfect passive and the future active infinitives the participles agree with the accusative subject ; whereas the verbal *noun* of the future infinitive passive suffers no change.

It is only when the governing verb of saying, thinking, hearing, etc. is in a *past* tense that there is likely to be any difficulty in determining how the subject of that verb views the action of the indirect discourse. If doubt arises in such a case, recast the sentence in the Latin form, *e.g.* :

**The soldier said**

- (1) that the sailors were on the way =  
the sailors *to be* on the way (IN PROGRESS).
- (2) that they had met the general =  
them *to have met* the general (ACCOMPLISHED).
- (3) that they would arrive tired out =  
them *to be going to arrive* tired out (YET TO BE).

**MARK.** Observe sentence (2) with special care, noting how English is obliged to use the *pluperfect* tense ("had met") in order to show clearly that the meeting is *past* from the point of view of the soldier; and remember that it is only when the person speaks, thinks, hears, etc. so regards an action that the *present infinitive* is to be used. If this fact is firmly fixed in the mind there will be little danger of confusing the types of sentence used by (1) and (2).

**EX.** The *present infinitive* found with verbs like *volō* (e.g., "I want to go") is known as the *Complementary Infinitive* because it "fills out" a phrase. The complementary infinitive on occasion, may have a subject accusative (e.g. *iubeō tē ire*, "I order you to go").

Contrasted with this, the infinitive in indirect discourse should have a subject accusative, and *any one* of the three tenses is called for. Hence, to write correctly, it is absolutely essential to know whether a given verb governs the complementary infinitive or whether it is construed with indirect discourse.

Among words used in the Primer, the following verbs governing the complementary infinitive have already been introduced: *agō, cōnor, iubeō, mālō, nōlō, parō, patior, possum*, and *volō*. Verbs governing indirect discourse are: *audiō, cōgnōscō, dicō, doceō, olliceor, putō*, and *sentiō*. In case of doubt, consult the List of Constructions at the end of the book.

## VOCABULARY

-a, -ud, <i>another</i> ; pl.,	<i>crēdō</i> , 3, <i>crēdidī</i> , <i>crēditus</i> ,
r.	<i>believe, think</i> ; may be
adv., <i>before, earlier</i> ;	construed with indirect
n accompanied by an	discourse.
of Degree of Differ-	<i>Faber, -brī</i> , m., <i>Smith</i> .
e.	<i>modo</i> , adv., <i>just now</i> .
-otis, m., <i>Cabot</i> .	<i>nārrō</i> , 1, <i>narrate, tell</i> (with

dat. of the person spoken to); may be construed with indirect discourse.	and abl. are supplied nūllius and nūllō.
nāvigō, I, -āvi, -ātum est, sail.	nōmen, -inis, N., name.
nēmō, defective noun (dat. nēmini; acc. nēminem), M., nobody, no one. The gen.	novus, -a, -um, new.
	pōns, pontis, M., bridge.
	spērō, I, hope; may be construed with indirect course.

NOTE. For the declension of *alius* consult, if necessary, Note on p. 352. Then, turning back to the Vocabulary of Exercise II, compare the meaning of this word with that of *al*. Above all, do not confuse either *alter* or *alius* with the *pl* *cēteri*, -ae, -a.

REMARK. The plural *alii*, as contrasted with *cēteri*, signify "(some) other": *i.e.* *alii militēs*, "(some) other soldiers"; *cēteri militēs*, "(all) the other soldiers."

#### TRANSLATION

5. 1. I was on the point of saying that I<sup>1</sup> had seen him a few days before. 2. Did you think that they would make Marcus teacher of the boys? 3. At that time there was nobody to send<sup>2</sup> with<sup>3</sup> us to the other river; but a man named<sup>4</sup> Smith told<sup>5</sup> us that there were bridges so far away. 4. We hope that the inhabitants of the mountains are good people,<sup>6</sup> and<sup>7</sup> that they<sup>8</sup> will not<sup>7</sup> kill with their<sup>9</sup> axes the settlers, who with the greatest bravery are ready to cross the river without the army. 5. After marching<sup>11</sup> a few miles, the soldiers<sup>12</sup> left a part of the wagons in a safer hiding place, which the settlers said had been discovered many years before by the wife of the commander.

6. "Did you say that you liked Columbus, boys?" asked Claudia. "Do you want me to tell you another story about him?" "I said that I liked Columbus," answered Marcus; "but to-day we prefer to hear the<sup>13</sup> story you<sup>14</sup> were just now reading." "I was reading about a man who was called<sup>15</sup> Cabot," said Claudia. "He sailed with his<sup>9</sup> son across the sea to unknown shores, hoping<sup>16</sup> that he would thus reach<sup>17</sup> Asia. A new part of America at any rate was discovered by him; but he<sup>18</sup> believed that he had seen the coast of Asia. Don't tear<sup>19</sup> the book, Quintus; to-morrow I will tell you another story."

1. Do not forget that, in indirect discourse, the subject must be expressed.

2. Turn into the passive (cf. the second group of model sentences in Exercise I).

3. The preposition *cum* is postpositive with the following pronouns: *ego* and *tū* (personal), *qui* (relative), and *suī* (third person reflexive).

4. *Lit., by name.*

5. Use *dīcō* (with *dat.*).

6. Cf. footnote 9 on Exercise I; and remember that a predicate noun stands in the same case as the subject.

7. *and . . . not: nec.*

8. The subject of the indirect discourse need not be repeated by inserting a pronoun at this point.

9. Omit.

10. *Lit., most bravely.*

11. Translate by a *cum*-clause, taking care to select the proper tense of the subjunctive.

12. As the *cum*-clause and the main clause have a common subject (*militēs*), that subject should be placed first in the sentence.

13. *is.*

14. Express the subject. See also footnote 25 on Exercise II.

15. Not *vocō*.

16. Use again a *cum*-clause; for Latin employs very sparingly the nominative of the present participle. Here *cum* would mean, literally, "since."

17. *pervenīō ad.*

18. *ille.* The noun use of this word is common.

19. *discerpō, 3, -cerpsi, -cerptus*

## EXERCISE IV

(7-9)

## DUM WITH THE PRESENT INDICATIVE

## MODEL SENTENCE

**Dum haec fiunt, hostēs subitō castra adortī sunt,** While this was happening, the enemy suddenly attacked the camp.

**RULE.** **Dum** ("while") is used with the **PRESENT** indicative to describe a **PAST** action that was in progress when something else took place.

**NOTE.** It will be observed that **dum** with the present indicative performs almost the same function as does **cum** with the imperfect subjunctive. But there is a slight difference which must be noted; *e.g.*:

**Cum in hortō essem, laetus eram,** "While I was in the garden, I was happy."

**Dum haec domī fiunt, Caesar oppidum hostium cēpit,** "While this was happening at home, Caesar took a town of the enemy."

In the first of the above sentences, the **cum**-clause indicates, not *time* merely, but *circumstance* as well, *i.e.* it implies that being in the garden was the *cause* of the speaker's pleasant frame of mind; in the other sentence, the **dum**-clause shows that the two events there mentioned were contemporaneous, but does not necessarily hint at any other connection between them. Watch carefully for opportunities to use the **dum**-construction.

## VOCABULARY

**arma, -ōrum, n., arms.**

**dum, conj., while.**

**ē, ex, prep., with abl., of.**

**Galli, -ōrum, m., Frenchmen.**

**maneō, 2, mānsī, mānsū**

**est, remain, stay.**

**semper, adv., always.**

**soleō, 2, solitus sum, lit., be**

**accustomed; may be construed with the complementary infinitive.**

NOTE 1. *Ē, ex* in the sense of "of" is found with numerals (particularly *finus*, *duo*, and *trēs*), and with the pronoun *quidam*; e.g. *finus ē pueris*, "one of the boys"; *quidam ē militibus*, "(a certain) one of the soldiers."

NOTE 2. For *soleō* the translation "be accustomed" is rather formal; but it gives the key to all other renderings of the word; e.g. *ire solēbat*, "he usually went," "it was his custom to go," "he used to go," etc. In learning the principal parts of this verb, observe that it is a semi-deponent; i.e. its meaning is active throughout, but in the perfect tenses only passive forms are found. The full list of such semi-deponents is: *audeō*, *fidēō*, *gaudeō*, and *soleō*.

## TRANSLATION

7. 1. Let us hope that one of the soldiers will take the other<sup>1</sup> boy to his<sup>2</sup> mother. 2. While this<sup>3</sup> was being said to the general, the braver settlers were on the point of breaking down<sup>4</sup> the bridge with huge rocks. 3. Come, boys, into the fields. Don't think that I am going to allow you to dally<sup>5</sup> at home. 4. A few hours afterward horses were given to one of the sailors to<sup>6</sup> take home. 5. Had you realized that there was no one to call the boys?

8. 1. In those days<sup>7</sup> the settlers usually took<sup>8</sup> their<sup>9</sup> arms with them<sup>9</sup> into the fields; for they were always in fear of<sup>10</sup> an attack from<sup>11</sup> bitter<sup>12</sup> enemies. They<sup>13</sup> certainly were brave men.<sup>14</sup> Their<sup>2</sup> leader was named<sup>15</sup> Smith. 2. Marcus says that America was discovered by Columbus; but many people<sup>14</sup> think that another<sup>1</sup> man<sup>2</sup> discovered it many years before. 3. I believe that the king's son used to make one of the settlers leader against<sup>16</sup> the Indians.

9. "I have come to tell you<sup>17</sup> another story, Marcus," said Claudia. "Is your brother at home to-day?"



"Quintus has gone to the shore to see a great ship that has been broken<sup>18</sup> by the waves," replied Marcus; "but I<sup>19</sup> want to hear the story. About whom have you been reading?"<sup>20</sup> "I was just now reading about a man named Smith,"<sup>21</sup> said Claudia. "He sailed often from Europe to America, and once was captured by Frenchmen, who compelled him to remain with them<sup>9</sup> many days; however,<sup>22</sup> he at length<sup>23</sup> reached<sup>24</sup> home safely. But look!<sup>25</sup> I think I see Quintus coming."

1. Cf. the latter part of the Note on p. 210.

2. Omit.

3. Neut. pl. of *hic*.

4. *break down*: *frangō*.

5. *moror*.

6. See the second group of model sentences in Exercise I.

7. Pl. of *tempus*.

8. *ferō*.

9. *sēcum*.

10. *be in fear of*: *timeō*.

11. *Lit., of*.

12. *ācer*.

13. *ille*; cf. footnote 18 on Exercise III.

14. Cf. footnote 9 on Exercise I.

15. Imperfect tense.

16. *contrā*, prep., with acc.

17. How many persons has the speaker in mind?

18. *a . . . ship that has been*

*broken*: *lit., a . . . ship broken* (perf. pass. partic.).

19. When the subject is emphasized, as here, the pronoun must be written in the Latin sentence.

20. Perfect tense.

21. *named Smith*: *lit., Smith by name*. The word for "Smith" should be in the same case as that for "man." An amplifying or explanatory noun may thus stand "in apposition" with any of the cases; but examples of the nominative are, of course, most frequent (*e.g.* "Ferdinand, King of Spain").

22. Be careful of the order of words.

23. *at length*: *i.e. at last*.

24. Use *redeō*.

25. *aspiciō*, 3, *aspēxi*, *aspectus*.

## EXERCISE V

(10-12)

## THE GERUND — DATIVE OF POSSESSION

Unlike the gerundive, which is an *adjective*, the gerund is a (verbal) *noun*, and is found only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular; *e.g.*:

Gen.	vocandi
Dat.	vocandō
Acc.	vocandum
Abl.	vocandō

With **vocō** as a model, construct the gerund of one regular verb of each conjugation. Deponents form their gerund in the usual way. Among the irregular verbs, note that the gerund of **eō** is **eundi**, **eundō**, etc., and that **fiō** has no gerund forms.

## MODEL SENTENCE

**Pugnandō urbem cēperunt**, By fighting they got possession of the city.

NOTE. For the present, the discussion is limited to the ablative case of the gerund. In the model sentence, observe how **pugnandō** expresses Means, just as the ablative of any other noun might do.

REMARK. An English word like "fighting" may be either a verbal noun or a present participle. In dealing with such forms, therefore, care must be taken to determine whether they are nouns or participles before attempting to translate them into Latin.

## MODEL SENTENCE

Colōni filiō equus pulcher est, The settler's son has a fine horse.

RULE. *The fact of possession may be indicated by the use of the dative case in connection with a form of the verb sum.*

REMARK. This method of indicating possession should be employed in preference to the use of *habeō* until it is thoroughly familiar.

## VOCABULARY

adferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, <i>bring, carry (to).</i>	moriōr, 3, mortuus sum (future partic. moritūrus, -a -um), <i>die.</i>
atque, ac, conj., <i>and.</i>	
Britannia, -ae, F., <i>England.</i>	Novum (-i) Eborācum, -i, N. <i>New York (city).</i>
Caesar, -aris, M., <i>Caesar.</i>	
cibus, -i, M., <i>food.</i>	scapha, -ae, F., <i>skiff, open boat.</i>
cōpiae, -ārum, F., <i>troops, forces.</i>	scribō, 3, scripsi, scriptus <i>write; may be construed with indirect discourse.</i>
ēvādō, 3, -vāsi, -vāsum est, <i>escape.</i>	
Hudsō, -ōnis, M., <i>Hudson.</i>	ubi, relative adv., <i>where.</i>

NOTE 1. Of the forms *atque* and *ac*, the former should be used when the following word begins with a vowel or *h*.

NOTE 2. The relative use of *ubi* may be seen in a sentence like *hic est locus, ubi ursae latent*, "This is the place where (*i.e.* in which) the bears hide."

## TRANSLATION

10. 1. Did you think that all the Indians would escape by running? 2. The king has many children, but I be

lieve that he has found no one to teach<sup>1</sup> them. 3. The natives called the island Cuba, and that<sup>2</sup> name has remained these many years. 4. While<sup>3</sup> the horses were being taken<sup>4</sup> across the river on<sup>5</sup> a ship, two of the soldiers quickly seized<sup>6</sup> an open boat, and another<sup>7</sup> brought the arms. 5. Either<sup>8</sup> at that time or<sup>8</sup> a few days earlier, the troops of our general, much disturbed by this happening,<sup>9</sup> were on the point of attacking the town.

11. 1. Don't fear the smaller waves. 2. We had axes and daggers;<sup>10</sup> but<sup>11</sup> while the Indians were crossing the hill, we were marching to the river, that there might be some one<sup>12</sup> there to guard the longer bridge. 3. The boys were busy<sup>13</sup> reading and writing;<sup>14</sup> but one of the girls told us a story about a man named Caesar,<sup>15</sup> who once sailed to England and captured a part of that island. 4. In the winter time Caesar used to stay in camp,<sup>16</sup> but in summer he always would<sup>17</sup> march many miles across mountains and rivers to attack the towns of the enemy.<sup>18</sup>

12. "I hope that Claudia will come to-day," said Quintus to Marcus. "For I was not at home yesterday, and so I did not hear the story about the man named Smith."<sup>19</sup> "I<sup>20</sup> have heard a new story," replied Marcus. "My father told me that a man called Hudson<sup>21</sup> set out from Europe, and that the island, where New York now is, was discovered by him. A<sup>22</sup> little later Hudson came again<sup>22</sup> to America, and there found a great unknown<sup>23</sup> sea; but when the sailors<sup>24</sup> realized<sup>25</sup> that they had used up nearly<sup>26</sup> all the food, they deserted<sup>27</sup> their<sup>28</sup> commander, and many people believe that he died in a skiff on the open<sup>29</sup> sea."<sup>30</sup>

1. Usually an infinitive has no effect upon the tense of the subjunctive in a clause dependent upon it. But the perfect infinitive restricts the subjunctive in such clauses to the imperfect and plu-

perfect. Express purpose here by means of a relative clause.

2. *is*.

3. *dum*.

4. *vehō*.

5. *Lit., by*.

6. *capiō*.

7. Cf. the latter part of the Note on p. 210.

8. *either . . . or: aut . . . aut*.

9. *i.e. circumstance, or thing*.

10. *sica, -ae, F.*

11. In connection with the conjunctions *cum* and *dum*, *autem* is preferred to *sed*; *e.g. cum autem, dum autem*, etc.

12. Use the pl. of *is*.

13. *occupātus, -a, -um*.

14. *i.e. with reading and writing*.

15. Cf. footnote 21 on Exercise IV.

16. Use the idiom: *ad castris tenere*.

17. Translate by the choice of tense.

18. Pl., as usual.

19. *i.e. who was called Smith*. Use the imperfect tense (and cf. footnote 15 on Exercise III).

20. Cf. footnote 19 on Exercise IV.

21. Not indirect discourse.

22. *came again: i.e. returned*.

23. Place this second modifier after the noun.

24. Cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III.

25. Cf. footnote 18 on Exercise II.

26. *i.e. almost*.

27. *relinquō*.

28. Omit.

29. *apertus, -a, -um*.

30. Be careful of the spelling.

## EXERCISE VI

(13-15)

### REVIEW OF EXERCISES I TO V—SEQUENCE OF TENSES

#### VOCABULARY

*arbitror*, 1, *think, suppose*; may be construed with indirect discourse.

*cum*, causal conj., *since, as*.

*Cūrīō, -ōnis*, M., *Curio*.

*incendō*, 3, *-cendi, -census*, *burn, set on fire, fire*.

*lēgātus, -i*, M., *captain*.

*mēnsis, -is* (abl. *-e*), M., *month*.

4, **-scīvi**, *not know*; **quamquam**, conj., *although*,  
 be construed with *though*.  
 rect discourse. **Standisius**, **-si**, m., *Standish*.  
**(-ae)** **Britannia**, **-ae**, f., **tamen**, adv. and conj., *still*,  
*England*. *yet, nevertheless*.  
**la**, **-ae**, f., *Priscilla*.

E 1. When **cum** develops the full causal sense "since," it is no longer restricted to the imperfect and pluperfect active, but may be followed by *any* tense of that mood.

E 2. On the genitive (and vocative) form **Standisi**, see 1 and 2 on pp. 345-346. The other cases of the name, *se*, proceed regularly (**Standisiō**, **Standisium**, etc.).

E 3. **Tamen** should not be placed first in a *sentence*; but stands first in its *clause*, when balancing a word like **quamquam** in a preceding clause; e.g. **Agricola, quamquam irātus est filium vocāre nōn vult**, "Although the farmer is angry, he is not willing to call his son." In no case should **tamen** be placed later than second in its sentence or clause.

### SEQUENCE OF TENSES

In the constructions already familiar, the purpose clause clearly illustrates a fundamental law running through Latin sentence-structure, namely, that the tense of the active in subordinate clauses is influenced by the tense of the verb of the governing clause. This fundamental principle is known as the Law of Sequence of Tenses. It may be summarized as follows:

**Æ.** *In dependent subjunctive clauses, the present or perfect tense is required when the verb of the governing clause is a Present, Future, or Future Perfect (Primary Sequence); the imperfect or pluperfect is required when the verb of the governing clause is an Imperfect, Perfect, or Pluperfect (Secondary Sequence).*

NOTE. With rare exceptions, the above rule holds good whatever the mood of the governing verb may be (for we often have, for example, subjunctive dependent upon subjunctive). It is the *tense* of the governing verb that is the decisive thing.

The following table illustrates the Law of Sequence of Tenses as applied to clauses introduced by *cum* in the causal sense :

Primary	{ <i>Cum viri vocent</i> , Since the men are calling,	{ <i>ego vocāre nōlō</i> , I do not care to call.
	{ <i>Cum viri vocāverint</i> , Since the men have called,	
Secondary	{ <i>Cum viri vocārent</i> , Since the men were calling,	{ <i>ego vocāre nōlui</i> , I did not care to call.
	{ <i>Cum viri vocāvissent</i> , Since the men had called,	

NOTE 1. While the general principle illustrated above accounts equally well for the *tense* of the subjunctive in *cum*-clauses and in purpose clauses, it is well to note here, at the very outset, that the force of the present and imperfect subjunctive in purpose clauses is somewhat peculiar. In *cum*-clauses (see above) the present and imperfect subjunctive denote action *contemporaneous* with that of the governing verb ; but, since a purpose is something *looked forward to* (e.g. *vēnit, ut emeret*, "He came that he *might buy*"), the present and imperfect subjunctive in purpose clauses necessarily have to do with action that is *future* from the point of view of the governing verb.

NOTE 2. The perfect and pluperfect tenses of the subjunctive (not employed in purpose clauses) designate an action as *antecedent* to that of the governing verb ; see the second and fourth of the sentences in the table above. If the forms of the perfect subjunctive are not thoroughly familiar, they should be reviewed at this point.

## TRANSLATION

13. 1. Since this skiff is usually left<sup>1</sup> on the shore, let's call a sailor to<sup>2</sup> take us to the island. 2. I can<sup>3</sup> see one of our sailors; but I think that the other skiff has already<sup>4</sup> crossed the river. 3. While<sup>5</sup> the forces of the enemy were firing the town, some<sup>6</sup> settlers were bringing food in<sup>7</sup> wagons to the fort. 4. By lying<sup>8</sup> on the ground, the sailors thought that they would deceive<sup>9</sup> the enemy. 5. Although no farmer had<sup>10</sup> a horse, do you yet believe that the Indians will not capture<sup>11</sup> their wives?

14. 1. A few days before, the same soldiers were on the point of crossing the mountains; but do not imagine<sup>12</sup> that the army wanted to desert its<sup>13</sup> leader. 2. Although a man named Curio had been appointed<sup>14</sup> commander, still at that time there was no one to provide<sup>15</sup> grain for the army<sup>16</sup> which had escaped across the river. 3. Since you have made a boy your<sup>3</sup> guide,<sup>17</sup> guard your horses well.<sup>18</sup> *We* prefer another leader. 4. On all sides the Indians, who had arms, now came together more readily to attack the fort.

15. "Come into the garden," said Marcus; "to-day I will tell you a story." "Good,"<sup>19</sup> said Claudia and Quintus; "let's hear it."<sup>20</sup> "Once," said Marcus, "there was a very brave captain named Standish. He had sailed from Europe to New England along with a few settlers, and<sup>21</sup> during the following<sup>21</sup> winter his wife died. A few months later he thought that he was going to marry<sup>22</sup> a<sup>6</sup> pretty<sup>23</sup> girl, but she<sup>24</sup> preferred another man."<sup>25</sup> "What was the girl's name?"<sup>26</sup> inquired Quintus. "I don't know," answered Marcus. "Do you,<sup>28</sup> Claudia?" "I think that her<sup>27</sup> name was Priscilla," replied Claudia.



1. *is* . . . *left*: do not mistake the tense.
2. Relative clause.
3. Omit.
4. *iam*.
5. *dum*.
6. *quidam*.
7. *Lit., by*.
8. Cf. Exercise V.
9. *ēlūdō*, 3, -*lūsī*, -*lūsus*.
10. Not *habēō*.
11. The future active infinitive is often written without *esse*.
12. *putō*.
13. *suus*, -a, -um; cf. footnote 17 on Exercise II.
14. Pass. of *faciō*.
15. *dō*.
16. Dative case.
17. *dux*.
18. *diligenter*.
19. *optimē* (adv.).
20. Use *atque* (*ac*) *occasio* ally, in order to become familiar with this conjunction.
21. *proximus*, -a, -um. Note that this phrase does *not* express Extent of Time.
22. *in mātrimonium dūcō*.
23. Place this second modifier after the noun.
24. *ille*; cf. footnote 18 on Exercise III.
25. *Lit., by what (quī) name was the girl called?* Interrogative words, when possible, should be placed first in the sentence.
26. *i.e. do YOU know* (*sciō*, 4, *scīvī*, *scītus*). The particle -*ne* may be attached to a pronoun.
27. Recast the clause, and use a dative of possession.

## EXERCISE VII

(16-18)

## THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

## MODEL SENTENCES

**Colōnis interfectis, Indi villās statim incendērunt,** After killing the settlers (the settlers having been killed), the Indians at once fired the farmhouses.

**Vēnātōre duce militēs flūmen trānsiērunt,** With a hunter as guide (a hunter [being] guide), the soldiers crossed the river.

The above sentences illustrate the two most important varieties of the ablative absolute construction. The first

type, consisting of a noun and the perfect passive participle, is already very familiar ; in the other, two nouns in the ablative case are simply placed side by side, without any verbal form to connect them.

REMARK 1. In ablative absolutes of the first type, the *present* participle is occasionally used, with or without an object ; e.g. **Indiis urbem incendentibus, nāvēs ad litus appropinquābant**, "As the Indians were firing the town, the ships were approaching the shore." And an occasional variant on the second type is afforded by ablative absolutes made up of a noun and an *adjective* ; e.g. **Nautis incolumibus nāvēs rediērunt**, "With sailors unharmed (the sailors [being] safe) the ships returned."

REMARK 2. Since the literal renderings of the ablative absolute are so crude, it is almost always necessary to represent this construction in some other way in English ; see the examples above.

## VOCABULARY

<b>audeō, 2, ausus sum, dare,</b> <i>venture</i> ; may be construed with the complementary infinitive.	construed with indirect discourse.
<b>auxilium, -ii, N., aid, help.</b>	<b>oppidāni, -ōrum, M., towns-people.</b>
<b>bōs, bovis, M. and F., ox, cow ; pl. M., cattle.</b> See the Summary of Forms, p. 348.	<b>Pollūx, -ūcis, M., Pollux.</b>
<b>Castor, -oris, M., Castor.</b>	<b>Rōmānus, -i, M., a Roman ; pl., the Romans.</b>
<b>cōnscendō, 3, -scendi, -scēsus, climb, scale, board (a ship).</b>	<b>sis, please ; pl., sultis.</b>
<b>longinquus, -a, -um, distant.</b>	<b>tēlum, -i, N., weapon. tēlum (tēla) mittere, to shoot, to fire.</b>
<b>anūtiō, 1, announce ; with dat., inform, tell. May be</b>	<b>vincō, 3, vici, victus, win ; with acc., overcome, subdue, defeat, beat.</b>

NOTE 1. Observe that *audeō* is a semi-deponent (cf. the latter part of Note 2 on p. 213).

NOTE 2. On the declension of *auxilium*, see Note 2 on p. 219.

NOTE 3. *Sis* and *sultis* are short for *si vis* and *si vultis* (*li.* "if you will").

#### TRANSLATION

16. 1. With Marcus for teacher, the boys are usually tired with play,<sup>1</sup> and<sup>2</sup> not with reading or writing. 2. Since the son of one settler had promised that he would send better horses, we stopped<sup>3</sup> a few hours in the shade, and sent two of the boys into the town. 3. While<sup>4</sup> the cattle were crossing the field, the sailors whom you saw on the ship were hiding along<sup>5</sup> the shore, and<sup>6</sup> did not<sup>6</sup> dare to shoot at<sup>7</sup> the soldiers. 4. The hunters who were on the point of boarding the ship had a bear and four monkeys. 5. Are there more waves to-day?

17. 1. After throwing<sup>8</sup> the food into the water, Marcus escaped into the tent, and the other<sup>9</sup> boy ran home. 2. With Caesar for general, I hope that we shall overcome the enemy.<sup>10</sup> 3. We did not know that the captain had died a few months before. 4. Although we hear that arms are usually brought by the settlers from all<sup>11</sup> parts of the mountains, still we do not dare at this time to set out with the cattle. 5. Send forces<sup>12</sup> to guard<sup>12</sup> the wives and children of all the settlers. 6. Have you heard about these more important<sup>14</sup> matters?<sup>15</sup>

18. "Tell me a story to-day about the Romans,<sup>16</sup> please," said Quintus to Claudia. "We were just now reading about Castor and Pollux," said Claudia. "The Romans think that these gods once rushed<sup>17</sup> suddenly into the fight,<sup>18</sup> and that by their aid the enemy were beaten. Some<sup>19</sup>

say too<sup>20</sup> that a few hours later the same gods met a<sup>15</sup> Roman on a distant road, and bade him announce<sup>21</sup> to his<sup>22</sup> townspeople that the Romans had won." "I don't believe that<sup>23</sup> story," remarked Quintus. "What do you think of it,<sup>24</sup> Marcus?"

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Lit., with playing.</i>      | this second modifier after the noun ;  |
| 2. Omit.                           | and place the whole prepositional      |
| 3. <i>moror.</i>                   | phrase first in the sentence, omit-    |
| 4. <i>dum.</i>                     | ting -ne.                              |
| 5. <i>per.</i>                     | 15. <i>i.e. circumstances, or</i>      |
| 6. <i>and . . . not : neque.</i>   | <i>things.</i>                         |
| 7. <i>in.</i>                      | 16. <i>about the Romans : put</i>      |
| 8. Cf. footnote 11 on Exercise     | first in the sentence.                 |
| III ; or use an abl. absol.        | 17. <i>currō.</i>                      |
| 9. Cf. the latter part of the      | 18. <i>pugna.</i>                      |
| Note on p. 210.                    | 19. <i>quidam.</i>                     |
| 10. Pl. ; and cf. Remark 1 on      | 20. <i>etiam</i> (adv.) ; place before |
| p. 201.                            | the verb of saying.                    |
| 11. Place this modifier before     | 21. <i>i.e. ordered him to an-</i>     |
| the preposition.                   | <i>nounce.</i>                         |
| 12. See the Vocabulary of Ex-      | 22. <i>suus, -a, -um ; cf. again</i>   |
| ercise V.                          | footnote 17 on Exercise II.            |
| 13. Use a relative clause.         | 23. <i>hic.</i>                        |
| 14. <i>important : magnus.</i> Put | 24. <i>of it : i.e. about it.</i>      |

## EXERCISE VIII

(19-21)

## ABLATIVE OF MANNER—REVIEW OF THE GERUNDIVE

## MODEL SENTENCES

**Maximā celeritatē hostēs fugērunt,** The enemy fled at top speed (with the greatest swiftmess).

**Omnibus modis montem capere cōnāti sunt,** They strove by every means (in every way) to take the mountain.

**RULE.** *Manner may be expressed by a noun in the ablative case with an adjective modifier.*

## THE GERUNDIVE

Remember that, in distinction from the gerund (verbal noun), the gerundive is an *adjective*, e.g. **vocandus, -a, -um**, **habendus, -a, -um**, etc.; also that, in connection with forms of the verb **sum**, the gerundive indicates that a thing *must, ought, should, or needs to be done*, e.g.:

**Mulier vocanda est**, The woman must be called.

**Putō mulierem vocandam esse**, I think that the woman ought to be called.

**Caesar sequendus est**, Caesar should be followed.

Note particularly the last of the above examples, observing that the gerundive of a deponent has the regular *passive* force. For the verb **eō**, see the Summary of Forms, p. 374; and note that **fiō** has no gerundive.

REMARK. Deponent verbs have peculiarities that demand very careful study. It has already been pointed out that for their future infinitive they choose the *active* form (e.g. **secūtūrus esse**); and to this is now added the interesting observation that their gerundive is *passive* in meaning as well as in form.

## VOCABULARY

<b>celeritās, -ātis</b> , F., <i>speed</i> , <i>swiftness</i> .	<b>nē . . . quidem</b> , adverbial phrase, <i>not even</i> .
<b>cēnō</b> , 1, -āvi, (-ātus), <i>dine</i> .	<b>Pompēius, -ēi</b> , M., <i>Pompey</i> .
<b>dēdō</b> , 3, -didi, -ditus, <i>surren- der</i> (something); con- strued in the same way as the verb <b>dō</b> .	<b>prōgredior</b> , 3, -gressus sum, <i>advance</i> .
<b>Hispāni, -ōrum</b> , M., <i>the Span- iards</i> .	<b>quondam</b> , adv., <i>formerly</i> , <i>once</i> .
<b>modus, -i</b> , M., <i>way, means</i> , <i>fashion</i> .	<b>senātus, -ūs</b> , M., <i>senate</i> .
	<b>Sertōrius, -ri</b> , M., <i>Sertorius</i> .
	<b>virtūs, -ūtis</b> , F., <i>bravery</i> , <i>valor, courage</i> .

NOTE 1. The phrase *nē . . . quidem* is always divided, the word or words to be emphasized standing between the two parts, e.g. *nē Caesar quidem hoc facere potest*, "Not even Caesar can do this."

NOTE 2. On the declension of *Pompēius* and *Sertōrius*, cf. Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VI.

## TRANSLATION

19. 1. Do not advance to the river, soldiers; for the camp needs to be guarded in every way.<sup>1</sup> 2. After calling<sup>2</sup> the settlers, the general appointed<sup>3</sup> a sailor to be<sup>4</sup> the guide of the hunters, and sent them to give aid<sup>5</sup> to the soldiers, who were now weary with fighting.<sup>6</sup> 3. A way<sup>7</sup> must be made by the sword; for the guide is now informing<sup>8</sup> the general that the enemy have captured our ships. 4. Since we have in no way been able to take that town, let us break camp, seize the cattle, and<sup>9</sup> destroy<sup>10</sup> the ships with fire. 5. Did he say<sup>11</sup> this<sup>11</sup> to the brother of any<sup>12</sup> praetor<sup>13</sup> in the senate yesterday? Did he think that my father ought to be warned?

20. 1. I think that the townspeople, who have<sup>14</sup> weapons, should be seized; but<sup>15</sup> since our commander hopes that in a few days they will surrender their<sup>16</sup> leader to us, I suppose that we shall not kill them. 2. While our forces were fighting with great bravery, one of the Indians set out to burn some<sup>17</sup> distant farmhouses. 3. We are about to send a sailor to board the vessel and get<sup>18</sup> the boy whom you heard had escaped from the fort. 4. Have they learned the cause<sup>19</sup> of all<sup>20</sup> these things? 5. All those<sup>16</sup> who had dared to advance into the valleys were overcome by our men,<sup>21</sup> and within a few days we shall attack the towns.

21. *Sertorius*

A <sup>17</sup> leader named <sup>22</sup> Sertorius, who had crossed over to <sup>23</sup> Spain, was loved by the Spaniards most devotedly.<sup>24</sup> For many years the Romans tried to capture him,<sup>25</sup> but not even Pompey could subdue his armies. But <sup>18</sup> when the war had been waged for a long time, the Romans won in an inglorious<sup>26</sup> fashion. For one day,<sup>27</sup> as <sup>28</sup> he was dining, Sertorius<sup>29</sup> was assassinated<sup>30</sup> by one<sup>31</sup> of his own<sup>32</sup> captains.

1. *every way*: use the pl.
2. Cf. footnotes 11 and 12 on Exercise III.
3. *faciō*.
4. *to be*: omit.
5. *Lit., to bring (ferō) aid*. This idiom governs the dative case.
6. See Exercise V.
7. *i.e. road*.
8. *Lit., is . . . announcing to*.
9. *-que*.
10. *dēleō*, 2, *-ēvi, -ētus*.
11. Neut. pl. of *hic*.
12. *ūllus*.
13. *praetor, -ōris, m.*
14. Not *habeō*.
15. Cf. footnote 11 on Exercise V.
16. Omit.
17. *quidam*.
18. *petō*.
19. *causa, -ae, f.*
20. Place this modifier after the noun.
21. *nostrī, -ōrum, m.* (cf. footnote 9 on Exercise I).
22. Translate in two ways.
23. *trānseō in*.
24. *most devotedly: ūnicē* (adv.).
25. Use a relative, placing it first in the sentence.
26. *haud illūstris, -is, -e*. Place after the noun, and be careful of the spelling.
27. *ōlim*.
28. *cum*.
29. Cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III.
30. *i.e. was killed*.
31. *quidam* (cf. Note 1 on the Vocabulary of Exercise IV).
32. *his own: suus, -a, -um*, placed *before* the noun, thus marking the emphasis.

## EXERCISE IX

(22-24)

## THE INDIRECT OBJECT WITH CERTAIN VERBS

It is a fact already familiar that, in addition to an accusative, verbs of giving, saying, and the like may govern also a dative of the indirect object; *e.g.* **canem puerō dat**, "He is giving a dog to the boy."

Somewhat different, however, is another important class of verbs, which, while lacking a direct object, yet govern a dative of the indirect object. It happens, unfortunately, that verbs of this latter class are generally most conveniently represented in English by expressions that suggest the use of a direct object or of some other substitute for the dative which the Latin words require; and it therefore becomes necessary to memorize a selected list of these Latin verbs, and to fix firmly in mind the fact that they govern the dative case.

**RULE.** **Crēdō, faveō, fidō, ignōscō, imperō, invidē, irāscor, minor, noceō, opitulor, parcō, pāreō, persuādeō, placeō, resistō, serviō, and suscēnseō** govern a dative of the indirect object.

**NOTE.** Taking these verbs in the above order, they may be rendered conventionally: "trust,\* favor, confide, pardon, command, envy, be angry, threaten, injure, aid, spare, obey, persuade, please, resist, serve, be offended." As intimated above, hardly any of these renderings suggest an indirect object, the reason being (at least in great part) that they are not exact equivalents for the Latin verbs; thus, **noceō**, which is commonly translated "injure," really signifies "be injurious," "work injury," or the like — meanings which obviously call for the dative case. For the

\* When **crēdō** means "believe (a thing)," it takes a direct object.



present, only the Latin verbs should be memorized. The English meanings are best taken up as the verbs are introduced into the Exercise Vocabularies.

REMARK. For the class of verbs here under discussion, the passive construction (including the gerundive) is peculiar, and should not be attempted until it has been explained in a later Exercise.

## VOCABULARY

<b>Cicerō</b> , -ōnis, M., <i>Cicero</i> .	with a purpose clause introduced by <i>ut</i> or <i>nē</i> .
<b>cōmitās</b> , -ātis, F., <i>kindliness</i> .	
<b>cōsul</b> , -ulis, M., <i>consul</i> .	<b>proelium</b> , -i, N., <i>battle</i> .
<b>nō</b> , I, -āvi, -ātum est, <i>swim</i> .	<b>quod</b> , conj., <i>because</i> .
<b>persuādeō</b> , 2, -suāsi, -suāsum	<b>summus</b> , -a, -um, <i>greatest</i> .
<b>est</b> , <i>persuade</i> ; governs the dative case, often along	<b>ter</b> , adv., <i>three times</i> .

NOTE 1. **Persuādeō** strictly means something like "make (it) agreeable," hence its construction with the dative case.

NOTE 2. Strictly, **summus** is the superlative of **superior**, -ior, -ius, "higher," "superior."

## TRANSLATION

22. 1. Did you dare<sup>1</sup> to persuade them to set out at this time of day? 2. We thought that the children ought to be addressed<sup>2</sup> with the greatest kindliness. 3. With Cicero for consul, the Romans will in every way give aid<sup>3</sup> to those most wretched<sup>4</sup> settlers. 4. Since the enemy were trying to escape by running away, we sent men<sup>5</sup> to all parts of the city to warn the soldiers. 5. They think that not even the son of this man<sup>6</sup> can persuade the senate. 6. Although nobody believed that the valor of our forces was great, still only a few of<sup>7</sup> the enemy escaped from the battle

23. 1. Not even Curio was able to persuade the other<sup>8</sup> regiment not to advance against<sup>9</sup> the fort. 2. Formerly the farmers used to guard their<sup>10</sup> cattle with weapons at night; but now they do not fear fierce attacks of the enemy. 3. After<sup>11</sup> the general had dined, he was surrendered to the soldiers whom the enemy had sent. 4. While<sup>12</sup> *you* were returning with all<sup>13</sup> speed from the ship, *we* were persuading the hunters to bring weapons. 5. I did not know that one of the generals had<sup>14</sup> a son.

#### 24. *A Wreck* \*

Formerly ships used frequently to be broken on<sup>15</sup> the rocks, because there were no lights<sup>16</sup> to warn the sailors. Once when a great ship had been carried<sup>17</sup> by the winds<sup>18</sup> against a<sup>19</sup> reef,<sup>20</sup> and men<sup>21</sup> were being swept overboard<sup>22</sup> by the waves, a certain man,<sup>21</sup> mounted on<sup>23</sup> a very fine<sup>24</sup> horse, rushed<sup>25</sup> into the water with a rope,<sup>26</sup> which with the greatest difficulty<sup>27</sup> he carried to the ship. A few sailors seized the rope, and the powerful horse very readily swam with them<sup>28</sup> to the shore. This<sup>29</sup> was done three times. But then the brave animal<sup>30</sup> suddenly fell to the ground, and a little later died.

1. The particle *-ne* divides even a verbal phrase; e.g. *occisusne est*?

2. *appellō*.

3. Cf. footnote 5 on Exercise VIII.

4. Place this second modifier after the noun.

5. Pl. of *is*.

6. In this phrase "this" is the emphatic word.

7. *only a few of*: *pauci*.

Place after the noun.

8. Be careful to choose the right word.

9. *ad*.

10. Omit.

11. Use *cum*; and cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III.

12. Do not forget to use *dum*, as occasion offers.

\* It is not expected that the headings of stories will be translated.

13. *Lit., the greatest.* Translate "greatest" in two ways.
14. Is this *past* or *present* from the point of view of the subject of the governing verb? Choose the tense of the infinitive accordingly.
15. in (with acc.).
16. lūmen, -inis, N.
17. adferō.
18. ventus, -i, M.
19. quidam.
20. saxum longum.
21. vir or homō?
22. *sweep overboard: in mare prōiciō*, 3, -iēcī, -iectus.
23. *Lit., carried (vehō) by.*
24. *fine: pulcher.*
25. *Lit., ran.*
26. fūnis, -is, M.
27. labor, -ōris, M.
28. *Lit., by swimming carried (vehō) them.*
29. Use a relative.
30. *Lit., horse.*

## EXERCISE X

(25-27)

## NEGATIVE CONNECTIVE

## MODEL SENTENCES

**Indi miserunt tēla, nec fūgerunt,** The Indians fired, and did not run.

**Nauta ad litus fūgit, nec quisquam eum vidit,** The sailor sped to the shore, and no one saw him.

**Vēnī, neque umquam redībō,** I have come, and shall never return.

**RULE.** *When two connected phrases are coördinate and the second contains a negative, the negative element should be united, if possible, with the conjunction.*

**REMARK.** Clauses are called coördinate when they are of equal rank; e.g. "I came *and* I saw" (as contrasted with "I came *that* I might see.").

Applying the rule to the model sentences above, observe that Latin makes the following combinations:

for	"and not"	"nor" ( <i>nec</i> )
for	"and no one"	"nor any one" ( <i>nec quisquam</i> )
for	"and never"	"nor ever" ( <i>neque umquam</i> )

NOTE. Of the forms *neque* and *nec*, the former should be used when the following word begins with a vowel or *h*.

## VOCABULARY

Carthagō, -inis, F., <i>Carthage</i> .	opperior, 4, <i>oppertus sum</i> , wait
Hamilcar, -aris, M., <i>Hamilcar</i> .	for.
Hannibal, -alis, M., <i>Hannibal</i> .	quisquam, —, <i>quidquam</i> , any one, anything; used mostly in negative clauses.
iterum, adv., <i>again</i> .	See the Summary of Forms, p. 359, Note 2.
loquor, 3, <i>locutus sum</i> , talk; construed with <i>cum</i> and the ablative.	umquam, adv., <i>ever</i> ; used mostly in negative clauses.

## TRANSLATION

25. 1. The other sailors have not come, and we do not think that they should be waited for. 2. Do you think that you saw the settler following<sup>1</sup> the Indians? 3. Try,<sup>2</sup> soldiers, by running and fighting to make a way by which to take<sup>3</sup> the horses to the fort. 4. The man says that the kings of these cities<sup>4</sup> are already<sup>5</sup> in the tent, and that<sup>6</sup> nobody is going to talk with them. 5. They are trying to persuade the general not to wait for larger forces, and they never will persuade him.

26. 1. Three times, by his<sup>7</sup> kindness, Cicero has very easily persuaded one of the men to talk. 2. Follow quickly, Marcus, and, with me for leader, try to scale<sup>8</sup> this mountain. 3. While the settlers were swimming to the other bank, *we* could in no way reach the hill, and did not see the Indians advancing. 4. Since the consul had

escaped a few days later, not even his<sup>9</sup> wife thought that the enemy should be attacked.<sup>10</sup> 5. Upon<sup>11</sup> that fort many assaults were made very fiercely by the enemy.

### 27. *Hannibal*

A great<sup>12</sup> general, named Hamilcar, had a small son who was called Hannibal. For a few years Hannibal lived in Africa; but his<sup>9</sup> father was always waging war,<sup>13</sup> and the boy could not see<sup>14</sup> him often. One time,<sup>15</sup> when Hamilcar was about to cross over to<sup>16</sup> Spain, Hannibal wanted to sail with him.<sup>17</sup> This<sup>18</sup> Hamilcar allowed, but he made<sup>19</sup> his<sup>9</sup> son promise that he<sup>20</sup> never would love the Romans; for he feared<sup>21</sup> that nation, and thought<sup>22</sup> that it would at some time<sup>23</sup> again send armies into Africa to attack<sup>23</sup> Carthage.

1. Review, at this point, the participles of deponent verbs. (In this connection it may prove helpful to write a complete synopsis of the deponent verb, as thus far studied.)

2. Note that this calls for a deponent verb.

3. Turn into the passive; and, here and elsewhere, bear in mind the fact that the Latin infinitive is not to be used to express *purpose*.

4. For the spelling, see the statement on p. 201.

5. *iam*.

6. Note that this and the preceding clause are coördinate.

7. *suus*, -a, -um.

8. See the Vocabulary of Exercise VII.

9. Omit.

10. In indirect discourse the gerundive is frequently written without *esse*.

11. *in* (with acc.).

12. *summus*.

13. Use the pl.

14. *Lit.*, *meet*.

15. *i.e.* *once*.

16. Cf. footnote 23 on Exercise VIII.

17. *with him*: *unā* (adv.).

18. Cf. footnote 29 on Exercise IX.

19. *i.e.* *compelled*.

20. Namely, Hannibal.

21. Imperfect tense.

22. *at some time*: *aliquandō* (adv.).

23. In translating this phrase, bear in mind the first statement in footnote 1 on Exercise V.

## EXERCISE XI

(28-30)

## DATIVE OF AGENCY—THE GERUNDIVE IN PURPOSE CLAUSES

## MODEL SENTENCE

**Oppidāni mihi monendi sunt**, I must warn the townspeople (*lit.* the townspeople must be warned by me).

**RULE.** *With the gerundive and a form of the verb sum, Agency is expressed by the dative case.*

**NOTE.** When this construction occurs in indirect discourse, and the agent is the same as the third person subject of a governing verb of saying, thinking, etc., the reflexive pronoun must be used, *e.g.* **Nauta putat oppidānōs sibi monendōs esse**, "The sailor thinks that he ought to warn the townspeople."

**REMARK.** From this point on, special care must be taken to keep clear and distinct the three following constructions: (1) the ablative of Means, (2) the dative of Agency, and (3) the regular Agency construction (namely, the ablative with **ā, ab**).

## MODEL SENTENCE

**Per silvam ad castra adorienda veniēbant**, They were coming through the woods to attack the camp.

**RULE.** *Purpose may be expressed by a phrase made up of ad and the accusative, with a gerundive modifier.*

**NOTE.** This method of expressing purpose is suited to sentences in which the verb of the governing clause expresses *motion* (*cf.* the model sentence).

REMARK 1. Observe carefully that, in this construction, the gerundive is still an *adjective*. Thus, in the model sentence, *ad* governs *castra*, which, in turn, is modified by *adoriēda*.

REMARK 2. Note, too, that when used in a prepositional phrase expressing purpose, the gerundive so far lacks its customary force of "should," "ought," etc., that such a rendering would make very poor sense.

REMARK 3. Verbs of the class described in Exercise IX (*e.g.* *persuādeō*) are almost wholly defective in the gerundive, and cannot be used in purpose clauses of the above type.

#### VOCABULARY

*bis*, adv., *twice*.                      *nātus*, -a, -um, partic., *lit.*,  
*idōneus*, -a, -um, *suitable*;        *having been born*.  
     may be construed with    *tōtus*, -a, -um, *entire, whole*.  
     the dative case.

NOTE 1. Most of the uses of the dative thus far illustrated call for the rendering "to"; but "for" is a translation frequently required by the dative with *idōneus*.

NOTE 2. With an accusative of Extent of Time, the participle *nātus* states a person's age: *e.g.* *mulier viginti annōs nāta*, "A woman twenty years old," or "twenty years of age."

NOTE 3. Remember that *tōtus* belongs to a group of adjectives peculiar in the genitive and dative singular; consult, if necessary, the Note on p. 352.

#### TRANSLATION

28. 1. Three times a place suitable for a bridge has been found by the inhabitants of the cities;<sup>1</sup> but to-day their leaders must again interview<sup>2</sup> Caesar. 2. The men said that sailors had twice been sent to the bridges<sup>3</sup> to wait for<sup>4</sup> the commander. 3. I have refused to talk with

the brother of that man, and the leaders of the entire nation will not be able to persuade me.<sup>5</sup> 4. Since they are unwilling to send from the ship these men,<sup>6</sup> who have better arms, let *us* ourselves<sup>7</sup> advance with greater speed, and announce to the general that the worse leaders need to be guarded still<sup>8</sup> longer by the townspeople.

29. 1. One of the sailors promised that he would go to the shore to look for<sup>9</sup> a suitable skiff. 2. While this<sup>10</sup> was being done, the soldiers, with us for leaders, advanced to the hill to announce that all the enemy had escaped by swimming.<sup>11</sup> 3. Although the whole city must be guarded by the soldiers, still we have<sup>4</sup> food and water, and no one fears the armies of the enemy. 4. A few months before, because not even then were there forces to follow the skiffs, the general had been unwilling to advance into the great forest.

### 30. *A Popular Commander*

"I see a soldier coming," said Marcus. "Don't run to hide in the garden, Quintus; I hope that he will tell us a story." Then to the soldier: "Who are you, pray?<sup>12</sup> Have you fought in many battles?<sup>13</sup> Tell us a story, please."<sup>14</sup> "When I was eighteen years old," said the soldier, "I ran away from this town to the army; for I loved<sup>15</sup> the general. Even<sup>8</sup> in winter he<sup>16</sup> would<sup>17</sup> lie on the ground at night, and he never ordered his men<sup>18</sup> to do<sup>19</sup> what<sup>20</sup> he was unwilling to do himself.<sup>21</sup> One night<sup>22</sup> the fire caught<sup>23</sup> his cloak;<sup>24</sup> but we<sup>25</sup> could never persuade him to lie in a tent."

1. Be careful of the spelling.

2. *Lit., meet.*

3. Cf. Remark 1 on p. 201.

4. Translate in two ways.

5. *persuade me: lit., persuade me to talk.* Be careful to render the English infinitive correctly (consult, if necessary, the



List of Verb Constructions, p. 382.)

6. Cf. footnote 9 on Exercise I.
7. What kind of pronoun is this? Do not confuse it with the *third person reflexive* (Latin *suī*).
8. *etiam* (adv.).
9. *petō*. Translate the phrase in two ways.
10. Neut. pl. of *hic*.
11. Name the part of the verb for which this calls.
12. *Lit.*, *I beg* (*obsecrō*, 1).
13. See the Vocabulary of Exercise IX. Put this phrase first in the sentence, allowing the word for "many" to precede the preposition.
14. See the Vocabulary of Exercise VII.
15. Imperfect tense.
16. *ille*: cf. footnote 18 on Exercise III.
17. Translate by the choice of tense.
18. *his men*: *suī, -ōrum*, M. Cf. the similar use of *nostrī* (and see also footnote 9 on Exercise I).
19. *to do*: omit.
20. *what*: *i.e. that which* (*id quod*).
21. Intensive pronoun.
22. *one night*: *lit., once, at night*.
23. *comprehendō*, 3, *-prehendī, -prehēnsus*.
24. *sagum, -ī*, N.
25. The pronoun may be expressed, if *autem* is the conjunction chosen.

## EXERCISE XII

(31-33)

## ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

## MODEL SENTENCE

**Hostēs celeritātē nostrōs vincēbant,** The enemy excelled our men in speed (*lit.* in respect to speed).

**RULE.** *That in respect to which anything is or is done may be indicated by a noun in the ablative case.*

## VOCABULARY

<b>aciēs, -ēī, F., battle line, line.</b>	<b>parcō, 3, peperci</b> (future partic. <b>parsūrus</b> ), <i>spare.</i>
<b>dōnec, conj., until.</b>	See the Rule in Exercise IX.
<b>dōnum, -ī, N., gift.</b>	
<b>exeō, -īre, -īi, -itum est, go out.</b>	<b>recipiō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptus, take back.</b>
<b>inferior, -ior, -ius, inferior.</b>	<b>sē recipere, to withdraw, to fall back, to retire.</b>
<b>mille, indecl. adj., a thousand; pl. (noun) milia, -ium, N., thousand(s).</b>	<b>rideō, 2, risi, (risus), smile, laugh.</b>
<b>numerus, -ī, M., number, numbers.</b>	<b>superior, -ior, -ius, superior.</b>

**NOTE 1.** The plural **milia**, being a noun, is construed with the genitive; *e.g.* **sex milia nautarum**, "six thousand sailors" (*lit.* "six thousands of sailors"). Because the English idiom is so different, this construction needs to be noted with special care.

**NOTE 2.** In English we may say either "superior in *number*" or "superior in *numbers*"; but only the singular of **numerus** should be used in rendering such phrases into Latin.

**NOTE 3.** Fundamentally, **parcō** signifies something like "be merciful," hence its construction with the dative case.

NOTE 4. In the idiom *se recipere*, the pronoun varies, of course, with the person and number of the verb; e.g. *me recipio*, *te recipis*, *se recipit*, *nos recipimus*, etc.

## TRANSLATION

31. 1. We hope that you spared no part of the senate. 2. Though we are inferior in numbers, let us march with all<sup>1</sup> speed to give help<sup>2</sup> to the forces of the other<sup>3</sup> general. 3. Since the Indians are on the point of attacking the town, please<sup>4</sup> send a boy at once into the fields to tell<sup>5</sup> the farmers that the horses must be taken by them<sup>6</sup> to a distant place in<sup>7</sup> the woods. 4. A girl nine years of age named<sup>8</sup> Claudia, unwilling<sup>9</sup> to be outdone<sup>10</sup> in bravery by the men,<sup>11</sup> ran to the shore, and did not return home until she learned that all the skiffs were<sup>12</sup> safe. 5. Do not go<sup>13</sup> to look for horses.

32. 1. By larger gifts I think that we shall persuade the Indians not to<sup>14</sup> withdraw to those mountains which you see. 2. After burning the ships,<sup>15</sup> the enemy fled, although they were superior in number. 3. They appointed<sup>16</sup> him leader of the hunters, and on the third day sent two thousand soldiers to intimidate<sup>17</sup> the enemy. 4. We must burn the city, although yesterday one of the enemies' generals twice tried to persuade us to spare the women and the smaller children.

33. *Veterans Displeased*

"The same soldier is sitting by<sup>18</sup> the road to-day," said Quintus. "Let's go out; perhaps he will tell us another story." When the soldier<sup>19</sup> saw the boys coming, he smiled and said,<sup>20</sup> "How are you,<sup>21</sup> boys? I suppose that you want to hear a new story. Very well.<sup>22</sup> In our<sup>23</sup> army was a regiment of very brave men.<sup>24</sup> Once, when our forces<sup>25</sup> had fought fiercely for five hours, the general

ordered the whole line to fall back to the hills.<sup>26</sup> When this<sup>26</sup> was heard<sup>27</sup> by the soldiers of that regiment, they said to their<sup>28</sup> captain, 'We do not know how to fall back.'<sup>28</sup> We came to fight, not to<sup>29</sup> run away.' 'But,' said the captain sadly,<sup>30</sup> 'we are ordered<sup>31</sup> to retreat.'<sup>32</sup> And so those brave<sup>33</sup> men were forced to withdraw under protest<sup>34</sup> from the field of battle."<sup>35</sup>

1. *Lit., the greatest.*

2. Cf. footnote 5 on Exercise VIII.

3. Be careful to choose the right word.

4. Use the plural form (see the Vocabulary of Exercise VII), and do not place first in the clause.

5. *i.e. announce (to).*

6. Reflexive pronoun (*suī*).

7. *Lit., into.*

8. Translate in two ways.

9. Cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III.

10. *outdo: vincō.*

11. *homō or vir?*

12. Cf. footnote 14 on Exercise IX.

13. *i.e. set out.*

14. *not to:* introducing what kind of clause?

15. Use a (passive) participial phrase.

16. *i.e. made.*

17. *i.e. to frighten.* Translate this phrase in three ways.

18. Use in (and abl.).

19. Cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III.

20. Be careful to place the verb of "saying" properly.

21. *How are you (pl.)? Quid agitis?*

22. *Very well: licet (lit. "it is permitted").*

23. Omit.

24. *Lit., our (men).*

25. Cf. Remark 1 on p. 201.

26. Cf. footnote 25 on Exercise VIII.

27. Be careful to choose the right tense.

28. *how to fall back: lit., to fall back; an idiomatic use of the infinitive.*

29. *not to: i.e. (we did) not (come) to,* etc. Do not translate the words in parentheses, but render the remainder just as would be done if the whole were expressed.

30. Use an adj.

31. *we are ordered:* present tense.

32. *cēdō, 3, cessī, cessum est.*

33. Place this second modifier after the noun.

34. *under protest: invitus, -a, -um.*

35. *field of battle: lit., battle.*

## EXERCISE XIII

(34-36)

## REVIEW OF EXERCISES VI TO XII

## VOCABULARY

<b>Americānus</b> , -a, -um, <i>American</i> .	<b>Iacsō</b> , -ōnis, m., <i>Jackson</i> .
<i>can.</i> As noun, <b>Americānī</b> , -ōrum, m., <i>the Americans</i> .	<b>Lovisiāna</b> , -ae, f., <i>Louisiana</i> .
<b>Britannī</b> , -ōrum, m., <i>the British, the English</i> .	<b>quaerō</b> , 3, <b>quaesivī</b> , <b>quaesitus</b> , <i>look for, seek, find</i> .
<b>circiter</b> , adv., with numerals, <i>about</i> .	<b>superō</b> , 1, <i>surpass, excel, overcome, conquer</i> .
<b>classis</b> , -is (abl. -e), f., <i>fleet</i> .	<b>vāllum</b> , -ī, n., <i>rampart</i> .
	<b>vulnerō</b> , 1, <i>wound</i> .

## TRANSLATION

34. 1. The Indians think that they can surpass us in running; but we<sup>1</sup> are sending settlers in every direction<sup>2</sup> to find men<sup>3</sup> to beat them.<sup>4</sup> 2. Since you have to bring<sup>5</sup> gifts to that town and nobody<sup>6</sup> wants them, we are going to look for some<sup>7</sup> Indians to whom they may be given. 3. Although with the greatest kindness the generals of those armies spared entire cities, still I do not think that the commanders<sup>8</sup> of the fleets will withdraw to the other bank of the river. 4. With a king for guide, the whole army was ordered to advance to the hills, so that the soldiers of all the nations might there be arranged<sup>9</sup> in battle line.

35. 1. With a huge ax, a boy ten years of age killed a bear which had come from the woods to look for sheep.<sup>10</sup> 2. The sailors laugh, although the soldiers surpass them<sup>11</sup> in swimming. 3. When Caesar<sup>12</sup> found<sup>13</sup> that the enemy were inferior in number, he was willing to spare all their forces. 4. You<sup>14</sup> will not need to fear the Indians, and no one will attempt to frighten you. 5. Not even Cicero

surpassed me in kindness, until our<sup>15</sup> best general was wounded.

### 36. *The Battle of New Orleans*

Once an American general named Jackson had taken an army into Louisiana to wage war there with the British. Suddenly it was announced<sup>16</sup> to him that a fleet of the enemy had come, and that soldiers were disembarking.<sup>17</sup> Hearing this,<sup>18</sup> Jackson at once built<sup>19</sup> a long rampart, as<sup>20</sup> the enemy's forces were superior in number. Though the British<sup>21</sup> charged<sup>21</sup> three or four times<sup>22</sup> with heroic<sup>23</sup> bravery against<sup>24</sup> this rampart, they were finally<sup>25</sup> forced to withdraw baffled<sup>26</sup> to their<sup>7</sup> camp. In<sup>27</sup> the battle they had lost about three thousand<sup>28</sup> soldiers; but of<sup>29</sup> the Americans only<sup>30</sup> eight were killed<sup>31</sup> and thirteen wounded.

1. Express the subject, if *autem* is the conjunction chosen.

2. *in every direction: lit., into all parts.*

3. Pl. of *is*.

4. *ille*.

5. *have to bring: gerundive of ferō.*

6. *and nobody: see Exercise X.*

7. Omit.

8. *praefectus, -i, M.*

9. *collocō.*

10. *ovia, -is, F.*

11. *ipse.*

12. Cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III.

13. *i.e. learned.*

14. Singular.

15. Place the possessive adj., as usual, after the noun.

16. Impersonal expressions are neuter.

17. *ē nāvibus ēgredior (3, -gressus sum).*

18. Cf. footnote 25 on Exercise VIII. Make the phrase passive.

19. *exstruō, 3, -struxī, -strūctus.*

20. *as: i.e. since.*

21. *Lit., made an attack.*

22. *or four times: quaterve (i.e. quater + ve).*

23. *Lit., the greatest.*

24. *in.*

25. *i.e. at last.*

26. *baffled: rē infectā (lit., the thing unaccomplished).*

27. Express the preposition.

28. Cf. Note 1 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XII.

29. *ex.*

30. *tantum (adv.).* Place after the numeral.

31. Express *sunt* at the end of the sentence only.

## EXERCISE XIV

(37-39)

## THE DATIVE OF INTEREST

## MODEL SENTENCES

**Rēs mihi bene ēveniet,** The matter will turn out well for me.

**Tibi omnia bona sunt,** For you everything is good.

**RULE.** *The person whose interest is concerned may be indicated by a noun or pronoun in the dative case.*

**REMARK.** Observe that, while the dative of the indirect object is fundamentally the "to" dative, the dative of interest is a "for" dative (cf. the force of the case with *idōneus*).

## VOCABULARY

<b>audācia, -ae, F.,</b> boldness, <i>daring.</i>	<b>male, peius, pessimē, adv.,</b> <i>badly, worse, worst.</i>
<b>bene, melius, optimē, adv.,</b> <i>well, better, best.</i>	<b>multō, adv.,</b> <i>much</i> ; used mostly with comparatives.
<b>clam, adv.,</b> <i>quietly, unob-</i> <i>served.</i>	<b>opprimō, 3, -pressi, -pressus,</b> <i>crush.</i>
<b>diligentia, -ae, F.,</b> <i>care, dili-</i> <i>gence.</i>	<b>Poenī, -ōrum, M.,</b> <i>the Cartha-</i> <i>ginians.</i>
<b>ēveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum est,</b> <i>turn out.</i>	<b>videor, 2, visus sum,</b> <i>seem,</i> <i>appear</i> ; may be construed with indirect discourse.
<b>Fabius, -bi, M.,</b> <i>Fabius.</i>	
<b>lūmen, -inis, N.,</b> <i>light, torch.</i>	

**NOTE 1.** On the declension of **Fabius**, see Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VI.

NOTE 2. When used with a comparative, *multo* normally precedes; e.g. *multo maior*, *multo melior*, etc.

NOTE 3. Because of the meaning of *videor*, the indirect discourse dependent upon it cannot have a subject accusative, and a predicate noun, adjective, or participle in this indirect discourse therefore stands in the same case as the subject of *videor* itself; e.g. *Dux esse videtur*, "He seems to be the leader;" *Romani victi esse videntur*, "The Romans appear to have been beaten;" etc.

## TRANSLATION

37. 1. Although the enemy are much superior in ships, still we have<sup>1</sup> about ten thousand brave soldiers, and war has never turned out badly for our commonwealth.<sup>2</sup> 2. The Indians seem to come to burn farmhouses, and<sup>3</sup> not to<sup>4</sup> steal cattle. 3. Do you realize that the town was set on fire by a girl fourteen years of age? 4. You must guard this camp with greater care; for<sup>5</sup> the other general has a much higher rampart.

38. 1. I think that the battle will turn out well for the senate; for Pompey seems to have persuaded the sailors to break down<sup>6</sup> a part of the bridges. 2. After killing<sup>7</sup> the settlers in the fields, the Indians with the greatest boldness twice attacked that fort, believing<sup>8</sup> that, by burning<sup>9</sup> and killing,<sup>9</sup> they had intimidated the soldiers also. 3. Although a few days before their forces had been much smaller, they were then on the point of boarding the fleet and crossing the sea to crush the enemy.

39. *Hannibal's Stratagem*

When Hannibal<sup>10</sup> had crossed the mountains and advanced into Italy, he defeated the Romans in<sup>11</sup> many battles. On one occasion<sup>12</sup> a<sup>13</sup> general named<sup>1</sup> Fabius



met him on the march;<sup>14</sup> and since the Carthaginians were hemmed in<sup>15</sup> by mountains, the Romans thought that they would very easily crush the forces of the enemy on the following<sup>16</sup> day. But during the night<sup>17</sup> Hannibal let loose<sup>18</sup> into the fields some<sup>19</sup> cattle with torches fastened to their heads.<sup>20</sup> Seeing<sup>7</sup> the lights, the Romans were alarmed, and nobody dared to investigate.<sup>20</sup> Meanwhile Hannibal's army was quietly withdrawing to a location more<sup>21</sup> suitable for a camp.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Translate in two ways.   | 11. <i>Lit., by.</i>  |
| 2. <i>rēs (rei) pūblica, -ae, F.</i>  | 12. <i>on one occasion: i.e. once.</i>  |
| 3. Omit.  | 13. <i>quidam.</i>  |
| 4. <i>not to:</i> cf. footnote 29 on Exercise XII. Use <i>ad</i> here.  | 14. <i>on the march: in itinere.</i>  |
| 5. Do not put <i>autem, enim, or vērō</i> later than second in a sentence, even though it be necessary to divide a phrase in order to maintain this order of words. | 15. <i>hem in: claudō, 3, clausi, clausus.</i>  |
| 6. <i>frangō:</i> cf. footnote 1 on Exercise V.   | 16. <i>(posterus), -a, -um.</i>   |
| 7. Use a passive participial phrase.  | 17. <i>during the night: use an adverb.</i>   |
| 8. Cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III.   | 18. <i>ēmittō, 3, -misi, -missus.</i>   |
| 9. Name the part of the verb here called for.   | 19. <i>Lit., to (ad) the heads of which torches had been fastened (dēligō, 1). Remember that a relative stands first in its clause.</i> |
| 10. Cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III   | 20. <i>investigate: lit., seek the explanation (causa, -ae, F.) of the thing.</i>   |
|   | 21. <i>magis (adv.).</i>  |

## EXERCISE XV

(40-42)

LOCATIVE CASE—THE GERUNDIVE IN PURPOSE  
CLAUSES (*continued*)

**In** with the ablative is already familiar as the regular method of expressing Place Where. City names, however, do not follow this rule, but use, instead of **in** and the ablative, a special case form (Locative) which requires no preposition. City names that are singulars of the first or second declensions have regularly, in the locative, the same form as in the genitive singular.

## MODEL SENTENCE

**Saratōgae et Eborāci Novi erant exercitūs hostium**, Armies of the enemy were at (in) Saratoga and New York.

REMARK 1. But a noun in **-ium** makes its locative in **-iī**. Thus **Londīnium** has the genitive **Londinī**, but locative **Londinīī**.

REMARK 2. For all other city names than singulars of the first and second declensions, the locative is regularly identical in form with the *ablative* case; e.g. **Athēnis**, "at Athens" (**Athēnae**, **-ārum**, F.), **Carthāgine**, "at Carthage" (**Carthāgō**, **-inis**, F.).

Besides city names, three common nouns also form locatives; namely, **domī**, "at home," **humī**, "on the ground," and **rūrī**, "in the country."

RULE. *The names of cities, and the common nouns domus, humus, and rūs designate Place Where by means of the Locative case.*

## MODEL SENTENCE

**Ibi morantur castellōrum adoriendōrum causā**, They are waiting there to attack the forts, *lit.* with (*i.e.* for) the purpose of attacking the forts.

**RULE.** *Purpose may be expressed by the ablative causā, PRECEDED by a genitive phrase made up of a noun with gerundive modifier.*

**REMARK 1.** Do not fail to note that *causā* must stand *last* in the purpose clause.

**REMARK 2.** Verbs of the class described in Exercise IX (e.g. *persuādeō*) are almost wholly defective in the gerundive, and cannot be used in purpose clauses of this type.

**REMARK 3.** For the expression of purpose by means of gerundive phrases, *ad* with the accusative and *causā* with the genitive are practically equivalent forms. But while *ad* with the accusative attaches itself most naturally to verbs of motion (cf. Exercise XI), the rule for the use of *causā* with the genitive is without any such limitation.

#### VOCABULARY

<b>audāx</b> , <i>audācis</i> , <i>bold</i> ; (com-	<b>mūnitio</b> , -ōnis, <i>F., fortification.</i>
par. <i>audācior</i> ; superl.	<b>speculor</b> , <i>I, spy upon, view.</i>
<b>audācissimus</b> ).	<b>rūs</b> , <i>rūris</i> , <i>N., country</i> (in distinction from "city").
<b>causa</b> , -ae, <i>F., purpose.</i>	
<b>Londinium</b> , -nī, <i>N., London.</i>	<b>Rōma</b> , -ae, <i>F., Rome.</i>

**NOTE 1.** *Audāx* belongs to the class known as "adjectives of one termination," i.e. it is a third declension adjective with the same form for all genders in the nominative singular. See the Summary of Forms, p. 350.

**NOTE 2.** Though *rūs* is not an I-Stem, it has, along with *rūre*, the form *rūri*. And as this latter is seldom found except in the sense "in the country," to it is assigned the name "locative," as already indicated above. *Rūre*, on the other hand, is restricted closely to the conventional ablative uses.

## TRANSLATION

40. 1. In the summer *we* live in the country, but<sup>1</sup> our grandfather prefers to remain the whole year in London. 2. I hope that the war will turn out well for the entire nation. 3. Meanwhile the inhabitants of all parts of the mountain were going to the shore to look for<sup>2</sup> skiffs. 4. While<sup>3</sup> our soldiers<sup>4</sup> were lying on the ground in the woods, the general of the enemy led his<sup>5</sup> forces very quickly through the valley, hoping<sup>6</sup> that, by hurrying, he would be able<sup>7</sup> to cross all the hills<sup>8</sup> unobserved. 5. Since the king's fleet excelled in swiftness, our general had to<sup>9</sup> take that town at once; and so we spared neither<sup>10</sup> ourselves<sup>11</sup> nor<sup>12</sup> our<sup>5</sup> brave horses, until we came to the bridge.

41. 1. Why do you always prefer<sup>13</sup> to remain at Rome and not to go to the shore to see the ships? 2. Let us hurry to the hill; for<sup>1</sup> I can<sup>5</sup> see the two lines,<sup>14</sup> and the enemy seem to surpass our men in valor. 3. With a dog for guide, the boldest hunters ventured to go<sup>15</sup> farther into the forest to hunt for bears; but Marcus says that matters<sup>16</sup> turned out badly for them,<sup>16</sup> and that one of the men<sup>17</sup> was killed by Indians. 4. The settlers now advanced with much greater boldness, thinking<sup>6</sup> that they saw<sup>18</sup> lights in the town. 5. Did you say that the hunters' skiffs had twice been filled with the waves?

42. *The Spy*

Once our commander persuaded one of his<sup>19</sup> captains to cross the river, to spy upon the fortifications of the Indians. Although the man<sup>20</sup> thought that the enemy would perhaps capture and condemn<sup>21</sup> him<sup>22</sup> to death,<sup>21</sup>

still he was very ready<sup>23</sup> to go.<sup>24</sup> By night he hid<sup>25</sup> in the woods, and in the daytime<sup>26</sup> he would climb the highest trees, to view the enemy's rampart; and when at last he had found out<sup>27</sup> the things which<sup>28</sup> the commander wished to learn, he again crossed the river, and returned safely<sup>29</sup> to the army.

1. Cf. footnote 5 on Exercise XIV.

2. Translate in three ways.

3. Do not forget to use *dum*, as occasion offers.

4. *Lit., our (men).*

5. Omit.

6. Cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III.

7. The present infinitive of *possum* is frequently made to do duty for the lacking future infinitive.

8. Cf. Remark I on p. 201.

9. Gerundive.

10. *neither . . . nor : nec . . . neque (nec).*

11. *nōs ipsī.*

12. Reserve the verb of "preferring" for the last place in the sentence.

13. *i.e. battle lines* (Vocabulary of Exercise XII).

14. *Lit., to advance.*

15. *Lit., the thing.*

16. *ille.*

17. *Pl. of is.*

18. Be careful to choose the right tense.

19. *suus, -a, -um.*

20. *ille* (and cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III).

21. *condemn . . . to death : capitis damnō, i.*

22. Reflexive pronoun (*suī*).

23. Use a form of *libenter*.

24. *Lit., to set out.*

25. Before choosing the tense, note the wording of the following clause.

26. *in the daytime : interdiū (adv.).*

27. *inveniō.*

28. *the things which : ea . . . quae (neut.).*

29. See the Vocabulary of Exercise II.

## EXERCISE XVI

(43-45)

## ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

## MODEL SENTENCE

**Timōre nautārum nāvēs omnēs frāctae sunt,** Because of the panic of the sailors, all the ships were wrecked.

**RULE.** *Cause may be expressed by a noun in the ablative case.*

## VOCABULARY

**abhinc**, adv., *ago*.

**adventus**, -ūs, m., *approach, arrival*.

**aeger**, -gra, -grum, *ill, sick*.

**Antōnius**, -nī, m., *Antonius*.

**Catīlina**, -ae, m., *Catiline*.

**Cornivallis**, -is (abl. -e), m., *Cornwallis*.

**fit ut**, with subjunctive, *it happens that*.

**hortor**, ī, *urge*; governs the acc., often along with an *ut* or *nē*-clause of purpose.

**nūntius**, -ī, m., *messenger*.

**Petrēius**, -ēī, m., *Petreius*.

**simulō**, ī, *pretend*; may be construed with indirect discourse.

**timor**, -ōris, m., *fear, panic*.

**undique**, adv., *from every side, from all sides (quarters); on every hand (side)*.

**Vasingtō**, -ōnis, m., *Washington*.

**NOTE 1.** **Abhinc**, "ago," unlike **ante**, "before," regularly stands *first* in its phrase. Moreover, it differs from **ante** in two other particulars: first, that it is associated with an accusative of Extent of Time (*not* an ablative of Degree of Difference); and, second, that it reckons backward from *present* time (whereas **ante** reckons backward from a point in the *past*). Thus, **abhinc multōs**

**annōs**, "many years ago," but **tribus ante diēbus**, "three days earlier."

NOTE 2. For the declension of **Antōnius** and **Petrēius**, see again Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VI.

NOTE 3. The phrase **fit ut** may, of course, exhibit any tense (or mood); e.g. **fiet ut**, **factum est ut**, etc.

#### TRANSLATION

43. 1. Because of his<sup>1</sup> kindness Cicero was loved by all the best<sup>2</sup> Romans. 2. I must crush the enemy at once; then we shall have continued<sup>3</sup> peace. 3. Our general is at New York for the purpose of meeting his<sup>4</sup> captains. He will urge them to be bolder in spirit,<sup>5</sup> and they<sup>4</sup> never will desert<sup>6</sup> him. 4. It thus happened that matters<sup>7</sup> twice turned out well for the other<sup>8</sup> general on the sea;<sup>9</sup> and I think that he will soon send messengers to summon<sup>10</sup> the soldiers who are now living in the country.

44. 1. Ten days ago a girl about six years old hurried into our camp to notify<sup>11</sup> the commander of<sup>12</sup> the approach of the women. 2. The women and children are terrified because of the boldness of the enemy, and there is no one at Rome to allay<sup>13</sup> their<sup>14</sup> fear. 3. It will soon happen that horses will be brought from every side into that Indian's camp, so that the enemy may not<sup>15</sup> steal them. 4. A few months later our leader began to establish<sup>16</sup> more camps; for the enemy then seemed to be on the point of<sup>17</sup> sending larger armies by ship<sup>18</sup> from Spain.

#### 45. *Convenient Illness*

When Cornwallis<sup>19</sup> was forced to surrender<sup>20</sup> himself and his all<sup>21</sup> to Washington, he was not ill; but by pre-

tending it,<sup>4</sup> he was able to remain in his<sup>4</sup> tent, and did not himself<sup>22</sup> meet the generals by whom his army had been beaten. And many years before, the consul Antonius, sent from the city to crush Catiline, and<sup>4</sup> not wishing<sup>23</sup> to be seen<sup>24</sup> fighting<sup>25</sup> against<sup>26</sup> a man<sup>27</sup> who had formerly been his friend,<sup>28</sup> on the day of battle gave it out<sup>29</sup> that he was lame,<sup>30</sup> and allowed his<sup>4</sup> lieutenant<sup>31</sup> Petreius to lead the line against<sup>32</sup> the enemy, who, upon a small hill, had found a place suitable for a camp.

1. *suus*, -a, -um.
2. Place this second modifier after the noun.
3. *diutinus*, -a, -um.
4. Omit.
5. *animus*, -i, m. Use the singular.
6. *i.e. leave*.
7. Sing. of *rēs*.
8. Be careful to choose the right word.
9. *on the sea*: place early in the clause, and be careful of the spelling.
10. *ēvocō*, 1. Translate the phrase in three ways.
11. *monēō*.
12. *i.e. about*.
13. *levō*, 1.
14. Masc.
15. *so that . . . not*: introducing what kind of clause?
16. *cōstitutō*, 3, -stitui, -stitutus.
17. See Exercise II.
18. Use the pl.
19. Cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III.
20. See the Vocabulary of Exercise VIII.
21. *himself and his all*: *sē suaque omnia*.
22. Intensive pronoun.
23. Use *nōlō* (and cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III).
24. *to be seen*: *lit., himself (sē) to be seen (cōspiciō, 3, -spēxī, -spectus)*.
25. Be careful to handle correctly predicate nouns, adjectives, and participles.
26. *cum*.
27. *a man*: *is*.
28. *his friend*: *lit., friendly (amicus, -a, -um) to him (ipse)*.
29. *i.e. pretended*.
30. *Lit., ill with respect to the feet (pēs, pedis, m., "foot")*; for construction, see Exercise XII.
31. *lōgātus*.
32. *in*.



## EXERCISE XVII

(46-48)

## THE CONDITIONAL SENTENCE

Conditional sentences of the commonest type state the conditions under which something *is, was, or will be* true. Such conditional sentences are known as Simple.

## MODEL SENTENCES

**Si nūntius pervēnit, militem statim vocābō,** If the messenger has come, I will call the soldier at once.

**Si Caesar in castris est, impetūs hostium vōbis nōn timendī sunt,** If Caesar is in the camp, you need not fear the assaults of the enemy.

**RULE.** *Simple Conditional Sentences, both in the condition and the conclusion, use any tense of the indicative required by the sense.*

Different from the above are those conditional sentences which tell what *would be* true, if something *should* take place. This type of conditional sentence is known as Vague Future.

## MODEL SENTENCE

**Si hostēs flūmen trānseant, Caesar statim sē recipiat,** If the enemy *should* cross the river, Caesar *would* at once fall back.

**RULE.** *Vague Future Conditional Sentences have the present (or perfect) subjunctive in the condition, and the present subjunctive in the conclusion.*

**REMARK 1.** Though the difference between the above types of conditional sentence is very marked and obvious, it is of the utmost importance, here, at the outset, to fix that difference firmly in the mind. Otherwise, mistakes will insidiously creep in.

REMARK 2. Since "would" and "should" are put to so many different uses in English, it may, perhaps, require a little care to keep clear and distinct (1) the "would" and "should" of vague future conditional sentences; (2) the "would" which is merely a mark of customary past action; and (3) the "should" which calls for the Latin gerundive.

## VOCABULARY

<b>glōrior</b> , I, <i>boast</i> ; may be construed with indirect discourse.	forms in parentheses), <i>any one, anybody, some one, somebody; anything, something.</i> See the Summary of Forms, p. 358.
<b>hūc</b> , adv., <i>hither, here</i> .	
<b>quī</b> ( <b>quis</b> ), <b>qua</b> , <b>quod</b> ( <b>quid</b> ), indefinite pronoun: adj., <i>any, some</i> ; noun (the	<b>sī</b> , conj., <i>if</i> .

NOTE. **Hūc** is used with verbs of motion only. But it is frequently the required translation for English "here," since this latter word is so often used loosely for "hither" (*e.g.* "Come here!").

In memorizing the forms of indefinite **quī**, note that its declension is just like that of interrogative **quī**, excepting for the form **qua** (fem. sing. and neut. pl.). Indefinite **quī** is used chiefly in combination with the conjunctions **sī**, **nē**, **nisi** ("unless"), and **num** ("whether"), being there a regular substitute for the corresponding forms of **aliquī**; *e.g.*:

<b>sī</b>	<b>quis</b> , if any one, if some one.
	<b>quid</b> , if anything, if something.
	<b>qua nāvis</b> , if any ship, if some ship.
<b>nē</b>	<b>quis</b> , so that no one ( <i>lit.</i> lest any one).
	<b>quid</b> , so that nothing ( <i>lit.</i> lest anything).
	<b>qua nāvis</b> , so that no ship ( <i>lit.</i> lest any ship).

NOTE 1. Study with special care the above examples with *nē*, observing how English negative purpose clauses may need to be recast in order to suggest the Latin form, introduced by the proper conjunction; e.g. "so that no one" = "lest any one" (*nē quis*), "so that nothing" = "lest anything" (*nē quid*), etc.

NOTE 2. When indefinite *quī* is used in combination with a conjunction, it should be placed next after that conjunction, without intervening word or words; see again the examples.

#### TRANSLATION

46. 1. If I should seem to be ill, they would think that we had remained the whole day in London.<sup>1</sup> 2. Don't sit on the ground, children; we did not come here to gather<sup>2</sup> flowers. 3. Because of the heat<sup>3</sup> the stream is dry;<sup>4</sup> and the natives are burning the crops,<sup>5</sup> so that no one may find food. 4. If anything turns out<sup>6</sup> well for us, not even the Romans will excel our men in boldness.

47. 1. If the general has been killed, you must send a messenger at once to urge Caesar not to appoint<sup>7</sup> Curio leader. 2. If the enemy should pretend to<sup>8</sup> be on the point of burning the city, we should still try to persuade our general to remain in camp, and should not venture to go out ourselves.<sup>9</sup> 3. At the time of Caesar's arrival,<sup>10</sup> it happened<sup>11</sup> that the boldest hunters were advancing<sup>12</sup> very bravely through the woods to attack the smallest of the fortifications.<sup>13</sup> 4. Spy upon<sup>14</sup> the larger camp with the greatest care; for when the assault is made,<sup>15</sup> the two lines will come together<sup>16</sup> near that rampart.

#### 48. *A Youthful Warrior*

"The boys are always boasting about the stories they<sup>17</sup> hear," said Marcella to the girls. "If anybody comes<sup>18</sup> from town to-day, perhaps *we* shall hear something to boast about."<sup>19</sup> "I see my grandmother coming," re-

marked Julia. Then to her<sup>20</sup> grandmother: "Tell us a story, please." "Once," said her grandmother, "when a<sup>21</sup> battle line was advancing to make an assault upon<sup>22</sup> the enemy, suddenly one of the soldiers spied<sup>23</sup> a little baby<sup>24</sup> lying on the ground; and, although bullets<sup>25</sup> were flying<sup>26</sup> in every direction,<sup>27</sup> the line halted,<sup>28</sup> and the captain ordered the man<sup>29</sup> to carry the boy to his own<sup>30</sup> tent. Four days later, when the distracted<sup>31</sup> mother came across<sup>32</sup> the fields looking for her<sup>20</sup> baby, the boy was found safe<sup>33</sup> among the soldiers."

1. See Remark 1 on p. 247.

2. *carpō*, 3, *carpsī*, *carptus*.  
What part of speech is the gerundive?

3. *aestus*, -ūs, M. Use the pl., and do not confuse the ablative of cause with the purpose construction involving *causā*.

4. *āridus*, -a, -um.

5. Pl. of *frumentum*.

6. *turns out*: *i.e.* shall turn out. English is often far from precise in the wording of conditions.

7. *i.e.* make.

8. What construction with the verb of "pretending"?

9. Cf. footnote 7 on Exercise XI.

10. This whole phrase may be translated by an abl. of Time When (two words only).

11. *Lit.*, *it happened by chance* (*by chance*: *forte*, adv.).

12. What mood is required?

13. *Lit.*, *the smallest fortification*.

14. Note the deponent verb.

15. Indicative mood. For the tense, cf. footnote 6 above.

16. *come together*: use the idiom *inter sē* (acc.) *concurrere* (*concurrō*, 3, -*curri*, -*cursum est*).

17. Cf. footnote 25 on Exercise II.

18. Cf. footnote 6 above.

19. *Lit.*, *things* (ea, neut.) about which to boast: cf. the second group of Model Sentences in Exercise I.

20. Omit.

21. *quidam*.

22. in (with what case?).

23. *i.e.* saw.

24. *baby*: *infāns*, -*fantis*, M.

25. *tēlum*.

26. Passive of *mittō*.

27. *i.e.* on all sides.

28. *cōsistō*, 3, -*stiti*, -*stitum est*.

29. Use *miles*.

30. *his own*: gen. of *ipse*. Place next after the preposition.

31. *Lit.*, *thoroughly frightened*.

32. *per*.

33. Cf. Note 3 on p. 204.

## EXERCISE XVIII

(49-51)

## THE CONSTRUCTION WITH VERBS OF FEARING

Clauses dependent upon verbs of fearing look, at first sight, very much like purpose clauses; but they differ from them in important particulars. In the following models, note especially the force of *ut* and *nē*.

## MODEL SENTENCES

**Timēmus ut videant,** We are afraid that they **ARE** NOT looking.

**Timēbam nē quis veniret,** I was afraid that some one **WAS** coming.

**RULE.** *Verbs of Fearing are construed with subjunctive clauses introduced by nē ("that") and ut ("that not").*

All tenses of the subjunctive are found in clauses dependent upon verbs of fearing, the choice being determined by the Law of Sequence as laid down in Exercise VI. Used in this construction, the present and imperfect subjunctive may refer either to action *contemporaneous* with that of the governing verb, or to action *future* from the point of view of that verb; *e.g.*:

<b>Timeō nē glōriētur</b>	{	I am afraid that he <i>is</i> boasting.
		I am afraid that he <i>will</i> boast.
<b>Timēbam nē glōriārētur</b>	{	I was afraid that he <i>was</i> boasting.
		I was afraid that he <i>would</i> boast.

**NOTE.** Observe that, in the phrases where the present and imperfect subjunctive designate action *contemporaneous* with that of the governing verb, the force of these tenses is the same as in causal *cum*-clauses; but when they refer to action that is *future* from the point of view of the governing verb, the tense force is like that seen in purpose clauses (cf. Note 1 on p. 220).

## VOCABULARY

<b>certus, -a, -um, <i>certain</i>.</b> (aliquem) <b>certiorem facere, to inform</b> (a person); may be construed with indirect discourse.	<b>cōstituō, 3, -stitui, -stitutus, decide, determine;</b> may be construed with the complementary infinitive.
<b>cohors, -rtis, F., <i>company</i></b> (of soldiers).	<b>Faber, -bri, M., <i>Carpenter</i>.</b>

NOTE 1. For the idiom (**aliquem**) **certiorem facere** (*lit.* "to make a person more certain"), cf. the double accusative construction of Exercise II. The comparative **certior**, of course, takes any form called for by the context, *e.g.* **imperātor militēs certiōrēs faciet**, "The commander will inform the soldiers," and the passive is formed in the regular way, *e.g.* **Caesar certior fit**, "Caesar is informed."

NOTE 2. On the declension of **cohors**, see the statement on p. 201.

## TRANSLATION

49. 1. Did you fear that the general's son had not been informed? 2. Because of the diligence of these companies, at New York everything<sup>1</sup> is safe, and we do not need to march to the coast ourselves to guard the ships.<sup>2</sup> 3. If you should persuade Caesar to spare the whole nation, we should fear that the other captains would blame<sup>3</sup> you. 4. At Rome they will guard the streets with the greatest diligence, so that nothing<sup>4</sup> be lost; but the fear<sup>5</sup> of the consuls and the senate is extreme.<sup>6</sup> 5. If any one meets<sup>7</sup> him on the road,<sup>8</sup> he will surely<sup>9</sup> be informed.

50. 1. In diligence we perhaps seem to be much inferior; but do not fear that matters will very long<sup>10</sup> turn out badly for us. 2. If, by boasting, you are able<sup>7</sup> to frighten the

enemy, inform<sup>11</sup> the general at once, and hurry hither<sup>12</sup> to meet the soldiers. 3. Since the captains<sup>13</sup> have been informed<sup>14</sup> about the attack of the Indians, and are afraid that the fleet has not arrived, they will at once destroy<sup>15</sup> the bridge with fire and fall back<sup>16</sup> to the hills.

### 51. *Ten to One*

Many years ago<sup>17</sup> a certain captain named Carpenter decided to try to take and burn a town into which the farmers from all sides<sup>18</sup> were bringing supplies<sup>19</sup> to aid the enemy. He had with him<sup>20</sup> only<sup>21</sup> about twenty men;<sup>21</sup> but they<sup>22</sup> marched boldly<sup>23</sup> a few miles through the woods, and suddenly attacked a company of the enemy, which was guarding the town. Carpenter had divided<sup>24</sup> his men,<sup>25</sup> and had ordered them<sup>26</sup> all to pretend that they were officers,<sup>27</sup> and to shout out<sup>28</sup> commands<sup>29</sup> as<sup>30</sup> they made the attack. The enemy of course<sup>31</sup> thought that many companies were pressing forward<sup>32</sup> through the woods, and fled at full speed.<sup>33</sup> After burning<sup>34</sup> the town, Carpenter<sup>35</sup> returned to camp with but two men wounded.<sup>36</sup>

1. Neut. pl. of *omnis*.

2. Cf. Remark 1 on p. 201.  
Translate the phrase in three ways.

3. *culpō*, 1.

4. See Note 1 on p. 256.

5. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XVI.

6. *summus*.

7. Cf. footnote 6 on Exercise XVII.

8. Cf. footnote 14 on Exercise XIV.

9. *sine dubiō* (*lit.* "without doubt").

10. *very long*: compar. of *diū*.

11. Do not forget the irregular imperative forms: *dic*, *dūc*, *fac*, and *fer*.

12. Place next after the word for "and."

13. Be careful of the order of words.

14. What verb determines the tense in this and the following coördinate clause?

15. *cōnsūmō*.

16. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XII.

17. See Note 1 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XVI.

## EXERCISE XIX

261

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 18. <i>commēatus</i> , -ūs, m. Use the singular.                             | 27. <i>lēgātus</i> . Cf. footnote 25 on Exercise XVI.                              |
| 19. <i>sēcum</i> .   | 28. <i>shout out</i> : <i>clārē</i> (adv.)   |
| 20. <i>tantum</i> (adv.). Place after the numeral.                           | <i>prōnūntiō</i> , i.  |
| 21. <i>miles</i> .   | 29. <i>mandātum</i> , -ī, n.   |
| 22. Cf. footnote 25 on Exercise VIII, using <i>autem</i> as the conjunction. | 30. <i>cum</i> .   |
|  | 31. <i>of course</i> : <i>scilicet</i> .   |
| 23. <i>audācter</i> .  | 32. <i>prōcurrō</i> , 3, - <i>cucurrī</i> or - <i>currī</i> , - <i>cursum</i> est. |
| 24. <i>dividō</i> , 3, - <i>visī</i> , - <i>visus</i> .                      | 33. <i>i.e. with the greatest speed</i> .  |
| 25. <i>his men</i> : <i>sui</i> , - <i>orum</i> , m.                         | 34. Use a <i>cum</i> -clause.  |
| 26. Omit.  | 35. <i>Lit., two (men) only (tantum) having been wounded</i> .                     |

## EXERCISE XIX

(52-54)

## GENITIVE OF QUALITY OR CHARACTERISTIC

## MODEL SENTENCE

**Caesar est summae virtutis vir**, Caesar is a man of the greatest courage.

**RULE.** *A noun in the genitive case, with a modifier, may be used to designate a quality or characteristic of a person or thing.*

**REMARK.** Observe that a genitive, to be used in this construction, must be accompanied by a modifier.

## VOCABULARY

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>animus</i> , -ī, m., <i>spirit, mind</i> .                           | <i>dolor</i> , -ōris, m., <i>pain, suffering</i> . |
| <i>Cāius</i> , -āī, m., <i>Gaius</i> , a boy's or man's name.           | <i>fortitūdō</i> , -inis, f., <i>fortitude</i> .   |
| <i>civis</i> , -is (abl. -e), c. (pl. m.), <i>citizen, countryman</i> . | <i>Marius</i> , -rī, m., <i>Marius</i> .           |
| <i>clāmō</i> , i, -āvi, -ātum est, <i>cry out, shout</i> .              | <i>medicus</i> , -ī, m., <i>doctor</i> .           |
|   | <i>sōlus</i> , -a, -um, <i>alone, only</i> .       |



NOTE 1. By exception, the letter *c* has the sound of *g* in the proper names *Caius* and *Cnaeus*. On the declension of *Caius*, cf. Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VI. In connection with a family name, a first name is usually abbreviated; e.g. *C. Caesar*, "Gaius Caesar," *M. Crassus*, "Marcus Crassus," etc.

NOTE 2. Remember that *solus* belongs to a group of adjectives peculiar in the genitive and dative singular (cf. the Note on p. 352).

#### TRANSLATION

52. 1. If you were afraid that this<sup>1</sup> was turning out well for me alone, why did you not send men<sup>2</sup> of greater boldness to help the others?<sup>3</sup> 2. If any one should find a sword with which to kill<sup>4</sup> the king's brother, we should be informed at once by the Indians. 3. Although Cicero<sup>5</sup> is himself<sup>6</sup> a man of the greatest kindness, still he used to fear that some one<sup>7</sup> would kill the consuls. 4. Three thousand<sup>8</sup> baskets were given to the Indians by the settlers, so that they would not steal the hunters' horses. 5. In London the fear of those days<sup>9</sup> still<sup>10</sup> makes<sup>11</sup> the citizens<sup>12</sup> uneasy.<sup>13</sup>

53. 1. Do you think that the general has sent more companies into the valley, or<sup>13</sup> are you afraid that he<sup>14</sup> has fallen back to the mountains? 2. Because of the arrival of Caesar's ships, the soldiers feared that the sailors had not escaped. 3. While<sup>15</sup> at Rome and in the country many people<sup>16</sup> were hoping that<sup>17</sup> our men would win, the enemy, who were much superior in numbers,<sup>18</sup> suddenly boarded their<sup>19</sup> fleet, and sailed to the island. 4. We fear that, by talking<sup>20</sup> and urging, the townspeople have very easily persuaded the general not to set out<sup>21</sup> with the Indian for guide.

#### 54. *Power of the Will*

The Romans thought that men<sup>2</sup> should bear pain bravely, and they were never willing to cry out, though

their sufferings were very severe<sup>22</sup> at times.<sup>23</sup> In those days<sup>24</sup> the doctors used to strap<sup>25</sup> a man<sup>2</sup> down,<sup>25</sup> if they were about to operate,<sup>26</sup> so that the patient<sup>27</sup> might not hinder<sup>28</sup> them.<sup>29</sup> But when Gaius Marius,<sup>5</sup> a general of great<sup>30</sup> fortitude, needed<sup>31</sup> to be operated upon,<sup>26</sup> he refused to be strapped down,<sup>25</sup> wishing<sup>32</sup> thus to teach his<sup>33</sup> countrymen that<sup>34</sup> the body<sup>35</sup> can be controlled<sup>36</sup> by the mind.

1. Neut. of *hic*.
2. *homō* or *vir*?
3. *ceteri*.
4. Turn into the passive.  
What sort of relative clause is this?
5. Be careful about the order of words.
6. Intensive pronoun.
7. Cf. the statement following the Vocabulary of Exercise XVII; and, for the tense force in this clause, see the Note on p. 258.
8. Adj. or noun in Latin?
9. Review again the gender of *diēs*.
10. *adhūc*.
11. *makes . . . uneasy*: *sollicitō*, 1.
12. See Remark 1 on p. 201.
13. *an*. As this is itself an interrogative word, do not add *-ne*.
14. *ille*.
15. Do not forget to use *dum*, as occasion offers.
16. Cf. footnote 9 on Exercise I.
17. Be careful to write the correct construction.
18. Cf. Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XII.
19. Omit.
20. See the Vocabulary of Exercise X.
21. See the Note on the Rule in Exercise VI.
22. *severe*: *magnus*.
23. *at times*: *interdum*.
24. Pl. of *tempus*.
25. *strap . . . down*: *religō*, 1.
26. *operate, operate upon*: *secō*, 1, *secui*, *sectus*.
27. *the patient*: use *ille* simply, placing it after the other pronoun in the clause.
28. *impediō*, 4, *-ivī*, *-ītus*.
29. Reflexive pronoun (*sui*).
30. *Lit., the greatest*. Translate "greatest" in two ways.
31. Gerundive.
32. Cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III.
33. *suus*, *-a*, *-um*.
34. Consult, if necessary, the List of Verb Constructions, p. 382.
35. *corpus*, *-oris*, N.
36. *vincō*.

## EXERCISE XX

(55-57)

## DATIVE OF SERVICE

## MODEL SENTENCES

**Caesar nautās subsidiō vĕnātōribus mīsīt**, Caesar sent the sailors to reënforce the hunters (*lit.* for a reënforcement for the hunters).

**Cohors mulieribus liberisque praesidiō fuit**, The company served as a protection for the women and children (*lit.* was for a protection for the women and children).

**RULE.** *The dative singular of various abstract nouns is used to designate that for which a thing serves, or for which it is intended to serve.*

**REMARK.** The Dative of Service is generally used in connection with a dative of interest; cf. the Model Sentences above. Occasionally it is accompanied by a dative of the indirect object, and sometimes it stands alone.

## VOCABULARY

**arcēssō**, 3, **arcēssivī**, **arcēs-**  
**sītus**, *summon, call.*

**captivus**, -ī, M., *prisoner.*

**cōservō**, 1, *save.*

**cūrō**, 1, *care for (e.g. the wounded).*

**noceō**, 2, -ui (future partic.

**nocitūrus**), *injure, harm.*

See the Rule in Exercise

IX, with the Note.

**praesidium**, -ī, N., *protection.*

**sic**, adv., *thus, in this way.*

**subsidium**, -ī, N., *reënforcement.*

**NOTE.** The verb **cūrō** governs the accusative, the "for" of the English rendering being a part of the definition of the verb, and not the sign of the dative case.

## TRANSLATION

55. 1. If any one should send two companies as a reënforcement for us, not even the fiercest assault<sup>1</sup> of the enemy would alarm us. 2. Be men<sup>2</sup> of the greatest fortitude; do not fear that the enemy will prevail.<sup>3</sup> 3. If the soldiers cry out<sup>4</sup> because of pain, we shall not send doctors to<sup>5</sup> care for them. 4. Since they were afraid that we were weak<sup>6</sup> in spirit, they called all the sailors to help<sup>7</sup> us. 5. We thought that they were burning the cities in order to injure<sup>8</sup> the senate.

56. 1. Though you fear that men<sup>9</sup> of very little courage<sup>9</sup> have been sent with us, still do not think that the enemy will be able<sup>10</sup> by an assault to injure any<sup>11</sup> company. 2. Let *us* protect<sup>12</sup> the children of the leaders, and urge the other men not to stay at home to guard the horses. 3. Thus it happened that, by shouting, a boy ten years of age twice saved<sup>13</sup> that town. 4. If they<sup>14</sup> were informed a few days later about these matters and the arrival of the fleets, they are now in the valley and we need not fear an attack from them.<sup>15</sup>

57. *Luckless Prisoners*

"I see a soldier sitting alone in the shade, Quintus," said Gaius. "Let's ask<sup>16</sup> him to tell us a story." Seeing them,<sup>17</sup> the soldier smiled and said, "Do you want to hear a story? Once I was in an army which was waging war with the Indians, and I heard much<sup>18</sup> about their cruelty.<sup>19</sup> One of the soldiers informed me that they<sup>20</sup> would<sup>21</sup> put<sup>22</sup> prisoners upon<sup>23</sup> the backs of wild<sup>24</sup> horses and bind<sup>25</sup> them<sup>26</sup> fast,<sup>27</sup> and (that they would)<sup>28</sup> let loose<sup>29</sup> the horses into the woods, so that nobody<sup>30</sup> might find the wretched<sup>31</sup> men<sup>32</sup> and care for them. In<sup>33</sup> this way very many of<sup>34</sup> our citi-

zens whom the Indians captured, have been killed. Do you<sup>32</sup> not<sup>33</sup> think that they died in a frightful<sup>34</sup> manner? ”<sup>35</sup>

1. The emphatic word of this phrase is “fiercest.”
2. *homō* or *vir*?
3. Either *superō* or *vincō*.
4. Cf. footnote 6 on Exercise XVII.
5. Translate in two ways.
6. *dēmissus*, -a, -um. Model the phrase on *numerō superior*, etc.
7. Use *auxilium* (with the verb *sum*), thus illustrating the new principle in the day’s grammar lesson.
8. Cf. Remark 2 on p. 248.
9. See the Vocabulary of Exercise VIII.
10. Cf. footnote 7 on Exercise XV.
11. *ūllus*.
12. Use *praesidium* (with the verb *sum*).
13. What mood is required?
14. *ille*. Be careful of the word order (cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III).
15. *Lit.*, of *them*.
16. *Lit.*, *urge*.
17. *Lit.*, *whom when he had seen* (cf. footnote 25 on Exercise VIII).
18. Neut. pl. of *multi*.
19. *crūdōlitāa*, -ātis, f.
20. *ille*.
21. Use *soleō*, putting this verb early in the clause.
22. *pōnō*, 3, *posui*, *positus*.
23. *in*, with the abl.; cf. the construction with *collocō*.
24. *ferus*, -a, -um.
25. *bind . . . fast*: *artē* (adv.) *religō*, 1.
26. Omit.
27. *ēmittō*, 3, -*misi*, -*missus*.
28. What kind of clause?
29. Use the superl.
30. Not continuing the indirect discourse begun in the preceding sentence.
31. *very many of*: superl. of *multi*. Put the other modifier after the noun, as is usual with possessive adjectives.
32. How many persons are addressed?
33. Introduce the question by *nōnne* (i.e. *nōn* + *ne*), this combination presupposing the answer “yes.”
34. *horrendus*, -a, -um.
35. *i.e. way*. Use the pl.

## EXERCISE XXI

(58-60)

REVIEW OF EXERCISES XIV TO XX—DEPENDENT  
CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

## MODEL SENTENCES

Arbitror vĕnātōrēs, quibus pecūnia sit, ad oppida itūrōs,  
I think that the hunters who have money will go to the  
towns.

Nōne putābās militēs, quōs imperātor arcēssivisset, oppi-  
dum custōdire? Did you not think that the soldiers whom  
the general had summoned were guarding the town?

**RULE.** *The subjunctive mood should be used in all  
dependent clauses in indirect discourse.*

**NOTE.** The tense of the subjunctive in these dependent clauses  
is usually determined (under the regular rule for sequence) by the  
tense of the verb of saying, thinking, hearing, etc., which governs  
the indirect discourse; but clauses dependent upon a *perfect* in-  
finitive are limited to the imperfect and pluperfect tenses of the  
subjunctive (cf. footnote 1 on Exercise V).

## VOCABULARY

auctōritās, -ātis, F., <i>authority,</i>	profectō, adv., <i>surely, cer-</i>
<i>influence.</i>	<i>tainly.</i>
civitās, -ātis, F., <i>state.</i>	vulnerāti, -ōrum, M., <i>the</i>
expugnō, I, <i>take by storm.</i>	<i>wounded.</i>
occupō, I, <i>occupy.</i>	

**NOTE.** Contrast certē, "certainly" ("at any rate"), with profectō, "certainly" ("beyond a doubt").

## TRANSLATION

58. 1. If men of great influence are a protection<sup>1</sup> to the state, why do you fear that<sup>2</sup> we shall not<sup>2</sup> prevail? 2. Because of Cicero's authority, I believe that the companies we left<sup>3</sup> at Rome are safe. 3. To save<sup>4</sup> the leaders of the states, who will not be willing<sup>5</sup> to die thus? 4. If something<sup>6</sup> should be given to the other sailor, and nothing<sup>7</sup> should fall out to his disadvantage,<sup>8</sup> he would soon be able to return home to care for his<sup>9</sup> sick children. 5. I suppose that they have never felt<sup>10</sup> the violence of the waves.

59. 1. We think that those<sup>11</sup> who surpass us in influence fear that we have tried to injure them.<sup>12</sup> 2. If with sword and<sup>13</sup> ax we can be a help<sup>14</sup> to the consul, we will by no means delay<sup>15</sup> in the country. 3. We feared that at London some one had ventured to interview<sup>16</sup> the captain; for he is a man of the mildest<sup>17</sup> temper.<sup>18</sup> 4. If, after burning the city,<sup>19</sup> they have stopped<sup>15</sup> to care for the wounded, surely no one will ever say that they hurried home for<sup>20</sup> fear of the enemy. 5. Did the leader's son tell<sup>21</sup> the consuls the number of days?

60. *The Dispatch-Bearer*

"A few days ago,"<sup>22</sup> said the soldier, "our general persuaded a bold messenger to attempt to carry some<sup>9</sup> powder<sup>23</sup> to a fort which the enemy had hemmed in<sup>24</sup> on all sides with strong<sup>25</sup> fortifications. Though the man<sup>26</sup> was lame,<sup>27</sup> he thought that his<sup>9</sup> father had a horse which could<sup>28</sup> carry him<sup>12</sup> safely through the country<sup>29</sup> which the enemy had occupied.<sup>23</sup> He therefore set out at night; and when his<sup>9</sup> horse was killed by a bullet,<sup>30</sup> he found another, and thus in<sup>31</sup> a few hours came to the bank of a

large river. Here,<sup>33</sup> his<sup>9</sup> second<sup>33</sup> horse having been killed, he seized a skiff, and floated<sup>34</sup> many miles down the stream,<sup>35</sup> and finally in safety<sup>36</sup> brought the powder<sup>33</sup> into the fort, which the enemy were now<sup>37</sup> on the point of taking by storm."

1. Not nominative.
2. *that . . . not*: note the kind of verb upon which this clause depends.
3. Cf. footnote 25 on Exercise II.
4. What kind of clause?
5. *not be willing*: *i.e. be unwilling*.
6. Cf. the statement following the Vocabulary of Exercise XVII.
7. *and nothing*. see Exercise X.
8. *Lit., should turn out badly for him*.
9. Omit.
10. *sentio*.
11. Pl. of *is*.
12. Reflexive pronoun (*su*).
13. *-que*.
14. Cf. footnote 7 on Exercise XX.
15. *moror*.
16. *Lit., meat*.
17. *mild*: *mitis, -is, -e*.
18. *Lit., spirit*.
19. Use a passive participial phrase.
20. *i.e. because of*. Put this phrase first in the indirect discourse.
21. *diō* (with dat. of the person spoken to).
22. Be careful about the word order (Note I on the Vocabulary of Exercise XVI).
23. *pulvis, -eris, m*.
24. *claudō, 3, clausi, clausus*.
25. *Lit., very great*.
26. Use *ille*.
27. *pedibus captus, -a, -um*; (*pedibus*, Abl. of Specification, from *pēs, pedis, m*., "foot").
28. Be careful of the mood.
29. Use the pl. of *locus*, recalling the peculiarity of its declension.
30. *tēlum*.
31. *i.e. within*.
32. *Lit., where* (rel. adv., beginning a new sentence. Cf. the similar use of *quī* when it replaces a demonstrative pronoun).
33. *alter*.
34. *nō, 1*.
35. *down the stream*: *secundō flūmine*.
36. *in safety*: *i.e. safely*.
37. *nunc or iam*?



## EXERCISE XXII

(61-63)

## THE ABLATIVE WITH CERTAIN VERBS

## MODEL SENTENCE

**Hōc tēlō miles profectō nōn ūtētur,** This weapon the soldier surely will not use.

**RULE.** **Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vēscor** govern the *ablative case*.

**REMARK.** This list should be memorized as it stands, though not all of the verbs are to be used immediately. As the English renderings are taken up, it will be found that they give little or no clue to the Latin construction. Only constant vigilance, therefore, will insure against error in connection with the use of verbs of this class.

## VOCABULARY

**exspectō, 1, wait for.**

**Gallus, -ī, m., a Gaul; pl., the Gauls.**

**ratus, -a, -um, partic., thinking; construed with indirect discourse.**

**redūcō, 3, -dūxi, -ductus, bring back, carry back, withdraw (e.g. troops).**

**ūtor, 3, ūsus sum, use.**

**NOTE.** **Ratus** belongs to a small group of deponent perfect participles used loosely with the force of presents. The rather frequent occurrence of these participles is doubtless one of the reasons why the nominative forms of *present* participles are employed so infrequently in Latin (cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III).

## TRANSLATION

61. 1. If Pompey should use his<sup>1</sup> authority to save<sup>2</sup> the state, all the citizens would say that he is the one man<sup>3</sup> who does not fear<sup>4</sup> Caesar. 2. If any one fears<sup>5</sup> that the companies will not be brought back safely, let us seek leaders of greater courage. 3. If my sons have been a help to the state, I hope that our soldiers will use my horses also. 4. Because of their<sup>6</sup> love<sup>7</sup> of battle, the boldest Gauls were unwilling to wait for the wounded, but<sup>8</sup> hurried across the mountains to occupy the territory<sup>9</sup> of other<sup>10</sup> nations. 5. The cavalry<sup>11</sup> of this one state will not be able to injure our armies.

62. 1. We must burn that forest, so that nobody may find there a spot suitable for an ambushade.<sup>12</sup> 2. Men of the greatest fortitude are often inferior in influence because they live in the country, and no one is informed<sup>13</sup> of<sup>14</sup> their courage. 3. They<sup>15</sup> said that they had persuaded those hunters to come who had used up all their food. 4. In the consulship of Cicero and Antonius,<sup>16</sup> while forces were being gathered<sup>17</sup> into the camps, many were anxious<sup>18</sup> that citizens be enrolled<sup>19</sup> at Rome to protect the senate.<sup>20</sup>

63. *An Inspiring Leader*

"Are you not going to<sup>21</sup> tell us a story to-day?" said Gaius to the soldier. "We promise that we will not bother you<sup>22</sup> to-morrow." "Many years ago," said the soldier, "our army was marching through a long valley, where a few days before all the crops<sup>23</sup> had been burned. Our general, therefore,<sup>24</sup> thinking that the enemy would not follow, left his<sup>5</sup> army, and proceeded<sup>25</sup> a few miles to a

small town not far distant.<sup>20</sup> But during the night<sup>21</sup> a very fierce attack was suddenly made upon our men, who were obliged to retreat<sup>22</sup> in haste.<sup>23</sup> The general, hearing the sound<sup>24</sup> of battle, rode back<sup>25</sup> at top speed. Seeing him,<sup>26</sup> the panic-stricken<sup>27</sup> soldiers took heart again,<sup>28</sup> and soon put the enemy to flight.”

1. *suus, -a, -um.*
2. Translate without using *ut* or *quī*.
3. *the one man*: *sōlus*.
4. Note that this is a dependent clause in indirect discourse.
5. Choose mood and tense without regard for the form of the other clause of the sentence.
6. Omit.
7. *amor, -ōris, M.*
8. *Lit., and.*
9. *ager.*
10. Do not confuse *cēteri* and *aliī* (see the Remark on the Vocabulary of Exercise III).
11. *i.e. horsemen.*
12. *Insidiae, -ārum, F.*
13. *is informed*: present tense.
14. *i.e. about.*
15. Order for translation: *those (is) hunters, who had used up all their (suus, -a, -um) food, they said that they had persuaded to come.*
16. *Lit., Cicero and Antonius (being) consuls.*
17. Pass. of *cōgō*.
18. *volō*.
19. *cōscribō, 3, -scripsi, -scrip-*
- tus.* Use the construction regularly found with *volō*.
20. More literally: *to be a protection for the senate.*
21. See Exercise II; and, for the form of the question, cf. footnote 33 on Exercise XX.
22. *Lit., be troublesome (molestus, -a, -um) to you.*
23. Pl. of *frūmentum*.
24. *itaque* (placed first in the sentence, as usual).
25. *i.e. advanced.*
26. *not far distant*: *haud longinquus*. Place this phrase after the noun.
27. *during the night*: use an adverb.
28. *i.e. were forced to fall back.*
29. *i.e. quickly.*
30. *sonus, -i, M.* Turn the phrase into the passive.
31. Pass. of *revehō, 3, -vēxi, -vectus*.
32. Use a relative, turning the phrase into the passive.
33. *i.e. thoroughly frightened.*
34. *animus resūmō, 3, -sūmpsi, -sūmptus* (sing. object retained with pl. verb).

## EXERCISE XXIII

(64-66)

## RESULT CLAUSES

## MODEL SENTENCES

**Iter tam longum est, ut liberi dēfessi esse soleant,** The journey is so long that the children are usually tired.

**Carrus tam magnus erat, ut equi duo eum dūcere nōn possent,** The wagon was so large that two horses could not draw it.

**RULE.** *Result may be expressed by an ut-clause with its verb in the present or imperfect subjunctive.*

**NOTE.** So far as form is concerned, the most important difference between result clauses and subjunctive purpose clauses is that negative *purpose* requires the special introductory particle **nē**, whereas negative *result* is marked in the ordinary way by **nōn** (cf. the second of the Model Sentences above).

**REMARK.** Some Roman writers employ, in result clauses, the *perfect* subjunctive also. This, however, is a special and difficult use, not to be attempted at the present stage of the work. Hence the omission of that tense from the rule above given.

## VOCABULARY

<b>animadvertō, 3, -verti, -versus,</b> <i>notice</i> ; may be construed with indirect discourse.	<b>fleō, 2, flēvi, flētum est,</b> <i>weep, cry.</i>
<b>cōnsuēscō, 3, -suēvi (-suētus).</b> Perfect tense with force of present, <i>be accustomed.</i> May be construed with the complementary infinitive.	<b>iuvenis, -is, M.,</b> <i>young man, youth.</i>
	<b>tam, adv.,</b> <i>so.</i> Used with adjectives and adverbs.
	<b>ūsus, -ūs, M.,</b> <i>use.</i> <b>ūsui esse,</b> <i>to be useful, to be used.</i>

NOTE 1. For the rendering of *cōnsuēvi* given above, see the Note on *soleō* in Exercise IV. As the perfect *cōnsuēvi* has the force of a *present*, the pluperfect *cōnsuēveram* necessarily represents any and all *past* tenses.

NOTE 2. *Iuvenis*, like *canis*, is not an I-Stem.

NOTE 3. As *ūtor* ("use") is deponent, special devices are needed to translate the passive "be used" into Latin. The phrase *ūsuī esse* provides one such device.

#### TRANSLATION

64. 1. Do not fear that the prisoners are using our wagons; for the cattle are so frightened that they cannot be brought from the fields. 2. Did you think that men<sup>1</sup> who wanted<sup>2</sup> to harm you had sent this messenger to wait for us at London? 3. If by delaying or sending they should try to help<sup>3</sup> us, *we* should surely<sup>4</sup> appear mean-spirited,<sup>5</sup> if we did not<sup>6</sup> inform the consuls. 4. Because of the aid of the inhabitants of these mountains, the Romans were so secure<sup>7</sup> that they ventured to send a part of their<sup>8</sup> army to the banks of the other river to look for grain.

65. 1. We were accustomed to use all the cattle to carry grain, so that no one would be able to claim<sup>9</sup> that he had<sup>10</sup> no food. 2. For drawing<sup>11</sup> the wagons, the cattle were so very useful<sup>12</sup> that we did not think that we needed to call for<sup>13</sup> horses. 3. If you think that men of little influence should not be sent, I fear that we shall not find many to send.<sup>14</sup> 4. Thinking<sup>15</sup> that they have come here<sup>16</sup> to care for the wounded, they will go at once to the tents, and<sup>17</sup> will say nothing<sup>17</sup> to us.

#### 66. *A Resourceful Mother*

Once some settlers suddenly noticed that a ship of war<sup>18</sup> was rapidly approaching<sup>19</sup> the shore. Seeing this,<sup>20</sup> they

were so terrified that they did not attempt to hinder<sup>21</sup> the soldiers when they landed<sup>22</sup> from the ship, but fled in haste to the woods and mountains. One of the women, however,<sup>23</sup> decided<sup>24</sup> to remain at home, and saved her<sup>8</sup> son in an original<sup>25</sup> way; for, when the enemy arrived at the farmhouse, she was weeping, and led the soldiers to a bier,<sup>26</sup> on which the son was lying. Thinking that the young man was dead, the enemy<sup>27</sup> withdrew at once to<sup>28</sup> the road, and<sup>29</sup> did not<sup>29</sup> attempt to injure any one<sup>30</sup> with their<sup>30</sup> weapons.

1. Pl. of *is*.
2. Note that this is a dependent clause in indirect discourse.
3. Use *auxilium*.
4. See the Note on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXI.
5. *Lit.*, (to be) of *ungrateful* (*ingrātus*, -a, -um) *mind* (sing. of *animus*).
6. *i.e.* if we should not.
7. *sēcūrus*, -a, -um.
8. Omit.
9. *dicō*.
10. Translate in two ways. (Whenever, in indirect discourse, there is a reference back to the third person subject of a governing verb, the reflexive (*suī*) must be used, whatever the case called for; cf. the first Note on p. 235.)
11. *dūcō*. Use a construction introduced by *ad*.
12. *very useful*: employ *ūsus*, modified by *magnus*.
13. Gerundive of *arcēssō*.
14. What kind of clause?
15. Translate in two ways (not present partic.).
16. See the Note on the Vocabulary of Exercise XVII.
17. See Exercise X.
18. *nāvis longa*.
19. See the Vocabulary of Exercise II.
20. Cf. footnote 32 on Exercise XXII.
21. *prohibeō*, 2, -uī, -itus.
22. Use *ēgredior*, 3, -gressus *sum* (imperf. tense).
23. Cf. footnote 5 on Exercise XIV.
24. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XVIII.
25. *novus*.
26. *feretrum*, -ī, n.
27. Place first in the sentence.
28. *in*.
29. *and . . . not . . . any one*: *i.e.* *and . . . no one* (acc.).
30. *suus*, -a, -um.

## EXERCISE XXIV

(67-69)

## TOWN NAMES

It has already been shown that town names, and the common nouns **domus**, **humus**, and **rūs**, do not conform to the regular rule for Place Where, but use a special case-form (locative) to express this relation. With the exception of **humus**, these same groups of words follow a special rule also for Place to Which and Place FROM Which.

## MODEL SENTENCES

**Rōmam ibit**, He will go to Rome.

**Rūs properāvimus**, We hurried to the country.

RULE. *Place to Which is expressed by the accusative case of town names, and of domus and rūs, WITHOUT a preposition.*

## MODEL SENTENCES

**Cūr tum Rōmā profectus est?** Why did he set out from Rome at that time?

**Domō iam exibāmus**, We were just starting out from home.

RULE. *Place FROM Which is expressed by the ablative case of town names, and of domus and rūs, WITHOUT a preposition.*

NOTE. At this point, the declension of **rūs** should be reviewed carefully (see the Vocabulary of Exercise XV, with Note 2).

## VOCABULARY

**arripīō**, 3, **-ripui**, **-reptus**, **expellō**, 3, **-puli**, **-pulsus**, *drive seize.* *out, drive (from).*

**cotidiē**, adv., *daily, every day.* **tantum**, adv., *only, merely.*

**dēfendō**, 3, **-fendi**, **-fēnsus**, **verbum**, -i, n., *word.*  
*defend, protect.*

NOTE 1. The adverb **tantum** usually follows the word or phrase which it modifies.

NOTE 2. As contrasted with *capiō*, *arripiō* implies haste or violence of action (cf. *rapiō*).

## TRANSLATION

67. 1. I thought that those who were about to set out so readily from home were men<sup>1</sup> so brave<sup>2</sup> that they could not be frightened even<sup>3</sup> by Hannibal himself.<sup>4</sup> 2. If twenty thousand Gauls should come to Rome to support<sup>5</sup> the senate, we should have no place in which to quarter them.<sup>6</sup> 3. Youths of the greatest courage, driven from the country because of the harshness<sup>7</sup> of their<sup>1</sup> fathers, are flocking<sup>8</sup> to London from all quarters.<sup>9</sup> 4. Use<sup>10</sup> only the smallest plates, so that no one will fear that the food will fail.<sup>11</sup>

68. 1. The horses were used<sup>12</sup> to carry<sup>13</sup> the weapons. 2. Do not cry, children; your father will soon return from New York. 3. Since the soldiers who are now at Rome are on the point of setting out for<sup>14</sup> Spain, let us hurry to Rome ourselves to protect the city. 4. Do you notice that the men<sup>15</sup> who boast most<sup>16</sup> are often so deficient<sup>17</sup> in courage that they run away from the field of battle<sup>18</sup> with the greatest readiness<sup>19</sup> and injure no one unless<sup>20</sup> it be<sup>21</sup> by words? 5. Thinking that he<sup>22</sup> alone ought to look after<sup>23</sup> the sick, Curio was accustomed to send doctors to the camp daily with the greatest diligence.

69. *A Young Hero*

"We promised," said Marcus to Gaius, "that we would not ask<sup>24</sup> the soldier to tell us a story yesterday; but if<sup>25</sup> we meet<sup>26</sup> him to-day, let's try to persuade him to talk with us." "I think that I see him now," replied Gaius. "Good<sup>27</sup> soldier, are you not<sup>28</sup> going to tell us a story to-day?" Hearing this,<sup>29</sup> the soldier smiled and said, "I once saw a boy about ten years old do<sup>30</sup> a deed<sup>31</sup> of great daring. After our men had fought very bravely for five hours, the



line had fallen back to the camp, leaving<sup>32</sup> the wounded on the ground. No one dared<sup>33</sup> to help the poor fellows; <sup>34</sup> but this boy, of<sup>35</sup> whom I am speaking,<sup>36</sup> seized a pail<sup>37</sup> and carried water to the men who were dying, though meanwhile bullets were flying<sup>38</sup> on every hand."

1. Omit.
2. See Remark 1 on p. 201.
3. See Note 1 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VIII.
4. Intensive pronoun. In arranging the phrase, this word may be separated from its noun.
5. Use *subsidium* (with the verb *veniō*).
6. *Lit.*, we should not have where (ubi) to quarter (collocō) them. Ubi is here the relative adverb, and its clause should be written as if a relative pronoun were the introductory word. What does the clause express?
7. *saevitia*, -ae, F.
8. *conveniō*.
9. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XVI.
- \* 10. Note that this calls for a deponent verb.
11. *dēficiō*, 3, -fēcī (-fectus).
12. See Note 3 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXIII
13. *i.e. for* (ad) carrying.
14. ad.
15. Pl. of is.
16. *maximē*.
17. inferior.
18. *field of battle*: *proelium*.
19. Use the proper form of *libenter*.
20. *nisi* (conj., used as adv.).
21. *it be*: omit.
22. Cf. the second part of footnote 10 on Exercise XXIII.
23. *i.e. care for*.
24. *Lit.*, urge. Review, if necessary, the infinitives of deponent verbs.
25. *but if*: *sin autem*.
26. Cf. footnote 6 on Exercise XVII, and footnote 5 on Exercise XXII.
27. Use the superl. Be careful about the case, and also about the position of the phrase in the sentence.
28. Cf. footnote 33 on Exercise XX.
29. Cf. footnote 32 on Exercise XXII.
30. *Lit.*, to do (indirect discourse).
31. *facinus*, -oris, N.
32. Use a passive participial construction, and do not put the phrase last in the sentence.
33. Imperfect tense.
34. *homō*; or *ille* simply. Put first in the sentence.
35. *i.e. about*.
36. *dicō*.
37. *vās*, *vāsīs*, N.
38. Pass. of *mittō*.

## EXERCISE XXV

(70-72)

## THE GERUND IN PURPOSE CLAUSES

Verbs capable of taking a *direct* object are called Transitive; all others are Intransitive. In Exercises XI and XV it has been shown how the gerundive of *transitive* verbs is used in phrases governed by *ad* and *causā* to express purpose. Intransitive verbs, on the other hand, are all practically defective in the gerundive, and cannot be employed in these constructions; but the *gerund* of intransitives is freely used in very similar phrases.

## MODEL SENTENCES

**Colōnōs ex agris ad pugnandum vocāte**, Summon the settlers from the fields to fight (*lit.* for fighting).

**Pugnandī causā manēbimus**, We shall remain to fight, *lit.* with (*i.e.* for) the purpose of fighting.

**RULE.** *In purpose clauses involving ad or causā, a transitive verb takes the GERUNDIVE form; whereas it is the GERUND of intransitive verbs that is required in all such phrases.*

**NOTE.** Intransitive verbs are of two types: (1) those which are incapable of taking an object of any kind, and (2) those which are construed with some other case than the accusative. Intransitives of this latter type use even the gerund very sparingly in purpose expressions (*e.g.* **vēnī ad senātūī persuādendum**, "I have come to persuade the senate"); generally they incline to some other device (*e.g.* an *ut*-clause).

**REMARK.** In such a sentence as "We have come to buy," the verb "buy" chances to be used without an expressed object. When thus used "absolutely," even a transitive verb is necessarily rendered by the gerund rather than the gerundive in purpose expressions (*e.g.* **emendī causā**); for the phrase contains no noun for a gerundive to modify.

## VOCABULARY

Atlanticus, -a, -um, <i>Atlantic</i> .	interdum, adv., <i>at times</i> ,
etiam, adv., <i>even</i> .	<i>sometimes, from time to</i>
indicō, 3, -dixi, -dictus, <i>de-</i>	<i>time</i> .
<i>clare</i> . bellum indicare,	nāvigium, -i, N., <i>vessel</i> .
with dat., <i>to declare war</i>	pondus, ponderis, N., <i>weight</i> .
(upon).	sollertia, -ae, F., <i>skill</i> .

NOTE. Unlike *quoque*, the adverb *etiam* usually *precedes* the word or phrase emphasized.

## TRANSLATION

70. 1. If *they*<sup>1</sup> have come to Rome to play<sup>2</sup> and not to fight,<sup>2</sup> let *us*<sup>3</sup> by deed<sup>4</sup> and word<sup>5</sup> demonstrate to all men<sup>6</sup> that there are still<sup>7</sup> Romans who are willing<sup>8</sup> to use their<sup>9</sup> swords to defend the state. 2. Though these weapons are not useful to the soldiers of the whole regiment, still we must find wagons in which<sup>10</sup> to carry them. 3. The Indians had come daily from their homes<sup>11</sup> to assist, so that the settlers did not fear<sup>12</sup> that they<sup>1</sup> would ever desert<sup>13</sup> to the armies of the enemy. 4. Seizing stones of great weight, the bravest settlers, with Gaius for leader, at once hurried to the farthest<sup>14</sup> part of the bridges.<sup>15</sup>

71. 1. If because of fear the hunters should not come to help<sup>16</sup> us, many would think that this<sup>17</sup> had injured our cause.<sup>18</sup> 2. "We shall come from New York to observe<sup>19</sup> only, and not to work," said the soldiers; "for we think that in your army there are many who can use these tools<sup>20</sup> with greater skill." 3. While<sup>21</sup> the young men were in New York and nobody was watching,<sup>22</sup> the boy, by running, twice escaped to the river. 4. Since you do not seem to be inferior in skill, we shall urge the general to allow you to remain at Rome.

72. *Americans on the Sea*

Many years ago<sup>28</sup> the British used<sup>29</sup> to board American vessels that were crossing the Atlantic ocean, and carried back<sup>30</sup> with them<sup>31</sup> to their own<sup>32</sup> ships seamen whom they thought to be British. We fear that sometimes men were seized who were really<sup>33</sup> American citizens; but in those days<sup>34</sup> the English were superior upon the water,<sup>35</sup> and the Americans were obliged to submit.<sup>36</sup> But, a few years later, war was declared upon the British; and the Americans, who previously<sup>37</sup> had had a very small fleet, now built<sup>38</sup> more vessels, and often overcame the enemy even upon the sea.

1. ille.
2. Use the *causā* construction, expressing *causā* but once (at the end), and omitting "and."
3. Supply *autem* with the pronoun.
4. *rēs*.
5. Use the pl.
6. *demonstrate to all men: lit., teach all* (cf. footnote 9 on Exercise I).
7. *adhūc*.
8. What mood?
9. *suus, -a, -um*.
10. *Lit., by which*. Cf. the second group of Model Sentences in Exercise I.
11. *Lit., from home* (sing.).
12. What tenses are used in result clauses?
13. *trānseō*.
14. *extrēmus, -a, -um*.
15. Be careful of the spelling.
16. Use *auxilium* (with *venīō*).
17. Neut. of *hīc*.
18. Pl. of *rēs*.
19. *Lit., see*. Use *ad* or *causā*, omitting the following "and." For *causā*, cf. footnote 2 above.
20. *ferramentum, -i, n*.
21. Use *dum*, as occasion offers.
22. *speculor*.
23. Be careful of the word order.
24. Translate in two ways.
25. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXII. Use the imperfect tense here and in the following clause.
26. *sēcum*.
27. *their own: suus, -a, -um*; cf. footnote 32 on Exercise VIII.
28. *rē vērā, i.e. "in actual fact" (vērus, -a, -um, "actual")*.
29. Pl. of *tempus*.
30. *i.e. upon the sea*. Be careful of the spelling.
31. *Lit., to put up with it* (*id patior*).
32. *anteā*.
33. *Lit., made*.

## EXERCISE XXVI

(73-75)

## THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE

When a transitive verb is turned into the passive, its direct object becomes the subject of the sentence (*e.g.* *nāvem fēcērunt*, "They built a ship"; but *nāvis facta est*, "A ship was built"). Intransitive verbs, however, being incapable of taking a direct object, can form only an IMPERSONAL passive.

## MODEL SENTENCES

<i>Ācritēr pugnātur</i>	{ The fight waxes hot. They (we, you, etc.) fight fiercely. <i>Lit., It is fought fiercely.</i>
<i>Ad montēs perventum est</i>	{ The mountains were reached. He (they, we, etc.) arrived at the mountains. <i>Lit., It was come to the mountains.</i>
<i>Statim nobis pugnandum est</i>	{ We must fight at once. <i>Lit., It must be fought by us at once.</i>

NOTE. Attention has already been called to the fact that the gerundive of intransitive verbs is practically defective. The reason for this state of affairs now appears: for, being a part of the passive system, the gerundive of an intransitive verb is limited to the impersonal use, and hence can have but a single form (namely, the neuter singular in *-um*, nominative and accusative), used only as in the third of the Model Sentences.

REMARK. The above statements apply equally to *all* intransitives. But for the present the discussion is limited to verbs which, in the active, are incapable of governing any case whatsoever (cf. the

first part of the Note in Exercise XXV). Intransitives capable of governing cases other than the accusative are reserved for later consideration.

## VOCABULARY

*Cloelia*, -ae, f., *Cloelia*.      *custōs*, -ōdis, m., *guard*.  
*complūrēs*, -ēs, -a, *several*.      *obses*, -idis, c., *hostage*.

See the Summary of *vēnor*, 1, *hunt*.  
 Forms, p. 350, Note.

## TRANSLATION

73. 1. At London<sup>1</sup> you must work with great diligence, so that no one will inform your father that he<sup>2</sup> must hurry from the country to watch<sup>3</sup> you. 2. If we should use our horses from time to time, our skill would become greater. 3. If you have been sent here<sup>4</sup> to loiter,<sup>5</sup> go<sup>6</sup> at once into the garden; I think that you will find there some<sup>7</sup> children who like<sup>8</sup> to play the greater part of the day. 4. I feared that they had not found lighter<sup>9</sup> wagons to be used<sup>10</sup> for carrying the wives and daughters of the consuls.

74. 1. When they had come<sup>11</sup> to the shore to summon the hunter, the water was so high because of the tide<sup>12</sup> that the sailors could not save him. 2. Since I have not even at home a place to sit,<sup>13</sup> I have to<sup>14</sup> go daily many miles into the woods to hunt. 3. They said that they had just<sup>15</sup> come from London, and that they<sup>7</sup> had never<sup>16</sup> seen a finer<sup>17</sup> town. 4. While one of the sailors was spying upon the vessel, the others sat down<sup>18</sup> under the trees to write.

75. *A Distinguished Roman Maid*

Long<sup>19</sup> years ago, when war had been declared by king Porsinna upon the Romans, the enemy advanced suddenly

upon <sup>20</sup> Rome, and invested <sup>21</sup> the city with siege works.<sup>22</sup> To induce <sup>23</sup> the king to withdraw <sup>24</sup> his<sup>7</sup> army, the Romans were obliged to give hostages, among <sup>25</sup> them several girls.<sup>26</sup> One of these,<sup>27</sup> Cloelia by name, outwitted <sup>28</sup> the guards a few days later, and led <sup>29</sup> the other maidens to the river ; and, although the weapons of the enemy were now flying <sup>30</sup> on every hand, the girls swam to the other bank <sup>31</sup> in safety,<sup>32</sup> and quickly hurried home to their <sup>33</sup> relatives.<sup>34</sup>

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Be careful of the spelling.  | 18. <i>sedeō</i> .   |
| 2. Reflexive pronoun ( <i>sui</i> ).  | 19. <i>Lit., many</i> .  |
| 3. What part of speech is the gerundive?  | 20. <i>upon Rome: lit., to Rome</i> .  |
| 4. See the Note on the Vocabulary of Exercise XVII.   | 21. <i>circumdō, -dare, -dedi, -datus</i> .  |
| 5. <i>moror</i> .   | 22. <i>i.e. fortifications</i> .   |
| 6. <i>abeō, -ire, -li, -itum est</i> .  | 23. <i>i.e. persuade</i> ; cf. the latter part of the Note in Exercise XXV.                                |
| 7. Omit.  | 24. What is the difference between <i>redūcō</i> , "withdraw," and <i>sē recipere</i> , "withdraw"?        |
| 8. <i>volō</i> . What mood?   | 25. <i>among</i> : in, with abl.   |
| 9. <i>lighter: lit., of less weight</i> .   | 26. <i>several girls</i> : in the same case as the word for "hostages."                                    |
| 10. See Note 3 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXIII. Introduce the following clause by <i>ad</i> . | 27. <i>Lit., of whom one</i> . Keep this order of words in the Latin rendering.                            |
| 11. Use the passive, and employ <i>ad</i> or <i>causā</i> for the following purpose clause.       | 28. <i>fallō, 3, fefelli, falsus</i> .   |
| 12. <i>aestus, -ūs, m</i> .   | 29. <i>dēdūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus</i> .   |
| 13. <i>have . . . a place to sit: lit., have where to sit</i> (cf. footnote 6 on Exercise XXIV).  | 30. Passive of <i>mittō</i> .  |
| 14. Gerundive. Be careful of the spelling.  | 31. <i>Lit., by swimming reached the other bank</i> . Be careful to choose the right word for "the other." |
| 15. <i>modo</i> .   | 32. <i>i.e. safely</i> .   |
| 16. <i>never</i> : note that "and" precedes.  | 33. <i>suus, -a, -um</i> .   |
| 17. <i>pulcher</i> .  | 34. <i>propinquī, -ōrum, m</i> .   |

## EXERCISE XXVII

(76-78)

## REVIEW OF EXERCISES XXI TO XXVI

## VOCABULARY

aquor, I, <i>get water.</i>	tantus, -a, -um, <i>such great.</i>
brevi, adv., <i>soon, shortly.</i>	( <i>large</i> ), <i>so great (large),</i>
hiemō, I, -āvi, -ātum est,	<i>such.</i>
<i>winter (i.e. pass the</i>	
<i>winter).</i>	

## TRANSLATION

76. 1. We go to the country<sup>1</sup> in summer to hunt. 2. When they had sailed<sup>2</sup> to the island, the settlers promptly<sup>3</sup> drove out the forces of the enemy. 3. We must smile, although I have been informed that these most wicked<sup>4</sup> ambassadors<sup>5</sup> will endeavor in every way<sup>6</sup> to injure our countrymen.<sup>7</sup> 4. The soldiers were using such large weapons that they soon became<sup>8</sup> tired with (the) fighting. 5. Do you think that the men<sup>9</sup> who are on the point of coming to help<sup>10</sup> the other general will prove to be<sup>11</sup> more courageous?<sup>12</sup>

77. 1. If Curio should linger among<sup>13</sup> the mountains to wait for<sup>14</sup> hostages from<sup>15</sup> the cities, should you not<sup>16</sup> fear that the enemy would make a sudden<sup>17</sup> attack upon our armies? 2. When the fight had thus raged<sup>18</sup> more fiercely for two hours, soldiers were sent into the woods to get water.<sup>19</sup> 3. If they have gone home to winter because of the cold,<sup>20</sup> I hope that the plan<sup>21</sup> will turn out well for them; but I shall stay in London. 4. Since the Indians have twice come across the hills with intent to<sup>22</sup> injure, you certainly<sup>23</sup> must not withdraw<sup>24</sup> the guards to New York.



78. *A Modern Amazon*

A <sup>28</sup> woman, whose husband <sup>29</sup> had gone <sup>30</sup> to war, one day noticed several soldiers of <sup>31</sup> the enemy's army approaching <sup>32</sup> her <sup>33</sup> farmhouse. Finding <sup>34</sup> that she had been left at home alone, the men stole her <sup>35</sup> chickens, and tormented her <sup>36</sup> in every way.<sup>6</sup> But while they were preparing dinner, the woman quietly <sup>37</sup> seized their guns,<sup>38</sup> and put them <sup>39</sup> in <sup>40</sup> a safe <sup>41</sup> place; then, suddenly coming back into the farmhouse, she informed the men that they <sup>42</sup> were prisoners. One <sup>43</sup> of the soldiers, who attempted to arrest <sup>44</sup> her, she promptly shot dead,<sup>45</sup> and compelled the others to march to a camp not far distant,<sup>46</sup> where they were turned over <sup>47</sup> to the commander.

1. See Exercise XXIV.
2. Use the passive.
3. *i.e.* at once.
4. *i.e.* bad. Place this second modifier after the noun.
5. *légātus*.
6. Use the pl
7. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XIX.
8. *Lit.*, *were*.
9. Pl. of *is*.
10. Cf. footnote 16 on Exercise XXV. What determines the mood here?
11. *will prove to be: i.e. will be.*
12. *more courageous: lit., of greater courage.*
13. *in*.
14. Use *causā*.
15. *Lit.*, *of*.
16. Cf. footnote 33 on Exercise XX.

17. *repentinus*, -a, -um.
18. *the fight had . . . raged:* passive of *pugnō*, with *acriter*.
19. Translate in three ways.
20. *frigus*, -oris, n. Use the pl., and place early in the sentence.
21. *Lit.*, *thing*.
22. Use *causā*.
23. See the Note on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXI.
24. Cf. footnote 24 on Exercise XXVI.
25. *quidam*.
26. *vir*.
27. *Lit.*, *had set out*.
28. *ex*.
29. *Lit.*, *to be approaching* (indirect discourse).
30. Omit.
31. *cōgnōscō*; and cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III. For "the

men" of the following clause use simply the relative *quī*, placing it, as usual, first in the sentence (cf., too, footnote 12 on Exercise III).

32. *tormented her: lit, were troublesome* (*molestus, -a, -um*) *to her*. Put the pronoun before the adj.

33. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XIV.

34. *tēlum*.

35. *in*, with abl.

36. Cf. Note 3 on the Vocabulary of Exercise II.

37. Reflexive pronoun (*suī*)

38. What case?

39. *capiō*.

40. *shoot dead: interficiō*, with the proper form of *tēlum*.

41. Cf. footnote 26 on Exercise XXII. Punctuate the clause with a semicolon (cf. footnote 32 on Exercise XXI).

42. Pass. of *trādō*, 3, *-didī, -ditus* (with dat.).

## EXERCISE XXVIII

(79-81)

## THE SUPINE

The supine consists of the accusative and ablative singular of a verbal noun of the same derivation as the perfect passive participle; *e.g.*:

	ACCUSATIVE	ABLATIVE
<b>vocō:</b>	<b>vocātum</b>	<b>vocātū</b>
<b>habeō:</b>	<b>habitum</b>	<b>habitū</b>
<b>mittō:</b>	<b>missum</b>	<b>missū</b>
<b>rapiō:</b>	<b>raptum</b>	<b>raptū</b>
<b>audiō:</b>	<b>audītum</b>	<b>auditū</b>

Deponents, as well as other verbs, form a supine; and in the case of all verbs, whether regular or irregular, there is found the same fixed relation between the forms of the supine and those of the perfect passive participle. Hence, to write the supine of a verb, it is necessary only to know the principal parts.

## MODEL SENTENCE

**Lēgātī vērērunt pacem petītum**, The envoys have come to sue for peace.

**RULE.** *In dependence upon a verb of motion, the supine in -um may be used to express Purpose.*

**NOTE.** In regard to the supine in **-um** in this use, observe carefully (1) that it depends upon a verb of *motion*, (2) that it requires no preposition, and (3) that it may itself govern an accusative. In order to become at once familiar with this new method of expressing purpose, watch for the opportunities to use it afforded by verbs of motion.

## MODEL SENTENCE

**Hoc optimum factū arbitror**, I think this best to do (*lit.* best as regards doing).

**RULE.** *The supine in -ū is used with a few adjectives as an Ablative of Specification.*

**REMARK.** The supine in **-um** is common enough ; but the use of the supine in **-ū** is very limited.

In connection with this Exercise, by way of review, write out all the participles, verbal nouns, and infinitives of some one deponent verb.

## VOCABULARY

<b>abeō</b> , -ire, -il, -itum est, <i>depart, go away.</i>	<b>Mediterrāneus</b> , -a, -um, <i>Mediterranean.</i>
<b>adhūc</b> , adv., <i>up to this time, still, yet.</i>	<b>pirāta</b> , -ae, m., <i>pirate.</i>
<b>cōpia</b> , -ae, f., <i>supply, abundance.</i>	<b>potior</b> , 4, -itus sum, <i>get possession of.</i> See the Rule in Exercise XXII.

## TRANSLATION

79. 1. If the farmers<sup>1</sup> should come here to buy grain, they would realize that we have the largest supply of everything.<sup>2</sup> 2. Wonderful<sup>3</sup> to say,<sup>4</sup> we shortly got possession of the town, though the townspeople had been informed that we had decided to spare no one. 3. Since some of the<sup>5</sup> hunters had gone into the valley to get water, we persuaded the leaders not to close<sup>6</sup> the gates. 4. When the fight had lasted<sup>7</sup> for a very long time, so many settlers had been killed that we were obliged to fall back.<sup>8</sup>

80. 1. We hear that in the country there are people<sup>9</sup> who have never seen a town. I hope that they will some day<sup>10</sup> come to New York. 2. Though he is surpassed in skill by his<sup>11</sup> brother, will you not allow him to go with us through the hills to hunt? 3. The son who helped<sup>12</sup> us was called Marcus; did you learn the name of the other? 4. We were marching through the valleys to<sup>13</sup> get possession of the fort, and up to this time had seen no one;<sup>14</sup> but now we had to rush<sup>15</sup> through a stream<sup>16</sup> which the enemy had filled with skiffs.

81. *Turning the Tables*

When Caesar<sup>1</sup> was still a young man, he was once sailing<sup>17</sup> on the Mediterranean Sea in a ship<sup>17</sup> which was captured by pirates. At once he<sup>18</sup> sent messengers to Rome to bring money with which to ransom<sup>19</sup> him. Meanwhile, being obliged<sup>20</sup> to remain<sup>21</sup> many days among the pirates, he used to declare<sup>22</sup> to them,<sup>23</sup> laughing, that they would soon pay the penalty.<sup>24</sup> They,<sup>25</sup> of course,<sup>26</sup> thought<sup>27</sup> that the man<sup>28</sup> was joking,<sup>29</sup> and, when the money was paid,<sup>30</sup> allowed him to depart unharmed.<sup>31</sup> He,<sup>18</sup> however, at once

summoned a fleet,<sup>32</sup> captured the pirates very easily, and ordered<sup>33</sup> them all killed.<sup>33</sup>

1. Be careful of the word order.

2. *i.e. all things.*

3. *mirābilis, -is, -e.* Use the neut. sing. nominative.

4. Cf. the second Model Sentence of this Exercise.

5. *some of the: quīdam* (pl.).

6. *claudō, 3, clausī, clausus.*

7. *the fight had lasted: passive of pugnō.*

8. Cf. Note 4 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XII.

9. Pl. of *homō* (masc.).

10. *some day: aliquandō* (adv.).

11. Omit.

12. Use *auxilium*.

13. *ut.*

14. Note that "and" precedes.

15. *currō.*

16. *flūmen.*

17. *he was . . . sailing . . . in a ship: lit., he was being carried (vehō) by a ship.*

18. *ille.*

19. *redimō, 3, -ēmi, -emptus.*

Turn the phrase into the passive. What kind of relative clause is this?

20. Use a *cum*-clause, and place the word for "meanwhile" within this phrase.

21. *moror.*

22. *dicō.*

23. *to them: omit.*

24. *poenās dō.*

25. Cf. footnote 25 on Exercise VIII.

26. *of course: scilicet.*

27. Imperfect tense.

28. *homō.*

29. *lūdō.*

30. *solvō, 3, solvī, solūtus.* Make this a participial phrase.

31. *i.e. safe.*

32. Use a (passive) participial phrase.

33. *ordered . . . killed: i.e. ordered . . . to be killed.*

## EXERCISE XXIX

(82-84)

### SUMMARY OF PURPOSE CONSTRUCTIONS — USE OF *Quō*

#### MODEL SENTENCES

- (ut and nē) (1) *Iuvenēs mihi trādidērunt, nē mātres flērent,* They handed over the young men to me, so that their mothers would not weep.

- (Relative) (2) **Militēs mittāmus, qui liberōs redūcant**, Let us send soldiers to bring back the children.
- (Gerundive) { (3) **Lēgātī ad pācem petendam vēnērunt**, Ambassadors have come to sue for peace.  
(4) **Pācis petendae causā rēx Rōmae est**, The king is at Rome for the purpose of suing for peace.
- (Gerund) { (5) **Colōnī in silvā ad vēnandum iērunt**, The settlers have gone into the forest to hunt.  
(6) **Germānī vēnandī causā in silvis habitant**, With a view to hunting, the Germans dwell in the forests.
- (Supine) { (7) **Nautae in silvā aquātum iērunt**, Sailors have gone into the forest to get water.
- (quō) { (8) **Ad collem properāte, quō facilius auxilium nostris ferātur**, Hasten to the hill, so that assistance may be given more easily to our men.

**RULE.** *Purpose clauses containing the comparative of an adjective or adverb are introduced by quō rather than by ut.*

**NOTE.** In purpose clauses of this last type, the comparative regularly stands next to quō, as in the Model Sentence.

In regard to the use of the above forms for the expression of purpose, the following points must be kept clearly in mind:

1. Negative purpose requires **nē**.
2. **Quō** replaces **ut** when there is a comparative in the purpose clause.
3. A relative pronoun is apt to be chosen when the governing clause contains a more or less indefinite expression to serve as antecedent.

4. The supine in **-um** can be construed with verbs of motion only. Furthermore, it is with verbs of this class that **ad** with the gerund or gerundive is mostly found.

REMARK. Remember that, in purpose clauses involving **ad** or **causā**, transitive verbs take the *gerundive* form, whereas intransitives are restricted to the *gerund* in all such phrases (cf. Exercise XXV).

## VOCABULARY

<b>cōnspectus</b> , -ūs, M., <i>sight</i> .	<b>iam</b> , adv., <i>already</i> .
<b>contendō</b> , 3, -tendī (-tentus), <i>proceed, start</i> .	<b>quō</b> , conj., <i>so that, in order that, in order to, so as to</i> .

## TRANSLATION

82. 1. Send men of greater courage from New York to reinforce<sup>1</sup> our army. 2. Did you think that the consuls' children had gone away to our gardens to play?<sup>2</sup> 3. The farmers and the hunters must labor with the greatest diligence, so that we may have a larger supply of food; then we shall very quickly get possession of more towns of the enemy. 4. Noticing this,<sup>3</sup> we realized that the pirates would obstruct<sup>4</sup> the bridges,<sup>5</sup> so that no one should use<sup>6</sup> the wagons. 5. We were in the country to see and to hear.

83. 1. The river was so deep<sup>7</sup> that the cattle could not cross; and so they were led into a smaller valley, that they might be cared for more easily. 2. I fear that we are not likely to go<sup>8</sup> to the country; but we do usually<sup>9</sup> go away from Rome at this season of the year. 3. If you thought that the men<sup>10</sup> who were in London were able to help<sup>11</sup> me only,<sup>12</sup> why did you not summon others<sup>13</sup> to bring back the hostages? 4. Since you were shouting through<sup>14</sup> fear, we did not care<sup>15</sup> to come ourselves, and did not send any one<sup>16</sup> else.<sup>17</sup>

84. *An Unsuccessful Undertaking*

Once when our army was about to break camp, several settlers decided to attempt to bring in<sup>18</sup> from the fields a supply of grain which had been left near a<sup>19</sup> farmhouse. Although the wagons were heavy,<sup>20</sup> the men arrived at the place without accident;<sup>21</sup> and, after a few hours, having gotten possession of<sup>22</sup> the grain, they started in good spirits<sup>23</sup> to return. But when our camp was already in sight, suddenly five soldiers sprang out<sup>24</sup> from the woods, and shot<sup>25</sup> their horses; then,<sup>26</sup> quickly setting fire to<sup>27</sup> the grain, they led away<sup>28</sup> the unfortunate<sup>29</sup> prisoners to a distant town.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Use <i>subsidium</i> .   | 15. <i>not care</i> : <i>nōlō</i> .  |
| 2. Translate in four ways.  | 16. <i>and . . . not . . . any one</i> :<br>combine into a phrase.   |
| 3. Use a relative, turning the<br>phrase into the passive.  | 17. <i>alius</i> .   |
| 4. <i>claudō</i> , 3, <i>clausi</i> , <i>clausus</i> .  | 18. <i>reportō</i> , 1.  |
| 5. Cf. again Remark 1 on p.<br>201.   | 19. <i>quidam</i> .  |
| 6. See the first sentence of<br>footnote 1 on Exercise V.   | 20. <i>Lit.</i> , of great weight.   |
| 7. <i>altus</i> .   | 21. <i>without accident</i> : <i>i.e. safely</i> .   |
| 8. <i>Lit.</i> , are not about to go.   | 22. Note that this calls for a<br>deponent verb.   |
| 9. See the Vocabulary of Ex-<br>ercise XXIII, with Note 1. Place<br>first in the clause (because of the<br>emphatic "do" of the English<br>expression). | 23. <i>in good spirits</i> : <i>laetus</i> .   |
| 10. Pl. of <i>is</i> .  | 24. <i>i.e. burst forth</i> .  |
| 11. Use <i>auxilium</i> .   | 25. <i>Lit.</i> , killed with weapons.   |
| 12. <i>sōlus</i> .  | 26. <i>then</i> : <i>lit., this</i> (use <i>rel.</i> )<br><i>having been done</i> .  |
| 13. <i>cēteri</i> or <i>alii</i> ?  | 27. <i>set fire to</i> : <i>ignem admoveō</i><br>(2, - <i>nōvī</i> , - <i>mōtus</i> ), with <i>dat.</i> Turn<br>the phrase into the passive. |
| 14. <i>i.e. because of</i> .  | 28. <i>dēdūcō</i> , 3, - <i>dūxī</i> , - <i>ductus</i> .   |
|   | 29. <i>Lit.</i> , wretched.  |



## EXERCISE XXX

(85-87)

## ABLATIVE OF WAY BY WHICH

## MODEL SENTENCES

**Fenestrā** puer ēvāsīt, The boy escaped by way of a window.

**Viā lātā Rōmam** contendērunt, Along a broad road they proceeded to Rome.

**RULE.** *Way by Which is expressed by the ablative case, without a preposition.*

**REMARK.** Way by Which may perhaps be regarded as a variety of Means.

## VOCABULARY

<b>angustus</b> , -a, -um, <i>narrow</i> .	<b>lātus</b> , -a, -um, <i>broad</i> .
<b>Arnoldius</b> , -di, M., <i>Arnold</i> .	<b>sēmita</b> , -ae, F., <i>footpath</i> ,
<b>fenestra</b> , -ae, F., <i>window</i> .	<i>path</i> .

**NOTE.** On the declension of **Arnoldius**, see Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VI.

## TRANSLATION

**85.** 1. Let us find a broader road, so that the soldiers may march more easily to New York. Do you not think this best to do?<sup>1</sup> 2. After hurrying<sup>2</sup> a few miles along a very narrow footpath, the settlers suddenly came in<sup>3</sup> sight of the town where the enemy's armies had encamped<sup>4</sup> for the winter.<sup>5</sup> 3. I hear that the men<sup>6</sup> who have just come<sup>7</sup> from Rome say that the city people<sup>8</sup> have<sup>9</sup> smaller windows. 4. Be not lacking<sup>10</sup> in courage,<sup>11</sup> though at times<sup>12</sup> the enemy seem to be so numerous<sup>13</sup> that they could<sup>14</sup> not be beaten by ten thousand<sup>15</sup> men.<sup>16</sup>

86. 1. If any one should declare war upon our state, the commanders<sup>17</sup> of the fleets would shortly proceed to Rome. 2. Escape by way of that gate, men; <sup>18</sup> for I fear that the enemy have gotten possession of nearly <sup>19</sup> the whole camp. 3. We were in the hills to get <sup>20</sup> berries so that the captain might have better <sup>21</sup> food. 4. Let us spare even <sup>22</sup> the children; for they will be useful to the generals' wives. 5. Since this path is narrow, the men of the other company must retreat <sup>23</sup> by another road.

### 87. *A Desperate Venture*

Once an officer named Arnold, a man of the greatest daring, led a small army over <sup>24</sup> the mountains into Canada, hoping <sup>25</sup> to capture there a large town which was held <sup>26</sup> by the British. Quietly he crossed the river at night; but when the soldiers had climbed the hill along rough <sup>27</sup> foot-paths, the enemy were found to be so superior in number that every one <sup>28</sup> believed that the town could not be taken by storm; <sup>29</sup> the Americans, however, decided to make the attempt. <sup>30</sup> In the battle Arnold was himself <sup>31</sup> wounded, and the army driven back. <sup>32</sup> But two years later, when a fierce fight was in progress <sup>33</sup> at Saratoga, this same <sup>34</sup> commander again met <sup>35</sup> the enemy on the battlefield, <sup>36</sup> and there won <sup>37</sup> a great victory. <sup>38</sup>

1. Supine.
2. Use the passive (In a cumulative clause).

3. *i.e. into*.
4. *castra pōnō, 3, posui, positus*.
5. Use *hiēmō* (gerund).
6. Pl. of *is*.
7. What mood?
8. *oppidāni*.

9. *Lit., use*.
10. *be lacking: dēficiō, 3, -fēcī (-fectus)*.

11. *animus*.
12. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXV.
13. *i.e. so many*.
14. Observe the Law of Sequence carefully.

15. What part of speech is the Latin word?
16. *mīles*.
17. *praefectus*, -ī, m.
18. *ferē*.
19. Remember that the word for "camp" is plural.
20. Use *causā*. Gerund or gerundive?
21. See the Note on p. 291.
22. *cēdō*, 3, *cessi*, *cessum est*.
23. *trāns*.
24. Cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III. What construction with the verb of "hoping"?
25. Indicative, by exception to the rule.
26. *asper*, -era, -erum.
27. Pl. of *omnis*.
28. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXI.
29. *make the attempt*: *cōnor*. Place first in the sentence, not forgetting what is said in footnote 5 on Exercise XIV.
30. Intensive pronoun.
31. Use a participial phrase, omitting the following "and."
32. *pellō*, 3, *pepuli*, *pulsus*.
33. *a fierce fight was in progress*: *pugnō* (pass.), with *ācritēr*.
34. *this same*: *īdem*.
35. *congregior*, 3, -*gressus sum*, with *cum* and *abl*. Use the perfect participle simply, omitting *est* and the conjunction (*lit.*, "having met . . . , won," etc.).
36. *on the battlefield*: *lit.*, *in battle line* (Vocabulary of Exercise XII).
37. *potior*.
38. *victōria*, -ae, f.

## EXERCISE XXXI

(88-90)

## PARTITIVE GENITIVE—RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

## MODEL SENTENCES

**Partem militum arcēssivī**, He summoned a part of the soldiers.

**Alterō in exercitū plūs erat virtūtis**, In the other army there was more courage (*lit.* more of courage).

**RULE.** *A word designating A PART may be modified by a genitive designating THE WHOLE (Partitive Genitive).*

**REMARK.** It is very easy to apply this rule to such a phrase as *pars militum*, because the English expression so closely parallels the Latin. But examples like *satis audaciae*, *plūs timōris*, etc., demand special study; for the idiomatic English renderings, "enough boldness," "more fear," etc., do not at all illuminate the *noun and dependent genitive* of the Latin construction.

## MODEL SENTENCES

**Sunt qui putent sē nōn satis pecūniae habere**, There are people who think that they have not enough money.

**Si erant quōs Cūriō timēret**, If there were any whom Curio feared.

**Nēmō erit quem audiātis**, There will be no one whom you will heed.

**RULE.** *The subjunctive is used in relative clauses dependent upon such general expressions of Existence and Non-existence as sunt and nēmō est (Subjunctive of Characteristic).*

**NOTE.** Observe that, when used as a general expression of existence, *sunt* requires no expressed subject; whereas, in the corresponding English phrases, the indefinite subject cannot thus be suppressed: e.g. *sunt qui* signifies "there are *men* who," "there are *some* who," "there are *those* who," etc.

**REMARK.** It is because the relative clause, in expressions of this type, is felt to "characterize" the subject of *sunt*, *est*, etc., that the name Relative Clause of Characteristic has been devised.

## VOCABULARY

**mora**, -ae, F., *delay*.

**parum**, adv., used as indecl.  
noun, *too little*.

**plūs**, **plūris**, N., *more*.

**satis**, adv., used as indecl.  
noun, *sufficient, enough, plenty*.

**similis**, -is, -e, *like, similar*;

may be construed with either the dative or the genitive.

**streptus**, -ūs, M., *noise, confusion*.

NOTE 1. An indeclinable noun (or adverb so employed) can be used only as a nominative or accusative singular. The gender is always neuter.

NOTE 2. For the declension of *plūs*, see the Summary of Forms, p. 350. Note how (as a *noun*) it corresponds to the already familiar plural adjective, *plūrēs*, -ēs, -a.

NOTE 3. *Similis*, with five other adjectives (namely, *dissimilis*, *facilis*, *difficilis*, *gracilis*, and *humilis*) makes its superlative in -*limus* (*i.e.* *simillimus*). When comparing something to a *person*, this adjective is preferably construed with the genitive.

#### TRANSLATION

88. 1. There was no one who thought that you would have too little grain. 2. If they should come by way of the other gate, you would need to hurry more swiftly to protect<sup>1</sup> the captain's tent. 3. If you hear<sup>2</sup> any noise, shout at once; there will be men<sup>4</sup> who will dare, with Curio for leader, to come along this narrow road. 4. Caesar made a braver man captain, so that the regiment would have more boldness.

89. 1. Though you have come to hunt merely,<sup>5</sup> you are very like one of my brothers, and I shall not reprove<sup>6</sup> you. 2. Did he fear that I could not find sufficient words to use<sup>7</sup> in behalf of<sup>8</sup> the kings of these nations? 3. If there are any whom<sup>9</sup> the enemy have so<sup>10</sup> terrified that they cannot<sup>11</sup> fight, send them all to Rome without delay. 4. Try<sup>12</sup> to get possession of that fort at once, captain; for larger forces are already<sup>13</sup> marching from Rome. 5. For the greater part of the day let us sit in the shade of the trees to watch.

#### 90. *A Chip of the Old Block*

"Once," said the soldier to the generals' children, "there<sup>4</sup> came into our camp a boy about eleven years old, who

told<sup>14</sup> the captain that his<sup>4</sup> father had been captured by the enemy, and that he too wanted to become a soldier. Hearing this,<sup>15</sup> the captain laughed, but the boy refused to leave.<sup>16</sup> So,<sup>17</sup> securing<sup>18</sup> weapons, the lad<sup>19</sup> marched with the soldiers; and when an attack was made<sup>20</sup> upon a certain fort, he hid under a tree, and began to fire at<sup>21</sup> the enemy. In this<sup>22</sup> way he wounded so many men<sup>4</sup> that several soldiers noticed it,<sup>23</sup> and one of them tried<sup>24</sup> to kill him with an ax. But the boy fought the whole day, and returned to camp in safety, carrying the arms<sup>25</sup> which he had taken from<sup>26</sup> the enemy."

1. Use *praesidium* (in an ut-clause).

2. Cf. footnote 6 on Exercise XVII.

3. *any noise: lit., anything of noise.* See the Vocabulary of Exercise XVII.

4. Omit.

5. *to hunt merely: cf. Note 1 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXIV.* Do not forget to use the supine, when occasion offers.

6. *castigō, 1.*

7. Relative clause.

8. *in behalf of: prō, prep., with the abl.*

9. Cf. the second group of Model Sentences in this Exercise.

10. *adeō (adv.).*

11. See the Note on the Rule in Exercise VI

12. Note that this calls for a deponent verb.

13. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXIX.

14. *dicō (with dat.).*

15. Use a relative, turning the phrase into the passive.

16. *i.e. go away.*

17. *i.e. and so.*

18. *Lit., having gotten possession of.* Note that this calls for a deponent verb.

19. Use *ille*.

20. Use a participial phrase.

21. *tēla mittō in.*

22. *Lit., which (rel.).*

23. *it: lit., the thing.*

24. This clause, too, is a part of the construction introduced by "that."

25. *carrying the arms: lit., with the arms.*

26. *ab.*

## EXERCISE XXXII

(91-93)

## NUMERALS

In connection with this Exercise, learn the cardinal and ordinal numerals from 21 to 100 inclusive (see Summary of Forms, p. 353), giving special attention to those which are formed by subtraction, *e.g.* *duodētrīgintā*, "twenty-eight" (*lit.* "two from thirty").

## VOCABULARY

<i>accēdō</i> , 3, - <i>cessi</i> , - <i>cessum</i> est,	used as indecl. noun,
<i>approach</i> , <i>come up</i> ; con-	<i>less</i> .
strued with <i>ad</i> and the	<i>nihil</i> , indecl. noun, N., <i>noth-</i>
acc. <i>propius accēdere</i> , <i>to</i>	<i>ing</i> .
<i>come nearer</i> .	<i>prope</i> , adv., <i>near</i> .
<i>minus</i> , adv. (comparative),	<i>venēnum</i> , -i, N., <i>poison</i> .

NOTE. On the syntax of *minus* and *nihil*, see Note 1 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXI.

## TRANSLATION

91. 1. I had wanted to bring<sup>1</sup> more<sup>2</sup> grass; but until now<sup>3</sup> they have sent only twenty horses. 2. When they had wintered<sup>4</sup> in New York for four years, the twenty-third and forty-sixth regiments<sup>5</sup> were suddenly summoned to London. 3. Though there will be some who will want<sup>6</sup> to go<sup>7</sup> by way of the third gate, we must guard that also, so that the regiments of the whole army will be safer.<sup>8</sup> 4. Let's go into the garden to work. Do you use baskets to cover<sup>9</sup> the flowers? 5. We then shall have seen<sup>10</sup> the very<sup>11</sup> soldiers who reënforced<sup>12</sup> your line.

92. 1. If there are men<sup>13</sup> whom you are willing to send, summon at once the inhabitants of two cities; for I fear that the sailors will attempt to destroy<sup>14</sup> the bridges with fire. 2. If we should find sixty like<sup>15</sup> Curio, there would be less<sup>16</sup> fear in our army. 3. We urged the general not to buy more grain, so that we might travel with greater speed. 4. Since they have tried to injure the hunters' cattle thus, we shall set out from the camp by another path to get water.

### 93. *Catching a Tartar*

Many years ago,<sup>17</sup> some pirates, who had captured a ship on the Mediterranean Sea, proceeded<sup>18</sup> without delay into the cabin<sup>19</sup> to look for food. There,<sup>20</sup> however, they met the captain's<sup>21</sup> wife, a woman of the greatest determination,<sup>22</sup> who said that she had<sup>23</sup> no<sup>24</sup> food to give<sup>25</sup> them, but that there was plenty of poison in the chest<sup>26</sup> which<sup>27</sup> she would be glad to<sup>28</sup> present.

The enraged pirates next<sup>29</sup> tried to get possession of a very beautiful flag;<sup>30</sup> but the woman placed<sup>31</sup> it<sup>32</sup> in a box<sup>33</sup> and sat upon it,<sup>34</sup> saying<sup>34</sup> that she would kill the man<sup>35</sup> who came nearer.<sup>36</sup> Realizing that they could accomplish<sup>37</sup> nothing, the pirates<sup>38</sup> shortly withdrew from the cabin, and did not again<sup>39</sup> trouble<sup>40</sup> the captain's<sup>41</sup> wife.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. vehō.  | 7. abeō.   |
| 2. What part of speech is the Latin word for "more" (sing.)?  | 8. tūtus. Be careful about the word order.               |
| 3. <i>until now: i.e. up to this time.</i>                    | 9. tegō, 3, tēxī, tēctus. Use a phrase introduced by ad. |
| 4. Use the passive.   | 10. Future perfect tense.                                |
| 5. Pl., though both the modifying expressions are singular.   | 11. <i>the very:</i> is ipse.                            |
| 6. Review, if necessary, the grammar lesson of Exercise XXXI. | 12. Use subsidium, with veniō                            |
|   | 13. Omit.  |
|   | 14. cōnsūmō.   |



15. Agreeing with the word for "men," which is understood with "sixty."
16. See the Vocabulary of this Exercise.
17. See Note I on the Vocabulary of Exercise XVI.
18. *contendō*.
19. *camera*, -ae, F.
20. *Lit.*, *where* (cf. footnote 32 on Exercise XXI).
21. *praefectus*, -i, M.
22. *fortitūdō*.
23. Translate in two ways, keeping in mind footnote 10 on Exercise XXIII.
24. Use *nihil*.
25. *trādō*, 3, -*dīdī*, -*dītus* (with dat.). Make this a relative clause.
26. *cista*, -ae, F.
27. *Lit.*, and *it* (*i.e.* the poison).
28. Use *libenter*.
29. *tum*.
30. *vēxillum*, -i, N.
31. *pōnō*, 3, *posuī*, *positus* (with in and abl.).
32. Use a relative.
33. *i.e.* the box. Use the ablative case.
34. Cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III.
35. *the man* : *is*.
36. Pluperfect subjunctive (*lit.*, *who should have come nearer*). What determines the mood here?
37. *Lit.*, *that they were* 'accomplishing' (*efficiō*, 3, -*fēcī*, -*fectus*).
38. Be careful about the word order.
39. Use *postea*.
40. Use *molestus*, -a, -um, with dat. (*i.e.* *were not troublesome to*).

## EXERCISE XXXIII

(94-96)

## REVIEW OF EXERCISES XXVIII TO XXXII

## VOCABULARY

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>comes</b> , - <b>itis</b> , c., <i>companion</i> .  | <b>Plinius</b> , - <b>nī</b> , M., <i>Pliny</i> .                 |
| <b>imperō</b> , 1, - <b>āvī</b> , - <b>ātum est</b> , <i>give orders</i> ; governs either the dative or a purpose clause introduced by <b>ut</b> or <b>nē</b> , or both. | <b>portus</b> , - <b>ūs</b> , M., <i>bay</i> .                    |
|  | <b>solvō</b> , 3, <b>solvī</b> , <b>solūtus</b> , <i>loose</i> .  |
|  | <b>nāvem</b> (- <b>ēs</b> ) <b>solvere</b> , <i>to set sail</i> . |
|  | <b>Vesuvius</b> , - <b>vī</b> , M., <i>Vesuvius</i> .             |

NOTE 1. Observe that the construction with *imperō* is quite like that with *persuādeō*. On the other hand, its construction must be contrasted very sharply with that of *iubeō*, particularly as *imperō* and *iubeō* are so similar in meaning. If, in translating into Latin, *imperō* is used always (and only) as the rendering for "give orders," there will be little danger either of missing the dative with that verb (cf. the Rule in Exercise IX), or of becoming confused concerning the familiar construction with *iubeō*.

NOTE 2. On the declension of *Plinius* and *Vesuvius*, see Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VI.

## TRANSLATION

94. 1. Why are you giving orders to them not to set out from home? 2. If you have gotten possession of seventy or eighty or ninety baskets, go<sup>1</sup> at once to fetch<sup>2</sup> the wagons. 3. Although the general fears that you will not spare the senate, the king has twice given orders that no one<sup>3</sup> injure the senators.<sup>4</sup> 4. Since there is no one who has less courage than<sup>5</sup> strength,<sup>6</sup> we shall all proceed to the country, and never return to Rome. 5. Through<sup>7</sup> doors<sup>8</sup> and windows the bolder pirates flee, and perhaps in<sup>9</sup> a few hours, by hastening, they will have escaped<sup>10</sup> into the mountains.

95. 1. Poison is perhaps useful to pirates<sup>11</sup> for (the business of)<sup>12</sup> murdering;<sup>13</sup> but good men should shun<sup>14</sup> it. 2. The others are about to go a journey<sup>15</sup> of several days into the woods to fight; but *we* shall remain at London to meet our<sup>16</sup> brothers. 3. Because of the confusion, the men<sup>17</sup> could not hear the captain, who was giving orders to a part of the line not to fall back. 4. While<sup>18</sup> one of the sailors was finding plenty of grain and all<sup>19</sup> too little money, the others seized the horses. 5. Come nearer, please, so that I may see better.

96. *A Time of Peril*

Pliny says that one day, when he<sup>18</sup> was<sup>19</sup> yet<sup>20</sup> a young man, his<sup>18</sup> mother suddenly noticed in the sky a black cloud of great extent.<sup>21</sup> Pliny's uncle<sup>22</sup> at that time<sup>23</sup> was commander<sup>24</sup> of a fleet; and<sup>25</sup> when he<sup>25</sup> was informed that the cloud was rising<sup>26</sup> from Vesuvius,<sup>27</sup> he boarded a ship without delay, and set out for the other shore of the bay<sup>28</sup> to save the farmers. When, however, he was ready to return from there,<sup>29</sup> he could not set sail because of adverse winds,<sup>30</sup> and never afterward<sup>31</sup> saw his relatives.<sup>32</sup> For he died a few hours later on the shore, although his<sup>18</sup> companions escaped. Meanwhile, at home, Pliny and his mother were afraid<sup>33</sup> that even<sup>34</sup> they<sup>35</sup> would be killed; for the wind carried the ashes<sup>36</sup> many miles across the bay.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>Lit.</i> , set out.  | 17. Do not forget to use <i>dum</i> , as occasion offers.  |
| 2. <i>addūcō</i> , 3, <i>-dūxī</i> , <i>-ductus</i> .              | 18. Use <i>ipse</i> .  |
| 3. <i>that no one</i> : introducing what kind of clause?           | 19. On what verb does the "when" clause depend?  |
| 4. <i>senātor</i> , <i>-ōris</i> , M.                              | 20. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXVIII.   |
| 5. <i>quam</i> (adv.).   | 21. <i>lātītūdō</i> , <i>-inis</i> , F.  |
| 6. Pl. of <i>vis</i> , in the same case as the word for "courage." | 22. <i>avunculus</i> , <i>-ī</i> , M.  |
| 7. <i>i.e.</i> by way of.  | 23. <i>at that time</i> : <i>i.e.</i> then.  |
| 8. <i>porta</i> .  | 24. <i>praefectus</i> , <i>-ī</i> , M.   |
| 9. <i>i.e.</i> within.   | 25. <i>and . . . he</i> : use <i>qui</i> .   |
| 10. See footnote 10 on Exercise XXXII.                             | 26. <i>orior</i> , 4, <i>ortus sum</i> .   |
| 11. <i>to pirates</i> : put first in the sentence.                 | 27. <i>from Vesuvius</i> : put first in the indirect discourse.  |
| 12. Omit.  | 28. Put the gen. next after the preposition, and the adjective after the other noun.                     |
| 13. <i>i.e.</i> killing.   | 29. <i>from there</i> : <i>inde</i> .  |
| 14. <i>vītō</i> , 1.   | 30. <i>ventus</i> ( <i>-ī</i> , M.) <i>adversus</i> ( <i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> ). Put first in the clause. |
| 15. Note that Extent of Space may be expressed by a single word.   |  |
| 16. <i>miles</i> .   |  |

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 31. <i>postea</i> .                                    | 34. See the Vocabulary of Ex-                      |
| 32. <i>his relatives</i> : <i>sui</i> , <i>-orum</i> , | ercise XXV.  |
| M.   | 35. Use <i>ipse</i> (masc.).                       |
| 33. Imperfect tense.                                   | 36. <i>cinis</i> , <i>-eris</i> , M. Use the sing. |

## EXERCISE XXXIV

(97-99)

NUMERALS (*continued*) — HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

In connection with this Exercise, learn how to form the cardinal and ordinal numerals from 101 to 1000 inclusive (see the Summary of Forms, p. 354).

## MODEL SENTENCE

*In silvā nē maneāmus*, Let us not remain in the forest.

**RULE.** *The negative of the Hortatory Subjunctive is nē.*

## VOCABULARY

<b>Aurēlius</b> , -a, -um, <i>Aurelian</i> .	<b>piscor</b> , I, <i>fish</i> .
<b>dubitō</b> , I, -āvi, -ātum est,	<b>praedium</b> , -i, N., <i>plantation</i> .
<i>hesitate</i> ; may be con-	<b>servus</b> , -i, M., <i>slave</i> .
strued with the comple-	
mentary infinitive.	

## TRANSLATION

97. 1. Let's not set sail without our<sup>1</sup> companions and the other part of the army. Have you not been informed that six hundred<sup>2</sup> Indians have already boldly<sup>3</sup> crossed the bay? 2. If there is no one who prefers, by daring,<sup>4</sup> to have plenty of food, I think that we ought all to go<sup>5</sup> home at once; for an army of little courage<sup>6</sup> can<sup>7</sup> never conquer an enemy so<sup>8</sup> superior in number. 3. Though eighteen companies had been sent from Rome by Caesar along the Aurelian

way, we were on the point of summoning other<sup>9</sup> forces also, so that our men would fight more willingly.<sup>10</sup> 4. There was a rush<sup>11</sup> to the stream to save the boy.

98. 1. Since four hundred and ten men<sup>12</sup> have already been killed<sup>13</sup> or wounded, let us not hesitate any<sup>1</sup> longer to retire.<sup>14</sup> 2. This bench is so long that it cannot be filled by twelve baskets. 3. If there are<sup>7</sup> some who think that we ought to remain in New York to work, please say<sup>15</sup> that we have gone to the country to fish. 4. Let's not use the wagons at this time;<sup>16</sup> for as yet<sup>17</sup> the horses have had<sup>18</sup> no<sup>19</sup> grain. 5. Don't hesitate to go soon to the assistance<sup>20</sup> of the other line; for meanwhile no one will have aided it.

### 99. *Spartacus*

In Italy slaves would often run away<sup>21</sup> from the plantations; and<sup>22</sup> whoever<sup>23</sup> were caught, were killed by their<sup>1</sup> masters.<sup>24</sup> Once several gladiators,<sup>25</sup> who had been quartered<sup>26</sup> at Capua, under the leadership of a slave<sup>27</sup> named Spartacus determined<sup>28</sup> to be free;<sup>29</sup> and when they had fled secretly<sup>30</sup> from Capua to Mt.<sup>31</sup> Vesuvius, many other<sup>32</sup> slaves ventured<sup>4</sup> to run away<sup>21</sup> from home to join<sup>33</sup> them. Thus<sup>34</sup> in a few months Spartacus became leader of an army so large that the Romans were thoroughly aroused.<sup>35</sup> At times there was very fierce fighting;<sup>36</sup> but finally the slaves were so decisively<sup>37</sup> beaten by Crassus that the peasants<sup>38</sup> no longer<sup>39</sup> needed to fear that farmhouses would be burned<sup>40</sup> at night, and that their<sup>1</sup> cattle and horses would be stolen by the enemy.

1. Omit.
2. Do not forget that the Latin words for "hundreds" (excepting *centum*) are declinable.

3. *audācter*.
4. *audeō*.
5. Be careful of the spelling.
6. *animus*.

7. Future tense.
8. *tantō* (adv.).
9. See the Remark on p. 210.
10. *i.e. more readily*. Note that this stands in a purpose clause.
11. Use *concurrō*, 3, -*currī*, -*cursum est*. Render the following purpose clause in three ways (not ut).
12. *miles*.
13. Express the form of *sum* with the second participle only.
14. See Note 4 on p. 240.
15. If the sing. is used, be careful of the spelling. Place before the word for "please."
16. *i.e. now*.
17. *i.e. up to this time*.
18. *i.e. have eaten*.
19. Use *nihil*.
20. Use *auxilium* (with the verb *eō*).
21. *aufugiō*, 3, -*fūgī*.
22. Use *autem*.
23. Use the relative simply.
24. *dominus*, -*i*, M.
25. *gladiātor*, -*oris*, M.
26. *collocō* (with locative case).
27. Recast the phrase so as to use the noun *dux* (expressing thus the idea of "leadership").
28. *i.e. decided*.
29. *to be free*: use the idiom *sē liberāre* (*liberō*, 1), *lit.* "to set one's self free."
30. *clam*.
31. Neither abbreviated nor written with a capital in Latin.
32. *ceteri* or *alii*? Place the other modifier after the noun.
33. *to join*: use the idiom *sē coniungere* (*coniungō*, 3, -*iūnxī*, -*iūctus*), with *cum* and *abl.* (*lit.* "to join one's self with").
34. *Lit., in which (rel.) way*.
35. *thoroughly aroused*: *permōtus*, -*a*, -*um*.
36. Use *pugnō*, with the superl. of *ācriter*.
37. *so decisively*: *tantā clāde* (*lit.* "with such disaster").
38. *colōnus*.
39. *no longer*: *lit., not longer*.
40. Use a participial phrase, omitting the following "and that."

## EXERCISE XXXV

(100-102)

SUMMARY OF GERUND AND GERUNDIVE  
CONSTRUCTIONS

Various uses of the gerund and gerundive have been treated in preceding Exercises. Each of these special uses, with others, finds a place in the schemes which follow.

## THE GERUND

As already shown, the gerund is a verbal *noun*. found only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. All these forms of the gerund are used in regular noun constructions; but the dative is so seldom found that it is excluded from the present discussion.

## MODEL SENTENCES

## GENITIVE

**facultās aquandī**, The opportunity of getting water.

**aquandī causā**, For the purpose of getting water.

## ACCUSATIVE

**ad aquandum**, For getting water (To get water).

## ABLATIVE

**pugnandō evādunt**, They escape by fighting.

**pugnandō superant**, They excel in fighting.

**dē pugnandō nihil audīvi**, I have heard nothing about fighting.

NOTE 1. In the first group of models above, **facultās aquandī** has been rendered very literally. More idiomatic translations are: "opportunity *for* getting water," and "opportunity *to* get water." In turning such phrases back into Latin, the only security against error is to have firmly fixed in mind the fact that **facultās** and nouns of similar meaning govern a *genitive* construction.

NOTE 2. The accusative of the gerund is used only with a preposition, mostly **ad**.

NOTE 3. In the last group of Model Sentences, observe how the first two ablatives express Means and Specification. The prepositions used with this case of the gerund are **ab**, **dē**, **ex**, and **in**.

## THE GERUNDIVE

The gerundive is an *adjective*, and has two main uses :

1. IN CONNECTION WITH the verb **sum**, the gerundive indicates that a thing ought, needs, must, or should be done. Intransitive verbs (impersonal in the passive) find here the sole use for their single gerundive form, namely, the nominative and accusative neuter in **-um**, *e.g.* **pugnandum est**, **persuādendum esse**, etc.

2. APART FROM the verb **sum** (expressed or implied), the gerundive of transitive verbs commonly lacks the notion "should," "ought," etc., being used with great frequency in phrases which, in meaning and form, very closely parallel the gerund constructions made by intransitive verbs (or by transitive verbs used absolutely; cf. the Remark in Exercise XXV). In these gerundive uses, too, the dative figures so little that it is not included in the present discussion.

## MODEL SENTENCES

## GENITIVE

**facultās aquae petendae**, The opportunity of getting water.  
**aquae petendae causā**, For the purpose of getting water.

## ACCUSATIVE

**ad aquam petendam**, For getting water (To get water).

## ABLATIVE

**dolōre ferendō defessi sumus**, We are worn out with bearing pain.

**dolōre ferendō nōs superant**, They excel us in bearing pain.

**dē dolōre ferendō librum scripsit**, He wrote a book on bearing pain.



REMARK. Working through the above examples one by one, note how the gerundive is everywhere simply an adjective modifier taking the form determined for it by the noun standing in the genitive, accusative, or ablative case. And always keep in mind the fact that only *transitive* verbs possess the gerundive forms necessary for the construction of such phrases.

NOTE. The same prepositions used with the ablative of the gerund are found also with ablative gerundive phrases.

#### VOCABULARY

Brundisium, -si, n., the name of a town in Italy.	tot, indecl. adj., <i>so many,</i> <i>so numerous.</i>
explōrātor, -ōris, m., <i>scout.</i>	vereor, 2, veritus sum, <i>fear.</i>
facultās, -ātis, f., <i>opportunity,</i> <i>chance.</i>	Perf. partic., veritus, -a, -um, used with the force of a present, <i>fearing.</i>
forte, adv., <i>by chance.</i>	
perfuga, -ae, m., <i>deserter.</i>	

NOTE 1. For the locative of Brundisium, see Remark 1 on p. 247.

NOTE 2. On the force of veritus, see the Note on ratus, p. 270. Do not forget to employ with veritus, and other forms of vereor, the construction called for by verbs of Fearing.

NOTE 3. Observe that tot provides a short and convenient substitute for tam multi.

#### TRANSLATION

100. 1. Let us not send the horsemen to bring back the deserters; for they<sup>1</sup> are now busied<sup>2</sup> with caring for their<sup>3</sup> horses. 2. In a few hours you will have had an opportunity to sit in the shade, captain; but now, though you have been wounded with so many arrows, we must not hesitate to give orders to the whole army to proceed<sup>4</sup> at once to London. 3. If there is<sup>5</sup> a chance to look for slaves, not

even the horsemen will surpass us in speed.<sup>6</sup> 4. If we should inform the general that five hundred and fifty men, who were lately<sup>7</sup> with us, are now hurrying to the camp of the enemy's armies, he would say that there are not enough horsemen in Brundisium<sup>8</sup> to capture<sup>9</sup> so many deserters.

101. 1. Since wagons can travel<sup>10</sup> along this narrow way very easily, we need not find some other<sup>11</sup> method<sup>12</sup> of bringing<sup>13</sup> the grain. 2. If we proceed<sup>6</sup> from the plantation several miles through the valleys, there will be a chance to hunt and fish. 3. There are some people whom<sup>14</sup> we hear are trying to get possession of the money, so that they may have<sup>15</sup> more<sup>16</sup> slaves. 4. Thus it happened<sup>17</sup> that they were talking about building<sup>18</sup> ships. But we already have ten, and I think that the townspeople have been informed of the situation<sup>19</sup> and (that they)<sup>2</sup> will send eight other vessels to reënforce us.

### 102. *The Scout's Escape*

"Many years ago,"<sup>16</sup> said the soldier to the consul's sons, "a<sup>20</sup> scout set out from New York to join<sup>21</sup> our army; and,<sup>22</sup> as<sup>23</sup> he<sup>22</sup> was a man of the greatest daring, he was sent a few days later across the river, and remained<sup>24</sup> several hours in the enemy's camp. When he was ready to return, he quietly withdrew to the woods during the night,<sup>25</sup> but could not find the skiff which he had left on the river. While he was thus at a loss,<sup>26</sup> suddenly he heard the barking<sup>27</sup> of a dog, and fearing<sup>28</sup> that he would be caught by the enemy, he at once advanced silently<sup>29</sup> into the water, and there<sup>30</sup> by chance found another skiff. The dog, which had now come to the bank, swam after<sup>31</sup> the skiff, and seized it with his<sup>32</sup> teeth.<sup>33</sup> But the scout killed the animal<sup>34</sup> with his<sup>3</sup> dagger,<sup>35</sup> and returned shortly in safety to our camp."

1. Express the subject.
2. occupātus, -a, -um.
3. Omit.
4. *i.e. advance.*
5. Cf. footnote 6 on Exercise XVII.
6. Use *proporō*.
7. *modo*.
8. Be careful of the spelling.
9. *i.e. for (ad) capturing.*
10. Pass. of *dūcō*.
11. *some other: alius.*
12. *ratio, -ōnis, f.*
13. *vehō*.
14. Model this phrase on *sunt quī* ("there are some people *who*").
15. If a dat. is used, the reflexive (*sui*) is the pronoun required.
16. Be careful about the word order.
17. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XVI.
18. *i.e. making.*
19. *Lit., about the (hīc) matter.*
- Do not place last in the clause.
20. *quidam.*
21. Cf. footnote 33 on Exercise XXXIV.
22. *and . . . he: use quī.*
23. *i.e. since.*
24. *and remained: lit., where he remained.* Punctuate the preceding clause with a semicolon.
25. *during the night: use an adv.*
26. *be at a loss: haereō, 2, haesi.*
27. *lātrātus, -ūs, m.*
28. Translate in two ways.
29. *Lit., without noise* (see the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXI).
30. *and there: lit., where; cf. footnote 24 above.*
31. *Lit., by swimming followed.*
32. *suus, -a, -um.*
33. *dēns, dentis, m.*
34. *Lit., the dog.* Make this clause a (passive) participial phrase.
35. *sica, -ae, f.*

## EXERCISE XXXVI

(103-105)

## INDIRECT QUESTIONS

Just as a STATEMENT may either be reported verbatim (Direct Discourse) or quoted indirectly (Indirect Discourse), so a QUESTION may be reported either in the direct or in an indirect form, *e.g.*:

Direct form: "*Why are you waiting?*" asked Marcus.

Indirect form: Marcus wanted to know *why they were waiting*.

In the above, note that, even in the indirect form, the interrogative word "why" is still retained — a fact that shows instantly that we are dealing with a quoted *question*, and not with a quoted *statement*. Consequently, even though some verbs (*e.g.* "to know") are capable, on occasion, of governing either construction, still the absence or presence of an interrogative in a given clause shows at once whether or not that clause is an indirect *question*.

## MODEL SENTENCES

Caesar audire vult	{	quid lēgātus faciat.
Caesar wants to know		what the captain is doing.
	{	cūr lēgātus abierit.
		why the captain has gone.
Caesar mē rogābat	{	ubi lēgātus esset.
Caesar was asking me		where the captain was.
	{	quis lēgātum vidisset.
		who had seen the captain.

**RULE.** *The verb of an Indirect Question stands in the subjunctive mood.*

**NOTE.** Observe that Indirect Questions employ all tenses of the subjunctive, and with the same force as seen in causal *cum*-clauses (Exercise VI). Watch with special care for cases where the Law of Sequence calls for the use of the *perfect* subjunctive.

## VOCABULARY

centuriō, -ōnis, m., <i>centurion</i> .	quō, interrog. and rel. adv.,
iniquus, -a, -um, <i>unfavorable</i> .	<i>whither, where</i> . As rel.
quisque, quaeque, quidque,	adv. beginning a new sen-
adj. and noun, <i>each, each</i>	tence, <i>there</i> .
<i>man</i> . See the Summary	rogō, I, <i>ask, inquire</i> .
of Forms, p. 358.	

NOTE. *Quō* is found only with verbs of motion. Hence it is only when "where" is used loosely for "whither" that it can be rendered by *quō*; and, conversely, whenever "where" *does* stand for "whither," it *must* be rendered by *quō*; for *ubi* cannot be used with verbs of motion. Cf. the Note on *hūc*, p. 255.

In the same way, "there" as a rendering for relative *quō* at the beginning of a new sentence is loose for "thither." And even "thither," thus used, is not a real translation of *quō* itself, but rather of the demonstrative adverb (*eō*) for which *quō* stands; for just as Latin, in beginning a new sentence, is prone to substitute a relative pronoun for a demonstrative (*e.g.* *quod cum fecisset*, "when he had done *this*"), in like manner a relative adverb is often substituted for a demonstrative adverb.

#### TRANSLATION

103. 1. Do not inquire why they<sup>1</sup> have gone to their seats.<sup>2</sup> I fear that *you* too will soon have opportunity to sit. 2. If by chance the hunter should come from the country, Quintus, and inquire where I am, please ask<sup>3</sup> him what he wants. 3. On that day I asked the captain where the prisoners were, and he<sup>4</sup> replied<sup>5</sup> that he had killed all the men,<sup>6</sup> sparing<sup>7</sup> only<sup>8</sup> the consul's son. 4. Because of the drought,<sup>9</sup> we have at the present time<sup>10</sup> too little food; but I hope that shortly there will be an opportunity to<sup>11</sup> look for grain.

104. 1. Did you learn why a rush had been made<sup>12</sup> to the gates to escape?<sup>13</sup> 2. Let us not think<sup>14</sup> at this time of<sup>14</sup> making<sup>15</sup> war; yet<sup>16</sup> each man should get a supply of<sup>17</sup> arms. 3. If there are any whom the king has ordered to fight on<sup>18</sup> ground so unfavorable, we shall go very gladly to their assistance,<sup>19</sup> in order that the confidence<sup>20</sup> of the enemy may be less. 4. The deserters were so many<sup>21</sup> that we gave orders to the captains not to try to find out where they<sup>1</sup> had gone.<sup>22</sup>

105. *An Example of Good Discipline*

When our soldiers had sailed across the bay, and had landed<sup>23</sup> from the ship, the enemy, who were not<sup>24</sup> much superior in number, suddenly made a fierce attack upon the companies. The centurions, fearing that they<sup>25</sup> would have to fight on<sup>26</sup> unfavorable ground, nevertheless<sup>27</sup> gave orders to their men<sup>28</sup> to try to gain<sup>29</sup> a small hill not far away,<sup>30</sup> and to form in a circle<sup>31</sup> there. When this<sup>32</sup> was done, the enemy repeatedly<sup>33</sup> attacked every part<sup>34</sup> of our line in vain; <sup>35</sup> for<sup>36</sup> each of our soldiers had made up his mind<sup>37</sup> either<sup>38</sup> to die<sup>39</sup> there or<sup>40</sup> to be saved along with all the rest.<sup>41</sup> So it happened that the horsemen, who were coming in haste<sup>42</sup> over the mountain by rough<sup>43</sup> roads to reënforce the companies, suddenly attacked the enemy in the rear,<sup>44</sup> and soon put them to flight<sup>45</sup> with great loss.<sup>46</sup>

1. ille.
2. *to their seats: lit., to take a seat (sedeō).*
3. For variety, use the verb *quaerō*, which, in the sense "inquire," governs *ex* with abl. of the person. Put this part of the clause before the word for "please."
4. Express the subject.
5. *dicō*.
6. *homō* or *vir*?
7. *sparing: lit., and (that he, had spared.*
8. Do not use an adv.
9. *siccitās, -ātis, f.*
10. *i.e. now.*
11. See Note 1 on p. 308.
12. Use *concurrō* (3, -*curri*, -*cursum est*). How many interrogative clauses are there in this sentence?
13. Not an *ut*-clause.
14. *think . . . of: cōgitō, 1, with dē and the abl.*
15. *inferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātus.*
16. See Note 3 on p. 219.
17. *get a supply of: parō, 1.*
18. With the ablatives *locō* and *locis* the prep. *in* is often omitted.
19. What case of *auxilium*?
20. *fidūcia, -ae, f.*
21. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXV.
22. *Lit., had proceeded.* In wording this clause, note the presence of the verb of motion.
23. Use *ēgredior, 3, -gressus sum.*
24. *haud.*
25. Reflexive pronoun (*suī*).

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 26. <i>sui, -orum, m.</i>                | 36. <i>either . . . or: aut . . . aut.</i> |
| 27. <i>capio.</i>                        | 37. Be careful of the spelling.            |
| 28. <i>haud longinquus.</i>              | 38. <i>the rest: omit.</i>                 |
| 29. <i>in orbem (orbis, -is, m.)</i>     | 39. <i>i.e. quickly.</i>                   |
| <i>cōsistō (3, -stiti, -stitum est).</i> | 40. <i>asper, -era, -erum.</i>             |
| 30. Use a relative, making this          | 41. <i>in the rear: ā tergō.</i>           |
| a participial phrase.                    | 42. Note that this clause too              |
| 31. <i>identidem (adv.).</i>             | is a part of the construction intro-       |
| 32. <i>i.e. all parts.</i>               | duced by "that."                           |
| 33. <i>in vain: frūstrā.</i>             | 43. <i>Lit., a great loss (dētrimen-</i>   |
| 34. Cf. footnote 5 on Exercise           | <i>tum, -i, n.) having been sustained</i>  |
| XIV.                                     | <i>(accipio, 3, -cēpi, -ceptus). Do</i>    |
| 35. <i>i.e. had decided.</i>             | not place last in the sentence.            |

## EXERCISE XXXVII

(106-108)

## THE THIRD PERSON REFLEXIVES

A reflexive pronoun or reflexive possessive adjective is one that "refers back" to the subject of a clause or sentence. For the third person, these reflexives are respectively *sui* and *suus, -a, -um*.

## MODEL SENTENCES

*Rēx sē interfēcīt,* The king killed himself.

*Rēx filium suum interfēcīt,* The king killed his son.

**RULE.** *The third person reflexive pronoun and possessive adjective normally "refer back" to the subject of the clause in which they stand.*

In some types of *subordinate* clause, however, these same reflexive forms must be used even when the reference is to the subject of the *governing* clause. The subordinate constructions exhibiting this special use are chiefly these:

- 1) Indirect Discourse
- 2) Indirect Question
- 3) Complementary Infinitive Clause
- 4) Purpose Clause
- 5) Clause dependent upon Verbs of Fearing

The following examples illustrate this use either of **sui** or **suus** in clauses of each of the above types :

#### MODEL SENTENCES

1) **Colōnī dicunt nautās sibi nocuisse**, The settlers say that the sailors have injured them (the settlers).

2) **Colōnī rogant cūr equī carrōs suōs nōn secūtī sint**, The settlers are asking why the horses have not followed their (the settlers') wagons.

3) **Colōnī nautās sē sequī iubent**, The settlers order the sailors to follow them (the settlers).

4) **Colōnī nautās hortātī sunt, ut liberōs suōs adiuvārent**, The settlers urged the sailors to help their (the settlers') children.

5) **Colōnī timent ut nautae sēcum proficiscantur**, The settlers are afraid that the sailors will not set out with them (the settlers).

The correct use of the third person reflexives is almost entirely a matter of memory ; for the wording of an English sentence often gives no help. Thus we may say "The king killed his son," whether we are talking about *the king's* son, or about the son of *some one else*. But in rendering such a sentence into Latin, we are forced to a decision : if the reference is to the king's son, the reflexive adjective is the only modifier possible (**Rēx filium suum interfēcit**) ; but if the son of some one else is referred to, the genitive of the personal pronoun is required (**Rēx eius filium interfēcit**).



NOTE. Though, for the third person, Latin is much better supplied than English with special reflexive forms, there are numerous distinctions which even Latin cannot make. Thus, when third person reflexives stand in subordinate clauses of the types illustrated above, there is sometimes a possible ambiguity. In the sentence *Colōnī dicunt nautās sibi nocuisse*, *sibi* might conceivably refer either to *nautās* (the subject of its own clause), thus illustrating the general rule; or it might refer to *Colōnī* (the subject of the governing clause), thereby illustrating the special use. In cases of this sort, the context usually makes clear the meaning of the speaker or writer.

REMARK 1. In this connection, it must not be forgotten that the English forms "himself," "herself," etc., are not by any means always used as reflexive. Very often they are *intensive* merely, *i.e.* they simply emphasize a noun or pronoun (Latin *ipse*). Thus, *Rēx se interfecit*, "The king killed *himself*," but *Rēx ipse vēnit*, "The king *himself* came."

REMARK 2. For the first and second persons, Latin has no special reflexive forms. Consequently all cases of *ego* and *tū*, excepting the nominative, are forced into service as reflexives (*e.g.* *Ego me terreō*, "I frighten myself"); so also all forms of the possessive adjectives *meus*, *tuus*, *noster*, and *vester*.

## VOCABULARY

<i>aquila</i> , -ae, F., <i>eagle</i> .	may be construed with
<i>dimittō</i> , 3, -misi, -missus, <i>let slip, miss</i> .	indirect discourse (or indirect question).
<i>impedimenta</i> , -ōrum, N., <i>baggage</i> .	<i>signum</i> , -i, N., <i>standard</i> .
<i>portō</i> , 1, <i>carry, take</i> .	<i>suus</i> , -a, -um, <i>his, her, its, their; hers, theirs</i> .
<i>sciō</i> , 4, <i>scīvi</i> , <i>scitus</i> , <i>know</i> ;	<i>vēxillum</i> , -i, N., <i>flag</i> .

NOTE. It has already been indicated that (like other possessive adjectives) *suus*, -a, -um follows the noun it modifies, unless

there is a contrast that makes it emphatic. Thus, *Agricola equos suos dūcit*, "The farmer is leading his horses," but *Agricola equos dūcit*, "The farmer is leading *his own* (as contrasted with some one else's) horses."

REMARK. In this connection, do not fail to note that *suus*, -a, -um fully covers the ownership idea, and that, therefore, the genitive of the reflexive pronoun *suī* (like the genitive of *ego* and *tū*) must not be used to designate the person to whom something belongs.

## TRANSLATION

106. 1. By promising and urging, Caesar is helping himself and the soldiers of his entire army. 2. I hope that the Gauls will persuade the general not to injure them. Do you know where he<sup>1</sup> has gone? 3. If you hear<sup>2</sup> anything about summoning<sup>3</sup> the hostages, inform<sup>4</sup> me at once. 4. Did they inquire why Caesar, a man of great influence, was trying to get possession of their small town? 5. Let us not miss this opportunity of helping our<sup>5</sup> citizens; for, fearing that the settlers will not give them food, they are now<sup>6</sup> on the point of falling back. 6. Caesar will not have allowed the enemy to escape<sup>7</sup> from his sight.

107. 1. If the farmer's sons should have an opportunity to fight, they would kill many with their<sup>8</sup> great swords. 2. Though there is no one who hopes that we shall start from Rome very<sup>9</sup> soon, still there are some who are asking why the general has not sent<sup>9</sup> their baggage to Capua. 3. Though the deserters are fighting on<sup>10</sup> unfavorable ground, each company must shout twice, so that the enemy's fear will be greater. 4. Though they already had plenty of food, they were hurrying to the country, so as not to miss this opportunity to fish.

108. *A Unique Standard*

In American armies the soldiers usually<sup>11</sup> carry a flag as<sup>12</sup> the standard. But one<sup>13</sup> regiment always took with it<sup>14</sup> into battle an eagle; which, not at all<sup>15</sup> terrified by the shots<sup>16</sup> fired<sup>17</sup> on every hand, would fly<sup>18</sup> above<sup>19</sup> the enemy, and<sup>5</sup> then come back to a pole,<sup>20</sup> which a soldier was carrying. The enemy tried in every way<sup>21</sup> either to kill or to capture this eagle,<sup>22</sup> for they believed that, if it were lost,<sup>23</sup> the courage of the soldiers would be less. But this<sup>24</sup> they could never accomplish;<sup>25</sup> and<sup>26</sup> even after<sup>27</sup> the war was finished,<sup>28</sup> grateful<sup>29</sup> citizens for many years cared for the bird.

1. *ille*.

2. Cf. footnote 6 on Exercise XVII.

3. Review, if necessary, the grammar lesson of Exercise XXXV.

4. Cf. footnote 11 on Exercise XVIII. In this particular sentence, do not place the verb last.

5. Omit.

6. *nunc* or *iam*?7. *recēdō*, 3, -*cessi*, -*cessum est*.

8. See the Note on the Vocabulary of this Exercise.

9. Cf. again the Note on the Rule in Exercise VI.

10. Cf. footnote 18 on Exercise XXXVI.

11. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXIII, with Note 1.

12. *prō*, prep., with abl.13. *quīdam*.

14. Cf. footnote 3 on Exercise III.

15. *not at all*: *minimē*.16. *tēlum*.17. Partic. of *mittō*.18. *volitō*, 1, -*āvī*, -*ātum est*.  
What tense?19. *super*, prep., with acc.20. *contus*, -*i*, m. Keep the prepositional phrase last in the clause.

21. Use the pl.

22. *this eagle*: put first in the sentence.23. Use an abl. absol. (*lit.*, *it having been lost*).

24. Use a relative.

25. *efficiō*, 3, -*fēci*, -*fectus*.26. *atque*.27. Use a *cum*-clause.28. *conficiō*, 3, -*fēci*, -*fectus*.29. *grātus*, -*a*, -*um*.

## EXERCISE XXXVIII

(109-111)

## ABLATIVE OF QUALITY OR CHARACTERISTIC

## MODEL SENTENCE

Caesar erat insigni virtūte vir, Caesar was a man of noteworthy bravery.

RULE. *A noun in the ablative case, with a modifier, may be used to designate a quality or characteristic of a person or thing.*

NOTE. It is often impossible to detect any difference in meaning between the genitive and the ablative of quality. But if the modifier is pār, ācer, or any adjective with nominative in -is (as similis), the ablative should always be written in preference to the genitive. Thus, while we may say either maximae virtūtis vir or maximā virtūte vir, the choice of case is at once limited if insignis is selected as the modifier, as in the Model Sentence above.

## VOCABULARY

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, F., <i>practice.</i>	pār, gen. paris, <i>equal.</i>
Germāni, -ōrum, M., <i>the Germans.</i>	pellō, 3, pepuli, pulsus, <i>drive, repulse, drive back.</i>
insignis, -is, -e, <i>noteworthy.</i>	

NOTE. Observe that pār is an adjective of one termination (like audāx; see Summary of Forms, p. 350). Note carefully that adjectives of one termination (as most adjectives of the third declension) have only the -i ending in the ablative singular.

## TRANSLATION

109. 1. Though Cicero has like influence,<sup>1</sup> Caesar has given orders to Curio not to make him his<sup>2</sup> lieutenant.

2. Caesar did not<sup>3</sup> ask what you had said to his captain, nor<sup>3</sup> where you were on the point of going. 3. Through<sup>4</sup> practice in<sup>5</sup> hunting the Germans became<sup>6</sup> strong, and I do not think that many<sup>7</sup> nations have been found equally courageous.<sup>8</sup> 4. He says that the practice of carrying an eagle among<sup>9</sup> the standards often helped<sup>10</sup> the armies of those states. 5. Let us not believe that the men<sup>11</sup> who are now on the point of departing<sup>12</sup> from London are deserters.

110. 1. If there are any<sup>13</sup> who are inquiring why we do not spare their slaves, say that six hundred of their citizens<sup>14</sup> burned all our baggage and flags. 2. Many men of equal boldness set out from Capua to guard the roads, so that nothing<sup>15</sup> might harm their commander. 3. While the battle was raging<sup>16</sup> at New York, the sailors got possession of another island. 4. Within a few days we shall have enough ships to send to protect<sup>17</sup> that town. 5. Though the wagons will have been sent by a much shorter<sup>18</sup> road, why need we hurry to London at such<sup>19</sup> speed? 6. Were not the sailors willing to be sent to the aid of<sup>20</sup> another line?

### 111. *A Brief Campaign*

When our general had arrived there,<sup>21</sup> he encamped<sup>22</sup> without delay not far from<sup>23</sup> the river. Seeing this,<sup>24</sup> the enemy for several days remained in the forest;<sup>25</sup> but on the ninth day, in order to find out<sup>26</sup> more definitely<sup>27</sup> what our army was doing,<sup>28</sup> three scouts crossed the river to investigate.<sup>29</sup> So great,<sup>30</sup> however, was the watchfulness<sup>30</sup> of the soldiers that the men<sup>31</sup> were at once captured by our cavalry. A few days later the enemy led all their forces across the river, and located<sup>32</sup> them<sup>33</sup> on<sup>32</sup> a hill suitable

for a camp. But during the night our men occupied a higher<sup>33</sup> hill, and in the morning<sup>34</sup> drove the terrified enemy into the river.

1. *Lit., is of like (i.e. similar) influence.*

2. *i.e.* Curio's.

3. *not . . . nor*: use *nec . . . nec*, placing the verb of "asking" before the first of these conjunctions.

4. *i.e. by.*

5. *Lit., of.*

6. Customary past action.

7. Place next after the negative.

8. *Lit., of equal courage.*

9. *inter*: prep., with acc.

10. Use *subsidiū*.

11. Pl. of *is*.

12. *i.e. of setting out.*

13. Omit.

14. *i.e. six hundred citizens of theirs* (gen. of *ipse*).

15. What kind of clause?

16. Use *pugnō*, with *ācritē*.

17. Use *praesidiū* (with *mittō*). Make the whole a relative clause.

18. *short: brevis, -is, -e*. Place the modifying phrase after the noun.

19. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXVII.

20. Not gen.

21. *Lit., whither* (see the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXVI). Put first in the sentence.

22. *castra pōnō* (3, *posui, positus*).

23. *not far from: haud procul ā.*

24. *Lit., which* (rel.) *thing (rēs) having been noticed.*

25. Use the idiom *sē silvis tenēre*. Cf. the similar phrase in footnote 16 on Exercise V.

26. *cōgnōscō*.

27. Use *certius*.

28. *agō*, 3, *ēgi, āctus*.

29. *speculor*.

30. *diligentia*.

31. Use *ille*.

32. *locate on: collocō*, with *in* and *abl*.

33. To relieve the monotony of the clause endings, detach this adjective from its noun, and put it last in the clause.

34. *in the morning: māne* (adv.).

## EXERCISE XXXIX

(112-114)

## I-STEMS AND U-STEMS

	I-STEMS		U-STEM
	<i>turris, F., tower</i>	<i>animal, N., animal</i>	<i>cornū, N., horn</i>
	SINGULAR		
Nom.	turris	animal	cornū
Gen.	turris	animālis	cornūs
Dat.	turri	animālī	cornū
Acc.	turrim, -em	animal	cornū
Abl.	turri, -e	animālī	cornū
	PLURAL		
Nom.	turrēs	animālia	cornua
Gen.	turrium	animālium	cornuum
Dat.	turribus	animālibus	cornibus
Acc.	turris, -ēs	animālia	cornua
Abl.	turribus	animālibus	cornibus

NOTE 1. The noteworthy thing about the declension of the I-Stem *turris*, is, of course, its accusative singular in *-im*. Very few common nouns have this ending; but I-Stem names of cities and rivers in *-is* regularly form the accusative thus.

Neuter I-Stems with nominative in *-e* follow the declension of *mare*; the others (with nominative in *-al* and *-ar*; see the statement in Exercise I) conform to the inflection of *animal* above.

NOTE 2. The declension of masculine and feminine U-Stems (*e.g.* *exercitus*) has already been fully treated. How neuters of this class are inflected is illustrated above in the declension of *cornū*.

## VOCABULARY

<b>cornū</b> , -ūs, N., <i>horn</i> ;	<b>wing</b>	<b>num</b> , conj.; introducing indirect questions, <i>whether</i> .
(of army).		
<b>dexter</b> , -tra, -trum, <i>right</i> (as contrasted with "left").	<b>studium</b> , -ī, N., <i>liking, enthusiasm</i> .	

## TRANSLATION

112. 1. Though they were men of noteworthy influence, they nevertheless hesitated<sup>1</sup> to lead their forces thither,<sup>2</sup> fearing<sup>3</sup> that Curio had stationed the fifth regiment on the right wing of our line. 2. The practice of killing animals with the ax<sup>4</sup> must be checked<sup>5</sup> by the consuls and the senate. 3. With equal enthusiasm the Gauls advanced silently<sup>6</sup> to attack the higher tower.<sup>4</sup> 4. If they should see the eagle, would they not desire<sup>7</sup> to know<sup>8</sup> where we are going; and<sup>9</sup> why we are not marching to their camp? 5. I think that they carried an eagle into that town in order that the inhabitants of the mountains might not dare to injure them there.

113. 1. If Caesar orders<sup>10</sup> all the soldiers to follow him, let us not tarry to<sup>8</sup> look for the slave. 2. In numbers<sup>11</sup> the armies are equal, but ours is much superior in courage.<sup>12</sup> 3. Do you know what is taking place<sup>13</sup> on the right wing? I think that the tower has been taken<sup>14</sup> and the enemy repulsed. 4. Do not ask them<sup>15</sup> why they left their baggage and standards in the tower. 5. Even now Gaius seems to have too little enthusiasm<sup>16</sup> about these matters.<sup>17</sup> 6. The general of greatest influence could<sup>18</sup> not persuade a single<sup>19</sup> soldier of these companies to fight on<sup>20</sup> ground so unfavorable.



114. *The Carrier Pigeon*

"Some nations use birds in a curious<sup>21</sup> way in warfare,"<sup>22</sup> said the soldier to Marcus and Quin'us. "Once in Europe, when there had been a fierce battle, and the townspeople had been forced to fall back to their camp with one of the captains very badly<sup>23</sup> wounded, the leader wished to find out whether the king was on the point of coming to reënforce him.<sup>24</sup> So<sup>25</sup> he wrote a letter,<sup>26</sup> and fastened<sup>27</sup> it to<sup>27</sup> the foot<sup>28</sup> of a pigeon,<sup>29</sup> which had been given to him<sup>24</sup> by the king. Set free<sup>30</sup> at night, the bird returned home with all<sup>31</sup> speed; and the king, thus informed of<sup>32</sup> the battle, at once sent several companies to the relief of his citizens."

1. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXIV.

2. *ad* (adv.).

3. Translate in more than one way.

4. Be careful of the spelling.

5. *prohibeō*, 2, -ui, -itus.

6. *i.e. without noise*.

7. *i.e. want*.

8. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXVII.

9. *Lit., or*.

10. Cf. footnote 6 on Exercise XVII.

11. See Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XII.

12. Put early in the clause.

13. *i.e. what is being done*.

14. Write the form of *sum* with the second participle only.

15. If *quaerō* is used, cf. footnote 3 on Exercise XXXVI.

16. *Lit., too little enthusiasm seems to be in Gaius*.

17. *about these matters*: put early in the sentence.

18. Present indicative; an idiomatic use.

19. *unus*.

20. Cf. footnote 18 on Exercise XXXVI.

21. *insolitus*, -a, -um.

22. *i.e. in war*.

23. *badly*: *graviter*. Render this phrase by a participial clause.

24. *is or sui*?

25. *i.e. and so*.

26. *litterae*, -arum, f.

27. *fastened . . . to*: *dēligō*, 1, with *ad* and *acc*.

28. *pēs, pedis, m.*  
 29. *columba.* Place last in the phrase, thus avoiding an awkward separation from the relative of the modifying clause.

30. *ēmittō, 3, -misi, -missus.*  
 Not abl. absol.  
 31. *Lit., the greatest.*  
 32. *i.e. about.*

## EXERCISE XL

(115-117)

## REVIEW OF EXERCISES XXXIV TO XXXIX

## VOCABULARY

*cōnsilium, -ii, n., plan, de-* *ēgredior, 3, -gressus sum, go*  
*sign.* *out, march out; with ex*  
*and abl., leave.*

NOTE. On the declension of *cōnsilium*, see Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VI.

## TRANSLATION

115. 1. Since we know that the animal has horns, the women ought to run<sup>1</sup> at once to the gate, and<sup>2</sup> you alone ought to stay. 2. Though a similar plan of flight<sup>3</sup> has been adopted<sup>4</sup> at times by leaders of equal bravery, do you think that *our*<sup>5</sup> commander will allow<sup>6</sup> *his*<sup>5</sup> companies to fall back from New York? 3. Through<sup>7</sup> practice in<sup>8</sup> hurling fire, the Gauls were able very easily to ignite<sup>9</sup> our tower with their missiles.<sup>10</sup> 4. In<sup>11</sup> undertaking<sup>12</sup> wars, the Gauls do not (stop to)<sup>2</sup> consider<sup>13</sup> whether they are able to overcome the enemy; for their nation is very enthusiastic<sup>14</sup> for<sup>15</sup> fighting.<sup>16</sup>

116. 1. With Caesar for general, I shall not fear even<sup>17</sup> the assaults of the armies of the greatest leaders. 2. Let us

not be afraid. For there are men<sup>2</sup> to whom the captains have given orders to announce<sup>18</sup> that there are enough soldiers in Brundisium; and *I* know that seven hundred others are now coming along the other road to aid us. 3. Because of the confusion of the streets, all men<sup>2</sup> very enthusiastic<sup>14</sup> for<sup>15</sup> writing will soon have been forced to flee to the country. 4. I feared that the enemy had placed horsemen on the right wing, so that you would cross the river with less<sup>19</sup> speed. 5. Twenty-eight<sup>20</sup> men have been sent from the tower into the woods to hide, and nobody as yet has noticed them.

### 117. *A Cautious Lieutenant (Part I)*

While this<sup>21</sup> was happening, one of Caesar's lieutenants, Sabinus by name, arrived at a town which the enemy had gotten possession of a few days before. When the Romans came in<sup>22</sup> sight, the Gauls closed<sup>23</sup> the gates without delay; and Sabinus, fearing that he had not sufficient forces to attack<sup>24</sup> the town, sought a place suitable for a camp, and there remained several days. Meanwhile, seeing<sup>25</sup> that no opportunity for fighting was offered<sup>26</sup> them by the Romans, the enemy marched out from the town daily, and finally would advance with such<sup>27</sup> boldness as to<sup>28</sup> come up<sup>29</sup> almost to the very<sup>30</sup> rampart of the camp.

1. Cf. footnote 14 on Exercise XXXIX.

2. Omit.

3. Use *fugiō*, and reverse the order of the modifiers of the word for "plan."

4. *capiō*.

5. Cf. the Note on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXVII.

6. Review again, if necessary, the infinitives of deponent verbs.

7. *i.e. because of*.

8. *Lit., of*.

9. *incendō*.

10. *tēlum*.

11. Express the preposition.

12. *faciō*. Gerund or gerundive?

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 13. <i>i.e.</i> question ( <i>quaerō</i> ).  | 22. <i>i.e.</i> into.   |
| 14. <i>very enthusiastic: lit., of the greatest liking</i> (Vocabulary of Exercise XXXIX). | 23. <i>claudō</i> , 3, <i>clausi</i> , <i>clausus</i> .                   |
| 15. <i>Lit., of.</i> Cf. the genitive construction with <i>facultās</i> .                  | 24. <i>i.e.</i> for (ad) attacking.                                       |
| 16. <i>Lit., war.</i>  | 25. Cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III, and be careful about the word order. |
| 17. Note that "not" precedes.  | 26. <i>i.e.</i> was being offered ( <i>dō</i> ).                          |
| 18. Observe carefully the Law of Sequence.   | 27. <i>i.e.</i> such great (Vocabulary of Exercise XXVII).                |
| 19. Be careful about the order of words.   | 28. Introducing a clause of result.                                       |
| 20. Numeral how formed?  | 29. <i>i.e.</i> approach (Vocabulary of Exercise XXXII).                  |
| 21. <i>haec</i> (neut.).   | 30. <i>ipse</i> .   |

## EXERCISE XLI

(118-120)

## INSTRUMENTALITY OR INTERMEDIATE AGENCY

## MODEL SENTENCES

**Per mē hoc factum est**, Through my help this was accomplished.

**Dē pugnā Caesar per explorātōrēs certior factus est**, Through (the medium of) scouts Caesar learned of the battle.

**RULE.** *The person through whose instrumentality a thing comes to pass may be designated by an accusative governed by the preposition per.*

**NOTE.** The instrumentality construction is suited to describe the activity of agents who *contribute* to an end, or who are working under the direction of some one else. Thus, in the first of the Model Sentences, the speaker represents himself as helping toward the result referred to; and, in the second, the scouts appear as subordinates acting under another's orders.

## VOCABULARY

<b>ēmittō</b> , 3, -misi, -missus, <i>send out</i> .	course (or indirect question).
<b>Gallia</b> , -ae, F., <i>Gaul</i> .	<b>pedes</b> , -itis, M., <i>foot soldier</i> ;
<b>intellegō</b> , 3, -lēxi, -lēctus, <i>understand</i> ; may be construed with indirect dis-	pl., <i>infantry</i> . sui, -ōrum, M., <i>his men, their men</i> .

NOTE. **Sui**, -ōrum, is, of course, simply the possessive adjective employed as a noun, and its use, therefore, is limited by the rules that govern the usage of the third person reflexives generally (see Exercise XXXVII).

## TRANSLATION

118. 1. With the help of slaves, the women and children are being taken by wagon<sup>1</sup> to a safe place in<sup>2</sup> the forest; for the settlers fear that the cavalry of the enemy have already repulsed our men, and that<sup>3</sup> their<sup>4</sup> infantry are now burning the tower. 2. As<sup>5</sup> a leader of noteworthy<sup>6</sup> boldness is on the right wing, Caesar does not understand why no prisoners are being sent to him.<sup>7</sup> 3. If they should adopt the plan of guarding the roads, we should be obliged to retire across the mountains into Gaul to winter.<sup>8</sup> 4. Through the medium of prisoners the general hopes that he will be able<sup>9</sup> to persuade the enemy not to kill the wives and children of the consuls. 5. Only Caesar's scouts<sup>10</sup> will be able to tell<sup>11</sup> us where the companies were hastening.

119. 1. Let us not go out from the tower; for I think that the enemy are merely<sup>12</sup> pretending to be afraid,<sup>13</sup> in order that they may more easily have an opportunity to<sup>14</sup> attack the companies. 2. He will send men<sup>15</sup> from Rome to Capua to bring back his slaves; for he had given orders

to them<sup>16</sup> not to leave<sup>17</sup> that city. 3. Follow me at once to the gate, soldiers; for a very fierce fight is in progress there. 4. I promise that you shall have sufficient money; for I<sup>18</sup> shall then be either<sup>19</sup> at Rome or<sup>19</sup> in the country. 5. If there are men<sup>3</sup> through whose help<sup>20</sup> a messenger can be brought<sup>21</sup> to the right wing, not even<sup>22</sup> the cavalry of the enemy will be able to injure our line.

### 120. *A Cautious Lieutenant (Part II)*

Sabinus was reluctant<sup>23</sup> to fight against<sup>24</sup> so large<sup>25</sup> an army on unfavorable ground. Consequently<sup>26</sup> he for some time<sup>27</sup> kept within<sup>28</sup> his<sup>3</sup> camp,<sup>28</sup> hoping that the Gauls would think that the Romans feared them. Finally, through the help of a<sup>29</sup> Gaul who pretended<sup>30</sup> that he was a deserter, the enemy were informed that Sabinus would soon break camp, so as to fall back and go to the relief<sup>31</sup> of Caesar. Hearing<sup>32</sup> this, and fearing that Sabinus might slip away<sup>33</sup> unobserved,<sup>34</sup> the Gauls at once advanced<sup>35</sup> with great speed toward<sup>36</sup> his camp. But when they arrived there<sup>37</sup> tired out<sup>38</sup> with running, Sabinus by two gates suddenly sent out all his men,<sup>39</sup> who made so fierce an attack that very few of<sup>40</sup> the enemy escaped unscathed<sup>41</sup> from the battlefield<sup>42</sup> into the town.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Use the pl.                                  | 10. <i>Lit., the scouts of Caesar only</i> (gen. of <i>sōlus</i> ).           |
| 2. <i>Lit., into.</i>                           | 11. <i>dīcō</i> (with dat.). Be careful of the tense in the following clause. |
| 3. Omit.  | 12. See Note 1 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXIV.                            |
| 4. <i>i.e.</i> the enemy's.                     | 13. <i>i.e. that they are afraid.</i>   |
| 5. <i>i.e. since.</i>                           | 14. See Note 1 on p. 308.   |
| 6. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXVIII.      | 15. Pl. of <i>is</i> .  |
| 7. <i>i.e.</i> Caesar.                          | 16. <i>i.e.</i> the slaves. Use <i>ille</i> .                                 |
| 8. <i>to winter</i> : not an <i>ut</i> -clause. |   |
| 9. Cf. footnote 7 on Exercise XV.               |   |

17. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XL.
18. Express the subject.
19. *either . . . or*: cf. footnote 36 on Exercise XXXVI.
20. *i.e. through whom*.
21. *dēdūcō*, 3, -*dūxi*, -*ductus*.
22. Be careful about the word order.
23. *Lit.*, *was hesitating*.
24. *Lit.*, *with*.
25. *so large*: translate by a single word.
26. *Lit.*, *and so*.
27. *for some time*: (absolute) compar. of *diū*.
28. Use the idiom *sē castris tenēre*. Cf. footnote 25 on Exercise XXXVIII.
29. *quīdam*.
30. Imperfect tense.
31. Use a dative construction.
32. If a pass. partic. is used, omit the following "and."
33. *effugiō*, 3, -*fūgi*.
34. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XIV.
35. *contendō*.
36. *ad*.
37. *Lit.*, *whither* (see the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXVI). Put first in the sentence (and cf. footnote 5 on Exercise XIV).
38. *tired out*: *i.e. tired*.
39. Punctuate this clause with a semicolon.
40. *very few of*: *perpauci*, -*ae*, -*a*. Place after the noun.
41. *i.e. in safety*.
42. *Lit.*, *battle*.

## EXERCISE XLII

(121-123)

## INDIRECT OBJECT WITH THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE

It has previously been pointed out that intransitive verbs are of two types, namely (1) those which are incapable of governing any case whatsoever, and (2) those which are construed with some case other than the accusative; and, further, it has been shown that *all* intransitive verbs are necessarily restricted, in the passive, to an *impersonal* use (cf. Exercise XXVI).

The passive of intransitives of the first type is already familiar (*e.g. pugnātur, pugnātum est*, etc.). On the next page is illustrated the corresponding passive of certain intransitives of the other type.

## MODEL SENTENCES

<b>Mihi persuādētur</b>	{ I am persuaded. <i>Lit., It is persuaded to me.</i>
<b>Omnibus parcendum est</b>	{ All must be spared. Mercy must be shown to all. <i>Lit., It must be spared to all.</i>

**RULE.** *Intransitive verbs which govern the dative retain this case with their impersonal passive forms.*

**NOTE.** The chief difficulty encountered in applying this Rule is that our rather loose renderings, "persuade," "spare," and the like (Exercise IX) incline us to forget that *persuādeō*, *parcō*, etc., are *intransitive* verbs, and, therefore, necessarily *impersonal* in the passive. To avoid error here, constant vigilance will be required.

**REMARK.** When the impersonal passive takes the gerundive form (as in the second of the Model Sentences), it is conceivable that ambiguity might sometimes arise, the reader or hearer being left in doubt whether the accompanying dative is one of *agency* (Exercise XI), or whether it is an *indirect object*. As a matter of fact, however, the context usually makes the meaning clear.

## VOCABULARY

<b>circumveniō</b> , 4, -vēnī, -ventus, <i>surround.</i>	<b>Petrōnius</b> , -nī, m., <i>Petronius.</i>
<b>discessus</b> , -ūs, m., <i>departure.</i>	<b>salūs</b> , -ūtis, f., <i>safety.</i> <b>salūti</b>
<b>ignōscō</b> , 3, <b>ignōvi</b> , <b>ignōtum</b>	<b>esse</b> , with a second dative,
<b>est</b> , <i>pardon, forgive.</i> See the Rule in Exercise IX.	<i>to save.</i>
<b>mūrus</b> , -ī, m., <i>wall.</i>	<b>sinister</b> , -tra, -trum, <i>left</i> (as contrasted with "right").

## TRANSLATION

**121. I.** On<sup>1</sup> the departure of the leaders, Caesar was persuaded by his captains to pardon the whole army.



2. Though this matter has turned out very badly for the companies on<sup>2</sup> the right wing, not even by words must the king be injured. 3. If through the help of the Indians we should be able to find a road by which to reach that tower, the enemy would not understand how<sup>3</sup> we had come up<sup>4</sup> to their camp. 4. Though he<sup>5</sup> is equally enthusiastic,<sup>6</sup> there are some who prefer Cicero. 5. We were afraid that you would not be spared; for Caesar knew<sup>7</sup> that you led<sup>8</sup> the four hundred horsemen who had driven back the left wing.

**122.** 1. They will use horses, so that the enemy may not capture their children. 2. Forgive the boys; for, though they have gone into the woods to fish, at New York I shall soon have given them an opportunity to work. 3. Do not urge Caesar not to send the infantry to Capua. 4. Let us not change<sup>9</sup> our<sup>10</sup> design of waging war; for a very skillful<sup>11</sup> leader will soon be sent from London to help<sup>12</sup> us. 5. Do you know whether the dog and the horse are brave animals? 6. Did the right wings of the two armies advance?

### 123. *A Heroic End*

Once, when Caesar was trying to take<sup>13</sup> a certain city, a very brave centurion clambered up<sup>14</sup> the wall; and<sup>15</sup> another, named Petronius, rushed forward<sup>16</sup> with three men to the very<sup>17</sup> gate,<sup>18</sup> where, however, he was surrounded<sup>19</sup> by the enemy and seriously<sup>20</sup> wounded. Seeing<sup>21</sup> that he must die, Petronius shouted<sup>22</sup> to his men, "Though I cannot myself escape, I will at any rate<sup>23</sup> save<sup>12</sup> you."<sup>24</sup> So saying,<sup>25</sup> he made a fierce attack upon the enemy, and having killed two<sup>26</sup> with his<sup>10</sup> sword, drove the others back a little.<sup>27</sup> The opportunity for escape<sup>28</sup>

being offered,<sup>29</sup> the soldiers quickly withdrew to our line; but Petronius, though he had saved his men, himself<sup>30</sup> fell fighting before<sup>31</sup> the gate.

1. What case expresses this time relation?
2. *Lit., of.*
3. *i.e. by what means* (sing.).
4. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXII, and observe carefully the Law of Sequence.
5. *ille.*
6. *Lit., of equal enthusiasm.*
7. Imperfect tense.
8. *i.e. had led.*
9. *mūtō, 1.*
10. Omit.
11. *very skillful: lit., of the greatest skill.*
12. Use a dative construction.
13. *expugnō.*
14. *cōnscendō.*
15. *atque.*
16. *prōcurrō, 3, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursum est.*
17. *ipse.*
18. Punctuate this clause with a semicolon.
19. Express *est* at the end of the sentence only.
20. *graviter.*
21. *i.e. realizing.* Begin the sentence with *quī*, omitting "Petronius" of the following clause.
22. *inquam* (see Summary of Forms, p. 382).
23. *certē.*
24. *you:* put first in the clause, with the adv. second.
25. *Lit., which* (pl.) *when he had said.*
26. Use a passive participial construction.
27. *paulum* (adv.).
28. *effugiō, 3, -fūgī.*
29. *dō.*
30. Cf. Remark 1 on p. 318.
31. *ad.*

## EXERCISE XLIII

(124-126)

## THE ABLATIVE WITH COMPARATIVES

## MODEL SENTENCES

**Turris arbore altior est,** The tower is higher than the tree.

**Turrim colle altiorem habemus,** We have a tower higher than a hill.

**RULE.** *When two things are compared as greater or less in degree, and the first is designated by a nominative or accusative, the other may be designated by an ablative.*

#### VOCABULARY

**Custer, -tri, m.,** *Custer.*                      **manus, -ūs, f.,** *band (of ingenium, -ni, n., wits, in- soldiers).*  
*sight, mind.*

**NOTE 1.** On the declension of **ingenium**, see Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VI.

**NOTE 2.** As nearly all nouns in **-us** of the fourth declension are masculine, observe with special care that **manus** is an exception to the rule.

#### TRANSLATION

**124.** 1. This route<sup>1</sup> is longer than that; but it is my custom<sup>2</sup> to travel always by the broader road. 2. I think that, because of his<sup>3</sup> liking for<sup>4</sup> hunting, the consul's son will remain in the country some<sup>5</sup> months; for in the forests there is a great abundance<sup>6</sup> of all sorts of<sup>7</sup> animals. 3. Through the medium of their<sup>8</sup> children they will be pardoned;<sup>8</sup> for you know that Pompey has been persuaded to spare all who are willing<sup>9</sup> to send their<sup>8</sup> children to him.<sup>10</sup> 4. Since there is no one who understands that water is more powerful than fire, let us not waste<sup>11</sup> time longer here.<sup>12</sup> 5. Will Curio have been informed where the cavalry have gone and<sup>13</sup> why the enemy are not attacking his left wing?

**125.** 1. Gaius is a boy of keen<sup>14</sup> wits; but Marcus is better than he.<sup>15</sup> 2. Twice the leaders of the infantry have given orders to their men<sup>16</sup> to advance to attack this

tower. 3. With great enthusiasm men<sup>17</sup> are now trying to mount the wall, so as to have a better<sup>18</sup> chance to wound the centurions with arrows. 4. With reference to peace<sup>19</sup> more ambassadors<sup>20</sup> have already come; for at home their<sup>21</sup> citizens have no<sup>22</sup> food, though *we* have an abundant<sup>23</sup> supply of all things. 5. I shall go to Rome or to Capua to meet Caesar; for I know that his courage only<sup>24</sup> is greater than mine.<sup>25</sup> 6. If all should be persuaded to use their wits, surely<sup>26</sup> some one<sup>27</sup> would save<sup>28</sup> us.

### 126. *Custer's Last Fight*

Many years ago several regiments set out to drive<sup>29</sup> some Indians from their homes,<sup>30</sup> and a<sup>31</sup> cavalry officer<sup>31</sup> named Custer was sent ahead<sup>32</sup> to attack the enemy. A part of his forces he<sup>33</sup> ordered to advance by another route,<sup>34</sup> so that he might make an assault upon the Indians from both sides<sup>34</sup> simultaneously.<sup>35</sup> Thus it happened<sup>36</sup> that when he came suddenly in sight of the enemy's camp, he had with him<sup>37</sup> only about three hundred men. Catching sight of<sup>38</sup> the little band, the Indians, who were about two thousand in number, at once burst forth from their<sup>3</sup> camp and made a fierce attack. Our men meanwhile had dismounted,<sup>39</sup> and their<sup>3</sup> horses, frightened by the uproar,<sup>40</sup> now ran away. The cavalymen kept up the fight<sup>41</sup> bravely until their<sup>3</sup> ammunition<sup>42</sup> was gone,<sup>43</sup> and then they were all slain to a man<sup>44</sup> by the exultant<sup>45</sup> enemy.

1. *iter*.
2. Translate by a verb (cf. the Vocabulary of Exercise XXIII, with Note 1).
3. Omit.

4. *Lit., of*. For the governing noun, see the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXIX.
5. *i.e. several*.
6. *i.e. supply*.

7. *all sorts of: omnia.*
8. Observe that this calls for an intransitive verb.
9. Note that this clause is a part of the indirect discourse, and observe the Law of Sequence carefully.
10. Reflexive pronoun.
11. *terō*, 3, *trivī*, *trītus*.
12. *hic* (adv.).
13. *Lit.*, *or*.
14. *ācer*.
15. *ille*.
16. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XLI.
17. *quīdam*.
18. *Lit.*, *greater*.
19. *Lit.*, *with reference to (dē) suing for (petō) peace*.
20. *lēgātus*.
21. Reflexive or not?
22. Use *nihil*.
23. *Lit.*, *very great*.
24. *Lit.*, *the courage (fortitūdō) of him only* (gen. of *sōlus*).
25. Place before the comparative.
26. See the Note on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXI.
27. *aliquis*.
28. Use a dative construction.
29. *expellō*.
30. *from their homes: lit., from home* (sing.).
31. *Lit.*, *officer (praefectus, -i, m.) of cavalry*.
32. *praemittō*, 3, *-misi*, *-missus*.
33. *Lit.*, *road*.
34. *from both sides: utrimque* (adv.).
35. *simul*.
36. Consult, if necessary, the Vocabulary of Exercise XVI.
37. Cf. footnote 3 on Exercise III.
38. *i.e. noticing*.
39. *dēsiliō*, 4, *-sili*.
40. *i.e. noise*.
41. *pugnō* (imperfect tense).
42. *Lit.*, *weapons*.
43. *be gone: dēficiō*, 3, *-fēci (-fectus)*; use here the perfect tense. Punctuate this clause with a semicolon, omitting the following "and."
44. *Lit.*, *to (ad) one (man)*.
45. *gestiēns*, *-entis* (partic., used as adj.).

## EXERCISE XLIV

(127-128)

## CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Two classes of conditional sentences have already been treated, namely, Simple and Vague Future. There still remains a third class, known as Contrary to Fact — a type

of conditional sentence peculiar in that it carries with it the implication that the suppositions made are *false*. Thus we say in English :

"If the boys *were* here" (implying that they *are not* present).

"If the boys *had been* here" (implying that they *were not* present).

Observe that the first of the above illustrations has to do with what *is* not, and the second with what *was* not — a distinction which is marked by the terms *Present Contrary to Fact* and *Past Contrary to Fact*.

#### MODEL SENTENCES

**SI nōbīs plūs pecūniae esset, non rūri essēmus,** If we had more money, we should not be in the country.

**SI plūs pecūniae Caesari dedisset, certiōrēs facti essētis,** If he had given more money to Caesar, you would have been informed.

**SI Caesar tum Rōmam vēnisset, nunc nōbīs satis pecūniae esset,** If Caesar had come to Rome at that time, we should now have plenty of money.

In the last of these Model Sentences, note that the conditioning clause is *Past Contrary to Fact*, while the conclusion is *Present Contrary to Fact* — a very frequent combination.

**RULE.** *Present Contrary to Fact Conditional Sentences require the imperfect subjunctive, Past Contrary to Fact the pluperfect subjunctive.*

#### VOCABULARY

ēruptiō, -ōnis, F., *sally, sortie.* spēs, -ei, F., *hope.*  
regiō, -ōnis, F., *region.*

## TRANSLATION

127. 1. If Caesar had been at Capua, he would have given orders to the soldiers of the left wing not to spare the slaves. 2. If this tree were taller than the other, its shadow<sup>1</sup> would be longer. 3. If, on his departure, Caesar had said that the townspeople must be pardoned,<sup>2</sup> they<sup>3</sup> would now be safe. 4. If through your help I should find a scout of equal daring, the general would send him very quickly to the tower. 5. If you had remained at home, and your<sup>4</sup> brother had not been sent from Rome into the country,<sup>5</sup> Curio would be urging me not to remain<sup>6</sup> in the city. 6. Gaius is informed<sup>7</sup> that by many things this animal is very easily injured. 7. Do not pardon these companies which refused to cross the river.

128. *A Successful Maneuver*

When the fight had now gone on<sup>8</sup> for six hours at<sup>9</sup> the fortifications, our men would certainly<sup>10</sup> have been defeated, if<sup>11</sup> two centurions, men of keen insight,<sup>12</sup> had not<sup>11</sup> run to Balbus, saying that a sudden<sup>13</sup> sortie ought to be made at once. Hearing this, and thinking that that<sup>14</sup> was the sole<sup>15</sup> hope of escape,<sup>16</sup> the commander gave orders to his men that, when the signal<sup>17</sup> was given, they should rush forth by all the gates, and make a very fierce assault upon the enemy. And so, when the signal was heard, the soldiers made a sudden sortie, and<sup>18</sup> gave the enemy no<sup>18</sup> opportunity to realize<sup>19</sup> what was taking place,<sup>20</sup> but on every side surrounded and killed<sup>21</sup> the inhabitants of that region, who had come together with the greatest enthusiasm from all the nearest<sup>22</sup> mountains, hoping to get possession of<sup>23</sup> our camp.

1. umbra.
2. Note that this calls for an intransitive verb.
3. ille.
4. How many persons are addressed?
5. *into the country*: translate in the same way as "*to the country*."
6. Observe the Law of Sequence carefully.
7. Present tense.
8. Use pugnō.
9. ad.
10. certē or profectō? (cf. the Note on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXI).
11. *if . . . not*: nisi (conj.).
12. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XLIII.
13. repentinus, -a, -um.
14. The gender is determined by the predicate noun.
15. *i.e. the only*.
16. effugiō, 3, -fūgi.
17. signum. Make this a participial clause.
18. *and . . . no: lit., nor . . . any* (ūllus).
19. cōgnōscō.
20. *Lit., what (quid) was being done*.
21. These verbs may be placed before their object, so as to bring the latter nearer to the relative clause dependent upon it.
22. proximus, -a, -um. In this phrase, the word for "all" may precede the preposition.
23. *i.e. hoping that they would get possession of*.

## EXERCISE XLV

(129-130)

## THE FUTURE IMPERATIVE

Taking vocō as a model, the forms of the future imperative are as follows:

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
2d person	vocātō	vocātōte	vocātor	
3d person	vocātō	vocantō	vocātor	vocantor

Turning to the Summary of Forms, learn the future imperative of all other verbs, regular and irregular, noting



that everywhere there is found the same close analogy between the forms of the third person of the present indicative and the corresponding forms of the future imperative.

## MODEL SENTENCES

itō,	{ Thou shalt go.
	{ He shall go.
sequitor,	{ Thou shalt follow.
	{ He shall follow.
amantor,	They shall be loved.

NOTE. The future imperative is somewhat formal and old-fashioned; hence the rather stilted style of some of the above renderings.

## VOCABULARY

absum, -esse, āfui (future partic. āfutūrus), <i>be away, be distant.</i>	Pharsālus, -ī, F., the name of a city of Greece.
Aegyptus, -ī, F., <i>Egypt.</i>	Ptolomaeus, -ī, M., <i>Ptolemy.</i>
Alexandrēa, -ae, F., <i>Alexandria</i> , the name of a city of Egypt.	respondeō, 2, -spondi, -spōnsum est, <i>reply; answer</i> (with dat. of the person spoken to): may be construed with indirect discourse.
Pēlūsium, -si, N., the name of a city of Egypt.	

## TRANSLATION

129. 1. Thou shalt be king of the Gauls. 2. Each band shall come to assist. 3. Ye shall bring to the king gifts greater than these. 4. There shall be peace; for the envoys<sup>1</sup> have persuaded the king to spare the consuls. 5. They<sup>2</sup> shall be killed; but we have given orders that<sup>3</sup>

the children be not<sup>3</sup> injured. 6. Hear ye, and announce what<sup>4</sup> must be done; for the king's messengers will not easily be persuaded. 7. They shall conduct<sup>5</sup> the envoys<sup>1</sup> to the river. 8. Ye shall warn those<sup>6</sup> who live in the valleys. 9. There shall be safety and hope. 10. Thou shalt give ear<sup>7</sup> and spare. 11. Ye shall go by the longest road. If this<sup>8</sup> had always been done, we should now have no war. 12. Thou shalt ever<sup>9</sup> try to make peace.

### 130. *Pompey's Fate*

After Pompey had been defeated at Pharsalus, he fled by ship<sup>10</sup> to Pelusium. There<sup>11</sup> he found<sup>12</sup> that Ptolemy, king<sup>13</sup> of Egypt, was not far<sup>14</sup> away with an army. He therefore sent messengers to urge the king to allow him<sup>15</sup> to go<sup>16</sup> to Alexandria for shelter.<sup>16</sup> But as<sup>17</sup> Ptolemy was a boy in years,<sup>18</sup> friends<sup>19</sup> of his<sup>20</sup> father were helping him in the management of business;<sup>21</sup> and they,<sup>22</sup> fearing<sup>23</sup> that Pompey might<sup>24</sup> attempt to get possession of all<sup>25</sup> Egypt, answered the messengers graciously,<sup>26</sup> but sent back<sup>27</sup> with them two soldiers to kill Pompey. On the arrival of these,<sup>28</sup> the defeated general was persuaded to embark upon<sup>29</sup> a small ship to go<sup>30</sup> to the king; whereupon<sup>30</sup> he was promptly<sup>31</sup> murdered by the soldiers. Had he chosen<sup>32</sup> to remain upon his own<sup>33</sup> ship, perhaps he would have fought with Caesar again a few months later.

1. *i.e. ambassadors.*
2. *ille.*
3. *that . . . not:* not a result clause.
4. *quid.*
5. *dēducō, 3, -dūxi, -ductus.*
6. Pl. of *is.*
7. *audiō.*

8. Use a relative, placing it properly in the sentence.
9. *i.e. always.*
10. Use the pl.
11. *Lit., where.*
12. *Lit., was informed.*
13. Be careful to write the correct case.

14. *not far*: *haud longē*. Place next to the verb.

15. Reflexive pronoun.

16. *go . . . for shelter*: *refugiō*, 3, -fūgi.

17. *i.e. since*.

18. *Lit., in age* (*aetās*, -ātis, F.). For syntax and word order, cf. such phrases as *numerō superior*.

19. *amicus*, -i, M.

20. Omit.

21. *Lit., in managing business* (*rēs gerō*). Express the preposition.

22. *and they*: use *quī*.

23. If translated by a *cum*-

clause, what determines the tense here?

24. Not *possum*.

25. *Lit., entire*. Note the gender of the word modified.

26. *cōmitter* (adv.).

27. *remittō*, 3, -misi, -missus

28. *i.e. board*.

29. *pervenīō*.

30. *quō factō* (abl. absol.).

31. *Lit., without delay*.

32. *i.e. if he had preferred*. Make a relative the subject of this sentence.

33. See the Note on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXVII.

# SUMMARY OF FORMS

## NOUNS

### THE FIRST OR $\bar{A}$ -DECLENSION

#### **mēnsa, F.**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	mēnsa	mēnsae
Gen.	mēnsae	mēnsarum
Dat.	mēnsae	mēnsis
Acc.	mēnsam	mēnsas
Abl.	mēnsā	mēnsis

### THE SECOND OR O-DECLENSION

**hortus, M.    puer, M.    ager, M.    vir, M.    mālum, N.**

#### SINGULAR

Nom.	hortus	puer	ager	vir	mālum
Gen.	horti	pueri	agri	virī	māli
Dat.	hortō	puerō	agrō	virō	mālō
Acc.	hortum	puerum	agrum	virum	mālum
Abl.	hortō	puerō	agrō	virō	mālō

#### PLURAL

Nom.	horti	pueri	agri	virī	māla
Gen.	hortōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	mālōrum
Dat.	hortis	pueris	agris	viris	mālis
Acc.	hortōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	māla
Abl.	hortis	pueris	agris	viris	mālis

NOTE 1. Masculines in **-us** have, in the singular, a special vocative form, as **Mārce, coque**, etc. By exception, **filius** and proper names in **-ius** are shortened in this case, *e.g.* **filī, Standi'sī**, etc.

NOTE 2. As in the vocative singular, **filius** is shortened also in the genitive singular to **filī**. This same shortening occurs in the

genitive singular of all proper names in *-ius* and *-ium*, and of a few common nouns in *-ium*, *e.g.* *Pompēi*, *Londini*, *ingēni*, etc.; but the *locative* is not thus abbreviated (*e.g.* *Londinii*, "at London").

NOTE 3. *Humus*, *-i*, *F.*, forms the locative *humī*, "on the ground."

## THE THIRD DECLENSION

## Consonant Stems

	<i>flōs</i> , M.	<i>arbor</i> , F.	<i>litus</i> , N.
		SINGULAR	
Nom.	<i>flōs</i>	<i>arbor</i>	<i>litus</i>
Gen.	<i>flōris</i>	<i>arboris</i>	<i>litoris</i>
Dat.	<i>flōrī</i>	<i>arborī</i>	<i>litorī</i>
Acc.	<i>flōrem</i>	<i>arborem</i>	<i>litus</i>
Abl.	<i>flōre</i>	<i>arbore</i>	<i>litore</i>
		PLURAL	
Nom.	<i>flōrēs</i>	<i>arborēs</i>	<i>litora</i>
Gen.	<i>flōrum</i>	<i>arborum</i>	<i>litorum</i>
Dat.	<i>flōribus</i>	<i>arboribus</i>	<i>litoribus</i>
Acc.	<i>flōrēs</i>	<i>arborēs</i>	<i>litora</i>
Abl.	<i>flōribus</i>	<i>arboribus</i>	<i>litoribus</i>

NOTE. *Rūs*, *rūris*, N., has the locative *rūrī*, "in the country."

## I-Stems

	<i>ignis</i> , M.	<i>turris</i> , F.	<i>vallēs</i> , F.	<i>mare</i> , N.	<i>animal</i> , N
			SINGULAR		
Nom.	<i>ignis</i>	<i>turris</i>	<i>vallēs</i>	<i>mare</i>	<i>animal</i>
Gen.	<i>ignis</i>	<i>turris</i>	<i>vallis</i>	<i>maris</i>	<i>animālis</i>
Dat.	<i>igni</i>	<i>turri</i>	<i>valli</i>	<i>marī</i>	<i>animālī</i>
Acc.	<i>ignem</i>	<i>turrim</i>	<i>vallem</i>	<i>mare</i>	<i>animal</i>
		<i>turrem</i>			
Abl.	<i>igni</i>	<i>turri</i>	<i>valle</i>	<i>marī</i>	<i>animālī</i>
	<i>igne</i>	<i>turre</i>			

	PLURAL				
Nom.	ignēs	turrēs	vallēs	maria	animālia
Gen.	ignium	turrium	vallium	—	animālium
Dat.	ignibus	turribus	vallibus	—	animālibus
Acc.	ignīs	turrīs	vallis	maria	animālia
	ignēs	turrēs	vallēs		
Abl.	ignibus	turribus	vallibus	—	animālibus

## THE FOURTH OR U-DECLENSION

	exercitus, M.		cornū, N.	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Gen.	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
Dat.	exercitui	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
Acc.	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Abl.	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

NOTE. The few feminines of this declension follow the inflection of *exercitus*.

## THE FIFTH OR Ē-DECLENSION

	diēs, M. (and F.)		rēs, F.	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Gen.	diēi	diērum	rei	rērum
Dat.	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus
Acc.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Abl.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

NOTE 1. In the genitive and dative singular of nouns of this class, the characteristic ē is retained only when preceded by a vowel, as in *diēi* (contrast *rei* and *spēi*).

NOTE 2. *Diēs* is always masculine in the plural, and usually so in the singular.

## IRREGULAR NOUNS

	<b>deus, M.</b>	<b>bōs, M. and F.</b>	<b>domus, F.</b>	<b>vis, F.</b>
	SINGULAR			
Nom.	deus	bōs	domus	vis
Gen.	dī	bovis	domūs	—
Dat.	deō	bovī	domui	—
			domō	
Acc.	deum	bovem	domum	vim
Abl.	deō	bove	domō	vi
			domū	
	PLURAL			
Nom.	dī dī	bovēs	domūs	virēs
Gen.	deōrum deum	bovum bovm	domuum domōrum	virium
Dat.	deīs dīs	būbus bōbus	domibus	viribus
	dīs			
Acc.	deōs	bovēs	domōs domūs	virīs virēs
Abl.	deīs dīs dis	būbus bōbus	domibus	viribus

NOTE. Domus forms the locative domi, "at home."

## ADJECTIVES

## FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

## bonus, -a, -um

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
n. bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
. bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
. bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
. bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
. bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

## miser, -era, -erum

n. miser	misera	miserum	miserī	miserae	misera
. miserī	miserae	miserī	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
. miserō	miserae	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
. miserum	miseram	miserum	miserōs	miserās	miserā
. miserō	miserā	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

## piger, -gra, -grum

n. piger	pigra	pigrum	pigrī	pigrae	pigra
. pigrī	pigrae	pigrī	pigrōrum	pigrārum	pigrōrum
. pigrō	pigrae	pigrō	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs
. pigrum	pigram	pigrum	pigrōs	pigrās	pigra
. pigrō	pigrā	pigrō	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs

## THIRD DECLENSION

## Consonant Stems

## The Present Participle

## vocāns

n. vocāns	vocāns	vocāns	vocantēs	vocantēs	vocantia
. vocantis	vocantis	vocantis	vocantium	vocantiū	vocantium
. vocantī	vocantī	vocantī	vocantibus	vocantibus	vocantibus
. vocantem	vocantem	vocāns	vocantēs	vocantēs	vocantia
			vocantis	vocantis	
. vocante	vocante	vocante	vocantibus	vocantibus	vocantibus



*The Comparative***altior, -ior, -ius**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	altior	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōrēs	altiōra
Gen.	altiōris	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum	altiōrum
Dat.	altiōri	altiōri	altiōri	altiōribus	altiōribus	altiōribus
Acc.	altiōrem	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs	altiōrēs	altiōra
Abl.	altiōre	altiōre	altiōre	altiōribus	altiōribus	altiōribus

**plūs**

Nom.	—	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	—	—	plūris	plūrium	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	—	—	—	plūribus	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	—	—	plūs	plūrēs	plūrēs	plūra
				plūris	plūris	
Abl.	—	—	plūre	plūribus	plūribus	plūribus

REMARK. The few singular forms of **plūs** are restricted to noun use.

NOTE. **Complūrēs** is declined in the same way as the plural of **plūs**, excepting that the nominative and accusative neuter are sometimes written **complūria**.

**Mixed Stems****(One Termination)****audāx**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	audāx	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācēs	audācia
Gen.	audācis	audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium	audācium
Dat.	audāci	audāci	audāci	audācibus	audācibus	audācibus
Acc.	audācem	audācem	audāx	audācis	audācis	audācia
				audācēs	audācēs	
Abl.	audāci	audāci	audāci	audācibus	audācibus	audācibus

## I-Stems

*(Two Terminations)*

## fortis (-is), -e

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	fortis	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortēs	fortia
Gen.	fortis	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium	fortium
Dat.	forti	forti	forti	fortibus	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.	fortem	fortem	forte	fortis	fortis	fortia
Abl.	forti	forti	forti	fortēs	fortēs	fortibus

*(Three Terminations)*

## acer, acris, acre

Nom.	acer	acris	acre	acrēs	acrēs	acria
Gen.	acris	acris	acris	acrium	acrium	acrium
Dat.	acri	acri	acri	acribus	acribus	acribus
Acc.	acrem	acrem	acre	acris	acris	acria
Abl.	acri	acri	acri	acrēs	acrēs	acribus

## THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

REGULAR			IRREGULAR		
<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Compar.</i>	<i>Superl.</i>	<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Compar.</i>	<i>Superl.</i>
altus	altior	altissimus	bonus	mellor	optimus
amāns	amantior	amantissimus	(inferus)	inferior	infimus
					imus
audāx	audācior	audācissimus	magnus	maior	maximus
fortis	fortior	fortissimus	malus	peior	pessimus
acer	acrior	acerrimus	multus	plūs ( <i>noun</i> )	plūrimus
miser	miserior	miserrimus	parvus	minor	minimus
similis	similior	simillimus	—	superior	suprēmus
					summus

NOTE 1. Whether an adjective in *-er* retains the *e* in the comparative or not, is indicated by the genitive of the positive; thus, gen. *miseri*, compar. *miserior*, but gen. *ācri*, compar. *ācrior*.

NOTE 2. Adjectives with superlative in *-limus* are: *similis*, *dissimilis*, *facilis*, *difficilis*, *gracilis*, and *humilis*.

NOTE 3. Both adjectives and adverbs may be compared by prefixing the adverbs *magis* and *maximē* to the positive. This is the only method of comparison possible for adjectives in *-us* preceded by a vowel (e.g. *idōneus*, *magis idōneus*, *maximē idōneus*).

#### THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

REGULAR			IRREGULAR		
<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Compar.</i>	<i>Superl.</i>	<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Compar.</i>	<i>Superl.</i>
<i>longē</i>	<i>longius</i>	<i>longissimē</i>	<i>diū</i>	<i>diūtius</i>	<i>diūtissimē</i>
<i>tūtō</i>	<i>tūtius</i>	<i>tūtissimē</i>	<i>libenter</i>	<i>libentius</i>	<i>libentissimē</i>
<i>audācter</i>	<i>audācius</i>	<i>audācissimē</i>	—	<i>magis</i>	<i>maximē</i>
<i>fortiter</i>	<i>fortius</i>	<i>fortissimē</i>	<i>mātūrē</i>	<i>mātūrius</i>	<i>mātūrrimē</i>
<i>ācritē</i>	<i>ācrius</i>	<i>ācerrimē</i>	—	<i>minus</i>	<i>minimē</i>
<i>celeriter</i>	<i>celerius</i>	<i>celerrimē</i>	<i>prope</i>	<i>propius</i>	<i>proximē</i>
<i>facile</i>	<i>facilius</i>	<i>facillimē</i>			

#### NUMERALS

##### ūnus, -a, -um

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
Gen.	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs

NOTE. Eight other adjectives exhibit, in the genitive and dative singular, the same irregularity as *ūnus*. They are: *alius*, *alter* (gen. *alterius*); *ūllus*, *nūllus*; *uter* (*-tra*, *-trum*), *neuter* (*-tra*, *-trum*); *sōlus*, and *tōtus*. Of these eight, *alius* has additional

ularities: its neuter singular, nominative and accusative, is *id*; and in the genitive singular it borrows *alterius* from *alter*.

**duo, duae, duo**

**trēs, trēs, tria**

PLURAL			PLURAL		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
n. duo	duae	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
1. duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	trium
2. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus
3. duo	duās	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
4. duōs			tris	tris	
5. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus

NOTE. The declension of *ambō* follows that of *duo*, excepting that the final vowel of the form *ambō* is everywhere long.

#### LIST OF NUMERALS

CARDINAL	ORDINAL
1. <i>ūnus</i>	<i>primus</i>
2. <i>duo</i>	<i>secundus</i> or <i>alter</i>
3. <i>trēs</i>	<i>tertius</i>
4. <i>quattuor</i>	<i>quārtus</i>
5. <i>quinque</i>	<i>quintus</i>
6. <i>sex</i>	<i>sextus</i>
7. <i>septem</i>	<i>septimus</i>
8. <i>octō</i>	<i>octāvus</i>
9. <i>novem</i>	<i>nōnus</i>
10. <i>decem</i>	<i>decimus</i>
11. <i>undecim</i>	<i>undecimus</i>
12. <i>duodecim</i>	<i>duodecimus</i>
13. <i>tredecim</i>	<i>tertius decimus</i>
14. <i>quattuordecim</i>	<i>quārtus decimus</i>
15. <i>quindecim</i>	<i>quintus decimus</i>
16. <i>sēdecim</i>	<i>sextus decimus</i>
17. <i>septendecim</i>	<i>septimus decimus</i>
18. <i>duodēviginti</i>	<i>duodēvicēsimus</i>
19. <i>undēviginti</i>	<i>undēvicēsimus</i>
20. <i>viginti</i>	<i>vicēsimus</i>

21. viginti unus	vicēsimus primus
ūnus et viginti	ūnus et vicēsimus
22. viginti duo	vicēsimus secundus
duo et viginti	alter et vicēsimus
28. duodētrigintā	duodētricēsimus
29. ūndētrigintā	ūndētricēsimus
30. trigintā	tricēsimus
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50. quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsimus
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
80. octōgintā	octōgēsimus
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
99. ūndēcentum	ūndēcentēsimus
100. centum	centēsimus
101. centum unus	centēsimus primus
centum et unus	centēsimus et primus
200. ducenti, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
300. trecenti, -ae, -a	trecentēsimus
400. quadringenti, -ae, -a	quadringentēsimus
500. quingenti, -ae, -a	quingentēsimus
600. sescenti, -ae, -a	sescentēsimus
700. septingenti, -ae, -a	septingentēsimus
800. octingenti, -ae, -a	octingentēsimus
900. nōngenti, -ae, -a	nōngentēsimus
1000. mille (pl. milia, -ium, N.)	millēsimus

NOTE. Observe that, from 18 to 90, the two numerals precede each of the tens are formed by subtraction, *e.g.* **duodētrigintā** "twenty-eight" (*lit.* "two from thirty"), **ūndēquadrāgintā**, "thirteen" (*lit.* "one from forty"), etc. Note too that, from 21 to 98, in numerals represented by combinations (*e.g.* **trigintā duo** **duo et trigintā**), the conjunction *et* is used whenever the small numeral is put first (*cf.* English "two *and* thirty").

## PRONOUNS

## PERSONAL

	First Person		Second Person	
	ego		tū	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
Gen.	meī	nostrum	tui	vestrum
		nostrī		vestrī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

	Third Person			Third Person Reflexive
	is, ea, id			sui (gen.)
	SINGULAR			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	All Genders
Nom.	is	ea	id	—
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	sui
Dat.	ei	ei	ei	sibi
Acc.	eum	eam	id	sē
				sēsē
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	sē
				sēsē

	PLURAL			
Nom.	eī, īi, ī	eae	ea	—
Gen.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum	sui
Dat.	eīs, īis, īs	eīs, īis, īs	eīs, īis, īs	sibi
Acc.	eōs	eās	ea	sē
				sēsē
Abl.	eīs, īis, īs	eīs, īis, īs	eīs, īis, īs	sē
				sēsē

NOTE 1. The oblique cases of *ego* and *tū* serve as the reflexive of the first and second persons.

NOTE 2. The personal pronoun *is*, *ea*, *id* is used also as an adjective meaning "this," or "that."

## DEMONSTRATIVE

**hic, haec, hoc****ille, illa, illud**

## SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	<b>hic</b>	<b>haec</b>	<b>hoc</b>	<b>ille</b>	<b>illa</b>	<b>illud</b>
Gen.	<b>huius</b>	<b>huius</b>	<b>huius</b>	<b>illius</b>	<b>illius</b>	<b>illius</b>
Dat.	<b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>illi</b>	<b>illi</b>	<b>illi</b>
Acc.	<b>hunc</b>	<b>hanc</b>	<b>hoc</b>	<b>illum</b>	<b>illam</b>	<b>illud</b>
Abl.	<b>hōc</b>	<b>hāc</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>illō</b>	<b>illā</b>	<b>illō</b>

## PLURAL

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	<b>hī</b>	<b>hae</b>	<b>haec</b>	<b>illī</b>	<b>illae</b>	<b>illa</b>
Gen.	<b>hōrum</b>	<b>hārum</b>	<b>hōrum</b>	<b>illōrum</b>	<b>illārum</b>	<b>illōrum</b>
Dat.	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>illīs</b>	<b>illīs</b>	<b>illīs</b>
Acc.	<b>hōs</b>	<b>hās</b>	<b>haec</b>	<b>illōs</b>	<b>illās</b>	<b>illa</b>
Abl.	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>illīs</b>	<b>illīs</b>	<b>illīs</b>

NOTE. The demonstrative pronoun *iste*, *ista*, *istud* is declined in the same way as *ille*.

## INTENSIVE

**ipse, ipsa, ipsum**

## OF IDENTITY

**idem, eadem, idem**

## SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	<b>ipse</b>	<b>ipsa</b>	<b>ipsum</b>	<b>idem</b>	<b>eadem</b>	<b>idem</b>
Gen.	<b>ipsius</b>	<b>ipsius</b>	<b>ipsius</b>	<b>eiusdem</b>	<b>eiusdem</b>	<b>eiusdem</b>
Dat.	<b>ipsī</b>	<b>ipsī</b>	<b>ipsī</b>	<b>eidem</b>	<b>eidem</b>	<b>eidem</b>
Acc.	<b>ipsum</b>	<b>ipsam</b>	<b>ipsum</b>	<b>eundem</b>	<b>eandem</b>	<b>idem</b>
Abl.	<b>ipsō</b>	<b>ipsā</b>	<b>ipsō</b>	<b>eōdem</b>	<b>eādē</b>	<b>eōdem</b>

PLURAL						
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<b>Nom.</b>	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa	{ eīdem īīdem īdem	eaedem	eadem
<b>Gen.</b>	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<b>Dat.</b>	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis	{ eiīdem īīīdem īīdem	eiīdem	īīīdem
<b>Acc.</b>	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa	eōīdem	eāīdem	eaīdem
<b>Abl.</b>	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis	{ eiīdem īīīdem īīdem	eiīdem	īīīdem

## INTERROGATIVE

## quī (quis), quae, quod (quid)

SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<b>Nom.</b>	quī quis	quae	quod quid	quī	quae	quae
<b>Gen.</b>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<b>Dat.</b>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<b>Acc.</b>	quem	quam	quod quid	quōs	quās	quae
<b>Abl.</b>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

NOTE. This pronoun may be used either as an adjective or as a noun. In the noun use, *quis* replaces *quī* (singular), *quid* replaces *quod*, and the feminine is lacking throughout.

## RELATIVE

## quī, quae, quod

The forms of this pronoun are identical with the forms of the interrogative pronoun given just above, excepting that *quis* and *quid* are lacking.



## INDEFINITE

**qui (quis), qua, quod (quid)**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	quī quis	qua	quod quid	quī	quae	qua
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod quid	quōs	quās	qua
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

NOTE. This pronoun may be used either as an adjective or as a noun. In the noun use, *quis* replaces *quī* (singular), *quid* replaces *quod*, and the feminine is lacking throughout.

**aliqui (aliquis), aliqua, aliquod (aliquid)**

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	aliquī aliquis	aliqua	aliquod aliquid	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
Dat.	alicui	alicui	alicui	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquod aliquid	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Abl.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

NOTE. The adjective and noun use of this pronoun follows the same rule as that for indefinite *quī (quis)* immediately preceding.

**quisque, quaeque, quodque (quidque)**

Except that it has but one form in the nominative singular masculine, this pronoun is inflected exactly as *interrogative quī (quis)*. When it is used as a noun, the feminine is lacking throughout, and *quidque* (spelled also *quicque*) replaces *quodque*.

**quidam, quaedam, quoddam      quisquam, —, quicquam**  
**(quiddam)**

## SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	<b>quidam</b>	<b>quaedam</b>	<b>quoddam</b> <b>quiddam</b>	<b>quisquam</b>	<b>quicquam</b>
Gen.	<b>cuiusdam</b>	<b>cuiusdam</b>	<b>cuiusdam</b>	<b>cuiusquam</b>	<b>cuiusquam</b>
Dat.	<b>cuidam</b>	<b>cuidam</b>	<b>cuidam</b>	<b>cuiquam</b>	<b>cuiquam</b>
Acc.	<b>quendam</b>	<b>quandam</b>	<b>quoddam</b> <b>quiddam</b>	<b>quemquam</b>	<b>quicquam</b>
Abl.	<b>quōdam</b>	<b>quādam</b>	<b>quōdam</b>	<b>quōquam</b>	<b>quōquam</b>

## PLURAL

Nom.	<b>quidam</b>	<b>quaedam</b>	<b>quaedam</b>	No plural
Gen.	<b>quōrundam</b>	<b>quārundam</b>	<b>quōrundam</b>	
Dat.	<b>quibusdam</b>	<b>quibusdam</b>	<b>quibusdam</b>	
Acc.	<b>quōsdam</b>	<b>quāsdam</b>	<b>quāsdam</b>	
Abl.	<b>quibusdam</b>	<b>quibusdam</b>	<b>quibusdam</b>	

NOTE 1. The pronoun **quidam** may be used either as an adjective or as a noun. In the noun use, **quiddam** replaces **quoddam**.

NOTE 2. **Quisquam** is seldom used excepting as a noun. The neuter form **quicquam** represents another spelling of **quidquam**.

## INDEFINITE RELATIVE

**quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque**  
*whoever, whatever, whatsoever*

The declension of this pronoun is the same as that of the relative **qui**, *i.e.* it has no **quis** or **quid** forms.

## REGULAR VERBS

THE FIRST OR  $\bar{A}$ -CONJUGATION**vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus**

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	vocō	vocem	vocor	vocer	
	vocās	vocēs	vocāris	voceris	
			vocāre	vocēre	
	vocat	vocet	vocātur	vocētur	
	vocāmus	vocēmus	vocāmur	vocēmur	
	vocātis	vocētis	vocāmini	vocēmini	
Im- perfect	vocant	vocent	vocantur	vocentur	
	vocābam	vocārem	vocābar	vocārer	
	vocābās	vocārēs	vocābāris	vocārēris	
			vocābāre	vocārēre	
	vocābat	vocāret	vocābātur	vocārētur	
	vocābāmus	vocārēmus	vocābāmur	vocārēmur	
Future	vocābātis	vocārētis	vocābāmini	vocārēmini	
	vocābant	vocārent	vocābantur	vocārentur	
	vocābō		vocābor		
	vocābis		vocāberis		
			vocābere		
	vocābit		vocābitur		
Perfect	vocābimus		vocābimur		
	vocābitis		vocābimini		
	vocābunt		vocābuntur		
	vocāvī	vocāverim	vocātus sum	vocātus sim	
	vocāvisti	vocāveris	vocātus es	vocātus sis	
	vocāvit	vocāverit	vocātus est	vocātus sit	
Perfect	vocāvimus	vocāverimus	vocāti sumus	vocāti simus	
	vocāvistis	vocāveritis	vocāti estis	vocāti sitis	
	vocāverunt	vocāverint	vocāti sunt	vocāti sint	
	vocāvēre				

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Plu- perfect	{	vocāveram	vocāvissē	vocātus eram	vocātus essem
		vocāverās	vocāvissēs	vocātus erās	vocātus essēs
		vocāverat	vocāvisset	vocātus erat	vocātus esset
	{	vocāverāmus	vocāvissēmus	vocāti erāmus	vocāti essemus
		vocāverātis	vocāvissētis	vocāti erātis	vocāti essētis
		vocāverant	vocāvissent	vocāti erant	vocāti essent
Future Perfect	{	vocāverō		vocātus erō	
		vocāveris		vocātus eris	
		vocāverit		vocātus erit	
	{	vocāverimus		vocāti erimus	
		vocāveritis		vocāti eritis	
		vocāverint		vocāti erunt	
IMPERATIVE					
		SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present		vocā	vocāte	vocāre	vocāmini
Future	{	vocāt	vocātōte	vocātor	
		vocātō	vocantō	vocātor	vocantor
PARTICIPLE					
Present		vocāns			
Perfect				vocātus, -a, -um	
Future		vocātūrus, -a, -um			
INFINITIVE					
Present		vocāre		vocārī	
Perfect		vocāvisse		vocātus esse	
Future		vocātūrus esse		vocātum iri	
		GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
Gen.		vocandī		vocandus, -a, -um	
Dat.		vocandō			
Acc.		vocandum			
Abl.		vocandō			
SUPINE					
vocātum, vocātū					

THE SECOND OR  $\bar{E}$ -CONJUGATION**habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus**

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present		habeō	habeam	habeor	habear
		habēs	habeās	habēris	habeāris
		habet	habeat	habētur	habeātur
		habēmus	habeāmus	habēmur	habeāmur
		habētis	habeātis	habēmini	habeāmini
		habent	habeant	habentur	habeantur
Im- perfect		habēbam	habērem	habēbar	habērer
		habebās	habērēs	habēbāris	habērēris
		habēbat	habēret	habēbātur	habērētur
		habēbāmus	habērēmus	habēbāmur	habērēmur
		habēbātis	habērētis	habēbāmini	habērēmini
		habēbant	habērent	habēbantur	habērentur
Future		habēbō		habēbor	
		habēbis		habēberis	
		habēbit		habēbere	
		habēbimus		habēbimur	
		habēbitis		habēbimini	
		habēbunt		habēbuntur	
Perfect		habuī	habuerim	habitus sum	habitus sim
		habuisti	habueris	habitus es	habitus sis
		habuit	habuerit	habitus est	habitus sit
		habuimus	habuerimus	habiti sumus	habiti simus
		habuistis	habueritis	habiti estis	habiti sitis
		habuerunt	habuerint	habiti sunt	habiti sint
		habuere			

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Plu- perfect	{	habueram	habuissem	habitus eram	habitus essem
		habuerās	habuissēs	habitus erās	habitus esset
		habuerat	habuisset	habitus erat	habitus esset
	{	habuerāmus	habuissēmus	habiti erāmus	habiti essemus
		habuerātis	habuissētis	habiti erātis	habiti essētis
		habuerant	habuissent	habiti erant	habiti essent
Future Perfect	{	habuerō		habitus erō	
		habueris		habitus eris	
		habuerit		habitus erit	
	{	habuerimus		habiti erimus	
		habueritis		habiti eritis	
		habuerint		habiti erunt	

## IMPERATIVE

		SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present		habē	habēte	habēre	habēminī
Future	{	habētō	habētōte	habētor	
	{	habētō	habentō	habētor	habentor

## PARTICIPLE

Present	habēns	
Perfect		habitus, -a, -um
Future	habitūrus, -a, -um	

## INFINITIVE

Present	habēre	habēri
Perfect	habuisse	habitus esse
Future	habitūrus esse	habitum iri

		GERUND	GERUNDIVE
Gen.		habendī	habendus, -a, -um
Dat.		habendō	
Acc.		habendum	
Abl.		habendō	

## SUPINE

habitum, habitū

## THE THIRD OR Ë-CONJUGATION

mittō, mittere, misi, missus

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	{	mittō	mittam	mittor	mittar
		mittis	mittās	mitteris	mittāris
		mittit	mittat	mittere	mittāre
	{	mittunt	mittant	mittitur	mittātur
		mittimus	mittāmus	mittimur	mittāmur
		mittitis	mittātis	mittimini	mittāmini
Im- perfect	{	mittēbam	mitterem	mittēbar	mitterer
		mittēbās	mitterēs	mittēbāris	mitterēris
		mittēbat	mitteret	mittēbāre	mitterēre
	{	mittēbant	mitterent	mittēbātur	mitterētur
		mittēbamus	mitterēmus	mittēbāmur	mitterēmur
		mittēbātis	mitterētis	mittēbāmini	mitterēmini
Future	{	mittam		mittar	
		mittēs		mittēris	
		mittet		mittēre	
	{	mittent		mittētur	
		mittēmus		mittēmur	
		mittētis		mittēmini	
Perfect	{	misi	miserim	missus sum	missus sim
		misiſti	miseris	missus es	missus sis
		misiſit	miserit	missus est	missus sit
	{	misiſimus	miserimus	missi sumus	missi simus
		misiſtis	miseritis	missi estis	missi sitis
		misiſerunt	miserint	missi sunt	missi sint
	{	misiſere			

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Plu- perfect	{	miseram	miserissem	missus eram	missus essem
		miserās	miserisēs	missus erās	missus essēs
		miserat	miserisset	missus erat	missus esset
	{	miserāmus	miserissemus	missi erāmus	missi essemus
		miserātis	miserisētis	missi erātis	missi essētis
		miserant	miserissent	missi erant	missi essent
Future Perfect	{	miserō		missus erō	
		miseris		missus eris	
		miserit		missus erit	
	{	miserimus		missi erimus	
		miseritis		missi eritis	
		miserint		missi erunt	
IMPERATIVE					
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL	
Present		mitte	mittite	mittere	mittimini
Future	{	mittitō	mittitōte	mittitor	
		mittitō	mittuntō	mittitor	mittuntor
PARTICIPLE					
Present		mittēns			
Perfect				missus, -a, -um	
Future		missūrus, -a, -um			
INFINITIVE					
Present		mittere		mitti	
Perfect		miserisse		missus esse	
Future		missūrus esse		missum iri	
		GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
Gen.		mittendī		mittendus, -a, -um	
Dat.		mittendō			
Acc.		mittendum			
Abi.		mittendō			
SUPINE					
missum, missū					



## THE THIRD OR E-CONJUGATION

mittō, mittere, misi, missus

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present		mittō	mittam	mittor	mittar
		mittis	mittās	mitteris	mittāris
				mittere	mittāre
		mittit	mittat	mittitur	mittātur
		mittimus	mittāmus	mittimur	mittāmur
		mittitis	mittātis	mittimini	mittāmini
Im- perfect		mittunt	mittant	mittuntur	mittantur
		mittēbam	mitterem	mittēbar	mitterer
		mittēbās	mitterēs	mittēbāris	mitterēris
				mittēbāre	mitterēre
		mittēbat	mitteret	mittēbātur	mitterētur
		mittēbāmus	mitterēmus	mittēbāmur	mitterēmur
Future		mittēbātis	mitterētis	mittēbāmini	mitterēmini
		mittēbant	mitterent	mittēbantur	mitterentur
		mittam		mittar	
		mittēs		mittēris	
				mittēre	
		mittet		mittētur	
Perfect		mittēmus		mittēmur	
		mittētis		mittēmini	
		mittent		mittentur	
		misi	miserim	missus sum	missus sim
		misiati	miseris	missus es	missus sis
		misit	miserit	missus est	missus sit
Perfect		misiimus	miserimus	missi sumus	missi simus
		misiatis	miseritis	missi estis	missi sitis
		miserunt	miserint	missi sunt	missi sint
		miserē			

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Plu- perfect	{	miseram	miserem	missus eram	missus essem
		miserās	miserēs	missus erās	missus essēs
		miserat	miseret	missus erat	missus esset
	{	miserāmus	miseremur	missi erāmus	missi essemus
		miserātis	miserētis	missi erātis	missi essētis
		miserant	miserent	missi erant	missi essent
Future Perfect	{	miserō		missus erō	
		miseris		missus eris	
		miserit		missus erit	
	{	miserimus		missi erimus	
		miseritis		missi eritis	
		miserint		missi erunt	
IMPERATIVE					
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL	
Present		mitte	mittite	mittere	mittimini
Future	{	mittitō	mittitōte	mittitor	
		mittitō	mittuntō	mittitor	mittuntor
PARTICIPLE					
Present		mittēns			
Perfect				missus, -a, -um	
Future		missūrus, -a, -um			
INFINITIVE					
Present		mittere		mitti	
Perfect		miserisse		missus esse	
Future		missūrus esse		missum iri	
		GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
Gen.		mittendī		mittendus, -a, -um	
Dat.		mittendō			
Acc.		mittendum			
Abi.		mittendō			
SUPINE					
missum, missū					

## THE THIRD OR Ē-CONJUGATION (-iō VERBS)

**rapīō, rapere, rapui, raptus**

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	{	rapīō	rapiam	rapior	rapiar
		rapis	apiās	raperis	apiāris
		rapit	apiat	rapere	apiāre
	{	rapitur	apiantur	rapitur	apiātur
		rapimus	apiāmus	rapimur	apiāmur
		rapitis	apiātis	rapimini	apiāmini
Im- perfect	{	rapiant	apiantur	rapiantur	apiantur
		rapiebam	raperem	rapiebar	raperer
		rapiebās	raperēs	rapiebāris	raperēris
	{	rapiebat	raperet	rapiebāre	raperēre
		rapiebatur	rapiebantur	rapiebatur	raperētur
		rapiebāmus	raperēmus	rapiebāmur	raperēmur
Future	{	rapiebātis	raperētis	rapiebāmini	raperēmini
		rapiebant	raperent	rapiebantur	raperentur
		rapiam		rapiar	
	{	rapies		rapieris	
		rapiet		rapiere	
		rapietur		rapietur	
Perfect	{	rapiemus		rapiemur	
		rapietis		rapiemini	
		rapient		rapientur	
	{	rapui	rapuerim	raptus sum	raptus sim
		rapuisti	rapueris	raptus es	raptus sis
		rapuit	rapuerit	raptus est	raptus sit
Perfect	{	rapuimus	rapuerimus	rapti sumus	rapti simus
		rapuistis	rapueritis	rapti estis	rapti sitis
		rapuerunt	rapuerint	rapti sunt	rapti sint
		rapuere			

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Plu- perfect	{	rapueram	rapuissem	raptus eram	raptus essem
		rapuerās	rapuissēs	raptus erās	raptus essēs
		rapuerat	rapuisset	raptus erat	raptus esset
	{	rapuerāmus	rapuissēmus	rapti erāmus	rapti essēmus
		rapuerātis	rapuissētis	rapti erātis	rapti essētis
		rapuerant	rapuissent	rapti erant	rapti essent
Future Perfect	{	rapuerō		raptus erō	
		rapueris		raptus eris	
		rapuerit		raptus erit	
	{	rapuerimus		rapti erimus	
		rapueritis		rapti eritis	
		rapuerint		rapti erunt	
IMPERATIVE					
		SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present		rape	rapite	rapere	rapimini
Future	{	rapitō	rapitōte	rapitor	
		rapitō	rapiuntō	rapitor	rapiuntor
PARTICIPLE					
Present		rapīens			
Perfect				raptus, -a, -um	
Future		rapitūrus, -a, -um			
INFINITIVE					
Present		rapere		rapī	
Perfect		rapuisse		raptus esse	
Future		rapitūrus esse		raptum iri	
		GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
Gen.		rapīendī		raplendus, -a, -um	
Dat.		rapīendō			
Acc.		rapīendum			
Abl.		rapīendō			
SUPINE					
raptum, raptū					

## THE FOURTH OR I-CONJUGATION

**audiō, audire, audiui, auditus**

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	{	audiō	audiam	audior	audiar
		audis	audias	audiris	audiāris
		audit	audiat	audire	audiāre
	{	auditur		auditur	audiātur
		audimus	audiāmus	audimur	audiāmur
		auditis	audiātis	audimini	audiāmini
Im- perfect	{	audiunt	audiant	audiuntur	audiantur
		audiēbam	audirem	audiēbar	audirer
		audiēbās	audirēs	audiēbāris	audirēris
	{	audiēbat	audiret	audiēbare	audirēre
				audiēbātur	audirētur
		audiēbāmus	audirēmus	audiēbāmur	audirēmur
Future	{	audiēbātis	audirētis	audiēbāmini	audirēmini
		audiēbant	audirent	audiēbantur	audirentur
		audiam		audiar	
	{	audies		audieris	
		audiet		audiere	
				audietur	
Perfect	{	audīmus		audīmur	
		audistis		audīmini	
		audient		audientur	
	{	audiui	audiverim	auditus sum	auditus sim
		audivisti	audiveris	auditus es	auditus sis
		audivit	audiverit	auditus est	auditus sit
Perfect	{	audivimus	audiverimus	auditi sumus	auditi simus
		audivistis	audiveritis	auditi estis	auditi sitis
		audiverunt	audiverint	auditi sunt	auditi sint
		audivere			

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Plu- perfect	{	audiveram	audivissem	auditus eram	auditus essem
		audiverās	audivissēs	auditus erās	auditus essēs
		audiverat	audivisset	auditus erat	auditus esset
	{	audiverāmus	audivissēmus	auditi erāmus	auditi esēmus
		audiverātis	audivissētis	auditi erātis	auditi essētis
		audiverant	audivissent	auditi erant	auditi essent
Future Perfect	{	audiverō		auditus erō	
		audiveris		auditus eris	
		audiverit		auditus erit	
	{	audiverimus		auditi erimus	
		audiveritis		auditi eritis	
		audiverint		auditi erunt	

		IMPERATIVE			
		SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present		audi	audite	audire	audimini
Future	{	audītō	audītōte	auditor	
	{	audītō	audiuntō	auditor	audiantur

		PARTICIPLE			
Present		audiēns			
Perfect				auditus, -a, -um	
Future		audītūrus, -a, -um			

		INFINITIVE			
Present		audire		audiri	
Perfect		audivisse		auditus esse	
Future		audītūrus esse		auditum iri	
		GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
Gen.		audiendī		audiendus, -a, -um	
Dat.		audiendō			
Acc.		audiendum			
Abi.		audiendō			

SUPINE  
auditum, auditū

## DEPONENTS

As a verb of each conjugation has already been given in full, the corresponding deponents are here presented largely in synopsis.

	I		II	
	<b>moror, morārī morātus sum</b>		<b>polliceor, pollicērī pollicitus sum</b>	
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	moror	morer	polliceor	pollicear
Imperf.	morābar	morārer	pollicēbar	pollicērer
Future	morābor		pollicēbor	
Perfect	morātus sum	morātus sim	pollicitus sum	pollicitus sim
Pluperf.	morātus eram	morātus essem	pollicitus eram	pollicitus essem
Fut. Perf.	morātus erō		pollicitus erō	
IMPERATIVE				
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	morāre	morāmini	pollicēre	pollicēmini
Future	morātor		pollicētor	
	morātor	morantor	pollicētor	pollicentor
PARTICIPLE				
Present	morāns		pollicēns	
Perfect	morātus, -a, -um		pollicitus, -a, -um	
Future	morātūrus, -a, -um		pollicitūrus, -a, -um	
INFINITIVE				
Present	morārī		pollicērī	
Perfect	morātus esse		pollicitus esse	
Future	morātūrus esse		pollicitūrus esse	
	GERUND	GERUNDIVE	GERUND	GERUNDIVE
Gen.	morandī	morand(us, -a), -um	pollicendī	pollicendus, -a, -um
Dat.	morandō		pollicendō	
Acc.	morandum		pollicendum	
Abl.	morandō		pollicendō	
SUPINE				
	morātum, morātū		pollicitum, pollicitū	

## III

## IIIa

**proficiscor, proficisci  
profectus sum**

**patior, pati  
passus sum**

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	proficiscor	proficiscar	patior	patiar
Imperf.	proficiscēbar	proficiscerer	patiēbar	paterer
Future	proficiscar		patiar	
Perfect	profectus sum	profectus sim	passus sum	passus sim
Pluperf.	profectus eram	profectus essem	passus eram	passus essem
Fut. Perf.	profectus erō		passus erō	

## IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	proficiscere	proficiscimini	patere	patimini
Future	{ proficiscitor proficiscitor	proficiscuntor	patitor	patiuntor

## PARTICIPLE

Present	proficiscēns	patiēns
Perfect	profectus, -a, -um	passus, -a, -um
Future	profectūrus, -a, -um	passūrus, -a, -um

## INFINITIVE

Present	proficisci	pati
Perfect	profectus esse	passus esse
Future	profectūrus esse	passūrus esse

	GERUND	GERUNDIVE	GERUND	GERUNDIVE
Gen.	proficiscendī	proficiscend[us, -a]	patiendī	patiendus, -a, -um
Dat.	proficiscendō	-um	patiendō	
Acc.	proficiscendum		patiendum	
Abl.	proficiscendō		patiendō	

## SUPINE

profectum, profectū	passum, passū
---------------------	---------------



## IV

**adorior, adoriri, adortus sum**<sup>1</sup>

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	adorior	adoriar
Imperfect	adoriēbar	adorirer
Future	adoriar	
Perfect	adortus sum	adortus sim
Pluperfect	adortus eram	adortus essem
Future Perfect	adortus erō	
	IMPERATIVE	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	adorire	adorimini
Future	{ adoritor adoritor	adoriantur
	PARTICIPLE	
Present	adoriēns	
Perfect	adortus, -a, -um	
Future	adortūrus, -a, -um	
	INFINITIVE	
Present	adoriri	
Perfect	adortus esse	
Future	adortūrus esse	
	GERUND	GERUNDIVE
Gen.	adoriendi	adoriendus, -a, -um
Dat.	adoriendō	
Acc.	adoriendum	
Abl	adoriendō	
	SUPINE	
	adortum, adortū	

## SEMI-DEPONENTS

**audeō, 2, ausus sum, dare, venture.**      **gaudeō, 2, gāvissus sum, rejoice.**  
**fidē, 3, fides sum, trust.**      **soleō, 2, solitus sum, be accustomed.**

<sup>1</sup> On the analogy of audiō, it might be expected that the perfect participle of deponents of the fourth conjugation would end in -itus; but the commonest deponents of this conjugation take a different form in the perfect passive participle.

## IRREGULAR VERBS

sum, esse, fui			possum, posse, potui	
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	sum	sim	possum	possim
	es	sis	potes	possis
	est	sit	potest	possit
	sumus	simus	possumus	possimus
	estis	sitis	potestis	possitis
	sunt	sint	possunt	possint
Im- perfect	eram	essem (forem)	poteram	possem
	erās	essēs (forēs)	poterās	poscēs
	erat	esset (foret)	poterat	posset
	erāmus	essēmus	poterāmus	possēmus
	erātis	essētis	poterātis	possētis
	erant	essent (forent)	poterant	possent
Future	erō		poterō	
	eris		poteris	
	erit		poterit	
	erimus		poterimus	
	eritis		poteritis	
	erunt		poterunt	

Perfect tenses regular.

Perfect tenses regular.

## IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	es	este
Future	estō	estōte
	estō	suntō

## PARTICIPLE

Future	futūrus, -a, -um
--------	------------------

## INFINITIVE

Present	esse	posse
Perfect	fuisse	potuisse
Future	futūrus esse, fore	

NOTE. Of the compounds of **sum**, **prōsum** ("avail") exhibits no peculiarities, excepting that, before a vowel, **prō-** everywhere becomes **prōd-**, *e.g.* **prōdesse**, **prōdessem**, etc. **Præsum**, another compound, has the present participle **præsens**, **præsentia**, though **sum** itself lacks the corresponding form.

		<b>eō, ire, ii, itum est</b>		<b>volō, velle, volui</b>	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	{	<b>eō</b>	<b>eam</b>	<b>volō</b>	<b>velim</b>
		<b>is</b>	<b>eās</b>	<b>vis</b>	<b>velis</b>
		<b>it</b>	<b>eat</b>	<b>vult</b>	<b>velit</b>
	{	<b>imus</b>	<b>eāmus</b>	<b>volumus</b>	<b>velimus</b>
		<b>itis</b>	<b>eātis</b>	<b>vultis</b>	<b>velitis</b>
		<b>eunt</b>	<b>eant</b>	<b>volunt</b>	<b>velint</b>
Im-perfect	{	<b>ibam</b>	<b>irem</b>	<b>volēbam</b>	<b>vellem</b>
		<b>ibās</b>	<b>irēs</b>	<b>volēbās</b>	<b>vellēs</b>
		<b>ibat</b>	<b>iret</b>	<b>volēbat</b>	<b>vellet</b>
	{	<b>ibāmus</b>	<b>irēmus</b>	<b>volēbāmus</b>	<b>vellēmus</b>
		<b>ibātis</b>	<b>irētis</b>	<b>volēbātis</b>	<b>vellētis</b>
		<b>ibant</b>	<b>irent</b>	<b>volēbant</b>	<b>vellent</b>
Future	{	<b>ibo</b>		<b>volam</b>	
		<b>ibis</b>		<b>volēs</b>	
		<b>ibit</b>		<b>volet</b>	
	{	<b>ibimus</b>		<b>volēmus</b>	
		<b>ibitis</b>		<b>volētis</b>	
		<b>ibunt</b>		<b>volent</b>	

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Perfect	{ ii	ierim, etc.	voluī, etc.	voluerim, etc.
	{ iēti			
	{ iit			
	{ iimus			
	{ iētia			
	{ iērun			
	{ iēre			
Pluperf.	ieram, etc.	issem, etc.	volueram, etc.	voluissem, etc.
Fut. Perf.	ierō, etc.		voluerō, etc.	

## IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	i	ite
Future	{ itō	itōte
	{ itō	euntō

## PARTICIPLE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	iēns, gen. euntis	volēns
Perfect	it(us, -a), -um	
Future	itūrus, -a, -um	

## INFINITIVE

Present	ire	vellē
Perfect	isse	voluisse
Future	itūrus esse	

	GERUND	GERUNDIVE
Gen.	eundi	eund(us, -a), -um
Dat.	eundō	
Acc.	eundum	
Abl.	eundō	

		mālō, mälle, mālui		nōlō, nōlle, nōlui	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	{	mālō	mālim	nōlō	nōlim
		māvis	mālīs	nōn vīs	nōlīs
		māvult	mālit	nōn vult	nōlit
	{	mālumus	mālimus	nōlumus	nōlimus
		māvultis	mālītis	nōn vultis	nōlītis
		mālunt	mālīnt	nōlunt	nōlīnt
Imperfect	{	mālēbam	māllem	nōlēbam	nōllem
		mālēbās	mālles	nōlēbās	nōlles
		mālēbat	māllet	nōlēbat	nōllet
	{	mālēbāmus	māllemus	nōlēbāmus	nōllēmus
		mālēbātis	mālletis	nōlēbātis	nōllētis
		mālēbant	mālilent	nōlēbant	nōllent
Future	{	[mālam]		[nōlam]	
		mālēs		nōlēs	
		mālet		nōlet	
	{	mālēmus		nōlēmus	
		mālētis		nōlētis	
		mālent		nōlent	
Perfect tenses regular.			Perfect tenses regular.		

## IMPERATIVE

		SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present		nōlī	nōllite
Future	{	nōlītō	nōlītōte
	{	nōlītō	nōluntō

## PARTICIPLE

Present	nōlēns
---------	--------

## INFINITIVE

Present	mälle	nōlle
Perfect	māluisse	nōluisse

**dō, dare, dedi, datus**

This verb deviates from the first conjugation principally in that the *a* of its stem is regularly short in situations where the first conjugation requires *ā*. The only exceptions are found in the forms *dās, dā, and dāns*.

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	{	dō	dēm	—	—
		dās	dēs	daris	dēris
		dare		dere	
		dat	det	datur	dētur
		damus	dēmus	damur	—
Imperfect	{	datis	dētis	damini	dēmini
		dant	dent	dantur	dentur
		dabam	darem	dabar	darer
		dabās	darēs	dabāris	darēris
		dabāre		darēre	
		dabat	daret	dabātur	darētur
		dabāmus	darēmus	dabāmur	darēmur
		dabātis	darētis	dabāmini	darēmini
		dabant	darent	dabantur	darentur
		dabō		dabor	
Future	{	dabis		daberis	
		dabit		dabere	
				dabitur	
		dabimus		dabimur	
		dabitis		dabimini	
		dabunt		dabuntur	

Perfect tenses regular (excepting for the *ā* of *datus*).

		IMPERATIVE			
		SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	dā		date	dare	damini
Future	{ datō		datōte	dator	
	{ datō		dantō	dator	dantor

## PARTICIPLE

Present	<b>dāns</b>	
Perfect		<b>datus, -a, -um</b>
Future	<b>datūrus, -a, -um</b>	

## INFINITIVE

Present	<b>dare</b>	<b>dari</b>
Perfect	<b>dedisse</b>	<b>datus esse</b>
Future	<b>datūrus esse</b>	<b>datum iri</b>
	<b>GERUND</b>	<b>GERUNDIVE</b>
Gen.	<b>dandī</b>	<b>dandus, -a, -um</b>
Dat.	<b>dandō</b>	
Acc.	<b>dandum</b>	
Abl.	<b>dandō</b>	

## SUPINE

datum, datū

**edō, ēsse (edere), ēdī, ēsus**

The peculiarities of **edō** are due to the fact that its regular forms are often contracted (as the infinitive above). Otherwise the verb conforms to the third conjugation, and only so much of it is here given as is needed to display the contracted forms.

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	<b>edō</b>	<b>edam</b>	<b>edor</b>	<b>edar</b>
	<b>ēs</b>	<b>edās</b>	<b>ederis</b>	<b>edāris</b>
	<b>edis</b>		<b>edere</b>	<b>edāre</b>
	<b>ēst</b>	<b>edat</b>	<b>ēstur</b>	<b>edātur</b>
	<b>edit</b>		<b>editur</b>	
	<b>edimus</b>	<b>edāmus</b>	<b>edimur</b>	<b>edāmur</b>
	<b>ēstis</b>	<b>edātis</b>	<b>edimini</b>	<b>edāmini</b>
	<b>editis</b>			
	<b>edunt</b>	<b>edant</b>	<b>eduntur</b>	<b>edantur</b>

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Im- perfect		edēbam	ēssem ederēm	edēbar	ederer
		edēbās	ēsset ederēs	edēbāris	ederēris
		edēbat	ēsset ederet	edēbātur	ederētur
		edēbāmus	ēssemus ederēmus	edēbāmur	ederēmur
		edēbātis	ederētis	edēbāmini	ederēmini
		edēbant	ēsset ederent	edēbantur	ederentur

## IMPERATIVE

		SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present		ēs (ede)	ēste (edite)	edere	edimini
Future	{	ēstō (editō)	ēstōte (editōte)	editor	
		ēstō (editō)	eduntō	editor	eduntur

## ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus

Present		ferō	feram	feror	ferar
		fers	ferās	ferris	ferāris
		fert	ferat	ferre	ferāre
		ferimur	ferāmus	ferimur	ferāmur
		fertis	ferātis	ferimini	ferāmini
		ferunt	ferant	feruntur	ferantur
Im- perfect		ferēbam	ferrem	ferēbar	ferrer
		ferēbās	ferres	ferēbāris	ferrēris
		ferēbat	ferret	ferēbātur	ferrētur
		ferēbāmus	ferrēmus	ferēbāmur	ferrēmur
		ferēbātis	ferrētis	ferēbāmini	ferrēmini
		ferēbant	ferrēt	ferēbantur	ferrēntur



ACTIVE		PASSIVE
INDICATIVE		INDICATIVE
Future	feram	ferar
	ferēs	ferēris
	feret	ferēre
		ferētur
	ferēmus	ferēmur
	ferētis	ferēmini
	ferent	ferentur

Perfect tenses regular.

IMPERATIVE				
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	fer	ferite	ferite	ferimini
Future	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

PARTICIPLE		
Present	ferēs	
Perfect		lātus, -a, -um
Future	lāturus, -a, -um	

INFINITIVE		
Present	ferre	ferri
Perfect	tulisse	lātus esse
Future	lāturus esse	lātum iri

GERUND		GERUNDIVE
Gen.	ferendi	ferendus, -a, -um
Dat.	ferendō	
Acc.	ferendum	
Abl.	ferendō	

SUPINE  
lātum, lātū

## fio, fieri, factus sum

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	fio	fiam
	fis	fiās
	fit	fiat
	[fimus]	fiāmus
	[fitis]	fiātis
Im- perfect	fiēbam	fierem
	fiēbās	fierēs
	fiēbat	fieret
	fiēbāmus	fierēmus
	fiēbātis	fierētis
Future	fiam	
	fiēs	
	fiet	
	fiēmus	
	fiētis	
	fient	

Perfect tenses identical with those of the passive of *facio*.

## IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	fi	fiō

## PARTICIPLE

Perfect	factus, -a, -um
---------	-----------------

## INFINITIVE

Present	fieri
Perfect	factus esse
Future	[factum iri] futūrus esse, fore

**inquam****INDICATIVE**

Present	inquam	Future	_____
	inquis		inquiŕs
	inquit		inquiet
	_____		_____
	_____		_____
	inquitunt		_____

NOTE. The forms of **inquam** here given are the only ones in common use. The present indicative is employed freely with the force of the perfect, *e.g.* **inquam**, "*said* I," **inquit**, "*said* he," etc.

**LIST OF VERB CONSTRUCTIONS**

The ambiguity of English "that" and "to" tends to obscure the difference between complementary infinitive, indirect discourse, and purpose clause. The following summary, therefore, may be found helpful as showing the construction required by various verbs needed for the translation of the English-Latin Exercises.

**GOVERNING THE COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE**

<b>audeŕ</b>	<b>cŕnsuēscŕ</b>	<b>parŕ</b>
<b>coepl</b>	<b>dubitŕ</b>	<b>patior</b>
<b>cŕgŕ</b>	<b>iubeŕ</b>	<b>possum</b>
<b>cŕnor</b>	<b>mālŕ</b>	<b>soleŕ</b>
<b>cŕstituŕ</b>	<b>nŕlŕ</b>	<b>volŕ</b>

## GOVERNING INDIRECT DISCOURSE

<b>animadve. tō</b>	<b>faciō (certiōrem, etc.)</b>	<b>putō</b>
<b>arbitror</b>	<b>glōrior</b>	<b>ratus</b>
<b>audiō</b>	<b>intelleō</b>	<b>respondeō</b>
<b>cōgnōscō</b>	<b>nārrō</b>	<b>sciō</b>
<b>crēdō</b>	<b>nesciō</b>	<b>sentīō</b>
<b>dicō</b>	<b>nūntiō</b>	<b>simulō</b>
<b>doceō</b>	<b>polliceor</b>	<b>spērō</b>
		<b>videor</b>

GOVERNING A PURPOSE CLAUSE (**ut**, **nē**)

<b>hortor</b>	<b>imperō</b>	<b>persuādeō</b>
---------------	---------------	------------------

## OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS

1. After verbs of fearing, **ut** and **nē** apparently interchange functions.
2. **Fit** ("it happens") is construed with **ut** and the subjunctive (substantive clause).



# LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

(Numbers in parentheses following a definition indicate the Lesson in which that particular meaning is found.)

- ā, ab, prep. with abl.,** by, at the hands of: from; from the vicinity of; from among (106); of, from (72, 81, 129). See also **aliēnus, pars, petō, repetō,** and **tergum.**
- abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum est,** go away, go, depart, leave.
- abhinc, adv.,** ago.
- abiciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus,** throw aside, throw overboard; throw (56); shoot (113).
- abripīō, 3, -ripuī, -reptus,** tear away, carry away; pull up, tear up.
- abscidō, 3, -cidī, -cīsus,** cut off.
- absconditus, -a, -um, partic. as adj.,** hidden.
- absum, -esse, āfuī,** be away, be distant (remote), be absent.
- ac, see atque.**
- accēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est,** approach, draw near; come, advance (138); *with ad and acc.,* approach (115). *Used impersonally,* be added (106).
- accidō, 3, -cidī, befall, happen, turn out, develop.**
- accipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus,** receive, greet; learn (80); sustain, suffer (loss, indignity, etc.).
- ācer, -cris, -cre,** fierce, spirited, energetic, vigorous; sharp, shrill, piercing, penetrating.
- acerbus, -a, -um, harsh, bitter; gall-ing** (137), outrageous (57).
- aciēs, -ēī, f.,** line of battle, battle line, battle array, line, ranks; regular engagement (36, 40). **ex aciēs,** from the field; **in primā aciēs,** in the forefront of the fight.
- ācritē, adv.,** fiercely, furiously; energetically, vigorously; with spirit, with vigor; relentlessly (41); eagerly, with eagerness (140).
- ad, prep. with acc.,** to, for; toward, to the neighborhood of, before (52); against, upon, on; at, on, near, in the neighborhood of, before: until, till, up to. *Often used with the gerundive or gerund to express purpose.*
- See also **accēdō, appellō (-ere), eō** (verb), **perfuō, pertineō, perveniō, speciēs, ūnus,** and **usque.**
- ad . . . versus,** toward, in the direction of, for. *With acc. of town name, shortened to versus* (130).
- addō, 3, -didī, -ditus,** add; make mention in addition.
- addūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus,** lead on, bring on, bring; influence (119), rouse (135).
- adeō, adv.,** to such a degree, so.
- adeō, -īre, -iī, -itus,** visit, touch at (70); meet (135); run into, fall into (37).
- adferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus,** bring, transport, bear; carry, take, deliver (letter): *with dat.,* inspire (in) (36).

- Pass.*, come; *with ad and acc.*, come to, reach (63, 76, 90).
- adhærescō**, 3, -haesi, -haesum est, stick; ground (of a boat).
- adhūc**, *adv.*, up to this time, still, yet, hitherto.
- adiuvō**, 1, -iūvī, -iūtus, help, aid, assist, support.
- admīror**, 1, view with admiration, be filled with admiration for.
- admoneō**, 2, -monuī, -monitus, remind.
- admoveō**, 2, -mōvī, -mōtus, move up (84); ignēs (-em) *admovēre*, *with dat.*, set (apply) fire (to).
- adorior**, 4, -ortus sum, attack, assail; make an assault (86).
- adsequor**, 3, -secūtus sum, catch up with, overtake.
- adstō**, 1, -stitī, stand by, be in attendance.
- adsum**, -esse, -fuī, be present, be (close) at hand, be in attendance; be on the field (128); be come (100, 131); be there (113); be upon (one) (99); be back (again) (22); come up (124).
- Aduātucī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.
- adulēscēna**, -entis, *adj.*, young. *As masc. noun*, (a) youth.
- advena**, -ae, *c.*, stranger, newcomer.
- adventus**, -ūs, *m.*, approach, arrival, coming; presence (63); inroad (140).
- adversus**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, contrary. See also *flūmen*.
- advesperāscit**, 3, -vesperāvit (*impersonal verb*), grow dark, begin to grow dark.
- aedēs**, -is, *f.*; *pl.*, house, home.
- aedificō**, 1, build, build up.
- aeger**, -gra, -grum, sick, ill. *As noun*, aegrī, -ōrum, *m.*, the sick.
- aegrē**, *adv.*, with difficulty.
- aequus**, -a, -um, favorable, suitable, good (121): *of mental states*, pleasant, resigned, undaunted, composed. **haud aequus**, no pleasant.
- aes** (aeris, *n.*) **aliēnum** (-ī), debt.
- aestās**, -ātis, *f.*, summer.
- aetās**, -ātis, *f.*, lifetime, life; age, period (74).
- Āfer**, -fra, -frum, negro. *As noun*, Āfrī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Africans.
- afficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectus, attack; treat, overwhelm (26). *Pass.*, be filled (84).
- Āfrica**, -ae, *f.*, Africa.
- Āfricānus**, -a, -um, African, of Africa.
- ager**, -grī, *m.*, field; country (45); territory (75).
- agmen**, -inis, *n.*, (marching) column, (marching) line. **prīmum agmen**, vanguard; **novissimum agmen**, rear guard.
- agō**, 3, ēgī, āctus, drive, drive off (43, 117); do; treat, make overtures; carry out (project), keep (watch), pass (time), give, render (thanks), wear out (life). **inter sē agere**, talk to one another; **vītam agere**, live.
- agricola**, -ae, *m.*, farmer, planter, rustic.
- Alexander**, -drī, *m.*, the name of (1) an Indian chief, brother of King Philip; (2) a king of Macedonia.
- alibi**, *adv.*, elsewhere, in other places, in other quarters, at other points. See also **alius**.
- aliēnus**, -a, -um, another's, of another

- (133); inclined away. *With ab and abl.*, unfriendly (to), averse (to); *with gen.*, unfriendly (to). See also *aes*.
- aliquamdū**, *adv.*, for some time, for a time; for a considerable period (74.)
- aliqui (aliquis)**, *aliqua*, *aliquod* (*aliquid*), *adj.*, some, any; *noun*, some one, any one, something, anything. *Pl.*, any.
- alius**, *alia*, *aliud*, other, another. *As noun*, some one else, some other, another (120); anything else (91); *pl.*, others (86). **alius super alium**, one on top of another; **alii . . . alii**, some . . . others (17, 139); **alii alibi**, some in one place, some in another (136); **alii in aliam**, some into one . . . some into another (67); **neque alius**, and no other (45).
- Allobrogēs**, *-um, m.*, the name of a people of southeast Gaul.
- alter**, *-era, -erum*, the other, a second, another, one (of two). *As noun*, the other, one (of two), the one (of two); *pl.*, the other party (120). **alter . . . alter**, the one . . . the other.
- altus**, *-a, -um*, tall, high, lofty, elevated; deep (85). *As noun*, **altum**, *-i, n.*, the deep (sea), the ocean (12).
- Amānus**, *-i, m.*, the name of a mountain range of eastern Cilicia.
- Ambiorix**, *-igis, m.*, the name of a Gallic chieftain.
- ambō**, *-ae, -ō* (*declined as duo*, except for the *ō*), both.
- ambulō**, *1, -āvi, -ātum est*, walk, stroll; roam (65); crawl (50).
- America**, *-ae, f.*, America.
- Americānus**, *-a, -um*, American, of America. *As noun*, **Americānus**, *-i, m.*, (an) American; *pl.*, the Americans.
- amicitia**, *-ae, f.*, friendship, confidence.
- amicus**, *-a, -um*, friendly. *As noun*, **amicus**, *-i, m.*, friend; *pl.*, **Amici**, *-ōrum, m.*, the Friends.
- āmittō**, *3, -misi, -missus*, lose.
- amō**, *1, love*, like, fancy, cherish; be in love with (48). *Pass.*, be beloved (63). *Partic.*, **amāns**, *-antis*, *with gen.*, loyal (to).
- amplector**, *3, -plexus sum*, embrace, accept.
- amplius**, *adv., compar.*, further, more.
- ancora**, *-ae, f.*, anchor.
- angustus**, *-a, -um*, narrow.
- animadvertō**, *3, -verti, -versus*, notice, note, perceive, observe, catch sight of, witness, see; discover, find out.
- animus**, *-i, m.*, mind, spirit, soul, heart; manner, fashion, spirit: frame of mind; purpose; courage (56, 120), confidence (135). *Pl.*, courage, feeling (119), insubordinate spirit (140). See also **dēmittō** and **habēō**.
- Annēius**, *-ēi, m.*, (Marcus) Anneius, lieutenant to Marcus Cicero.
- annus**, *-i, m.*, year.
- ante**, *adv.*, before, earlier, previously. See also **iam** and **paulō**.
- ante**, *prep. with acc.*, before, in front of, ahead of.
- anteā**, *adv.*, before, previously.
- antequam**, *conj.*, before.
- Antiochēa**, *-ae, f.*, Antioch, a city of Syria.
- antiquitus**, *adv.*, in ancient times, in early times.



- Antistius**, -tī, *m.*, the name of a Roman physician.
- Antōnius**, -nī, *m.*, Anthony (Wayne), an officer in the Révolutionary War.
- Apamēa**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.
- aperiō**, 4, **aperui**, **apertus**, disclose; explain (2). *Partic. as adj.*, **apertus**, -a, -um, open, unprotected.
- appellō**, 1, call, name, address by name; call upon, call (122). *Pass.*, be known as.
- appellō**, 3, -pulī, -pulsus, bring, steer, row. **ad litus appellere**, beach, run aground upon the shore.
- appetō**, 3, -petivī or -petiī, -petītus, attack, aim a thrust at.
- appōnō**, 3, -posuī, -positus, set on, bring on, serve (food).
- appropinquō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, approach, draw near; be close at hand (47).
- apud**, *prep. with acc.*, among, in the country of, with; near, at; at (in) the house of; in the presence of.
- aqua**, -ae, *f.*, water.
- Arabēs**, -um, *m.*, the Arabs.
- Ārae** (-ārum, *f.*) **Alexandrī**, the name of an ancient camp site in Cilicia (*lit.* the Altars of Alexander).
- arbitror**, 1, think, believe, judge.
- arbor**, -oris, *f.*, tree.
- arceō**, 2, -uī, keep out, ward off, keep back, keep off.
- arcēssō**, 3, -ivī, -ītus, call in; call up (136).
- Ardeātēs**, -ium, *m.*, the people of Ardea (an ancient town about 20 miles south of Rome).
- ārdēns**, -entis, *partic. as adj.*, blazing.
- argenteus**, -a, -um, of silver, silver.
- argentum**, -ī, *n.*, silver, silver plate.
- arma**, -ōrum, *n.*, arms, weapons.
- armātus**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, armed, in arms, arms in hand (20); arms and all (88). *Pl., as noun*, **armātī**, -ōrum, *m.*, armed men, warriors, braves.
- Arnoldius**, -dī, *m.*, (Benedict) Arnold, an officer in the Revolutionary War.
- Arpinēius**, -ēī, *m.*, (Gaius) Arpineius, a Roman soldier (102).
- arripiō**, 3, -ripuī, -reptus, catch up, seize; rescue (106).
- ars**, *artis, f.*, business, profession. **ars magica**, black art, magic.
- ascendō**, 3, **ascendī**, **ascēnsus**, ascend, clamber up, scale; *with in and acc.*, make the ascent of (139).
- asciscō**, 3, **ascivī**, **ascitus**, win over; adopt (67).
- Asia**, -ae, *f.*, (1) Asia; (2) Asia Minor (132, 138).
- Asiāticus**, -a, -um, Asiatic, of Asia.
- asper**, -era, -erum, rough; severe (101); troublesome (135).
- assēnsus**, -ūs, *m.*, approval.
- at**, *conj.*, but, whereas, still, however.
- Atlanticus**, -a, -um, Atlantic.
- atque**, *ac, conj.*, and. See also **simul**.
- Atrebatēs**, -um, *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.
- Attius**, -tī, *m.*, (Publius) Attius (Varus), one of Pompey's generals.
- auctōritās**, -ātis, *f.*, influence, dignity, impressiveness.
- audācia**, -ae, *f.*, boldness, daring, temerity, hardihood; insubordination, lawlessness (140); (act of) daring (88).
- audācter**, *adv.*, boldly, with boldness.
- audāx**, -ācis, *adj.*, bold, daring, audacious; of daring (99).
- audeō**, 2, **ausus sum**, dare, venture.

- audiō, 4, -īvi, -itus**, hear, learn; listen, listen to, heed, give ear to.
- augeō, 2, auxi, auctus; pass.**, increase, grow (93); grow brighter (126).
- auris, -is, f.**, ear.
- aurum, -ī, n.**, gold.
- ausus, -a, -um**, see **audeō**.
- aut, conj.**, or; *sometimes represented in English by "and."* **aut . . . aut**, either . . . or.
- autem, conj.**, however, but, whereas; moreover, and.
- auxilium, -li, n.**, aid, help, assistance, reinforcement, relief, protection. *Pl.*, auxiliary forces, supplementary force (detachments), allied force, allies, assistants, reinforcements, help. **auxiliō esse**, with a second *dat.*, (freely) help, benefit, support, protect, rescue. See also **ferō** and **veniō**.
- avaritia, -ae, f.**, greed, covetousness.
- āvertō, 3, -verti, -versus; pass.**, turn (one's self) aside. *Partic. as adj.*, **āversus, -a, -um**, turned away (131).
- avis, -is, f.**, bird.
- bāca, -ae, f.**, berry.
- Bagrada, -ae, m.**, the name of a river of northern Africa.
- ballista, -ae, f.; pl.**, artillery.
- Balventius, -ti, m.**, (Titus) Balventius, a Roman standard bearer (106).
- barbarus, -a, -um**, barbarian. *As noun*, **barbari, -ōrum, m.**, savages.
- Batāvi, -ōrum, m.**, the Dutch.
- Bēcō, -ōnis, m.**, (Nathaniel) Bacon, a hero of colonial times.
- Bellovacl, -ōrum, m.**, the name of a people of northern Gaul.
- bellum, -ī, n.**, war, warfare; fighting (116). See also **gerō**.
- Bēnbrigius, -gi, m.**, (William) Bainbridge, an American naval officer.
- bene, adv.**, well, successfully, satisfactorily. See also **gerō**, **habeō**, and **polliceor**.
- beneficium, -ci, n.**, act of kindness, kindness, favor.
- Bibulus, -ī, m.**, (Marcus) Bibulus, a (Roman) governor of Syria.
- bīdium, -ī, n.**, two days.
- Bithynia, -ae, f.**, the name of a district of Asia Minor.
- bonus, -a, -um**, good. *As noun*, **bona, -ōrum, n.**, goods, possessions, belongings, things.
- bōs, bovis, c. (dat. and abl. pl., bōbus or būbus); pl.**, cattle.
- Bostō, -ōnis, m.**, Boston.
- Braddoc, -ocis, m.**, (Edward) Braddock, an English commander in the French and Indian War.
- brevi, adv.**, shortly, (with) in a short time, soon, in a moment, before long, quickly; soon afterward (67).
- Britanni, -ōrum, m.**, the English, the British, Englishmen.
- Britannia, -ae, f.**, England; Britain (101). **Britannia Nova**, New England.
- Britannicus, -a, -um**, English, British, of the English. See also **vir**.
- Brūtus, -ī, m.**, (1) Marcus Brutus, one of the murderers of Julius Caesar; (2) Decimus Brutus, husband of Sempronia (135).
- Bȳzantium, -ti, n.**, the ancient name of Constantinople.
- C., abbreviation of Cālus, -āi, m.** (Galus).
- Cabot, -otis, m.**, (1) John Cabot,

- (2) Sebastian Cabot; two early explorers, father and son.
- cadō**, 3, *cecidī*, fall; turn out, fall out (14).
- caedēs**, -is, *f.*, slaughter, carnage, massacre, murder.
- caelum**, -ī, *n.*, (the open) sky, heaven; (the open) air; climate.
- Caesar**, -aris, *m.*, (1) Gaius Julius Caesar, the conqueror of Gaul; (2) Lucius Caesar, an officer in Pompey's navy (117).
- caespes**, -itis, *m.*, sod.
- callidus**, -a, -um, clever.
- Camillus**, -ī, *m.*, (Marcus) Camillus, a hero of ancient Rome.
- Canada**, -ae, *f.*, Canada.
- Caninius**, -nī, *m.*, (Gaius) Caninius (Rebilus), lieutenant to Curio in the civil war.
- canis**, -is, *c.*, dog.
- canō**, 3, *cecinī*, play, sing.
- cantus**, -ūs, *m.*, singing, chanting, chant.
- capiō**, 3, *cēpī*, *captus*, catch, seize, capture, take, occupy; take prisoner, make prisoner; secure, get (13); adopt (plan), follow (course), make for (hills), take up (arms). *Pass.*, be attracted. *pedibus captus*, lame; *vī capere*, take by storm.
- Capitōlium**, -lī, *n.*, the citadel of ancient Rome, the Capitol.
- Cappadocia**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a district of Asia Minor.
- captivus**, -ī, *m.*, prisoner, captive.
- caput**, -itis, *n.*, head; capital. See also *damnō*.
- carcer**, -eris, *m.*, prison.
- careō**, 2, -uī, *with abl.*, be without, lack; spare.
- Carletō**, -ōnis, *m.*, (Sir Guy) Carleton, a British officer in the Revolutionary War.
- carō**, *carnis*, *f.*, meat, flesh.
- Carolaena**, -ae, *f.*, Carolina.
- carpō**, 3, *carpsī*, *carptus*, gather, pluck.
- carrus**, -ī, *m.*, wagon, cart.
- cārus**, -a, -um, beloved, precious, prized.
- casa**, -ae, *f.*, hut, shack. *Pl.*, barracks.
- Casca**, -ae, *m.*, the name of two brothers implicated in the murder of Julius Caesar.
- castellum**, -ī, *n.*, blockhouse, fort, post; stronghold (133, 139).
- Castor**, -oris, *m.*, the name of a god worshiped by the Romans.
- castra**, -ōrum, *n.*, (entrenched) camp, fortress, fortified post, encampment. See also *faciō*, *habeō*, and *pōnō*.
- Castra** (-ōrum, *n.*) *Cornēlia* (-ōrum), the name of the site of a camp established in Africa by Publius Cornelius Scipio at the time of the second Punic War.
- cāsus**, -ūs, *m.*, fall (86); accident (94), plight (84, 134), calamity (97), disaster (115), emergency (105). *Abl. as adv.*, *cāsū*, by chance as chance would have it.
- Catilīna**, -ae, *m.*, (Lucius Sergius) Catiline, a politician who conspired to overthrow the government of Rome.
- causa**, -ae, *f.*, cause, grounds, excuse, occasion; case (41). *Abl. causā. with gen. of the gerundive, gerund. or abstract noun, for the purpose* (of), for the business (of), for purposes (of), with the idea (of), with a view to, etc. *ob eam causam*, for that reason.

**cavus, -a, -um**, hollow.

**cecidi**, see **cadō**.

**cēdō**, 3, **cessi**, **cessum est**, fall back.

**locō cēdere**, leave (one's) station, abandon (one's) position, give way.

**celebrō**, 1, celebrate.

**celeritās, -ātis, f.**, swiftness, speed, swift action, haste.

**celeriter, adv.**, quickly, swiftly, rapidly, speedily, fast; in haste, hastily. *Superl.*, at top speed, with great speed, with all speed.

**cēna, -ae, f.**, dinner.

**cēnō**, 1, **-āvī**, (**-ātus**), dine, take dinner.

**cēnseō**, 2, **-uī**, (**cēnsus**), express (the) opinion, give as (one's) opinion; urge (120).

**centuriō, -ōnis, m.**, captain, lieutenant, sergeant; centurion (103 ff.).

**cēpī**, see **capiō**.

**Cercās, -ae, m.**, (Benjamin) Church, a celebrated Indian fighter.

**cernō**, 3, (**crēvī**, **certus**), see, descry, discern, observe; watch (128).

**certē, adv.**, at any rate, certainly; as a matter of fact (90).

**certus, -a, -um**, certain, definite; assured (135); (a) particular (89). See also **cōgnōscō**, **faciō**, and **fiō**.

**cēteri, -ae, -a**, the other, the rest (of). *As masc. noun*, the others, the rest, the other men.

**Ceutronēs, -um, m.**, the name of a people of northern Gaul.

**cibus, -ī, m.**, food.

**Cicerō, -ōnis, m.**, (1) Marcus Tullius Cicero, consul in 63 B.C.; (2) Quintus Tullius Cicero, brother of the preceding.

**Cilicia, -ae, f.**, the name of a district in Asia Minor.

**Kimber, -brī, m.**, see **Tillius**.

**circiter, adv.**, about.

**circuitus, -ūs, m.**, circuit, detour; circumference (110).

**circum, prep. with acc.**, around, about, in the neighborhood of (116).

**circumdō**, 1, **-dedī**, **-datus**, surround, girdle, encircle.

**circumeō, -īre, -iī, -itus**, make the rounds of.

**circumsistō**, 3, **-stitī** or **-stetī**, rally (gather, crowd) around.

**circumstō**, 1, **-stitī**, stand about; surround, encircle.

**circumveniō**, 4, **-vēnī**, **-ventus**, surround, encircle, hem in, bring to bay; flank, turn the flank (of).

**citrō, adv.**, see **ultrō**.

**cīvis, -is, c.**, citizen, fellow-citizen, countryman. *Pl.*, (one's) countrymen, people, townsmen.

**civitās, -ātis, f. (gen. pl. -um or -ium)**, state, country.

**clādēs, -is, f.**, disaster.

**clam, adv.**, secretly, stealthily, quietly; unnoticed, unobserved.

**clāmō**, 1, **-āvī**, **-ātum est**, cry out, call out.

**clāmor, -ōris, m.**, cry, shout.

**clārus, -a, -um**, famous, prominent; loud (86).

**classis, -is, f.**, fleet.

**claudō**, 3, **clausī**, **clausus**, close; shut up, confine (91).

**Cn.**, abbreviation of **Cnaeus, -ī, m.**, (Gnaeus).

**cōgī, cōactus, -a, -um**, see **cōgō**.

**coepī, coepisse, coeptus**, began, commenced; proceeded (130).

**coerceō**, 2, **-ercuī**, **-ercitus**, hold in check.

**cōgitō**, 1, think, imagine; *with dē and abl.*, have (any) thought (of) (51).

**cōgnōscō**, 3, **cōgnōvī**, **cōgnītus**, get acquainted with, learn (of), fathom, find, observe; be informed, hear, gain information; get information of, gain (some) conception of (110); realize (93, 122); recognize (63, 89): try (case). *Pass.*, become known, be known. **certius cōgnōscere**, get more definite information (115).

**cōgō**, 3, **cōēgī**, **cōāctus**, compel, force, oblige, constrain, impel, lead (126); collect, gather, bring together, call together, call in, get together; concentrate, crowd; muster, organize.

**cohors**, -rtis, *f.*, cohort. **cohors praetoria**, bodyguard.

**cohortor**, 1, rally, cheer on; urge, exhort. **inter sē cohortārī**, exhort one another (127).

**collis**, -is, *m.*, hill.

**collocō**, 1, place, put, deposit; station, locate, quarter, settle; establish, build: arrange, place, lay (ambuscade); mount (artillery); pitch (camp); stack (arms). **in acie collocāre**, form in line.

**colloquium**, -ī, *n.*, conference, interview.

**colloquor**, 3, -locūtus sum, converse, talk, have an interview.

**colōnia**, -ae, *f.*, colony.

**colōnus**, -ī, *m.*, colonist, settler.

**Columbus**, -ī, *m.*, (Christopher) Columbus, the discoverer of America.

**comes**, -itis, *c.*, companion, attendant, follower; hanger-on, minion (71).

*Pl.*, (one's) men (22, 74), (one's) fellows (86).

**cōmitās**, -ātis, *f.*, kindliness, courtesy.

**cōmiter**, *adv.*, courteously (29), kindly (62); on friendly terms (23).

**Commāgēnus**, -a, -um, of Commagene (a northern district of Syria).

**commemorō**, 1, relate, rehearse, state, note.

**committō**, 3, -mīsī, -missus, join, consign. **proelium committere**, join battle, begin battle, engage in battle, offer battle, fight; *pass.*, (battle) take place; **proeliō rem committere**, risk an engagement, bring on an engagement.

**commodus**, -a, -um, easy, expeditious (130). *As noun*, **commodum**, -ī, *n.*, well-being.

**Commoris**, -is, *f.* (*acc. sing. -im*), the name of a small town of Asia Minor.

**commoveō**, 2, -mōvī, -mōtus, move, stir (75), alarm (138). *Partic.*, **commōtus**, -a, -um, disturbed, excited, upset, startled, alarmed; concerned, stirred up, wrought up; spurred on, moved. **irā commovērī**, become angry.

**communis**, -is, -e, common.

**compellō**, 3, -pulī, -pulsus, drive, force.

**compleō**, 2, -plēvī, -plētus, fill, fill up; swamp (4), choke (122); supply (118).

**complūrēs**, -ēs, -a, several, several of, some, (quite) a number of, quite a few, numerous; to a considerable number (139); several (in number) (90).

**comportō**, 1, bring together, gather together, get together, collect; get in, lay in (109).

**comprehendō**, 3, -prehendī, -prehēsus, arrest (132); catch (fire).

**cōnātus**, -ūs, *m.*, attempt.

**concedō**, 3, -cessī, -cessus, allow, grant, concede.

- concilium**, -i, *n.*, council (of war), powwow; (deliberative) body (34).
- concurrō**, 3, -curri, -cursum est, rush (together), run. *inter sē concurrere*, charge upon one another (117).
- condiciō**, -ōnis, *f.*, terms; proposal (110); condition, plight (91).
- condō**, 3, -didi, -ditus, store, deposit, hide away; found, establish (city, state).
- conducō**, 3, -dūxi, -ductus, hire, engage.
- cōnferō**, -ferre, contulī, conlātus, bring together (117). *sē cōnferre*, betake (one's) self, make (one's) way, proceed; withdraw, return.
- cōnfertus**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, dense (107), solid (63); (the) thick (of) (136).
- cōnfestim**, *adv.*, at once, quickly, forthwith, immediately, without delay; in haste, hastily, in a hurry, hurriedly.
- cōnficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectus, finish, complete, accomplish, bring to pass; push to a conclusion (140); wear out, exhaust, weaken, overcome.
- cōnfirmō**, 1, assert, declare; cheer (up), encourage, reassure, fortify, steady (120).
- cōnfodiō**, 3, -fōdī, -fossus, pierce, slay.
- coniciō**, 3, -iēcī, -iectus, discharge, hurl, shoot, throw, cast; shower, pour in (missiles). *in fugam conicere*, put to flight, rout.
- coniungō**, 3, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, join. *sē coniungere*, join, unite, effect (a) junction, join forces; ally one's self (103), cast in one's lot (130).
- cōnfrātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, conspiracy.
- cōnor**, 1, try, attempt, endeavor.
- cōnscendō**, 3, -scendī, -scēnsus, climb up (64); go on board, come on board, embark upon; man (rampart); mount (horse); scale (wall).
- cōnsequor**, 3, -secūtus sum, catch up, come up; catch up with, come up with; follow (90).
- cōnservō**, 1, preserve (116), save, look out for; husband (101), spare (130).
- cōnsidō**, 3, -sēdī, -sessum est, settle, take up quarters; encamp, bivouac; take up (a) position (112); come to a halt (114).
- cōnsilium**, -li, *n.*, plan, plans, plan of action, policy, course; design, purpose, scheme, project, venture; device, expedient, plot, stratagem, trick: advice, counsel; council (of war), conference. *Pl.*, course (135). See also *mūtō*.
- cōnsistō**, 3, -stitī, -stitum est, stop, halt, come to a halt; take (one's) stand, station (one's) self; stand, ride, remain (at anchor). *in orbem cōnsistere*, form in a circle.
- cōnsōlor**, 1, comfort, reassure; address kindly (130).
- cōnspectus**, -ūs, *m.*, sight, view.
- cōnspiciō**, 3, -spēxī, -spectus, see, catch sight of; look on (87).
- cōnstantia**, -ae, *f.*, firmness, resolution, steadfastness, reliability; coolness (83).
- cōnstituō**, 3, -stitui, -stitūtus, decide, determine, plan; designate, appoint (89); fix, establish, organize; draw up, station (115).
- cōnsuēscō**, 3, -suēvī, (-suētus); *perf.* (with force of present), be accustomed, be wont, be in the habit (of); translated impersonally, be (one's) custom.

**cōsuētūdō**, -inis, *f.*, practice, custom, policy; the ordinary (133).  
**cōsulō**, 3, -sului, (-sultus), take measures, make provision, look out.  
**cōsultō**, *adv.*, purposely, designedly.  
**cōsūmō**, 3, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, use up: eat, eat up; destroy; spend, pass (time). **ignī cōsūmere**, burn.  
**contendō**, 3, -tendī, (-tentus), proceed, march, make one's way; press (push) on, keep on, forge ahead, hurry: beg (129).  
**continēns**, -entis, *partic. as adj.*, continuous, unremitting, unbroken. *As noun*, **continēns**, -entis, *f.* (sc. terra), mainland (100, 101).  
**contineō**, 2, -tinui, -tentus, confine, coop up, restrain.  
**cōntiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, address; assembly, meeting.  
**contrā**, *prep. with acc.*, against, in the direction of (126).  
**contulī**, see **cōnferō**.  
**contumēlia**, -ae, *f.*, insult, affront, indignity, illtreatment; taunt.  
**conveniō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventus, meet, interview, have interview with, see; come together, gather, assemble.  
**convertō**, 3, -vertī, -versus, turn (128); direct (114), convert (96). **sē convertere**, turn, give attention (90).  
**convocō**, 1, call together, get together, convene, call, summon.  
**coorior**, 4, -ortus sum, arise, come up, spring up; close in (106).  
**cōpia**, -ae, *f.*, supply, abundance; outfit. *Pl.*, supplies, stores; force, forces, troops, companies, army; (one's) following (138).  
**Coriolānus**, -ī, *m.*, (Gaius) Coriolanus, a Roman who fought against his country.

**Cornēlius**, -a, -um, see **Castra Cornēlia**.  
**Cornivallis**, -is, *m.*, (Lord) Cornwallis, a British general in the Revolutionary War.  
**corpus**, -oris, *n.*, body.  
**cotidiē**, *adv.*, daily, every day.  
**Cotta**, -ae, *m.*, (Lucius) Cotta, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war.  
**Crassus**, -ī, *m.*, (Marcus) Crassus, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war.  
**crēdō**, 3, **crēdidī**, **crēditus**, believe, think.  
**cruciātus**, -ūs, *m.*, torture, pain, suffering, agony.  
**crūdēlis**, -is, -e, cruel, savage.  
**crūdēlītās**, -ātis, *f.*, cruelty, barbarity, savagery.  
**cruentus**, -a, -um, bloody.  
**Cūba**, -ae, *f.*, Cuba.  
**cum**, *conj.*, (time and circumstance) when, while, after, as; at a time when (10): (cause) since, inasmuch as, as: (concession) though, although. *With subjunctive, often best rendered by a participial phrase.*  
**cum . . . tum**, not only . . . but also;  
**cum primum**, as soon as, when . . . first.  
**cum**, *prep. with abl.*, with, along with. See also **habeō** (**sēcum**), **simul**, and **ūnā**.  
**cuneus**, -ī, *m.*, wedge, stake.  
**cupidē**, *adv.*, eagerly, with great eagerness.  
**cūr**, *adv.*, why, on account of which.  
**Cūriō**, -ōnis, *m.*, (Gaius) Curio, commander of Caesar's forces in Africa.  
**cūrō**, 1, care for; treat (wounds); watch over (47): care for, have regard for (91).  
**currō**, 3, **cucurri**, **cursum est**, run,

rush; run about (90); run, play (of fire) (90).

cursus, -ūs, *m.*, course, stretch.

custōdia, -ae, *f.*, custody. *Pl.*, guards, watch, pickets.

custōdiō, 4, -īvi, -ītus, guard, watch.

memoriā custōdiere, remember.

custōs, -ōdis, *m.*, guard, sentinel.

Cybiatra, -ōrum, *n.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.

*D.*, abbreviation of Decimus, -ī, *m.*  
damnō, 1, condemn. capitis dam-  
nāre, condemn to death.

dē, *prep.* with *abl.*, about, concerning,  
of, with reference to; down from,  
from.

decem, indeclinable *adj.*, ten.

decimus, -a, -um, tenth.

dedī, see dō.

dēditō, -ōnis, *f.*, surrender. See also  
veniō.

dēdō, 3, -didī, -dītus, give up, surren-  
der. *Partic. as noun*, dēditī, -ōrum,  
*m.*, surrendered men, prisoners.  
sē dēdere, surrender, give one's self  
up, capitulate.

dēdūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus, lead forth,  
transport, conduct, escort, take,  
bring, lead; withdraw, lead away,  
call away, recall; draw down (131).

dēfendō, 3, -fendī, -fēnsus, defend,  
protect.

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.*, defense.

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, bear  
down (56), carry, bear, bring; re-  
port. *Pass.*, be carried, drift.

dēfessus, -a, -um, weary, tired out,  
worn out.

dēficiō, 3, -fēcī, (-fectus), give out,  
fail, run low.

dēfigō, 3, -fixī, -fixus, fix, plant, set up.

dēiciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus, hurl down,  
hurl back (86); tear down, destroy  
(99). *Partic.*, dēiectus, -a, -um,  
with *abl.*, (*freely*) disappointed (in).  
deinde, *adv.*, then, next, later, subse-  
quently.

Dēiotarus, -ī, *m.*, the name of a native  
king who favored Roman rule in  
Asia Minor.

dēlātus, -a, -um, see dēferō.

dēlēō, 2, -ēvi, -ētus, destroy, make  
away with; demolish, raze.

dēligō, 3, -lēgī, -lēctus, choose, select,  
pickout, appoint, delegate. *Partic. as  
adj.*, dēlēctus, -a, -um, chosen (34).

dēmittō, 3, -misi, -missus, lower.  
*Partic. as adj.*, dēmissus, -a, -um,  
downcast, crestfallen; animō dē-  
missus, disheartened, discouraged.  
sē animō dēmittere, lose heart (83).

dēmōnstrō, 1, point out, mention;  
explain (108).

dēmum, *adv.*, at length, finally, at last  
See also iam.

dēnique, *adv.*, finally, in fine.

dēnuō, *adv.*, anew, again, once more,  
a second time.

dēpōnō, 3, -posui, -positus, put down  
(load), lay down, surrender (office),  
give up (hope).

dēscendō, 3, -scendi, -scēnsus est, de-  
scend, come down, charge down  
(121).

dēsērō, 3, -serui, -sertus, desert, leave,  
leave in the lurch.

dēsistō, 3, -stiti, stitum est, desist,  
cease. proeliō dēsistere, cease fight-  
ing, withdraw.

dēsum, deesse, dēfui, be wanting  
(84), be disloyal (14).

dēterreō, 2, -terruī, -territus, keep off,  
scare away; intimidate.



**dētrahō**, 3, -trāxi, -tractus, pull (tear, strip) off; drag out (85).

**dētrimentum**, -i, *n.*, disaster, reverse, calamity, loss, harm, misfortune, mishap, accident; source of danger (100).

**dētrūdō**, 3, -trūsi, -trūsus, push off, shove off.

**dētuli**, see **dēferō**.

**deus**, -i, *m.* (*dat. and abl. pl., deis, diis, or dis*), god.

**dēversōrium**, -i, *n.*, inn, tavern.

**dēvius**, -a, -um, out of the way.

**dēvorō**, 1, devour.

**dexter**, -tra, -trum, right. *As noun*, **dextra**, -ae, *f.* (*sc. manus*), right hand.

**dīcō**, 3, **dīxi**, **dictus**, say, speak, declare, tell, communicate, announce, report, mention, remark, suggest; express (sentiment, view), make (suggestion). *male dicere*, swear, curse.

**diēs**, -ēi, *m. and f.*, day. *in diēs*, from day to day.

**differō**, -ferre, **distuli**, **dilātus**, scatter; put off, postpone.

**difficilis**, -is, -e, hard, difficult, troublesome; delicate (business), obstructed (slope).

**dignitās**, -ātis, *f.*, reputation, standing.

**diligenter**, *adv.*, diligently, carefully, with care; busily (100); with all diligence (137).

**diligentia**, -ae, *f.*, care, pains (99), carefulness, vigilance.

**dīmīcō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, fight, contend, struggle, be at war; do (one's) fighting (101).

**dīmīttō**, 3, -misi, -missus, let go, release; let slip (through one's fin-

gers), miss (121), lose possession of; give up, abandon (36), forego (97); dismiss, send away, allow to depart; send out (108); send on (128).

**discōdō**, 3, -cessi, -cessum est, withdraw, depart, go (off), march away, retreat, leave; recede (66); move (103, 105). *With ab or ex and abl.*, leave, desert. *ab armis discēdere*, discard (one's) arms (110); *inferior discēdere*, be beaten (39).

**discessus**, -ūs, *m.*, withdrawal, recall.

**discō**, 3, **didici**, learn, acquire.

**dispōnō**, 3, -posui, -positus, arrange, station.

**disputō**, -āvī, -ātum est, discuss, continue (the) discussion (104).

**diū**, *adv.*, long, for a long time (period); (discuss) at length. *neque . . . diūtius*, and . . . no longer; nor very long (129); *nōn diūtius*, no longer. See also *iam*.

**dīversus**, -a, -um, different, various.

**dīvidō**, 3, -vīsi, -vīsus, divide, split up.

**dō**, **dare**, **dedi**, **datus**, give, grant, present; communicate, supply, provide; afford, offer, allow (109, 12); sound (signal). *Pass.*, present (it)self (121). *in custōdiam dare*, have arrested, arrest; *in fugam dare*, put to flight, rout, disperse; *operam dare*, give attention (91, 108); try, see to it (135); *poenās dare*, (pay the penalty), be punished; *sēsomnō dare*, go to sleep, betake one's self to rest; *vēla dare*, set sail.

**doceō**, 2, -uī, **doctus**, show, point out; inform, tell; state, remind.

**dolor**, -ōris, *m.*, distress, grief; matter of chagrin.

**dominus**, -i, *m.*, master, owner.

**Domitius**, -ti, *m.*, (Gnaeus) Domitius, a cavalry officer in Curio's army.

**domus**, -ūs, *f.*, house, home, residence, dwelling, dwelling place; **domī**, at home; **domō**, from home (see also **ēgredior**); **domum**, homeward, home, toward home, for home; to (their) homes (96).

**dōnec**, *conj.*, until.

**dōnum**, -i, *n.*, gift, present.

**dubitō**, i, -āvī, -ātum est, hesitate.

**dubius**, -a, -um, doubtful, uncertain.

*As noun*, **dubium**, -i, *n.*, doubt (126).

**ducentī**, -ae, -a, two hundred.

**dūcō**, 3, **dūxī**, **ductus**, lead, command, be commander of (9, 34); bring, conduct, take; draw, pull (56); stretch (chain). in **mātrimōnium** **dūcere**, marry, take in marriage.

**dum**, *conj.*, while, as, during the time when; provided only.

**duo**, **duae**, duo, two, the two.

**duodecim**, *indeclinable adj.*, twelve.

**dux**, **ducis**, *c.*, leader, commander, chief, captain, officer; conductor, guide.

**ē**, *ex*, *prep. with abl.*, (separation, source), from, (out) of, from out, out from; beyond (sight); after, in accordance with; (*material*), of, from; (*partitive*), of, out of, from. See also **aciēs**, **discōdō**, and **pars**.

**Eborācopolis**, -is, *f.*, Yorktown.

**Eborācum** (-ī, *n.*) **Novum** (-ī), New York (City).

**ecfrēnātē**, *adv.*, wildly.

**edō**, 3, **ēdi**, **ēsus**, eat.

**ēdō**, 3, -**didī**, -**dītus**, utter, give forth, give voice to.

**effērō**, -**ferre**, **extulī**, **ēlātus**, carry forth, carry out, bring (forth).

**efficiō**, 3, -**fēcī**, -**fectus**, accomplish, bring (it) to pass; construct (99).

**effugiō**, 3, -**fūgī**, escape, make (one's) escape, make good (one's) escape, succeed in escaping, slip away, get away; find relief from (134).

**ēgī**, see **agō**.

**ego**, **meī**, I.

**ēgredior**, 3, -**gressus sum**, go out; disembark, come ashore; march forth, file out, step out, pass out, make (one's) way out, come forth, go forth; retire, depart; set out (107); start out (122). **domō ēgredī**, leave home.

**ēlātus**, -a, -um, see **effērō**.

**Eleutherocilicēs**, -um, *m.*, the Free Cilicians.

**ēliciō**, 3, -**licū**, -**licitus**, lure forth, lure. **Elizabetha**, -ae, *f.*, Elizabeth.

**ēlūdō**, 3, -**lūsī**, -**lūsus**, outwit, cheat, get the better of.

**ēmigrō**, i, -**āvī**, -**ātum est**, emigrate, move away.

**ēmittō**, 3, -**mīsī**, -**missus**, send forth, send out.

**emō**, 3, **ēmī**, **emptus**, buy, purchase; buy up (91).

**emptiō**, -**ōnis**, *f.*, buying; *with gen.*, traffic (in).

**enim**, *conj.*, for.

**eō**, *adv.*, thither, to that place, there. **eō magis**, (on this account the more), all the more; **eō . . unde**, to a point where.

**eō**, **īre**, **ii**, **itum est**, go, advance. *With ad and acc.*, go to meet (107).

**eōdem**, *adv.*, to the same place (spot); to this same point (73); for the same point (destination) (117).

- Epiphanēa**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.
- eques**, -itis, *m.*, horseman, knight. *Pl.*, cavalry, horsemen; cavalry detachment (117).
- equitātus**, -ūs, *m.*, cavalry, cavalry force, cavalry detachment, force of cavalry; horsemen, horse.
- equus**, -ī, *m.*, horse. See also **vehō**.
- Erana**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a town of Asia Minor.
- ēripiō**, 3, -ripui, -reptus, wrest, recover, rescue. *With dat.*, take away (from) (71).
- errō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, wander (about), stray.
- ērupō**, 3, -rūpī, (-ruptus), burst (rush) forth, burst (rush) out, dart (out); break out, break through (43), break away (64), make a dash (68).
- ēruptiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, sally, sortie.
- et**, *conj.*, and. **et . . . et**, both . . . and.
- etiam**, *adv.*, even, also, too. See also **quā etiam** and **solum**.
- etsi**, *conj.*, although, even though.
- Eurōpa**, -ae, *f.*, Europe.
- ēvādō**, 3, -vāsī, -vāsum est, get out, escape; emerge (82).
- ēveniō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventum est, turn out, go, proceed.
- ēventus**, -ūs, *m.*, outcome, sequel; net result (110).
- ex**, see **ē**.
- exāctus**, -a, -um, see **exigō**.
- excidō**, 3, -cidī, -cīsus, cut down.
- excipiō**, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, except; withstand (35); await, meet (37, 101).
- excitō**, 1, rouse, rouse up.
- exeō**, -īre, -īī, -itum est, go out (forth), come out (forth), go (out), march forth; depart, retire.
- exercitus**, -ūs, *m.*, army, force, command.
- exigō**, 3, -ēgī, -āctus, collect (taxes); pass (time). *Partic.*, **exāctus**, -a, -um, completed, ended.
- exiguus**, -a, -um, small, weak; faint (sound).
- existimō**, 1, think, believe, judge, fancy, feel.
- extiālis**, -is, -e, deadly, fatal.
- exitus**, -ūs, *m.*, means of egress; solution.
- expediō**, 4, -īvī, -itus, make ready, get ready, get out; prime (weapons).
- expeditus**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, unencumbered (by baggage), in light marching order. *As noun*, **expeditī**, -ōrum, *m.*, light-armed troops.
- expellō**, 3, -pullī, -pulsus, drive out; dispel (doubt).
- explicō**, 1, -āvī or -uī, -ātus or -itus, deploy, arrange.
- explōrātor**, -ōris, *m.*, scout, explorer, frontiersman.
- explorō**, 1, explore, reconnoitre, examine, inspect.
- expugnō**, 1, take by storm, storm, capture, take.
- exsiliō**, 4, -siluī, leap out; spring up (20); leap (80).
- exsilium**, -ī, *n.*, exile.
- expectō**, 1, await, wait for, await the coming (arrival) of, delay for (111); look forward to, anticipate; wait (67, 121).
- exstruō**, 3, -struxī, -strūctus, construct, build.
- extinguō**, 3, **extinxi**, **extinctus**, extinguish, put out.
- extrā**, *prep. with acc.*, outside of, outside, without; beyond (127).

- Faber, -brī, m.,** (Captain John) Smith.
- Fabius, -bī, m.,** (1) Gaius Fabius, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war; (2) Fabius Paelignus, a soldier in Curio's army; (3) Quintus Fabius Sanga, a lawyer who helped Cicero in the suppression of the conspiracy of Catiline.
- facile, adv.,** easily, with great ease, without trouble, without difficulty, readily.
- facinus, -oris, n.,** crime, outrage; deed, exploit, feat.
- faciō, 3, fēcī, factus, do, perform, make; commit, perpetrate; build, construct; choose, elect, appoint, make: carry out (massacre); make, lay, place (ambuscade); make, deliver (announcement); afford (opportunity); inflict (injury); leave (tracks); take (departure). castra facere, encamp; certiorēm (-ēs) facere, inform, enlighten, send word to, notify (see also fiō); impetum facere, charge; iniuriās facere, with *dat.*, illtreat (4); iter facere, travel, journey, march, advance, proceed, push on; range (21); stipendia facere, serve (in army). See also fiō.**
- facultās, -tās, f.,** opportunity, chance.
- Faesulānus, -a, -um, of Faesulae (a town of Etruria). As noun, Faesulānus, -ī, m., (ā) citizen of Faesulae.**
- fallō, 3, fefellī, falsus, disappoint. Partic. as adj., falsus, -a, -um, false, fictitious (137).**
- famēs, -is, f.,** hunger, starvation. See also necō.
- faveō, 2, fāvī, fautum est, with *dat.*, be favorably disposed (to), feel sympathy (for), side (with). fefellī, see fallō.**
- fēliciter, adv.,** successfully, well, prosperously. *nec fēliciter, and unsuccessfully. See (rem) gerō.*
- fenestra, -ae, f.,** window.
- fera, -ae, f.,** wild animal (creature, beast).
- Ferdinandus, -ī, m.,** Ferdinand, king of Spain.
- ferē, adv.,** about, nearly, almost.
- ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, carry, bear, bring; endure, put up with, bear, withstand, brave, hold out against; permit (139), call for (127): advance (standards); cast (vote), pass (measure). Pass., be carried (hurled, thrown), roll. auxilium ferre, bring relief, bring help, give assistance, lend aid, lend a hand, assist; with *dat.*, support, help; molestē ferre, be irritated, be indignant, be in a state of indignation, be aggrieved, feel (it) keenly (60), regret (95, 97); chafe under, chafe at, bear with irritation (34, 55).**
- fidēlis, -is, -e, faithful, loyal, reliable.**
- fidēs, -eī, f.,** credence; loyalty (120).
- filia, -ae, f.,** daughter.
- filius, -lī, m.,** son; the younger, junior (5).
- finis, -is, m.,** end, objective point (89). *Pl.*, boundaries, border; territory, land, lands, country.
- finitimus, -a, -um, neighboring, nearby, adjacent. As noun, finitimī, -ōrum, m., adjacent peoples (138).**
- fiō, fierī, factus sum, be done, take place; be accomplished, be gone through with (109); happen, occur, come to pass, arise, come on; be, become, grow; be made, be appointed. certior (-ēs) fierī, be informed, learn. See also faciō.**

firmō, *i*, secure, strengthen.  
 firmus, -a, -um, strong.  
 Flāminius, -ī, *m.*, (Titus Quinctius)  
 Flamininus, a Roman ex-consul.  
 flēō, 2, flēvī, flētum est, weep, cry.  
 Flōrida, -ae, *f.*, Florida.  
 flōs, flōris, *m.*, blossom, flower.  
 fluctus, -ūs, *m.*, wave.  
 flūmen, -inis, *n.*, river, stream, current (73). *adversō flūmine*, up the river, up (the) stream, (on) up the stream (98); *secundō flūmine*, with the current, downstream.  
 fluō, 3, flūxī, (fluxus), flow.  
 folium, -ī, *n.*, leaf.  
 fōns, fontis, *m.*, spring.  
 foris, -is, *f.*; *pl.*, door.  
 forte, *adv.*, by chance, accidentally, casually, as it chanced; perchance (77).  
 fortis, -is, -e, brave, courageous, heroic.  
 fortiter, *adv.*, bravely, courageously, valiantly, stoutly; with courage, with bravery, with fortitude (52); like a man (68).  
 fortitūdō, -inis, *f.*, fortitude, heroism; spirit (61).  
 fortuna, -ae, *f.*, fortune, fate, luck; good fortune (135). *Pl.*, well-being. *As proper name, Fortūna*, -ae, *f.*, the name of the goddess of fortune.  
 forum, -ī, *n.*, market place. *In particular, the market place at Rome, the Forum.*  
 fossa, -ae, *f.*, ditch, moat.  
 frangō, 3, frēgī, frāctus, break, wreck; break down (26); break, humble (140), discourage, dishearten (33).  
 frāter, -tris, *m.*, brother.

frequēns, -entis, *adj.*; *pl.*, in large numbers.  
 fretum, -ī, *n.*, strait, channel, sound.  
 frigidus, -a, -um, icy.  
 frīgus, -oris, *n.*, cold. *Pl.*, cold weather (7).  
 frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, grain, corn.  
 frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain, to no purpose, without success.  
 frūstum, -ī, *n.*, bit, piece.  
 fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight, rout, retreat, escape; defection (117). See also *coniciō* and *dō*.  
 fugiō, 3, fūgī, flee, retreat, retire, slip away; hurry, run. *Partic. as adj.*, fugiēns, -entis, flying (59, 70), in retreat (127).  
 fūmus, -ī, *m.*, smoke.  
 Gabinius, -nī, *m.*, (Publius) Gabinius (Capito), a person implicated in Catiline's conspiracy.  
 Gallia, -ae, *f.*, France; Gaul (101 ff.).  
 Gallicus, -a, -um, French; Gallic (126 ff.).  
 Gallus, -a, -um, Gallic. *As noun*, Gallus, -ī, *m.*, (a) Gaul: *pl.*, the Gauls (45 ff.); the French, Frenchmen.  
 gaudeō, 2, gāvīsus sum, rejoice, be delighted (pleased, glad).  
 gaza, -ae, *f.*, treasure.  
 gemitus, -ūs, *m.*, groan.  
 gēns, gentis, *f.*, nation, tribe, people.  
 genus, -oris, *n.*, class; birth, family (136).  
 Germānī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Germans.  
 gerō, 3, gessī, gestus, do, accomplish, manage (4), carry through to completion (129): have (quarrel); wear (22, 99). *Pass.*, take place, happen, go on, proceed. *bellum gerere*, wage war, fight, carry on

- war, be at war, take the field, go on the warpath. *rem bene* (fēliciter) gerere, be successful, have (any) success, act successfully; *sē gerere*, behave, act, comport (one's) self. See also *rēs*.
- glaciēs**, -ēī, *f.*, ice.
- gladius**, -ī, *m.*, sword.
- glōria**, -ae, *f.*, luster, renown.
- glōrior**, *i.*, boast.
- Gorgia**, -ae, *f.*, Georgia.
- Graecus**, -a, -um, Greek.
- grātia**, -ae, *f.*, favor (89). *Pl.*, thanks.
- grātus**, -a, -um, acceptable, satisfactory, attractive; grateful (45).
- gravis**, -is, -e, heavy; trying (110), pressing (111); extortionate, ruinous (137): serious, dangerous (disease); heavy, deep, sound (sleep).
- graviter**, *adv.*, seriously, deeply, severely; much, greatly, exceedingly.
- Grudii**, -ōrum, *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.
- gubernāculum**, -ī, *n.*, steering oar. *Pl.*, steering gear, tiller, helm.
- gubernātor**, -ōris, *m.*, helmsman, pilot.
- habēō**, 2, -uī, -itus, have, hold, keep; hold, regard; get, make (135): deliver, make (speech), set forth (argument); attain (renown, credence). *bene sē habēre*, have a good time; *castra habēre*, remain encamped; *in animō habēre*, intend, plan; think of, consider (doing a thing); *in incertō habēre*, be undecided; *rēs ita sē habēre*, matters stand thus (53); *sēcum habēre*, harbor (132).
- habitō**, *i.*, -āvī, (-ātus), live, dwell, be located.
- Hadrūmētum**, -ī, *n.*, the name of a town of northern Africa.
- Hannibal**, -alis, *m.*, the name of a famous Carthaginian general.
- harēna**, -ae, *f.*, sand.
- haud**, *adv.*, by no means, not very, not. See also *aequus*, *invītus*, *libenter*, *longinquus*, *longus*, *magnus*, and *procul*.
- Henricus**, -ī, *m.*, Henry, king of Portugal.
- herba**, -ae, *f.*, grass.
- hīberna**, -ōrum, *n.*, winter quarters, winter camp, winter encampment.
- hīc**, *adv.*, here.
- hīc**, *haec*, *hoc*, this, that; *abl.*, *hāc* (sc. *viā*), by this route. *As noun*, he, they, this, these; *neut.*, this (thing, action, consideration, story, etc.).
- hiemō**, *i.*, -āvī, -atum est, pass the winter, winter, be quartered for the winter.
- hiems**, -emis, *f.*, winter, winter time, winter season.
- Hispani**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Spanish, the Spaniards.
- Hispania**, -ae, *f.*, Spain.
- Hispaniēnsis**, -is, -e, of Spain. *As noun*, *Hispaniēnsis*, -is, *m.*, (a) native of Spain.
- homō**, -inis, *c.*, man, fellow, individual, person, body; he, the man. *Pl.*, people, mankind (23).
- honor**, -ōris, *m.*, honor, mark of distinction; esteem, honor; deference (81).
- hōra**, -ae, *f.*, hour.
- Horātius**, -tī, *m.*, Horatius (Cocles), a hero of early Rome.
- horrendus**, -a, -um, awful, frightful.
- hortor**, *i.*, urge, exhort, direct; encourage, cheer, rally; beg (102, 104).

**hortus**, -ī *m.*, garden.

**hostis**, -is *m.*, enemy.

**hūc**, *adv.*, to this place, thither.

**Hudsō**, -ōnia *m.*, (1) Henry Hudson, the explorer; (2) the name of a river of New York state.

**humus**, -ī *f.*, ground; **humī**, on the ground, upon the ground; in(to) the ground (90).

**ibi**, *adv.*, there, at that point, in that region, right there.

**Iconium**, -nī *n.*, the name of a town of Asia Minor.

**idem**, *eadem*, *idem*, the same, that same, this same; the very (7). *As noun*, the same man; *neut.*, the same (thing, story, procedure, etc.).

**idōneus**, -a, -um, suitable, proper, satisfactory, well-adapted; favorable (wind).

**Idūs**, -uum *f.*, the Ides (the 13th of some months, the 15th of others).

**igitur**, *conj.*, therefore, accordingly, and so.

**ignis**, -is *m.*, fire, light, camp fire. *Pl.*, flames. See also **cōnsumō**.

**ignōminia**, -ae *f.*, disgrace, humiliation.

**ignōtus**, -a, -um, unknown, unexplored, strange.

**ille**, *illa*, *illud*, that, this, the. *As noun*, he, she, the one, they, these; *neut.*, this.

**illūcēscō**, 3, -lūxī, dawn.

**impedimenta**, -ōrum *n.*, baggage, baggage train, stores; personal effects (110).

**impediō**, 4, -ivī, -itus, hinder, molest, delay; put a damper upon (138). *Partic. as adj.*, **impeditus**, -a, -um, hampered, weighed down, at a dis-

advantage; blockaded, obstructed, choked: difficult (ground) (128).

**imperātor**, -ōris *m.*, general, commander, commanding general (officer), commander in chief.

**imperium**, -rī *n.*, order (129), command (44); sway, control (81), government, rule (140).

**imperō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, *with dat. case, if any*, give orders (command, direction, directions), issue orders, order, direct.

**impetrō**, 1, win, gain, secure; buy (41).

**impetus**, -ūs *m.*, attack, assault, charge, onset, onslaught.

**impōnō**, 3, -posuī, -positus, *with dat. or in and acc.*, place, load (upon, on).

**imus**, -a, -um, see **inferior**.

**in**, *prep.*; (1) *with abl.*, in, at, on, upon, on board, on the surface of; within, in the midst of, among; (2) *with acc.*, into, to, in, into the territory of; against, upon, on, at, among; toward, for; out upon (51).

**incendium**, -dī *n.*, fire, conflagration.

**incendō**, 3, -cendī, -cēsus, burn (up), destroy by fire; set fire to, fire.

**incertus**, -a, -um, irregular, devious (107); insecure (135). *As noun*, **incertum**, -ī *n.*, uncertainty (135) (see **habeō**).

**incitō**, 1, spur on, stir up. *sē incitāre*, work one's self up (48).

**incola**, -ae *c.*, inhabitant, native.

**incolō**, 3, -coluī, inhabit, occupy, populate, be settled in.

**incolumis**, -is, -e, safe, unharmed, in safety, unscathed, unmolested; scot free.

- incommodum**, -ī, *n.*, inconvenience (54), check, set-back, disaster, reverse.
- incrēdibilis**, -is, -e, fabulous, astonishing.
- inde**, *adv.*, thence, from thence; from there; from that point; from it.
- Indiāna**, -ae, *f.*, Indiana.
- indicō**, 3, -dixī, -dictus, declare (war).
- Indus**, -a, -um, Indian. *As noun*, Indus, -ī, *m.*, (an) Indian; *pl.*, the Indians.
- inferior**, -ior, -ius, inferior, lower, weaker. *Superl.*, imus, -a, -um, (the) lowest (part of) (131). See also discēdō.
- inferō**, -ferre, intulī, inlātus, inflict; *with dat.*, inflict (upon), do (to), make (war upon). iniūriās inferre, *with dat.*, maltreat.
- infestus**, -a, -um, threatening, opposing.
- ingredior**, 3, -gressus sum, enter, effect an entrance.
- inimicus**, -a, -um, unfriendly, hostile, ill-disposed. *As noun*, inimicus, -ī, *m.*, enemy, ill-wisher; *superl.*, deadly foe.
- iniquus**, -a, -um, unfavorable.
- iniūria**, -ae, *f.*, injury, wrong, damage; *pl.*, injuries, violence. *Abl. as adv.*, iniūriā, unjustly, wrongfully, without just cause (45). See also faciō and inferō.
- iniussū**, *abl. of defective noun*, *with gen.*, without the order (of), against the order (of), without orders (from).
- inlīdō**, 3, -līsī, -līsus, dash. *Pass.*, be dashed, crash.
- inmittō**, 3, -mīsī, -missus, send, throw, hurl, shoot, discharge, fire. **tēlum inmittere**, fire.
- inopia**, -ae, *f.*, lack, need, scarcity.
- inquam**, —, -quī, say, exclaim, cry; inquire, reply, retort.
- inrumpō**, 3, -rūpī, (ruptus), break (into), burst (into), rush (into), dash (into); burst in, break in.
- insequor**, 3, -secūtus sum, pursue, follow. **vestigīis insequi**, follow the trail.
- insidiae**, -ārum, *f.*, ambushade, ambush; treachery, underhand means (72). See also lateō.
- instar**, *indeclinable noun*, *with gen.*, the size (of), as large as.
- instruō**, 3, -strūxī, -strūctus, draw up, form, marshal; fit out, equip.
- insula**, -ae, *f.*, island. **insula Longa**, Long Island.
- integer**, -gra, -grum, untouched. *As noun*, integri, -ōrum, *m.*, fresh troops.
- intellegō**, 3, -lēxī, -lēctus, realize, see, perceive, gather, understand, know.
- intempestus**, -a, -um, *lit.*, unseasonable. See nox.
- inter**, *prep. with acc.*, among, in the midst of; between. See also agō, cohortor, and concurrō.
- intercipiō**, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, intercept, cut off; capture.
- interdiū**, by day, by daylight.
- interdum**, *adv.*, at times, from time to time; sometimes, occasionally; in some cases (91).
- intereā**, *adv.*, in the meantime, meanwhile.
- intereō**, -ire, -iī, perish, be killed.
- interficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectus, kill, slay, put to death; murder, massacre,



kill off, cut off, cut down, cut to pieces. **tēlō interficere**, shoot dead. **interim, adv.**, meanwhile, in the meantime, the while.

**intermittō**, 3, -**misi**, -**missus**, check; leave between (126).

**interpōnō**, 3, -**posui**, -**positus**, interpose, put (place, hold) between. *Pass.*, lie between, intervene.

**intervallum**, -**i**, *n.*, distance.

**intrā**, *prep.* with *acc.*, within, behind; (over) within (113).

**intrō**, 1, enter, make (one's) way into; step in (49): enter, gain (harbor).

**intus**, *adv.*, within, inside; on board (70).

**inveniō**, 4, -**vēni**, -**ventus**, find, find out, discover.

**invisus**, -**a**, -**um**, odious; hated (48, 75).

**invītus**, -**a**, -**um**, unwilling, against (one's) will, against (one's) inclination, with reluctance; exceedingly loath, much against (one's) will. **haud invītus**, nothing loath.

**ipse**, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, himself, herself, itself, themselves, *gen.*, own: (the city) proper, (this, that) particular: on their own motion (24); in person; with his own hand (136): very, mere, even. *As noun*, he, the man himself, they, *gen.*, his (own), their (own).

**ira**, -**ae**, *f.*, anger, wrath.

**irātus**, -**a**, -**um**, angry, in anger, in a passion, in (one's) wrath; hotly, angrily (103).

**is**, **ea**, **id**, this, that. *As noun*, he, a man (103), she, they, these, those, (the) people, (the) men; *neut.*, it, this, that; this thing, this purpose (54), the things, the events, those

things; a thing (132), a project (139): *gen.*, his, her, their; of theirs (138). **id quod**, what.

**Isabella**, -**ae**, *f.*, the name of a queen of Spain.

**iste**, **ista**, **istud**, that, this; that . . . of yours (134). *As noun*, he, this (131).

**ita**, *adv.*, thus, so; in this way, in the following way; with matters standing thus (119); by this means (104): in such a manner (122); at such speed (139): so very (121).

**Italia**, -**ae**, *f.*, Italy.

**itaque**, *conj.*, and so, accordingly.

**iter**, **itineris**, *n.*, journey, way, road, route, march, traveling, trip, stage (138). **in itinere**, on the march, on the road, on the line of march, during the journey; **iter magnum**, forced march. See also **faciō**.

**iterum**, *adv.*, again, a second time, once again; the second time (64). See also **semel**.

**iaceō**, 2, -**ui**, lie, lie neglected (131). *Partic. as adj.*, **iacēns**, -**entis**, prostrate.

**iaciō**, 3, **iēcī**, **iactus**, throw, cast, shoot; throw out (anchors).

**Iacō**, -**ōnis**, *m.*, (Andrew) Jackson.

**iam**, *adv.*, now, already, at length.

**iam ante**, previously; **iam dēmum**, now at length, at length; **iam diū**, now for a long time, long since; **iam pridem**, long since, long before.

**Iāniculum**, -**i**, *n.*, the name of a hill separated from Rome by the Tiber.

**Iasper**, -**erī**, *m.*, (Sergeant) Jasper, a daring soldier of the Revolution.

**Iuba**, -**ae**, *m.*, the name of an African king.

- iubeō**, 2, **iussī**, **inssus**, order, command, direct, bid, tell, say (89); give orders, leave orders. *Pass.*, be under orders, be ordered.
- fūdicō**, 1, think, infer, believe, feel, be of the opinion.
- Iūnius**, -nī, *m.*, (Gaius) Junius, a soldier in Caesar's army in Gaul.
- Iūnō**, -ōnis, *f.*, Juno, queen of the gods, as being the wife of Jupiter.
- iūs**, iūris, *n.*, law, rules (132); court (45): *pl.*, rights, privileges, prerogatives. *Abl. as adv.*, iūre, rightfully, with good right. See also **vocō**.
- iūvenis**, -is, *m.*, young man, youth, young fellow; *with adj. force*, youthful (25).
- iuvō**, 1, iūvī, iūtus, aid, help, assist, relieve, help out.
- K.**, *abbreviation of Kalendae*, -ārum, *f.*, the Calends (*i.e.* the first day of a month).
- L.**, *abbreviation of Lūcius*, -cī, *m.*
- Labienus**, -ī, *m.*, (Titus) Labienus, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war.
- labor**, -ōris, *m.*, hardship, difficulty, trial; strain, toil, labor, work, exertion, effort, fatigue (124).
- labōrō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum est, work, toil; be hard pressed (136).
- lacrima**, -ae, *f.*, tear.
- lacus**, -ūs, *m.*, lake.
- laetus**, -a, -um, joyful, glad, happy, rejoicing, delighted; with joy, with alacrity (96), in high spirits (50).
- Lādicēa**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.
- largior**, 4, -ītus sum, give freely, sacrifice.
- Lārīsa**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a town in Greece.
- latebrae**, -ārum, *f.*, hiding place, sheltered spot (99); ambush (105). in **latebris**, in hiding (32).
- lateō**, 2, -uī, hide, skulk, be in hiding, lie in wait. in **insidiis lateō**, lie in wait.
- latus**, -eris, *n.*, flank (of army).
- lātus**, -a, -um, see **ferō**.
- laudō**, 1, praise, commend.
- lectus**, -ī, *m.*, bed, couch.
- lēgātus**, -ī, *m.*, captain, commander, lieutenant, officer, staff officer (44), subordinate officer (33); ambassador, messenger, envoy (42, 110, 130, 132, 133, 134, 135, 138); governor (23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 62, 75, 76).
- legiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, regiment; legion (102 ff.). *Pl.*, troops.
- lēniter**, *adv.*, slowly, leisurely.
- Lexingtō**, -ōnis, *m.*, Lexington, a town in Massachusetts.
- libenter**, *adv.*, readily, cheerfully, with pleasure, happily, gladly, with alacrity. **haud libenter**, with discontent; **nec libenter**, and unhappily.
- liberī**, -ōrum, *m.*, children.
- Līberia**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a country of Africa.
- liberō**, 1, free, relieve.
- libertās**, -ātis, *f.*, liberty, freedom, emancipation.
- liburnica**, -ae, *f.*, sloop, cutter, brigantine.
- licet**, 2, **licuit** or **licitum est**, *impersonal verb*, be permitted.
- lignātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, felling (of) timber.
- Līma**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a town of South America.
- lingua**, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language.

**littera, -ae, f.**, letter (of the alphabet).

*Pl.*, letter, communication, message; document, paper (112); alphabet (113).

**litus, -oris, n.**, coast, shore.

**Livius, -vī, m.**, (Titus) Livy, a famous Roman historian.

**locuplēs, -ētis, adj.**, rich, wealthy, well-to-do.

**locus, -ī, m. (*pl.* loca, -ōrum, n.)**, place, spot, point, region, locality, location, ground, position, post; part (110): station (in life) (79); position, light (118). *Pl.*, district, country (31, 33); location (65); quarters (91). *omnibus locis*, everywhere. See also *cēdō* and *natūra*.

**locūtus, -a, -um**, see *loquor*.

**Londinium (-nī, n.) Novum (-ī)**, New London, a town in Connecticut.

**longē, adv.**, far, (to) a considerable distance, to a great distance; *with superl. or compar. of adj. or adv.*, (by) far, much.

**longinquus, -a, -um**, distant, remote, far away, at a distance. **haud longinquus**, at no great distance.

**longus, -a, -um**, long. **haud longus**, no great (distance); **longum est**, it is too long (127), 'twould be a long tale (87). See also *insula* and *nāvis*.

**loquor, 3, locūtus sum**, talk, speak, converse; state (126); *with cum and abl.*, talk (to).

**Lovisiāna, -ae, f.**, Louisiana.

**Lūcānius, -nī, m.**, (Quintus) Lucanius, a soldier in Caesar's army in Gaul.

**lūdō, 3, lūsī, lūsū est**, play, sport.

**lūna, -ae, f.**, moon.

**Lūsitānia, -ae, f.**, the ancient name of Portugal.

**lūx, lūcis, f.**, light, the light of day, dawn, daybreak. **prima lūx**, early dawn, dawn, daybreak.

**Lycāonia, -ae, f.**, the name of a district in Asia Minor.

**M., abbreviation of Mārcus, -ī, m.**

**maestus, -a, -um**, sad, dejected, sorrowful, sorrowing; in dejection, in gloom, in (the garb of) mourning (42); disappointed (86).

**magicus, -a, -um**, magic, magical. See also *ars*.

**magis, adv., compar.**, more (129); see also *eō (adv.)*. *Superl.*, **maximē**, particularly, especially; exceedingly, in the highest degree: *sometimes prefixed to give superlative force to an adj. or adv.*

**magister, -trī, m.**, captain. **puerōrum magister**, tutor, school teacher.

**magnopere, adv.**, earnestly; unreasonably (103).

**magnus, -a, -um**, great, large, big, of large size, huge, immense, extensive: abundant (stores), dead (earnest), excessive (heat), good (courage), grave (peril), hearty, heartfelt (thanks), heavy, severe, serious (loss), heavy, severe, violent (earthquake, storm), heroic (spirit), high (column, hope), important (exploit), keen (anticipation), liberal (reward), loud (noise), long (distance), much (assistance), strong (force, guard, spirit, etc.), tremendous (curse), valuable (treasure), wide (river). **haud magnus**, no great; **nōn magnus**, of no great size. See also *iter*.

- Compar.*, maior, -or, -us, (all the) greater (84); a considerable (55), some considerable (120); elder, older. *As noun*, maiōrēs, -um, *m.*, fathers (13).
- Superl.*, maximus, -a, -um, extreme, utmost, supreme, exceedingly great, immense, mighty; much (104); general, wholesale, frightful (slaughter).
- maior, -or, -us, see magnus.
- male, *adv.*, not fully (140). See also dicō.
- mālō, mälle, mālui, prefer, choose.
- malus, -a, -um, wicked, evil, unprincipled, vile. *As noun*, malum, -i, *n.*, evil, misfortune, trouble, difficulty.
- māne, in the morning, on the morrow, next morning; early in the morning (49).
- maneō, 2, mānsi, mānsum est, remain, stay, tarry, live.
- manipulāris, -is, -e, of the rank and file. *As noun*, manipulāris, -is, *m.*, soldier of the rank and file, private; *pl.*, men.
- Mānlius, -lī, *m.*, (1) Marcus Manlius, a Roman who defended the Capitol against the Gauls; (2) Gaius Manlius, lieutenant to Catiline.
- manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand; band, company, detachment, force.
- Mārcius, -cī, *m.*, Mārcius (Rufus), an officer in Curio's army.
- Mārcus, -i, *m.*, Marcus.
- mare, -is, *n.*, sea, ocean; the high seas (92).
- Marta, -ae, *f.*, Martha.
- Mārtius, -a, -um, of March.
- māter, -tris, *f.*, mother.
- mātrimōnium, -ī, *n.*, marriage. See also dūcō.
- mātrōna, -ae, *f.*, lady.
- mātūrē, *adv.*, early, soon; speedily (94).
- Maurī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Moors.
- maximē, see magis.
- maximus, -a, -um, see magnus.
- Mediterrāneus, -a, -um, Mediterranean.
- medius, -a, -um, middle (of), center of. See also nox.
- melior, see bonus.
- memor, -oris, *adj.*, with *gen.*, with a thought (of), thinking (of), remembering.
- memorābilis, -is, -e, noteworthy, remarkable.
- memoria, -ae, *f.*, memory, remembrance. See also custōdiō and teneō.
- mēnsis, -is, *m.*, month.
- mentior, 4, -itus sum, make up (a) story, fabricate.
- meridiēs, -ēi, *m.*, midday, noon (129); the south (40, 43, 77).
- metus, -ūs, *m.*, fear (122); thought of danger (119).
- meus, -a, -um, my; my own (138); on my part (140).
- Miantōnimō, -ōnis, *m.*, the name of an Indian chief.
- mīles, -itis, *m.*, soldier, common soldier, soldier in the ranks. *Pl.*, men, privates. See also tribūnus.
- mille, *indeclinable adj.*; *pl.*, (noun) milia, -ium, *n.*, thousand. mille passūs, mile; milia passuum, miles.
- minimē, see minus.
- minimus, see parvus.
- minor, -or, -us, see parvus.
- minus, *adv.*, *compar.*, less; not very (80). *Superl.*, minimē, not at all, by no means; no (87).

**mīrus**, -a, -um, wonderful, strange.  
**misceō**, 2, -ui, **mistus** or **mixtus**, mingle.  
**miser**, -era, -erum, wretched, pitiful, unfortunate, luckless, poor; hard (42). *As noun*, poor fellow, poor woman, poor wretches, etc.  
**mittō**, 3, **misi**, **missus**, send, dispatch; shoot, hurl, fire; throw away, discard, lose (129). *Partic. as noun*, **missi**, -ōrum, *m.*, messengers, *lit.* those sent (109).  
**modo**, *adv.*, just before, just now, lately; just, but just: only (20, 131). **modo . . . modo**, at one time . . . at another. See also **sī**.  
**modus**, -i, *m.*, manner, fashion, way, means, chance. **eius modī**, of this sort; **nūllō modō**, not at all (83); **quō modō**, thus.  
**molestē**, *adv.*, with irritation; see **ferō**.  
**monēō**, 2, -uī, -itus, warn, advise, inform (49).  
**mōns**, **montis**, *m.*, mountain, eminence, height.  
**mora**, -ae, *f.*, delay, hesitation. **sine morā**, instantly (64).  
**morbus**, -i, *m.*, disease, illness, sickness.  
**moribundus**, -a, -um, dying, at the point of death.  
**moriōr**, 3, **mortuus sum**, die. *Partic. (and adj.)* **mortuus**, -a, -um, having died, dead: *as noun*, **mortuus**, -i, *m.*, dead man; *pl.*, the dead.  
**moror**, 1, delay, tarry, linger, dally, lounge; hold back, remain, wait, stop; be detained (9, 10).  
**mors**, **mortis**, *f.*, death, dying, execution.  
**mōs**, **mōris**, *m.*, custom. *Pl.*, ways (28), character (72).

**moveō**, 2, **mōvī**, **mōtus**, move; break (camp).  
**mox**, *adv.*, soon, shortly, quickly.  
**Mūcius**, -cī, *m.*, (Caius) Mucius, a hero of ancient Rome.  
**mulier**, -eris, *f.*, woman.  
**multitūdō**, -inis, *f.*, throng, crowd, company, band, force, number, numbers; rain (of weapons).  
**multō**, *adv.*, (by) much, (by) far.  
**multum**, *adv.*, much, greatly. *Superl.*, **plūrimum**, very frequently (135).  
**multus**, -a, -um, much. *Pl.*, many; many of, a large number of; in large numbers (28): *as masc. noun*, many, many persons, many people; *neut.*, many (things), many (stories), much (property). *Compar.*, **plūs**, **plūris**, *neut. (noun)*, more (88): *pl.*, **plūrēs**, -ēs, -a, more, several (131); *as noun*, more (122). *Superl.*, **plūrimī**, -ae, -a, very many, numerous, a large number of; in large (great) numbers, in strong force: a cloud (multitude, shower) of.  
**mūniō**, 4, -iū, -itus, intrench, strengthen, fortify. *Partic. as adj.*, **mūnītus**, -a, -um, strong, (strongly) fortified.  
**mūnitiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, fortification, intrenchment. *Pl.*, fortifications, siege works (115, 123).  
**mūrus**, -i, *m.*, wall, (stone) fence (55).  
**mūtō**, 1, change. **cōnsilium mūtāre**, change (one's) mind.  
**nam**, *conj.*, for.  
**nāscor**, 3, **nactus sum**, find, discover; gain, secure; reach (83). *Perf. tense*, have (119).  
**nārō**, 1, relate, narrate, tell (of).  
**nāscor**, 3, **nātus sum**, be born.

**nātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, tribe.

**natō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, float.

**nātūra**, -ae, *f.*, nature, natural inclination. *Abl. as adv.*, nātūrā, naturally (134). **nātūra loci**, natural situation (41).

**nātus**, -a, -um, *see* nāscor.

**nauta**, -ae, *m.*, sailor, deck hand. *Pl.*, crew.

**nāvigium**, -ī, *n.*, vessel.

**nāvigō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, sail, cruise, coast, ply; head, journey, travel (11); be on shipboard (91); go to sea (5), ship (2).

**nāvis**, -is, *f.*, ship, vessel, boat. **nāvis longa**, warship, man-of-war. *See* also solvō.

**ne**, *sign of a question.*

**nē**, *conj.*; (*purpose*) so as not to, not to, in order not to, so that . . . not, to the end that . . . not, lest; (*after verbs of fearing*) that, lest; (*after recūsāre*) that (132). **nē quis**, so that no one (54, 57); **nē qua**, so that no (102); **nē quid**, so that . . . not . . . anything (47); **nē ūllus**, that no (84).

**nē . . . quidem**, not even; not . . . either (93).

**nec**, *see* neque.

**necessārius**, -a, -um, necessary, essential, needed, needful.

**necō**, 1, put to death, kill. **fame necāre**, starve to death.

**necopināns**, -antis, *adj.*, off (one's) guard.

**negō**, 1, -āvī, (-ātus), declare that . . . not, say "no."

**negōtiātor**, -ōris, *m.*, trader.

**negōtiōr**, 1, trade, have (business) dealings; be a trader (134).

**negōtium**, -tī, *n.*, business, commission.

**nēmō**, *defective noun, m.*, no one, none, not a man. *Gen. and abl. supplied by nūllius and nūllō.*

**neque**, *nec, conj.*, and . . . not, nor; *when followed by enim or (sometimes) by vērō*, not. **neque . . . neque**, neither . . . nor; not . . . nor yet (126). *See* also alius, diū, fēliciter, libenter, quisquam, sciō, tamen, ūllus, umquam, and volō.

**Nervius**, -vī, *m.*, a Nervian. *Pl.*, the Nervii (a people of northern Gaul).

**nesciō**, 4, -scivī, not understand, not know, be ignorant of.

**nihil**, *indeclinable noun*, nothing. *Acc. as adv.*, not . . . at all (68).

**Nīna**, -ae, *f.*, the name of one of the ships of Columbus.

**nisi**, *conj.*, unless; *as adv.*, except, excepting.

**nix**, nivis, *f.*, snow.

**nō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, swim, float.

**noctū**, *adv.*, at night, by night, in the night, during the night, under cover of night; one night (68).

**nocturnus**, -a, -um, during the night, night (*adj.*).

**nōlō**, nōlle, nōlūī, be unwilling, not be willing, not wish, not desire, not want; object, decline, refuse.

**nōmen**, -inis, *n.*, name, title; honor (35).

**nōn**, *adv.*, not.

**nōndum**, *adv.*, not yet.

**nōnnūllī**, -ae, -a, a number of. *As noun*, some.

**nōnus**, -a, -um, ninth.

**noster**, -tra, -trum, our. *As noun*, nostrī, -ōrum, *m.*, our men (soldiers, troops, forces, force).

**nōtus**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, known.

**Novēborācēnsis**, -is, -e, of New York, New York (*adj.*).

**novus**, -a, -um, new, strange, odd, unexpected; revolutionary, upstart (138); *as part of a town or country name*, New. (*ali*)quid novī (*as neut. noun*), anything new (*lit.* of new). *Superl.*, last, hindmost (127). See also *agmen* and *rēs*.

**nox**, *noctis*, *f.*, night, darkness, night-fall. *Abl. as adv.*, nocte, under cover of the darkness (130). **media nox**, midnight; **nocte intempestā**, at dead of night.

**nūdus**, -a, -um, bare, naked, without clothing.

**nūllus**, -a, -um, no, not a; **nūllō**, (*as masc. noun*), supplying the lacking *abl. of nēmō*, no one, none (39, 58, 82). See also *modus* and *pars*.

**numerus**, -ī, *m.*, number, numbers, company, contingent, class; amount (66). **quōrum in numerō**, among whom.

**Numidae**, -ārum, *m.*, the Numidians; *with adj. force*, Numidian (117).

**numquam**, *adv.*, never. **nōn numquam**, sometimes (63).

**nunc**, *adv.*, now, to-day.

**nūntiō**, *i*, announce, report, send word; *with dat.*, inform.

**nūntius**, -ī, *m.*, messenger, envoy, herald; news, information, message.

**nūper**, *adv.*, lately, just before.

**ob**, *prep. with acc.*, on account of. See also *causa* and *rēs*.

**oblīvīscor**, *3*, **oblītus sum**, forget; *with gen.*, be forgetful (of).

**obscurus**, -a, -um, dim; lowly (79).

**obses**, -idis, *c.*, hostage.

**obsideō**, *2*, -sēdī, -sessus, besiege, beset, blockade, hem in, surround; guard, watch.

**obsidiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, siege.

**obstinātus**, -a, -um, determined, dogged.

**obtineō**, *2*, -tinuī, -tentus, hold, have, enjoy (34). **rēgnum obtinēre**, rule.

**occāsiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, opportunity, chance.

**occidēns**, -entis, *m.*, the west.

**occidō**, *3*, -cidī, -cisus, kill, slay, put to death, murder, slaughter, massacre; cut down, cut to pieces, cut off.

**occupō**, *1*, occupy, take possession of, capture, seize, seize (upon); fill (89). *Partic. as adj.*, **occupātus**, -a, -um, guarded (133); busy, busied; interested (129).

**occurrō**, *3*, -currī, -cursum est, *with dat.*, meet, head off.

**octāvus**, -a, -um, eighth.

**octō**, *indeclinable adj.*, eight.

**Octōber**, -bris, -bre, of October.

**oculus**, -ī, *m.*, eye.

**officiū**, -ī, *n.*, duty, task; respect (131).

**ōlim**, *adv.*, once upon a time, once, at one time, on one occasion, one day, one time.

**omninō**, *adv.*, altogether, entirely.

**omnis**, -is, -e, all, every; whole, the whole (of), all (of); any (113, 129). *As noun, masc. pl.*, all, every one, everybody, they all; all (those) (118); *neut. pl.*, everything, all the (those) things, every expedient (120), all sorts of things (123). See also *locus* and *sciō*.

**onerāria**, -ae, *f.*, transport, merchant vessel.

**onustus**, -a, -um, laden, loaded.

**opera**, -ae, *f.*, services; coöperation (135); attention (91, 108). See also **dō**.

**oppidānī**, -ōrum, *m.*, townspeople, townsmen, inhabitants of (the, one's) town.

**oppidum**, -ī, *n.*, town, city.

**opportūnus**, -a, -um, auspicious, favorable, opportune.

**opprimō**, 3, -pressī, -pressus, crush, overwhelm; catch (139).

**oppugnātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, siege, attack, assault; (the) attacking (122).

**oppugnō**, 1, attack, assail, besiege, beset, invest; press the siege (140).

**optimus**, -a, -um, see **bonus**.

**opus**, -eris, *n.*, work, task; (earth) work. *Pl.*, fortifications, defenses, (siege) works. **opus est**, there is need (46).

**ōrātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, speech, argument, representations, remarks, words.

**orbis**, -is, *m.*, circle. See also **cōn-sistō**.

**ōrdō**, -inis, *m.*, (regular) order; rank, class; command, position (63). *Pl.*, ranks (107, 125); centurions (127).

**ōrō**, 1, beg.

**ostendō**, 3, ostendī, ostentus, display, disclose, show, point out, set forth; impart (the) information (133). **sē ostendere**, appear, show one's self.

**ōtiōsus**, -a, -um, at leisure, off duty; quiet (33).

**P.**, abbreviation of **Pūblius**, -lī, *m.*

**pācō**, 1, reduce to order. *Partic. as adj.*, **pācātus**, -a, -um, subdued, submissive.

**Paelignus**, -ī, *m.*, see **Fabius**.

**paene**, *adv.*, almost.

**palam**, *adv.*, openly, in full view;

frankly, freely, boldly; with no show of secrecy (126).

**palūs**, -ūdis, *f.*, swamp, marsh, glade.

**pandō**, 3, pandī, passus, spread.

*Partic. as adj.*, **passus**, -a, -um, full spread (sails), outstretched (hands).

**parcō**, 3, **pepercī**, *with dat.*, be merciful (to), have pity (on), have mercy (upon), spare.

**pāreō**, 2, -uī, obey, comply; *with dat.*, give heed (to), obey, respond (to); be in subjection (to) (140).

**pariō**, 3, **peperi**, **partus**, win, gain.

**parō**, 1, prepare, get ready, make preparations for (51); fit out, make ready, put in order; *with infin.*, prepare, make preparations, plan. *Partic. as adj.*, **parātus**, -a, -um, in readiness, ready.

**pars**, **partis**, *f.*, part, proportion, division, section, remnant; quarter, direction, side. *Pl.*, rôle (131). **ab eā parte**, in that quarter, on that side;

**ex omnibus partibus**, on all sides;

**in omnīs partēs**, in every direction;

**in alterā parte . . . in alterā**, on the one hand . . . on the other;

**in utramque partem**, pro and con (103); **nūllam in partem**, no (sign be made) one way or the other (119);

**quāscumque in partēs**, whithersoever; **unā ex parte**, on one side.

**Parthī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Parthians.

**parvus**, -a, -um, small, little, scant; weak (force), low (hill). *Compar.*,

minor, -or, -us, less, of no great size (85); lighter (shock); younger (68).

*Superl.*, **minimus**, -a, -um, very small, (but) the slightest (91).

**passus**, -ūs, *m.*, pace. See **mille**.

**passus**, -a, -um, see **pandō** and **patior**.

**patefaciō**, 3, -fēcī, -factus, throw



# FIRST LATIN READER

2

open; disclose, divulge. *Partic. as*  
*adj.*, patefactus, -a, -um, open (64).  
 ater, -tris, *m.*, father.

patior, 3, passus sum, allow, permit,  
 suffer; endure, bear, suffer.  
 patria, -ae, *f.*, fatherland, country;  
 ancestral domain (75), rightful

country (93).  
 pauci, -ae, -a, few, a few (of), the few.  
*As masc. noun*, a few, a mere hand-  
 ful, (only) a few (45); *neut.*, a few

(things, words, questions).  
 paulatim, *adv.*, slowly, by slow de-  
 grees, gradually.

paulo, *adv.*, a little, somewhat. paulo  
 ante, a little before (earlier), shortly  
 before, a little while before; a little  
 while ago (69); paulo post, a little  
 later, shortly afterward, a short time  
 afterward.

paulum, *adv.*, a little, a little way, a  
 little (short) distance; a short  
 time.

pax, pācis, *f.*, peace, state of peace.  
 Pecsnot, -otis, *m.*, the name of an Ind-  
 ian killed by Miles Standish.

pecunia, -ae, *f.*, money, funds; pay  
 (94), bribe (94). See also solvo.

pedes, -itis, *m.*, foot soldier. *Pl.*, in-  
 fantry, footmen, foot soldiers.

pedetemptim, *adv.*, gradually, little by  
 little, warily, slowly.

peditatus, -ūs, *m.*, foot soldiery, infan-  
 try, foot, foot soldiers, footmen; force  
 of infantry (138).

Pennsylvēnia, -ae, *f.*, Pennsylvania.  
 per, *prep. with acc.*, (of space) through,  
 across, over, along; around in (the

grass), on (the sea); (of time)  
 through, for; (agency) through  
 (translated freely "from" or "by").

See also simulatio and tenebrae.

percutio, 3, -cussi, -cussus, strike,  
 strike down.

perducō, 3, -dūxi, -ductus, conduct.  
*Pass.*, be protracted, last (129).

peregrinus, -i, *m.*, foreigner.  
 pereō, -īre, -ii, perish, die, lose (one's)

life, be killed, fall.  
 perficio, 3, -fēci, -fectus, complete,  
 finish, carry to completion, carry

out; do, perform; construct, build.  
 perfidia, -ae, *f.*, treachery, treason;

perfuga, -ae, *c.*, renegade, traitor;  
*with adj.*, force, deserting (123).

perfugio, 3, -fūgi, desert, flee; *with ad*  
*and acc.*, take refuge (with) (111).

periculosus, -a, -um, perilous, beset  
 with dangers.

periculum, -i, *n.*, danger, peril, risk;  
 crisis (104), dangerous state (112).

perlegō, 3, -lēgi, -lēctus, read through.  
 permotus, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*,  
 startled, surprised, taken aback, con-

fused; stirred (up), alarmed, shaken,  
 worried, concerned; incensed (66),  
 inspired (83), shamed (120).

perpauci, -ae, -a, very few, a very  
 few.

perpetuus, -a, -um, everlasting, ever  
 troublesome (139). in perpetuum  
 (as *neut. noun*), for all time (108).

perrumpō, 3, -rūpi, -ruptus, break  
 through, break down, destroy.

perseverō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, persist,  
 remain firm; *with infin.*, continue

(to do a thing), persist (in doing a  
 thing).

persuadeō, 2, -suāsī, -suāsum est,  
*with dat.*, make it agreeable (to)

persuade, induce.

perterritus, -a, -um, *partic. as adj*  
 terrified, thoroughly frightened,  
 great fear, panic-stricken, thro

(o  
 per  
 per  
 i  
 pe  
 M

- into a panic, in terror, scared out of (one's) wits; in their terror (129).
- pertinācia**, -ae, *f.*, obstinacy, persistence.
- pertineō**, 2, -tinui, *with ad and acc.*, be not far from (129); have a bearing upon, be of importance for (140).
- perturbō**, 1, throw into confusion, disconcert.
- pervenio**, 4, -veni, -ventum est, arrive, come, venture, make (one's) way: *with ad and acc.*, reach, arrive (at); be reduced (to) (125): *with in and acc.*, reach; effect an entrance (into) (85). **pervenire in potestatem**, *with gen.*, surrender (to).
- pēs**, pedis, *m.*, foot. See also **captus** (under **capiō**).
- pessimus**, -a, -um, see **malus**.
- petō**, 3, -ivi, -itus, look for, seek; ask, ask for, beg, sue for (peace); desire, try to get; get, find, secure: head for, make for (128, 139); hunt down (133); attack (131): *with ab and abl.*, request (132).
- Petrēius**, -ei, *m.*, (Marcus) Petreius, commanding officer of the army that defeated Catiline.
- Petrosidius**, -di, *m.*, (Lucius) Petrosidius, a standard bearer in Caesar's army in Gaul.
- Philadelphīa**, -ae, *f.*, Philadelphia.
- Philippus**, -i, *m.*, (King) Philip, an Indian chief.
- Philomēlium**, -li, *n.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.
- pilum**, -i, *n.*, javelin.
- Pindenissus** (or -um), -i, *m.* or *n.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.
- Pinta**, -ae, *f.*, the name of one of the ships of Columbus.
- pīrāta**, -ae, *m.*, pirate, robber.
- piscis**, -is, *m.*, fish.
- plānē**, *adv.*, clearly, full well; fully, utterly.
- plānitīēs**, -ei, *f.*, plain, level ground.
- plērique**, **plēraeque**, **plēraque**, most of, the majority of. *As masc. noun*, the majority, the most part, nearly all.
- plūrimī**, -ae, -a, see **multus**.
- plūrimum**, see **multum**.
- plūs**, **plūris**, *n.*, see **multus**.
- Pōcāhonta**, -ae, *f.*, the name of an Indian princess.
- pōculum**, -i, *n.*, cup.
- poena**, -ae, *f.*, penalty. See also **dō** and **repetō**.
- Poenī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Carthaginians.
- polliceor**, 2, **pollicitus sum**, promise, agree, declare (89); offer, make offer of. **bene pollicērī**, make fair promises (135).
- Pollūx**, -ūcis, *m.*, the name of a god worshiped by the Romans.
- Pompēiānī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Pompeians (*i.e.* adherents of Pompey).
- Pompēius**, -ei, *m.*; (1) Gnaeus Pompey, the opponent of Caesar in the civil war; (2) Gnaeus Pompey, an interpreter attached to Caesar's army in Gaul; (3) Pompey, a slave name (99).
- Pomptinus**, -i, *m.*, (Gaius) Pomptinus, lieutenant to Marcus Cicero.
- pōnō**, 3, **posui**, **positus**, place, put, station, fix; establish, build: *with in and abl.*, stake (upon) (112). *Partic. as adj.*, **positus**, -a, -um, located, situated. **castra pōnere**, encamp, pitch camp.
- Pontiac**, -acis, *m.*, the name of an Indian chief.

- populus**, -ī, *m.*, people (*i.e.* nation).  
**porrigō**, 3, -rēxī, -rēctus, hold out, stretch out; display.  
**Porsinna**, -ae, *m.*, the name of a king of Etruria.  
**porta**, -ae, *f.*, gate, door.  
**portō**, 1, carry, bring; accommodate (91).  
**portus**, -ūs, *m.*, harbor, bay, port.  
**possum**, posse, potuī, be able (can, etc.).  
**post**, *adv.*, after, afterward, later. See also paulō and postquam.  
**post**, *prep. with acc.*, after, later than; behind. See also tergum.  
**postea**, *adv.*, afterward, later, thereafter.  
**(posterus)**, -a, -um, next, following. *As noun*, posterī, -ōrum, *m.*, descendants, posterity.  
**postquam** or **post** . . . **quam**, *conj.*, after, when; when at length (64), as soon as (82).  
**postrēmō**, *adv.*, finally, at last, at length, in the end.  
**postridiē**, *adv.*, the next day, on the following day. **postridiē eius diēi**, on the following day (123).  
**postulō**, 1, demand, require, ask.  
**potestās**, -ātis, *f.*, power, control, possession; opportunity (109, 121). See also perveniō.  
**potior**, 4, -ītus sum, *with abl.*, gain, get, secure; capture, gather in (117), get (take) possession of; occupy (129).  
**praeda**, -ae, *f.*, plunder, booty, prize.  
**praedium**, -ī, *n.*, estate, plantation, ranch, farm.  
**praefectus**, -ī, *m.*, commander; captain (70, 74, 81), general (123), officer (70, 125), governor (4).  
**praemittō**, 3, -mīsī, -missus, send ahead, send forward.  
**praemium**, -ī, *n.*, reward, present, bonus, largess; bribe (71).  
**praecupō**, 1, forestall, anticipate; reach first (125).  
**praepōnō**, 3, -posuī, -positus, *with dat.*, put in charge (of).  
**praesēns**, -entis, see praesum.  
**praesertim**, *adv.*, especially.  
**praesidium**, -ī, *n.*, garrison, guard, escort; guard(ing) (138).  
**praestō**, 1, -stitī, -stitus, show, exhibit, manifest, display; perform (105); guarantee (107).  
**praesum**, -esse, -fui, be in charge, be in command; *with dat.*, be in charge (of), be in command (of). *Partic.* **praesēns**, -entis, present (135); *as adj.*, instant (death).  
**praeter**, *prep. with acc.*, by, past, beyond.  
**praeterea**, *adv.*, besides, furthermore, in addition.  
**praetereō**, -īre, -iī, -itus, pass by; *perf. tense*, be past, be gone (131).  
**praetervehor**, 3, -vectus sum, sail past.  
**praetōrius**, -a, -um, of the commander; see cohors.  
**premō**, 3, pressī, pressus, press hard, harass, beset.  
**pridem**, see iam.  
**prīdiē**, *adv.* (sometimes as *prep. with an acc.*), (on) the day before.  
**prīmō**, *adv.*, at first, at the outset, in the beginning.  
**primum**, *adv.*, first. See also cum (*conj.*) and ubi (*conj.*).  
**primus**, -a, -um, first, chief, foremost, leading; the beginning of, the first part of; early, earliest; the very

- (88). **in primis** (*as masc. noun*), in the front rank (136). See also **aciēs**, **agmen**, and **lūx**.
- princeps**, -**ipis**, *m.*, chief citizen. *Pl.*, chief men, leading men.
- Prissilla**, -**ae**, *f.*, Priscilla.
- pristinus**, -**a**, -**um**, former, old-time; past (133).
- prius**, *adv.*, first, previously.
- priusquam**, *conj.*, before; *after a negative*, until (88, 109).
- prō**, *prep. with abl.*, in return for, instead of; *as*, for (10, 16, 83); *for*, in behalf of, in defense of (14, 35, 61, 63); *before*, in front of (107).
- probō**, *i*, approve.
- procul**, *adv.*, far, far away, remote, at a distance; in the distance (94, 113); *from a distance* (87, 125). **haud procul**, at no great distance, near at hand, near by.
- prōcurrō**, 3, -**cucurrī** or -**currī**, -**cursum est**, run forward, charge.
- prōdō**, 3, -**didī**, -**ditus**, betray; disclose (52).
- prōdūcō**, 3, -**dūxī**, -**ductus**, bring out, lead out, (cause to) march out.
- proelium**, -**i**, *n.*, battle, fight, fighting, (scene of) battle; battle (in the open) (122). See also **committō** and **dēsistō**.
- profectiō**, -**ōnis**, *f.*, departure.
- proficiscor**, 3, **profectus sum**, set out, set forth, start, start off, start out, proceed; depart (27), slip away (62).
- progredior**, 3, -**gressus sum**, advance, progress, proceed, move forward, move on, take up (the) march, go forward, go ahead; go forth (75); march, travel; sail, coast; push out (2), venture (3, 6).
- prōiciō**, 3, -**icēī**, -**iectus**, throw (out), hurl; throw over (98); lay down (arms). *Pass.*, fall forward (130).
- prōlābor**, 3, -**lapsus sum**, fall forward, slip down (57).
- prōmunturium**, -**i**, *n.*, promontory, cape.
- prōnūntiō**, *i*, announce, make announcement.
- prope**, *adv.*, near, near by. *Compar.*, rather near, quite near, very near, too near; *as prep. with acc.*, quite near to (107).
- prope**, *prep. with acc.*, near, close to, by, in the neighborhood of.
- properō**, *i*, -**āvī**, -**ātum est**, hasten, hurry, scurry; *with infin.*, make haste (78).
- propinquus**, -**a**, -**um**, near-by, near. *As noun*, **propinquī**, -**ōrum**, *m.*, relatives.
- prōpōnō**, 3, -**posuī**, -**positus**, set forth, explain.
- propter**, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, because of; through (fear).
- prōsper** (or -**erus**), -**era**, -**erum**, good (fortune, luck).
- prōspiciō**, 3, -**spēxī**, (-**spectus**), look forth, look out.
- prōtinus**, *adv.*, straight on; forthwith (129).
- prōvideō**, 2, -**vidī**, -**vīsus**, foresee, determine; look after, look out for (136).
- prōvincia**, -**ae**, *f.*, province, colony, territory, district.
- proximus**, -**a**, -**um**, next, nearest, adjoining, neighboring, near-by; next, following, next succeeding; that (night) (119).
- Frūsia** (or -**ās**), -**ae**, *m.*, the name of a king of Bithynia.

**pūblicus**, -a, -um, public, official (112). See also **rēs**.

**puella**, -ae, *f.*, girl, maiden, maid.

**puer**, -erī, *m.*, boy, lad; slave (133).

See also **magister**.

**pueritia**, -ae, *f.*, boyhood, childhood.

**pugna**, -ae, *f.*, battle.

**pugnō**, 1, -āvi, -ātum est, fight, war; keep up (the) fight (106).

**pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, beautiful, fair, pretty, charming; splendid, fine, (2, 98).

**pulvis**, -eris, *m.*, dust (90, 118); powder.

**putō**, 1, think, believe.

**Q.**, abbreviation of **Quīntus**, -ī, *m.*

**quadrīduum**, -ī, *n.*, four days, a period (space) of four days.

**quaerō**, 3, **quaesivī**, **quaesitus**, seek, search, look for, hunt for; secure, get, find, recover; ask, inquire (122).

**quaestus**, -ūs, *m.*, profit, gain.

**quam**, *conj.* and *adv.*, than, rather than; with the *superl.* of *adjs.* and *advs.*, as . . . as possible.

**quamquam**, *conj.*, although.

**quandō**, *adv.*, see **sī**.

**quantus**, -a, -um, how great; what, what a. As *noun*, **quantum**, -ī, *n.*, how much? See also **tantus**.

**quārē**, *conj.*, therefore, wherefore, (and) accordingly, (and) so, (and) consequently; because of which, on which account, (and) on this account, as a consequence of which; whereat, whereupon.

**quārtus**, -a, -um, fourth.

**quasi**, *conj.*, with *partic.*, as if, pretending (to).

**quattuor**, *indeclinable adj.*, four.

**-que**, *conj.*, and; and (so) (139).

**queror**, 3, **questus sum**, complain.

**quī**, **quae**, **quod**, *rel. pron.*, who, which (*gen.*, whose). With *antecedent implied*: *masc. pl.*, (some) who, (people) who, (those) who (90, 93, 120, 129, 140); *neut. sing.*, (a thing) which (37), (one) which (131); *neut. pl.*, (the things) which (110).

At the beginning of a sentence: as *noun*, who, which, he, she, it, this, they, these; *neut.*, this thing, these things, this: as *adj.*, which, what, this. (When a personal or demonstrative pronoun is used to render a relative, it is often desirable to supply a conjunction, such as "and," "but," etc.) See also **modus**. For the corresponding *interrog.* and *indef. pron.*, see **quis**.

**quidam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam** (**quidam**), a certain; a (3); a sort of (137). *Pl.*, some, certain, certain of. As *masc. noun*, a certain one; *pl.*, certain, some (people).

**quidem**, *adv.*, indeed; at any rate (93).

See also **nē** . . . **quidem**.

**quiescō**, 3, **quiesvī**, (**quiesitus**), rest, repose; take (one's) nap (71).

**somnō quiescere**, be sunk in sleep.

**quīn etiam**, indeed, in fact, as a matter of fact, nay more, even; why (not *interrog.*).

**Quīnctius**, -tī, *m.*, see **Flāminius**.

**quindecim**, *indeclinable adj.*, fifteen.

**quīnquāgēsīmus**, -a, -um, fiftieth.

**quīnquāgīntā**, *indeclinable adj.*, fifty.

**quīnque**, *indeclinable adj.*, five.

**Quīntus**, -ī, *m.*, Quintus.

(**quis**) **quī**, **quae**, (**quid**) **quod**, *indef. pron.*, any one, any, etc. (see **nē** and **sī**).

(**quis**) **quī**, **quae**, (**quid**) **quod**, *indef.*

- terrog. pron.*, who? what? (*the latter, both noun and adj.*).
- quisquam**, —, **quicquam**, *in negative clauses*, any one, anything. **nec quisquam**, and no one; **nec quicquam**, and . . . nothing.
- quisque, quaeque, quodque** (**quidque**): *adj.*, each, every; *noun*, each (man) (120).
- quivis, quaevis, quodvis** (**quidvis**): *adj.*, any whatsoever; *noun*, any one whatsoever, anything whatsoever (77).
- quō, adv.**, whither, to which place; to which, into which: to the place to which (118); thither, there.
- quō, conj.**, in order that, so that.
- quod, conj.**, because, since, as, because of the fact that; on the ground that; that (60, 100); as for the fact that (45).
- quondam, adv.**, once, in days gone by, at one time, on one occasion, one time; previously (33).
- quoniam, conj.**, since, inasmuch as.
- quoque, adv. and conj.**, also, too, as well; even.
- quotiēna, conj.**, as often as.
- rāmus, -ī, m.**, branch.
- rapiō, 3, rapuī, raptus**, seize, catch, catch up, snatch away; carry away, steal, plunder (38).
- rārus, -a, -um, (in pl.)**, scattered, far apart, few.
- ratio, -ōnis, f.**, manner, way.
- ratus, -a, -um**, see **reor**.
- Rebilus, -ī, m.**, see **Caninius**.
- recipiō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptus**, receive, admit, harbor (140); regain, recover, retake. *in nāvīgium recipere*, get (take) on board: *sē recipere*, with- draw, retreat, retire, return, go back, march back, fall back; march, proceed (117); *with in and acc.*, take refuge (in) (115).
- recūsō, 1**, object to, reject; shun, shrink from (15).
- redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum est**, return, come back, get back, make (one's) way back, go back; come again (125); *with ad and acc.*, be reduced (to) (112). **domum redīre**, arrive home (5).
- redintegrō, 1**, renew.
- redūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus**, lead back, conduct back, withdraw, remove (122), bring back, carry back, take back, pull back; bring (123); *with ad and acc.*, restore (to) (93).
- referō, -ferre, rettulī, -lātus**, carry (back); repay (favor).
- refugiō, 3, -fūgī**, flee for protection; retire in haste (129).
- rēgīna, -ae, f.**, queen.
- regiō, -ōnis, f.**; *sing. and pl.*, region, territory, district, locality, country, neighborhood.
- rēgnum, -ī, n.**, sway, control; kingdom, realm. See also **obtinēō**.
- regredior, 3, -gressus sum**, return, withdraw.
- religiō, -ōnis, f.**, religion, (religious) belief, religious system; religious considerations (131).
- religō, 1**, fasten, bind.
- relinquō, 3, -liquī, -lictus**, leave, leave behind, abandon; leave, set sail from; raise (siege): leave, allow (116). *Partic. as adj.*, **relictus, -a, -um**, remaining (88).
- reliquiae, -arum, f.**, remnants.
- reliquus, -a, -um**, the rest of, the remaining. *Pl.*, the other, other, the

- remaining, the rest of; the following (109); *as noun*, the others, those remaining, the remnant, the remainder, the rest. *reliquus esse*, be left, remain (115, 125).
- remittō**, 3, -misi, -missus, send back; subtract (114).
- reor**, 2, ratus sum, expect (136). *Partic.*, ratus, -a, -um, thinking, believing.
- repente**, *adv.*, suddenly, (all) of a sudden.
- repentinus**, -a, -um, sudden, unexpected.
- reperiō**, 4, repperī, repertus, find, discover.
- repetō**, 3, -petivī, -petitus, exact (*lit.* demand back). *poenās repetere*, with *ab* and *abl.*, discipline, punish.
- reportō**, 1, carry back, bring back.
- repperī**, see **reperiō**.
- reprimō**, 3, -pressī, -pressus, stop, suppress, check.
- rēs**, *rei*, *f.*, thing, things, action; affair, business, circumstance, fact, happening, matter, matters; act (121), casualty (106), concession (50), development (103); engagement, the fighting (129, 136); errand (14), event (42), incident (88), issue (72), observation (48), occurrence (71), performance (58), plan (94), point (129), proceeding (69), result (99), situation (108, 114), transaction (118), turn (of events) (92, 125), undertaking (40), venture (100). *Pl.*, business (139), cause (126), demonstration (121), means (127), things, appliances (122). *haec rēs or quae rēs* (*all cases, sing. and pl.*), this; *quam ob rem*, wherefore, and so, accordingly; *rēs gestae*, exploits; *rē vērā*, in very truth; *rēs novae*, insurrection, revolution (25); *rēs publica*, commonwealth, state, (one's) country (60). See also **committō** and **gerō**.
- resistō**, 3, -stitī, -stitum est, with *dat. case, if any*, resist, offer resistance, oppose, make opposition; hold (one's) own, stand (one's) ground, make a stand (136); go (against), hold out (against), hold (one's) ground (against).
- respondeō**, 2, -spondī, -spōnsus est, answer, reply; make answer, send answer; declare.
- respōnsum**, -ī, *n.*, answer, reply.
- retineō**, 2, -tinuī, -tentus, hold back; hold down (91); keep (101); maintain, hold fast to (113); save (133).
- rettulī**, see **referō**.
- revocō**, 1, recall, call back.
- rēx**, *rēgis*, *m.*, king, chief, ruler.
- Rhēnus**, -ī, *m.*, the ancient name of the Rhine.
- rideō**, 2, risī, (risus), laugh, smile.
- rīpa**, -ae, *f.*, (river) bank, bank (of river).
- rīvus**, -ī, *m.*, stream; brook (82).
- rogō**, 1, ask, beg, request.
- Rōma**, -ae, *f.*, Rome.
- Rōmānus**, -a, -um, Roman. *As noun*, **Rōmānī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Romans. See also **vir**.
- Rūfus**, -ī, *m.*, see **Mārcius**.
- rursus**, *adv.*, again, in turn, once more.
- Sabinus**, -ī, *m.*, (Quintus) Sabinus, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war.
- Saburra**, -ae, *m.*, the name of a gen-

- eral in the army of the African king Juba.
- sacerdōs**, -ōtis, *c.*, priest, priestess; medicine man; minister (97).
- saepe**, *adv.*, often, oftentimes, on many occasions, many times, frequently, repeatedly. *Compar.*, over and over again (87), repeatedly (122).
- saevitia**, -ae, *f.*, brutality, roughness, savagery, barbarity, bloodthirstiness.
- sagitta**, -ae, *f.*, arrow.
- sagum**, -ī, *n.*, cloak.
- saltem**, *adv.*, at least, at any rate.
- saltō**, ī, -āvī, -ātum est, dance.
- salūs**, -ūtis, *f.*, safety, well-being (91); salvation, escape, saving the day (125); life, lives (50, 72, 130). **salūtī esse**, with a *second dat.*, save, prove the salvation (of), save the day (for) (63).
- Samarobrīva**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a city of northern Gaul.
- Sanga**, -ae, *m.*, see Fabius.
- Santa** (-ae) **Maria**, -ae, *f.*, the name of one of the ships of Columbus.
- Saratōga**, -ae, *f.*, Saratoga.
- satis**, *adv.*, sufficiently, enough; quite, rather (58), very (56). See also **sciō**.
- Savanna**, -ae, *f.*, Savannah.
- saxum**, -ī, *n.*, rock, cliff.
- scapha**, -ae, *f.*, skiff, open boat, row-boat.
- scelerātus**, -a, -um, rascally, wicked, villainous.
- scilicet**, *adv.*, of course, to be sure, naturally; evidently (133).
- sciō**, 4, scīvī, scītus, know, understand. **nec satis sciō**, and be somewhat undecided (104); **omnia sciō**, know all (about the subject) (31).
- scribō**, 3, scripsī, scriptus, write; state (114).
- sē, sēsē**, see **suī**.
- secundum**, *prep.* with *acc.*, along.
- secundus**, -a, -um, following; favorable (131). See also **flūmen**.
- secūris**, -is, *f.*, battle-ax, ax, tomahawk.
- secūtus**, -a, -um, see **sequor**.
- sed**, *conj.*, but; *resuming*, now (136).
- sēdecim**, *indeclinable adj.*, sixteen.
- sedeō**, 2, sēdī, sessum est, take a seat, sit.
- sēdēs**, -is, *f.*, seat (of war) (82). *Pl.*, location, abode (65); district, habitat (66).
- semel**, *adv.*, once. **semel atque iterum** or **semel iterumque**, time and again, several times.
- semper**, *adv.*, always, ever, at all times.
- Semprōnia**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a woman implicated in the conspiracy of Catiline.
- senātus**, -ūs, *m.*, Parliament (34, 35); Congress (39, 43, 44); session of Congress (44); (the Roman) senate (42, 132, 134, 137).
- senex**, **senis**, *m.*, old man; with *adj.* *force*, aged.
- sententia**, -ae, *f.*, view, sentiment, opinion, suggestion.
- sentiō**, 4, sēnsī, sēnsus, realize, know, feel; see, perceive, notice; find (96).
- septem**, *indeclinable adj.*, seven.
- September**, -bris, -bre, of September.
- septimus**, -a, -um, seventh. **septimus quinquāgēsimus**, fifty-seventh.
- septuāgēsimus**, -a, -um, seventieth.
- septuāgintā**, *indeclinable adj.*, seventy.
- Sepyra**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a small town of Asia Minor.



**sequor**, 3, **secutus sum**, follow. **vestigii sequi**, follow the trail (61).

**servo**, 1, save, rescue, preserve, keep.

**servus**, -i, *m.*, slave; helper (74).

**sex**, *indeclinable adj.*, six.

**sexaginta**, *indeclinable adj.*, sixty.

**Sextilis**, -is, -e, of August.

**sī**, *conj.*, if, in case; if perchance, on the chance that, in the hope that; (to see) if (121). **sī modo**, if only, provided (that); **sī quando**, if at any time, whenever; **sī quī** (*noun*), if any; **sī quid novi**, if anything new.

**sic**, *adv.*, thus, so, in this manner, in this way, through (by) this means; in such a way (54, 133).

**sica**, -ae, *f.*, dagger.

**Sicilia**, -ae, *f.*, Sicily.

**Siculus**, -i, *m.*, (a) Sicilian.

**sicut**, *conj.*, just as; thus, for example.

**signum**, -i, *n.*, sign, signal; watchword, countersign (99). *Pl.*, standards.

**silentium**, -i, *n.*, silence, quietness (86). *Abl. as adv.*, **silentiō**, silently, in silence.

**silva**, -ae, *f.*, forest, woods, wood, grove.

**similis**, -is, -e, similar; *with dat.*, similar (to), resembling, like.

**simul**, *adv.*, at the same time, simultaneously; at one and the same time (105, 136). **simul atque**, as soon as (124); **simul cum**, together with (139).

**simulatiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, pretense, show. **per simulatiōnem**, under pretense (122).

**simulō**, 1, pretend, make believe, make it appear (49); affect, pretend (135).

**sine**, *prep. with abl.*, without. See also *mora* and *timor*.

**singuli**, -ae, -a, one at a time, one by one, isolated (66).

**socius**, -a, -um, allied (137). *As noun*, **socius**, -i, *m.*, ally, assistant, partner (98). *Pl.*, allies, friends; participants (135); friendly natives (140).

**soleō**, 2, **solitus sum**, be accustomed, be wont, be apt, be in the habit (of doing a thing); *imperf. and perf. tenses*, used. *Translated impersonally*, be (one's) wont, be (one's) custom.

**solum**, *adv.*, only. **nōn solum . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also.

**solus**, -a, -um, alone, in solitude; unaided, single-handed; in single combat (72).

**solvō**, 3, **solvi**, **solūtus**, unfetter (91); pay (debt). **nāvem (-ēs)olvere**, cast off, set sail; **pecūniamolvere**, defray expense (89).

**somnus**, -i, *m.*, sleep, slumber, nap. See also **dō**.

**sonus**, -i, *m.*, sound, noise.

**sōpītus**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, asleep. **spatium**, -i, *n.*, space, room; period (120), respite (129).

**speciēs**, -ēi, *f.*, show, display, parade, pretense, guise. **ad speciem**, as a blind (122).

**spectō**, 1, -āvi, (-ātus), look, verge, lie.

**speculor**, 1, spy, view.

**spernō**, 3, **sprēvi**, **sprētus**, scorn, disregard.

**sperō**, 1, hope, hope for.

**spēs**, -ei, *f.*, hope, reliance (125); expectation (128), anticipation (135); chance (125), prospect (126), promise (111).

**spoliō**, 1, spoil, plunder, despoil, pilage; prey upon (81, 92, 98).

**sprētus**, -a, -um, see **spernō**.

**Spurinna**, -ae, *m.*, the name of a priest who predicted the death of Julius Caesar.

**Standisius**, -sī, *m.*, (Miles) Standish.  
**statim**, *adv.*, at once, immediately, instantly, promptly, without delay, without parley (71); at the very outset (120).

**statuō**, 3, **statuī**, **statūtus**, set up (35); decide, determine, make up (one's) mind.

**stipendium**, -ī, *n.*, pay. *Pl.*, military service; see **faciō**.

**stō**, 1, **stetī**, stand, be stationed; ride (at anchor); stand, stop, halt (85).

**strēnuus**, -a, -um, active, energetic, sturdy.

**streptus**, -ūs, *m.*, bustle, noise, confusion.

**sub**, *prep. with abl.*, under, beneath; *with acc.*, toward.

**subitō**, *adv.*, suddenly, unexpectedly, without warning.

**sublātus**, -a, -um, see **tollō**.

**subsequor**, 3, -**secūtus sum**, follow rapidly; follow (124).

**subsidiū**, -ī, *n.*, support, reinforcement, relief, help. See also **veniō**.

**suī**, **sibi**, himself, him; herself, her; itself, it; themselves, them. See also: **sē** with **cōferō**, **coniungō**, **dēdō**, **dēmittō**, **dō**, **gerō**, **habēō**, **ostendō**, **recipiō**, **tegō**, and **teneō**: **inter sē** with **agō**, **cohortor**, and **concurrō**: **sēcum** with **habēō**.

**sum**, **esse**, **fui**, be, become (111), prove to be; remain, stop (137); stand, be located; happen (127). See also **auxilium**, **salūs**, and **ūsus**.

**summus**, -a, -um, see **superior**.

**sūmō**, 3, **sūmpsi**, **sūmptus**, take, pro-

cure, get; swallow (133); put on (100).

**super**, *prep. with acc.*, above, over (72); upon, on top of (56).

**superbia**, -ae, *f.*, haughtiness, arrogance.

**superior**, -ior, -ius, superior, stronger; higher (130); past, former, earlier, previous. **Superl.**, **suprēmus**, -a, -um, supreme, and **summus**, -a, -um, greatest, very great, great; the top of (86): acute (crisis); full (speed), all (speed), the top of (one's speed); grave (peril), hardest, heaviest (work), hearty (approval), (commander) in chief, most distressing (scarcity), most splendid (valor), pressing (need), severest (hardship), utmost (daring), utter (despair, lawlessness).

**superō**, 1, surpass, excel, prevail (104); defeat, overcome, outdo, worst, beat.

**supīnus**, -a, -um, on (one's) back, upon (one's) back, face upward; placed flat on (one's) back (94).

**suprā**, *adv.*, above.

**suprēmus**, -a, -um, see **superior**.

**surgō**, 3, **surrēxi**, **surrēctum est**, rise up, arise, rise.

**suscipiō**, 3, -**cēpi**, -**ceptus**, undertake.

**suspēsus**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, anxious.

**suspiciō**, -ōnis, *f.*, suspicion; impression (127).

**suspīcor**, 1, suspect, think.

**sustineō**, 2, -**tinui**, -**tentus**, withstand, sustain, break the force of (118);

stay (hunger).

**sustulī**, see **tollō**.

**suus**, -a, -um, his, of his, her, their, of theirs; his own, her own, etc.

*As noun*, **suī**, -**ōrum**, *m.*, his men

- (followers, following, forces, force); their men (followers): his own people (16); their own lines (121).
- Synnada**, -ōrum, *n.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.
- Syria**, -ae, *f.*, the name of a country of Asia.
- T.**, abbreviation of Titus, -ī, *m.*
- tabernāculum**, -ī, *n.*, tent, wigwam.
- tacitus**, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, silent, motionless; quiet, in silence.
- Taeconderōga**, -ae, *f.*, Ticonderoga.
- Tallapūsa**, -ae, *m.*, Tallapoosa, a river of Alabama.
- tam**, *adv.*, so.
- tamen**, *adv. and conj.*, however, but, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still.
- nec tamen**, and yet . . . not.
- tantopere**, *adv.*, so greatly.
- tantum**, *adv.*, merely, only, but.
- tantus**, -a, -um, so great, so large, such, such great, such large; so base, such base (41), so grievous (34), so remarkable (110), so severe (33), such (absolute) (86), such serious (134); overwhelming (134).
- quantō . . . tantō**, (*with two comparatives*) the . . . the; **tantus . . . quantus**, such . . . as.
- tardē**, *adv.*, slowly, with little speed.
- Taurus**, -ī, *m.*, the name of a mountain range of Asia Minor.
- Tebarānī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the name of a people of Asia Minor.
- tēctum**, -ī, *n.*, roof; structure, building.
- Tecumsa**, -ae, *m.*, Tecumseh, an Indian chief.
- tegō**, 3, **tēxi**, **tēctus**, cover, conceal; bury (64). **sē tegere**, get under cover.
- tēlum**, -ī, *n.*, missile, weapon; shaft shot, bullet. *Pl.*, ammunition (59, 83, 92). See also **inmittō** and **interficiō**.
- temerē**, *adv.*, rashly, hastily, incautiously, lightly (82).
- temeritās**, -ātis, *f.*, rashness, rash action, hasty act, incautiousness, folly.
- tempestās**, -ātis, *f.*, storm.
- templum**, -ī, *n.*, temple (71); church.
- tempus**, -oris, *n.*, time, period, season, occasion, hour (100); circumstances (139). *Pl.*, days, times; ages (45).
- tenebrae**, -arum, *f.*, darkness. **per tenebrās**, in the darkness (gloom).
- teneō**, 2, -uī, hold, occupy, garrison; have (128); keep to (139). **memoriā tenēre**, remember (34); **sē tenēre**, remain constantly (133).
- tergum**, -ī, *n.*, back. **ā tergō** and **post tergum**, in the rear. See also **vertō**.
- terra**, -ae, *f.*, the earth, land; country, land, district; the ground; dirt, earth (110).
- terreō**, 2, -uī, -itus, frighten, intimidate, overawe, scare. *Partic. as adj.*, **terrītus**, -a, -um, frightened, terror-stricken, alarmed, abashed.
- tertius**, -a, -um, third.
- Thracēs**, -um, *m.*, the Thracians, a nation dwelling to the north of ancient Greece.
- Tiberis**, -is, *m.* (*acc. sing.*, -ī), the Tiber.
- Tillius**, -ī, *m.*, (Lucius) Tillius (Cimber), one of the murderers of Julius Caesar.
- timeō**, 2, -uī, be afraid, fear, be apprehensive; fear, be afraid of, be in fear of.

**timor**, -ōris, *m.*, fear, apprehension, alarm, panic (117), demoralization (122). *sine timōre*, with no thought of danger, unconcerned.

**tolerō**, *i*, keep at bay; tide over (112).

**tollō**, *3*, **sustulī**, **sublātus**, raise, put up, lift; set up (shout, cry); weigh (anchor): dislodge, drive away (139). *Pass.*, (hope) be dispelled (given up, gone). *Partic. as adj.*, **sublātus**, -a, -um, puffed up (108).

**tot**, *indeclinable adj.*, so many.

**tōtus**, -a, -um, whole, the whole of, total, all, entire.

**tractō**, *i*, handle, manage; have on (one's) hands, be engaged in (40).

**trādō**, *3*, **didī**, **-ditus**, give up, surrender, hand over, pass over; pass (hand) up (86); cede; transfer (91): assign (112); impart (27): say (88), state (131). *trāditum est*, it is related (stated, *lit.* handed down); the story runs (88).

**trādūcō**, *3*, **-dūxī**, **-ductus**, take across, bring across.

**trāgula**, -ae, *f.*, dart.

**trāns**, *prep. with acc.*, across, over.

**trānseō**, -īre, -iī, -itus, cross, cross over, come over, go over; come over, desert (119).

**trānsportō**, *i*, take over, carry over; carry away (91, 92).

**Trasumennus**, -ī, *m.*, the name of a lake of central Italy.

**trēs**, **trēs**, **tria**, three.

**Trēverī**, -ōrum, *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.

**tribūnus**, -ī, *m.* (with or without **mīlitum**), captain (27), major (28), staff-officer (32); (military) tribune (103 ff.).

**tribūtum**, -ī, *n.*, tribute, tax.

**trīdūm**, -ī, *n.*, three days.

**trīgintā**, *indeclinable adj.*, thirty.

**tū**, **tui**, you; *reflexive*, yourself (14).

**tuli**, see **ferō**.

**Tullius**, -ī, *m.*, (Lucius) Tullius, lieutenant to Marcus Cicero.

**tum**, *adv.*, then, at that time, on that occasion, on this occasion; at the time (28, 83); at such times (7); for the time being (122); now (139): thereupon, whereupon; later (113): furthermore, in the second place (16, 114). See also **cum** (*conj.*).

**tumultus**, -ūs, *m.*, alarm, confusion.

**turma**, -ae, *f.*, company (of cavalry), squadron. (*A turma enrolled about 30 men.*)

**turris**, -is, *f.*, (*acc. sing. -im*), tower.

**tūtō**, *adv.*, safely, in safety.

**tūtus**, -a, -um, safe; (place) of safety.

**ubi**, *adv.*; (*interrogative*) where? (*Relative*) where; upon which (11), in which (33); *beginning a new sentence*, there, (and) there, (but) there, etc. (*cf. what is said of the translation of the relative quī*).

**ubi**, *conj.*, when. **ubi primum**, on the first occasion that, the first time that.

**ūllus**, -a, -um, any; some (65); a single (137). **nē ūllus**, that no; **nec ūllus**, and . . . no, and . . . none. **ulterior**, -ior, -ius, farther; *in some proper names*, South (60, 70).

*Superl.*, **ultimus**, -a, -um, last, final.

**ultimus**, -a, -um, see **ulterior**.

**ultrō**, *adv.*, voluntarily, actually. **ultrō citrōque**, back and forth, up and down.

**ululātus**, -ūs, *m.*, yell, cry, shriek, war-whoop.

**Umbrenus**, -ī, *m.*, (Publius) Umbrenus, a freedman implicated in Catiline's conspiracy.

**umerus**, -ī, *m.*, shoulder.

**umquam**, *adv.*, ever. **neque umquam**, and never.

**ūnā**, *adv.*, together. **ūnā cum**, *with abl.*, along with, together with, in company with, with; side by side with (83).

**Uncās**, -ae, *m.*, the name of an Indian chief.

**unde**, *adv.*, whence, from which, from whence; from thence (39).

**ūndecimus**, -a, -um, eleventh.

**ūndēvigintī**, *indeclinable adj.*, nineteen.

**undique**, *adv.*, on all sides, in all quarters, everywhere, all about, in all directions, in every direction; from every side, from all sides, from every quarter, from all quarters.

**ūniversī**, -ae, -a, all, one and all, in a body.

**ūnus**, -a, -um, one, a single; (but) one (125); the one, the single (126). *As noun, masc. sing.*, one (132).

**ad ūnum**, to a man, to the last man, utterly.

**urbs**, *urbis, f.*, city; the city (*i.e.* Rome) (42, 45, 86).

**usque**, *adv.*, even. **usque ad**, *with acc.*, as far as, even to; until.

**ūsus**, -ūs, *m.*, use, assistance, service; experience (133). **ūsui esse**, (*freely*), be useful, be helpful, be used; be needed, be needful (110, 122, 123). See also **veniō**.

**ūsus**, -a, -um, see **ūtor**.

**ut, uti, conj.**; (*causal*) inasmuch as (126): (*purpose*) to, in order to, in order that, so that, that; for the

purpose (of doing a thing), with the idea (of doing a thing): (*relative*), as; (just) as (135): (*result*) so that, that, as to: (*substantive*) that (110): (*temporal*) when (131, 138).

**uterque, utraque, utrumque**, each (of two), either, both. *As noun, masc. sing.*, each, each man (of two).

**utī**, see **ut**.

**Utica**, -ae, *f.*, the name of an African city.

**ūtor**, 3, **ūsus sum**, *with abl.*, use, make use of, enjoy, have, employ, have recourse to, have occasion to use, bring into play, put into execution: accept, profit by (129), depend upon (71); devote (109); give utterance to (92); keep up (127); stoop to (63); *with a second abl.*, use (have) . . . (as) (129).

**uxor**, -ōris, *f.*, wife; squaw.

**vagor**, 1, wander, drift.

**valētūdō**, -inis, *f.*, health.

**validus**, -a, -um, strong, hardy, powerful; large (army).

**vallēs**, -is, *f.*, valley, glade.

**vāllum**, -ī, *n.*, wall, rampart, intrenchment.

**varius**, -a, -um, varying, various, of various kinds.

**Vārus**, -ī, *m.*, see **Attius**.

**Vasingtō**, -ōnis, *m.*, (George) Washington.

**-ve, conj.**, or; and (120).

**vectus**, -a, -um, see **vehō**.

**vehementer**, *adv.*, exceedingly much; deeply (42), energetically (94), earnestly (104), highly (139), zealously (135).

**vehō**, 3, **vēxī**, **vectus**, carry, bring.

- convey, ferry over. *Pass.*, be carried, proceed, sail, ride. *equō vectus*, on horseback.
- vel**, *conj. and adv.*; with *superl. of adjs. or advs.*, even (98). *vel . . . vel*, either . . . or, both . . . and.
- vēlum**, -ī, *n.*, sail. See also *dō*.
- vēndō**, 3, *vēndidi*, *vēnditus*, sell.
- venēnum**, -ī, *n.*, poison.
- venia**, -ae, *f.*, pardon.
- veniō**, 4, *vēni*, *ventum est*, come, proceed, march; arrive (126); draw near (118); with *in and acc.*, arrive (in). *auxiliō venire*, (*freely*) come to help; with *a second dat.*, come to the help (of): in *deditiōnem venire*, surrender; in *manūs venire*, with *gen.*, fall into the hands (of): *subsidiō venire*, (*freely*) come to the rescue; with *a second dat.*, come (go) to the help (of): *ūsū venire*, be experienced, happen (133) (*ūsū* is *perhaps an irregular dat. form*).
- vēnor**, 1, hunt.
- ventus**, -ī, *m.*, wind.
- verbum**, -ī, *n.*, word.
- vereor**, 2, -itus *sum*, fear, be afraid. *Partic.*, *veritus*, -a, -um, fearing, apprehensive; apprehensive of, alarmed at.
- vērō**, *conj.*, indeed, but, nevertheless, however, whereas; in truth, as a matter of fact, in fact: moreover (27); and (29, 42, 120).
- Verrēs**, -is, *m.*, (Gaius) Verres, a (Roman) governor of Sicily.
- versor**, 1, be involved, be; move about; bear a part (79)
- versus**, see *ad . . . versus*.
- Verticō**, -ōnis, *m.*, the name of a Gaul friendly to the Romans.
- vertō**, 3, *verti*, *versus*, turn. *terga vertere*, wheel about.
- vesper**, -eri and -eris, *m.*, evening. *sub vesperum*, toward evening.
- vestigium**, -ī, *n.*, track, mark. See also *insequor* and *sequor*.
- vestimentum**, -ī, *n.*, garment. *Pl.*, clothing, clothes, dress.
- vestis**, -is, *f.*, clothing.
- veterāni**, -ōrum, *m.*, veterans, veteran soldiers, veteran troops.
- vetus**, -eris, *adj.*, old-time, one-time.
- via**, -ae, *f.*, route, road, way, highway, track, trail, path; journey (126).
- vicinus**, -ī, *m.*, neighbor.
- victōria**, -ae, *f.*, victory.
- victus**, -a, -um, see *vincō*.
- vīcus**, -ī, *m.*, village, hamlet.
- videō**, 2, *vidi*, *visus*, see, view, behold, observe, watch; catch sight of, sight; see, find, discover (134).
- videor**, 2, *visus sum*, seem, appear. *Used impersonally*, *videtur*, seem best (103).
- vigilia**, -ae, *f.*, watch (*i.e.* division of the night). *Pl.*, wakefulness (104).
- vigilō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum *est*, keep awake, be alert, be awake; sit up (39).
- viginti**, *indeclinable adj.*, twenty.
- villa**, -ae, *f.*, farmhouse; farm (53).
- vincō**, 3, *vici*, *victus*, defeat, conquer, subdue, overcome, worst, beat, repulse; be victorious, prevail. *Partic. as adj.*, *victus*, -a, -um, defeated, beaten.
- vinculum**, -ī, *n.*, chain. *Pl.*, fetters, chains.
- vir**, *virī*, *m.*, man, gentleman; husband (73). *vir Britannicus*, (an) Englishman; *vir Rōmānus*, (a) Roman.
- Virginia**, -ae, *f.*, Virginia.

- virtūs, -ūtis, f.**, valor, bravery, courage, grit; coolness (110).
- vis, —, f.**, force (73), violence (131); vigor (136), (dead) earnest (136); amount (70, 74, 82), cloud (of dust) (118). *Pl.*, strength. See also **capiō**.
- vita, -ae, f.**, life. *Sing. often found where Engl. would use pl.* See also **agō**.
- vītō, i**, avoid, make (one's) way around; avert (danger) (122).
- vivō, 3, vixi, victum est**, live; eke out an existence (39).
- vīvus, -a, -um**, alive (132). *As noun*, **vīvī, -ōrum, m.**, the living (91).
- vix, adv.**, scarcely, hardly.
- vocō, i**, call, summon, invite; call, name. *in iūs vocāre*, prosecute, bring to trial (45).
- volō, velle, volui**, desire, wish, please; be anxious, want, aim, plan; be willing, be ready. *nec velle*, and . . . be unwilling, and . . . refuse (86).
- vōx, vōcis, f.**, voice; tones (95), articulation (131); remark, question (14).
- vulnerō, i**, wound. *Partic. as adj.*, **vulnerātus, -a, -um**, wounded; *as noun*, **vulnerāti, -ōrum, m.**, the wounded.
- vulnus, -eris, n.**, wound, injury.
- vultus, -ūs, m.**, countenance, expression.

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

(Numbers in parentheses refer to sections of the English-Latin Exercises. For numerals, see the list included in the Summary of Forms, p. 353 ff.)

- a, an, **quidam, quaedam, quoddam** ;  
*but usually not translated.*  
 a certain, **quidam, quaedam, quoddam.**
- able, be, **possum, posse, potui.**
- about, *adv.*, **circiter.**
- about, *prep.*, **dē with abl.**  
 about to: *translate by the future participle.*
- abundance, **cōpia, -ae, F.**
- accomplish, **efficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus.**
- accustomed, be, *perf. tense of cōn-*  
**suēscō, 3, -suēvī, (-suētus).**
- across, **trāns with acc.**
- address, **appellō, 1.**
- adopt (*plan*), **capiō, 3, cēpī, captus.**
- advance, **prōgredior, 3, -gressus sum.**
- afraid, be, **timeō, 2, -uī.**
- Africa, **Āfrica, -ae, F.**
- after, *adv.*, **post.**
- after, *conj.*, **cum.** *In connection with a participle, often well rendered by an ablative absolute construction.*
- afterward, **post; postea (96).**
- again, **iterum.**
- against, *in with acc.*
- age, **aetās, -ātis, F.**  
 of age, *use* **nātus, -a, -um.**
- ago, **abhinc.**
- aid, *noun*, **auxilium, -li, N.** *See also under send.*
- aid, *verb*, **adiuvō, 1, -iūvī, -iūtus.**  
*See also come to aid.*
- alarm, **terreō, 2, -uī, -itus.**
- Alexandria, **Alexandrēa, -ae, F.**
- all, **omnis, -is, -e.**
- all (*speed*), **summus, -a, -um;**  
*superl. of magnus, -a, -um.*
- allow, **patior, 3, passus sum.**
- almost, **paene.**
- alone, **sōlus, -a, -um.**
- along with, **ūnā cum with abl.**
- already, **iam.**
- also, **quoque.**
- although, **quamquam.**
- always, **semper.**
- ambassador, **légātus, -ī, M.**
- America, **America, -ae, F.**
- American, **Americānus, -a, -um.**  
 Americans, the, **Americānī, -ōrum, M.**
- among, **apud with acc.; in with abl.**  
**(75, 77); inter with acc. (109).**
- and, **et; -que; atque, ac.**  
 and never, **neque umquam.**  
 and nobody, and no one, **nec quisquam.**  
 and not, **neque, nec.**  
 and . . . not any one, **nec quisquam.**  
 and nothing, **nec quicquam.**  
 and so, **itaque.**
- animal, **animal, -ālis, N.**



announce, *nūntiō*, 1.

another, *alius, alia, aliud*.

answer, *inquam*; *respondeō*, 2,  
-*spondī*, -*spōnsum est* (130).

Antonius, *Antōnius*, -*nī*, M.

anxious, *be, volō, velle, volui*.

any, *ūllus, -a, -um*. *The word is omitted in such phrases as "if there are any who," etc.*

any one: *see* and . . . not any one,  
*and if any one.*

anybody, anything: *see under if*.

appear, *videor*, 2, *visus sum*.

appoint, *faciō*, 3, *fēcī, factus*.

approach, *noun*, *adventus*, -*ūs*, M.

approach, *verb*, *appropinquō*, 1, -*āvī*,  
-*ātum est* (*with dat., or ad and acc.*); *accēdō*, 3, -*cessī, cessum est* (*with ad and acc.*).

arms, *arma*, -*ōrum*, N.

army, *exercitus*, -*ūs*, M.

Arnold, *Arnoldius*, -*dī*, M.

arrival, *adventus*, -*ūs*, M.

arrive, *pervenio*, 4, -*vēnī, -ventum est*.

arrive at, *pervenio*, 4, -*vēnī, -ventum est, with ad and acc.*

arrow, *sagitta*, -*ae*, F.

as, *temporal and causal conj.*, *cum*.

as to, *introducing a result clause, ut*.  
as yet, *adhūc*.

Asia, *Asia*, -*ae*, F.

ask, ("inquire") *inquam* (4, 6);  
*rogō*, 1; *quaerō*, 3, *quaesivī, quaesitus, with ex and abl. of the person questioned: ("request") hortor*, 1.

assassinate, *occidō*, 3, -*cidī, -cīsus*.

assault, *impetus*, -*ūs*, M.

assist, *adiuvō*, 1, -*iūvī, -iūtus*. *See also come to assist.*

assistance: *see under go*.

at, *in with acc. See also arrive at*.

at any rate, *certē*.

at home, *domī*.

at last, at length, *postrēmō*.

at night, *noctū*.

at once, *statim*.

at times, *interdum*.

Atlantic, *Atlanticus*, -*a, -um*.

attack, *noun*, *impetus*, -*ūs*, M.

attack, *verb*, *adorior*, 4, -*ortus sum*.

attempt, *cōnor*, 1.

Aurelian, *Aurēlius*, -*a, -um*.

authority, *auctoritās*, -*ātis*, F.

away, *be, absum, -esse, āful*.

ax, *secūris*, -*is*, F.

back, *tergum*, -*ī*, N.

bad, *malus*, -*a, -um*.

badly, *male*.

baggage, *impedimenta*, -*ōrum*, N.

Balbus, *Balbus*, -*ī*, M.

band, *manus*, -*ūs*, F.

bank, *rīpa*, -*ae*, F.

basket, *corbula*, -*ae*, F.

battle, *proelium*, -*ī*, N.; *pugna*, -*ae*, F.

battle line, *aciēs*, -*ēī*, F.

battle rage, there be a fierce battle,  
*pass. of pugnō*, 1, -*āvī, -ātum est, with ācritēr*.

battlefield, *proelium*, -*ī*, N.

bay, *portus*, -*ūs*, M.

be, *sum, esse, fui*.

bear, *noun*, *ursa*, -*ae*, F.

bear, *verb*, *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus*.

beat, *vincō*, 3, *vici, victus*.

beautiful, *pulcher, -chra, -chrum*.

because, *quod*.

become, *fiō, fierī, factus sum*.

before, *adv.*, *ante*.

began, *coepī, coepisse, coeptus*.  
believe, *crēdō, 3, crēdidī, crēditus*;  
*putō, 1*.

bench, *subsellium, -ī, N*.

berry, *bāca, -ae, F*.

better, best: *see good and well*.

bier, *feretrum, -ī, N*.

bird, *avis, -is, F*.

black, *āter, -tra, -trum*.

board, *cōnscendō, 3, -scendi, -scēnsus*.

boast, *glōrior, 1*.

bold, *audāx, gen. -ācis*.

boldly, *audācter*.

boldness, *audācia, -ae, F*.

book, *liber, -brī, M*.

boy, *puer, -erī, M*.

brave, *fortis, -is, -e*.

bravely, *fortiter*.

bravery, *virtūs, -ūtis, F*.

break, break down, *frangō, 3, frēgī, fractus*.

break camp, *castra moveō, 2, mōvī, mōtus*.

bridge, *pōns, pontis, M*.

bring, ("carry") *adferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus*; *by animals, ships, etc., vehō, 3, vēxī, vectus*: ("lead")  
*dūcō, 3, dūxī, ductus*.

bring back, *redūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus*.

British, the British, *Britannī, -ōrum, M*.

broad, *lātus, -a, -um*.

brother, *frāter, -tris, M*.

Brundisium, *Brundisium, -sī, N*.

build, *faciō, 3, fecī, factus*.

bullet, *tēlum, -ī, N*.

burn, *incendō, 3, -cendi, -cēnsus*.

burst forth, *ērumpō, 3, -rūpī, -ruptum est*.

busied, busy, *occupātus, -a, -um*.

but, *sed*; *autem*.

buy, *emō, 3, ēmī, emptus*.

by, *ā, ab with abl*.

by chance, *forte*.

Cabot, *Cabot, -otis, M*.

Caesar, *Caesar, -aris, M*.

call, ("name") *appellō, 1* (*the participle "called" may often be rendered by the abl. nōmine, lit. "by name": ("summon")*  
*vocō, 1*; *arcēssō, 3, -īvī, -ītus*.

call for, *arcēssō, 3, -īvī, -ītus*.

camp, *castra, -ōrum, N*.

can, *possum, posse, potui*.

Canada, *Canada, -ae, F*.

captain, *lēgātus, -ī, M*; (*of ship*)  
*praefectus, -ī, M*.

capture, *capio, 3, cēpī, captus*.

Capua, *Capua, -ae, F*.

care, *noun, diligentia, -ae, F*.

care for, *cūrō, 1*.

not care, *nōlō, nōlle, nōlui*.

Carpenter, *Faber, -brī, M*.

carry, *ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus*; *portō, 1*;  
*adferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus* (24, 60); *by animals, ships, etc., vehō, 3, vēxī, vectus*.

carry back, *redūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus*.

Carthage, *Carthāgō, -inis, F*.

Carthaginians, the, *Poenī, -ōrum, M*.

Castor, *Castor, -oris, M*.

catch, *capio, 3, cēpī, captus*.

Catilina, *Catilina, -ae, M*.

cattle, (*masc.*) *pl. of bōs, bovis, C*.

cavalry, *cavalrymen, pl. of eques, -itis, M*.

centurion, *centuriō, -ōnis, M*.

certain: *see a certain*.

certainly, *certē* (2, 8); *profectō* (77, 128).

chance, *facultās, -ātis, F.*

by chance, *forte*.

chicken, *gallīna, -ae, F.*

children, *liberī, -ōrum, M.*

Cicero, *Cicerō, -ōnis, M.*

circumstance, *rēs, rei, F.*

citizen, *civīs, -is, C. (pl., M.).*

city, the city, *urbs, urbis, F.*

Claudia, *Claudia, -ae, F.*

climb, *cōnscendō, 3, -scendī, -scēnsus.*

Cloelia, *Cloelia, -ae, F.*

close, *claudō, 3, clausi, clausus.*

cloud, *nūbēs, -is, F.*

coast: *see* shore.

Columbus, *Columbus, -ī, M.*

come, *veniō, 4, vēnī, ventum est; perveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum est (40, 60, 74, 102).*

come back, *redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum est.*

come nearer, *propius accedō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est.*

come to aid, come to assist, come to help, *auxiliō veniō, 4, vēnī, ventum est (with a second dative).*

come to reinforce, *subsidiō (or auxiliō) veniō, 4, vēnī, ventum est (with a second dative).*

come together, *conveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventus.*

come up, *accedō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est.*

commander, *dux, ducis, M.; imperātor, -ōris, M.; lēgātus, -ī, M.; praefectus, -ī, M.*

companion, *comes, -itis, C.*

company, *cohors, -rtis, F.*

compel, *cōgō, 3, cōēgī, cōactus.*

conduct, *dēducō, 3, -dūxi, -ductus.*

confusion, *strepitus, -ūs, M.*

conquer, *superō, 1.*

consequently, *itaque.*

consul, *cōnsul, -ulis, M.*

Cornwallis, *Cornivallis, -is, M.*

country, *rūs, rūris, N.*

countryman, *civīs, -is, C. (pl., M.).*

courage, *virtūs, -ūtis, F.; animus, -ī, M.; fortitūdō, -inis, F.*

Crassus, *Crassus, -ī, M.*

crops, *pl. of frumentum, -ī, N.*

cross, cross over, *trāseō, -īre, -iī, -itus.*

crush, *opprimō, 3, -pressī, -pressus.*

cry: *see* weep.

cry out, *clāmō, 1.*

Cuba, *Cūba, -ae, F.*

Curio, *Cūriō, -ōnis, M.*

Custer, *Custer, -trī, M.*

custom, be (one's), *perf. tense of cōnsueō, 3, -suevī, (-suetus).*

dagger, *sica, -ae, F.*

daily, *cotidiē.*

dally: *see* delay (*verb*).

dare, *audeō, 2, ausus sum.*

daring, *audācia, -ae, F.*

daughter, *filia, -ae, F.*

day, *diēs, -ēī, M. (sing. sometimes F.).*

days, *pl. of tempus, -oris, N. (8, 54, 72).*

one day, *ōlim.*

dead, *mortuus, -a, -um. See also* shoot dead.

decide, *cōstituō, 3, -stitui, -stitutus.*

declare war upon, *bellum indicō, 3, -dixī, -dictus, with dat.*

defeat, *vincō, 3, vici, victus.*

defend, *dēfendō, 3, -fendī, -fēnsus.*

delay, *noun, mora, -ae, F.*

delay, *verb, moror, 1.*

depart, **abeō**, -īre, -iī, -itum est.  
 departure, **discessus**, -ūs, M.  
 desert, **relinquō**, 3, -liqūī, -lictus.  
 deserter, **perfuga**, -ae, M.  
 design, **cōnsilium**, -lī, N.  
 desire: *see* want.  
 destroy, **dēlēō**, 2, -ēvī, -ētus.  
 detained, be, **moror**, 1.  
 determine: *see* decide.  
 die, **miorior**, 3, **mortuus sum** (*future partic. moritūrus*).  
 diligence, **diligentia**, -ae, F.  
 dinc, **cēnō**, 1, -āvī, -ātus).  
 dinner, **cēna**, -ae, F.  
 direction, **pars**, **partis**, F.  
     in every direction, **undique**.  
 discover, **inveniō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventus.  
 disembark, **ē nāvi** (**nāvibus**) **ēgre-**  
     **dior**, 3, -gressus sum.  
 distant, **longinquus**, -a, -um.  
 disturbed, **commōtus**, -a, -um.  
 do, **faciō**, 3, **fēcī**, **factus** (*pass. fiō*,  
     *ferī*, **factus sum**).  
     do not, don't, *in prohibitions*, **nōlī**,  
     **nōlite** (*from nōlō*).  
 doctor, **medicus**, -ī, M.  
 dog, **canis**, -is, M.  
 draw, **dūcō**, 3, **dūxī**, **ductus**.  
     draw near, **appropinquō**, 1, -āvī,  
     **-ātum est** (*with dat., or ad and acc.*).  
 drive, **pellō**, 3, **pepulī**, **pulsus** (III);  
     **expellō**, 3, -pulī, -pulsus (67,  
     126).  
     drive back, **pellō**, 3, **pepulī**, **pulsus**.  
     drive out, **expellō**, 3, -pulī, -pulsus.

each, **quisque**, **quaeque**, **quidque**.  
     each man, *masc. sing. of quisque*.  
 eagle, **aquila**, -ae, F.  
 earlier, **ante**.

easily, **facile**.  
 eat, **edō**, 3, **ēdī**, **ēsus**.  
 Egypt, **Aegyptus**, -ī, F.  
 either . . . or, **aut . . . aut**.  
 embark upon: *see* board.  
 encamp, **castra pōnō**, 3, **posuī**, **positus**.  
 endeavor: *see* try.  
 enemy, **hostis**, -is, C.; *mostly pl. (M.)*.  
 England, **Britannia**, -ae, F.  
 English, the, **Britanni**, -ōrum, M.  
 enough, **satis** (*adv., used as indecl. noun*).  
 enraged, **irātus**, -a, -um.  
 enthusiasm, **studium**, -ī, N.  
 entire, the entire, **tōtus**, -a, -um.  
 equal, **pār**, *gen. paris*.  
 escape, **ēvādō**, 3, -vāsī, -vāsum est.  
 establish, **cōstituō**, 3, -stituī, -stitū-  
     **tus**.  
 Europe, **Eurōpa**, -ae, F.  
 even, **etiām**. *See also* not even.  
 ever, **umquam**.  
 every, *pl. of omnis*, -is, -e.  
 excel, **superō**, 1; **superior** (-ior, -ius)  
     **sum**, **esse**, **fuī**.  
 Fabius, **Fabius**, -bī, M.  
 fall, **cadō**, 3, **cecidī**.  
     fall back, **mē recipiō** (3, -cēpī,  
     **-ceptus**; *mostly in the third per-*  
     *son, sē recipere*).  
 far, **longē**.  
     not far, not far away, **haud procul**.  
     not far away, not far distant, (*modi-*  
     *fying a noun*) **haud longin-**  
     **quus**, -a, -um.  
 farmer, **agricola**, -ae, M.  
 farmhouse, **villa**, -ae, F.  
 fashion, **modus**, -ī, M.  
 fasten to, **dēligō**, 1, *with ad and acc.*  
 father, **pater**, -tris, M.

fear, *noun*, timor, -ōris, M.

in fear of, be, timeō, 2, -uī.

fear, *verb*, timeō, 2, -uī; vereor, 2, veritus sum.

feel, sentiō, 4, sēnsī, sēnsus.

few, a few; pauci, -ae, -a.

field, ager, -grī, M.

field of battle, proelium, -ī, N.

fierce, ācer, ācria, ācre. *See also*  
*under battle and fight (noun).*

fiercely, ācritēr.

fight, *noun*, pugna, -ae, F.

fierce fight be in progress, ācritēr,  
*with the pass. of* pugnō, 1, -āvī,  
-ātum est.

fight go on, fight last, fight rage,  
*pass. of* pugnō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est.

fight, *verb*, pugnō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est.

fill, compleō, 2, -plēvī, -plētus.

finally, postremō.

find, invenio, 4, -vēnī, -ventus;  
quaerō, 3, quaesivī, quaesitus  
(34): ("learn") cōgnoscō, 3,  
cōgnōvī, cōgnitus; certior (-ior,  
-ius) fiō, fierī, factus sum.

find out, cōgnoscō, 3, cōgnōvī,  
cōgnitus.

fine, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

fire, *noun*, ignis, -is, M.

fire, *verb*, ("ignite") incendō, 3,  
-cendī, -cēnsus: ("shoot") tēla  
mittō, 3, misi, missus.

fish, piscor, 1.

flag, vexillum, -ī, N.

flee, fly, fugiō, 3, fugī (*future partic.*  
fugitūrus).

fleet, classis, -is, F.

flight: *see* put to flight.

flower, flōs, flōris, M.

fly, of missiles, *pass. of* mittō, 3, misi,  
missus. *See also* flee.

follow, sequor, 3, secūtus sum.

food, cibus, -ī, M.

footpath, sēmīta, -ae, F.

for, conj., enim, nam.

for, prep., ad *with acc.*

for a long time, diū.

for the purpose of, causā, *with gen.*

force, *noun*, vis, —, F.

forces, cōpiae, -ārum, F. *See also*  
our forces.

force, *verb*, cōgō, 3, cōēgi, cōactus.

forest, silva, -ae, F.

forgive, ignoscō, 3, ignōvī, ignōtum  
est.

formerly, quondam.

fort, castellum, -ī, N.

fortification, mūnitiō, -ōnis, F.

fortitude, fortitūdō, -inis, F.

Frenchmen, Galli, -ōrum, M.

frequently: *see* often.

frighten, terreō, 2, -uī, -itus.

frightened, territū, -a, -um.

from, ē, ex *with abl.*; ā *ab with abl.*  
(90, III).

from all sides (quarters), from every  
side, undique.

from time to time, interdum.

Gaius, Cāius, -āī, M.

garden, hortus, -ī, M.

gate, porta, -ae, F.

Gaul, Gallia, -ae, F.

Gaul, a, Gallus, -ī, M.

Gauls, the, Galli, -ōrum, M.

general, imperātor, -ōris, M.

Germans, the, Germānī, -ōrum, M.

get, petō, 3, -ivī, -itus.

get possession of, potior, 4, -ītus  
sum.

get water, aquor, 1.

gift, dōnum, -ī, N.

girl, *puella*, -ae, F.  
 give, *dō, dare, dedī, datus*.  
 give (*aid, help*), *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus* (*with dat.*).  
 give orders, *imperō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est*.  
 glad, *laetus*, -a, -um.  
 gladly, *libenter*.  
 go, *eō, ire, ii, itum est; abeō, -ire, -ii, -itum est* (73, 91); *proficiscor, 3, profectus sum*.  
 go away, *abeō, -ire, -ii, -itum est*.  
 go out, *exeō, -ire, -ii, -itum est; egredior, 3, -gressus sum*.  
 go to the assistance of, *auxiliō eō, ire, ii, itum est* (*with a second dative*).  
 go to the relief of, *subsidiō eō, ire, ii, itum est* (*with a second dative*).  
 god, *deus*, -ī, M.  
 going to: *translate by the future participle*.  
 good, *bonus*, -a, -um.  
 grain, *frumentum*, -ī, N.  
 grandfather, *avus*, -ī, M.  
 grandmother, *avia*, -ae, F.  
 grass, *herba*, -ae, F.  
 great, *magnus*, -a, -um; *summus*, -a, -um (27). *See also so great and such great*.  
 greatest, *also summus*, -a, -um.  
 ground, *locus*, -ī, M.; *terra*, -ae, F. (24).  
 on the ground, *humī*.  
 guard, *noun, custōs, -ōdis, M.*  
 guard, *verb, custodiō, 4, -ivī, -itus*.  
 guide, *dux, ducis, M.*  
 Hamilcar, *Hamilcar*, -aris, M.  
 hand:  
 on every hand, *undique*.

Hannibal, *Hannibal*, -alis, M.  
 happen, (*neut.*) *third pers. sing. of fiō, fieri, factus sum*.  
 happening, *rēs, rei, F.*  
 harm, *noceō, 2, -uī* (*future partic. nocitūrus*).  
 haste:  
 in haste, *celeriter*.  
 hasten, *properō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est*.  
 have, *habeō, 2, -uī, -itus*. *With a form of sum, a dative of possession is often used to express this idea*.  
 he, she, it, is, ea, id; *ille, illa, illud: (reflex.) suī, sibi* (*see also his and their*).  
 head, *caput*, -itis, N.  
 hear, *audiō, 4, -ivī, -itus*.  
 help, *noun, auxilium*, -ī, N.  
 through the help of, with the help of, *per* with *acc.*  
 help, *verb, adiuvo, 1, -iuvī, -iūtus; auxiliō (or subsidiō) sum, esse, fui* (*with a second dative*). *See also come to help and send to help*.  
 hem in, *claudō, 3, clausī, clausus*.  
 here, *hic* (124); *with verbs of motion, hūc*.  
 hesitate, *dubitō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est*.  
 hide, *lateō, 2, -uī*.  
 hiding place, *latebrae*, -ārum, F.  
 high, *altus*, -a, -um.  
 hill, *collis*, -is, M.  
 himself, herself, itself, (*intens.*) *ipse, ipsa, ipsum: (reflex.) suī, sibi*.  
 his, her, its, *see he: (reflex.) suus, -a, -um*.  
 his men, (*reflex.*) *suī, -ōrum, M.*  
 his own, (*reflex.*) *suus, -a, -um*  
*placed BEFORE the modified noun*.  
 hither, *hūc*.

hold, *teneō*, 2, -*ui*.  
 home, *domus*, -*ūs*, F.  
     at home, *domi*.  
 hope, *noun*, *spēs*, -*eī*, F.  
 hope, *verb*, *spērō*, 1.  
 horn, *cornū*, -*ūs*, N.  
 horse, *equus*, -*i*, M.  
 horseman, *eques*, -*itis*, M.  
 hostage, *obses*, -*idis*, C.  
 hour, *hōra*, -*ae*, F.  
 however, *autem*.  
 Hudson, *Hudsō*, -*ōnis*, M.  
 huge: *see* large.  
 hunt, *vēnor*, 1.  
     hunt for, *quaerō*, 3, *quaesivī*, *quae-*  
     *situs*.  
 hunter, *vēnātor*, -*ōris*, M.  
 hurl: *see* throw.  
 hurry, *properō*, 1, -*āvī*, -*ātum* est.  
  
 I, *ego*, *meī*.  
 if, *si*.  
     if anybody, if any one, *si quis*.  
     if anything, if something, *si quid*.  
 ill, *aeger*, -*gra*, -*grum*.  
 imagine, *putō*, 1.  
 in, *in with abl.*: *with verbs of motion*  
     *(excepting collocō and pōnō)*,  
     *in with acc.* *See also under* di-  
     *rection*.  
     in haste, *celeriter*.  
     in order that, in order to, *ut*, *quō*.  
     in order that not, *nē*.  
     in progress, be: *see under* fight  
     *(noun)*.  
     in safety, *incolumis*, -*is*, -*e*.  
     in this way, *sic*.  
 Indian, *an*, *Indus*, -*i*, M.  
 Indians, the, *Indi*, -*orum*, M.  
 infantry, *pl. of pedes*, -*itis*, M.  
 inferior, *inferior*, -*ior*, -*ius*.

influence, *auctōritās*, -*ātis*, F.  
 inform, *certiōrem* (-*ēs*) *faciō*, 3, *fēcī*,  
     *factus* (*pass.* *certior fiō*, *fieri*,  
     *factus sum*).  
 inhabitant, *incola*, -*ae*, M.  
 injure, *noceō*, 2, -*uī* (*future partic.*  
     *nocitūrus*).  
 inquire, *rogō*, 1; *inquam* (15).  
 insight, *ingenium*, -*nī*, N.  
 interview, *conveniō*, 4, -*vēnī*, -*ventus*.  
 intimidate, *terreō*, 2, -*uī*, -*itus*.  
 into, *in with acc.*  
 island, *insula*, -*ae*, F.  
 it: *see* he.  
 Italy, *Italia*, -*ae*, F.  
  
 Jackson, *Iacsō*, -*ōnis*, M.  
 join, *mē coniungō*, 3, -*iūnxī*, -*iūunctus*,  
     *with cum and abl.*; *mostly in the*  
     *third person, sē coniungere*.  
 journey, *iter*, *itineris*, N.  
 Julia, *Iūlia*, -*ae*, F.  
 just, just now, *modo*.  
  
 keen, *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*.  
 kill, *interficiō*, 3, -*fēcī*, -*fectus*;  
     *occidō*, 3, -*cīdī*, -*cīsus*.  
 kindness, *cōmitās*, -*ātis*, F.  
 king, *rēx*, *rēgis*, M.  
 know, *sciō*, 4, -*ivi*, -*itus*.  
     not know, *nesciō*, 4, -*scivī*.  
  
 labor: *see* work.  
 land, *terra*, -*ae*, F.  
 large, *magnus*, -*a*, -*um*. *See also* so  
     large and such large.  
 later, *post*.  
     a little later, *paulō post*.  
 laugh, *rideō*, 2, *risi*, (*risus*).  
 lead, *dūcō*, 3, *dūxī*, *ductus*.  
     lead away, *dēdūcō*, 3, -*dūxī*, -*ductus*.  
 leader, *dux*, *ducis*, M.

learn, *cōgnōscō*, 3, *cōgnōvī*, *cōgnitus*.  
 leave, *relinquō*, 3, *-liquī*, *-lictus*;  
*ēgredior*, 3, *-gressus sum*, with  
*ē*, *ex* and *abl.* (119).  
 left, (as contrasted with "right")  
*sinister*, *-tra*, *-trum*.  
 less, *adj.*: see *little (adj.)*.  
 less, *adv.*, *minus*; may be used as an  
*indecl. noun*.  
 let loose, *ēmittō*, 3, *-misi*, *-missus*.  
 lie, *iaceō*, 2, *-uī*.  
 lieutenant, *lēgātus*, *-ī*, *M.*  
 light, *lūmen*, *-inis*, *N.*  
 like, *adj.*, *similis*, *-is*, *-e*.  
 like, *verb.*, *amō*, *I.*  
 likely to: use *future partic.*  
 liking, *studium*, *-ī*, *N.*  
 line (of battle), *aciēs*, *-ēī*, *F.*  
 linger, *moror*, *I.*  
 little, *adj.*, *parvus*, *-a*, *-um*.  
 little, *adv.*: see *under too and later*.  
 live, *habitō*, *I.*  
 location: see *place (noun)*.  
 loiter, *moror*, *I.*  
 London, *Londinium*, *-nī*, *N.*  
 long, *adj.*, *longus*, *-a*, *-um*. See also  
*under time*.  
 long, *adv.*, *diū*.  
 look for, *petō*, 3, *-ivī*, *-itus*; *quaerō*,  
 3, *quaesivī*, *quaesitus*.  
 lose, *āmittō*, 3, *-misi*, *-missus*.  
 Louisiana, *Lovisiāna*, *-ae*, *F.*  
 love, *amō*, *I.*  
 maiden: see *girl*.  
 make, *faciō*, 3, *fēcī*, *factus (pass.)*,  
*fiō*, *fieri*, *factus sum*.  
 man, *homō*, *-inis*, *C. (pl., M.)*; *vir*, *virī*,  
*M.*  
 men, the, *masc. pl. of is*, *ea*, *id*; *pl.*  
*of miles*, *-itis*, *M.* See also *each*

man, his men, our men, and their  
 men.  
 many, many of, *multi*, *-ae*, *-a*. See  
*more*.  
 Marcella, *Mārcella*, *-ae*, *F.*  
 march, *noun*, *iter*, *itineris*, *N.*  
 on the march, *in itinere*.  
 march, *verb.*, *iter faciō*, 3, *fēcī*, *factus*.  
 march out, *ēgredior*, 3, *-gressus*  
*sum*.  
 Marcus, *Mārcus*, *-ī*, *M.*  
 Marius, *Mārius*, *-rī*, *M.*  
 matter, *rēs*, *reī*, *F.*  
 means, *modus*, *-ī*, *M.*  
 meanwhile, *interim*.  
 Mediterranean, *Mediterrāneus*, *-a*,  
*-um*.  
 medium:  
 through the medium of, *per* with  
*acc.*  
 meet, *conveniō*, 4, *-vēnī*, *-ventus*.  
 merely, *tantum*.  
 messenger, *nūntius*, *-ī*, *M.*  
 might, *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*; but often  
*simply a mark of the subjunctive*  
*mood (as in purpose clauses)*.  
 miles, *mīlia* (*-ium*, *N.*) *passuum*.  
 mind, *animus*, *-ī*, *M.*  
 mine: see *my*.  
 miss, *dimitto*, 3, *-misi*, *-missus*.  
 money, *pecūnia*, *-ae*, *F.*  
 monkey, *simia*, *-ae*, *F.*  
 month, *mēnsis*, *-is*, *M.*  
 more, *plūrēs*, *-ēs*, *-a*. *Sing. (noun)*  
*plūs*, *plūris*, *N.*  
 mother, *māter*, *-tris*, *F.*  
 mount: see *climb*.  
 mountain, *mōns*, *montis*, *M.*  
 much, *vehementer* (10): with *com-*  
*paratives*, *multō*.  
 murder: see *kill*.



must: *translate by the gerundive.*

my, **meus**, -a, -um.

myself, (*intens.*) **ipse**, **ipsa**, **ipsum**.

name, *noun*, **nōmen**, -inis, N.

name, *verb*, **appellō**, I. *The participle "named" may often be rendered by the abl. nōmine (lit. "by name").*

narrow, **angustus**, -a, -um.

nation, **gēns**, **gentis**, F.

native, **incola**, -ae, M.

near, *adv.*, **prope**. *See come nearer and draw near.*

near, *prep.*, **prope** with *acc.*

need: *translate by the gerundive.*

never, **numquam**. *See also and never.*

nevertheless, **tamen**.

new, **novus**, -a, -um.

New England, **Nova** (-ae) **Britannia**, -ae, F.

New York (*city*), **Novum** (-ī) **Eboracum**, -ī, N.

night:

at night, by night, during the night, **noctū**.

no, **nullus**, -a, -um.

nobody, no one, **nēmō**, —, M. *See also and no one, and (so) that no one.*

noise, **strepitus**, -ūs, M.

nor, **neque**, **nec**.

not, **nōn**; with *hortatory subjunctive*, **nē**: *in questions implying the answer "yes," nōnne: in prohibitions, embodied in nōlī and nōlīte (from nōlō). See also and not, and not any one, in order that not, so as not to, (so) that not, and under far.*

not even, **nē . . . quidem**.

not to, **nē**.

noteworthy, **insignis**, -is, -e.

nothing, **nihil**, N., *indecl.* *See also*

*and nothing, and so that nothing.*

notice, **animadvertō**, 3, -vertī, -versus.

now, **iam**, **nunc**.

numbers, number, **numerus**, -ī, M.

oblige: *see force (verb).*

occupy, **occupō**, I.

ocean, **mare**, -is, N.

of, **ē**, **ex** with *abl.*: ("concerning") **dē** with *abl.*

of age: *use nātus*, -a, -um.

of course, **scilicet**.

officer, **lēgātus**, -ī, M.

often, **saepe**.

old: *see of age.*

on, *in with abl.*; *in with acc.* (24).

*See also under march and road.*

on all sides, on every side (hand), **undique**.

on the ground, **humī**.

once, **ōlim**.

one, **ūnus**, -a, -um; **quidam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam** (7, 21, 108).

*See also under day and time.*

only, the only, **sōlus**, -a, -um.

only, *adv.*, **tantum**.

open boat, **scapha**, -ae, F.

opportunity, **facultās**, -ātis, F.

or, **aut**.

order, **iubeō**, 2, **iussī**, **iussus**.

other, *pl. of alius*, **aliā**, **aliud**.

other, the, **cēterī**, -ae, -a: (*of two*)

**alter**, -era, -erum.

others, **aliī**, -ōrum, M.

others, the, **cēterī**, -ōrum, M.

ought: *translate by the gerundive.*

our, ours, **noster**, -tra, -trum.

our forces, our men, our soldiers,

**nostrī**, -ōrum, M.

ourselves, (*intens.*) *pl.* of *ipse, ipse, ipsum*.

over, *trāns* with *acc.*

overcome, *vincō, 3, vici, victus; superō, 1.*

own: *see* his own *and* their own.

pain, *dolor, -ōris, M.*

pardon, *ignōscō, 3, ignōvī, ignōtum est.*

part, *pars, partis, F.*

path, *sēmita, -ae, F.*

peace, *pāx, pācis, F.*

Pelusium, *Pēlūsium, -si, N.*

perhaps, *fortasse.*

persuade, *persuādēō, 2, -suāsī, -suāsum est.*

Petrei, *Petrōius, -ōi, M.*

Petronius, *Petrōnius, -nī, M.*

Pharsalus, *Pharsālus, -i, F.*

pigeon, *columba, -ae, F.*

pirate, *pirāta, -ae, M.*

place, *noun, locus, -i, M. (pl. loca, -ōrum, N.).*

place, *verb, collocō, 1.*

plan, *cōnsilium, -iī, N.*

plantation, *praedium, -iī, N.*

plate, *patera, -ae, F.*

play, *lūdō, 3, lūsī, lūsum est.*

please, *sis, sultis (i.e. si vis, si vultis).*

plenty, *satis (adv., used as indecl. noun).*

Pliny, *Plinius, -nī, M.*

point:

be on the point of: *translate by the future participle.*

poison, *venēnum, -iī, N.*

Pollux, *Pollūx, -ūcis, M.*

Pompey, *Pompēius, -ōi, M.*

poor, ("*wretched*") miser, *-era, -erum.*

Porsinna, *Porsinna, -ae, M.*

powerful, *validus, -a, -um.*

practice, *cōsuētūdō, -inis, F.*

prefer, *mālō, malle, mālui.*

prepare, *parō, 1.*

present, *dō, dare, dedī, datus.*

pretend, *simulō, 1.*

pretty, *pulcher, -chra, -chrum.*

prevail, *superō, 1; vincō, 3, vici, victus.*

Priscilla, *Prissilla, -ae, F.*

prisoner, *captivus, -i, M.*

proceed, *contendō, 3, -tendī, (-tentus); progredior, 3, -gressus sum.*

progress, be in: *see under fight (noun).*

promise, *polliceor, 2, pollicitus sum.*

promptly: *see* at once.

protect, *praesidiō sum, esse, fui (with a second dative); dēfendō, 3, -fendī, -fēnsus (68).*

protection, *praesidium, -iī, N.*

Ptolemy, *Ptolomaeus, -iī, M.*

purpose:

for the purpose of, *causā (with gen. of the gerund or gerundive).*

put, *collocō, 1; pōnō, 3, posui, positus.*

put to flight, in *fugam dō, dare, dedī, datus.*

quarters:

from all quarters, *undique.*

quickly, *celeriter.*

quietly, *clam.*

Quintus, *Quintus, -iī, M.*

rampart, *vallum, -iī, N.*

rapidly: *see* quickly.

reach, **pervenīō**, 4, **-vēnī**, **-ventum**  
est, *with ad and acc.*

read, **legō**, 3, **lēgī**, **lēctus**.

readily, **libenter**.

ready to: *translate by the future participle.*

realize, **sentiō**, 4, **sēnsī**, **sēnsus**.

reënforce, **subsidiō sum**, **esse**, **fui**;

**subsidiō veniō**, 4, **vēnī**, **ventum**

est. *Both with a second dative.*

*See also come (send) to reënforce.*

reënforcement, **subsidium**, **-ī**, N.

refuse, **nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōlūi**.

regiment, **legiō**, **-ōnis**, F.

region, **regiō**, **-ōnis**, F.

relief: *see under go and send.*

remain, **maneō**, 2, **mānsī**, **mānsum**  
est; **moror**, 1.

remark, **inquam**.

reply, **inquam**.

repulse, **pellō**, 3, **pepulī**, **pulsus**.

retire, retreat, **mē recipiō** (3, **-cēpī**,  
**-ceptus**; *mostly in the third per-*  
*son, sē recipere*).

return, **redeō**, **-īre**, **-iī**, **-itum est**.

right, **dexter**, **-tra**, **-trum**.

river, **flūmen**, **-inis**, N.

road, **via**, **-ae**, F.

on the road, **in itinere**.

rock, **saxum**, **-ī**, N.

Roman, a, **Rōmānus**, **-ī**, M.

Romans, the, **Rōmānī**, **-ōrum**, M.

Rome, **Rōma**, **-ae**, F.

rough, **asper**, **-era**, **-erum**.

route, **iter**, **itineris**, N.; **via**, **-ae**, F.

run, **currō**, 3, **cucurri**, **cursum est**.

run away, **fugiō**, 3, **fūgī** (*future*  
*partic. fugitūrus*).

rush: *see run.*

rush forth, **erumpō**, 3, **-rūpī**, **-rup-**  
**tum est**.

Sabinus, **Sabīnus**, **-ī**, M.

sadly: *use maestus*, **-a**, **-um**.

safe, **incolumis**, **-is**, **-e**; **tūtus**, **-a**, **-um**.

safely: *use incolumis*, **-is**, **-e**.

safety, **salūs**, **-ūtis**, F.

in safety, **incolumis**, **-is**, **-e**.

sail, **nāvigō**, 1, **-āvī**, **-ātum est**.

sailor, **nauta**, **-ae**, M.

same, the, **īdem**, **eadem**, **idem**.

Saratoga, **Saratōga**, **-ae**, F.

save, **cōservō**, 1; **salūti sum**, **esse**,  
**fui** (*with a second dative*).

say, **inquam**; **dicō**, 3, **dīxī**, **dictus**.

scout, **explōrātor**, **-ōris**, M.

sea, **mare**, **-is**, N.

seaman, **nauta**, **-ae**, M.

season, **tempus**, **-oris**, N.

see, **videō**, 2, **vidī**, **visus**.

seek, **quaerō**, 3, **quaesivī**, **quaesitus**.

seem, **videor**, 2, **vīsus sum**.

seize, **rapiō**, 3, **rapuī**, **raptus**; **arripiō**,  
3, **-ripuī**, **-reptus**.

senate, **senātus**, **-ūs**, M.

send, **mittō**, 3, **misi**, **missus**.

send out, **ēmittō**, 3, **-misi**, **-missus**.

send to help, send to the aid (relief)  
of, **auxiliō mittō**, 3, **misi**, **missus**  
(*with a second dative*).

send to reënforce, **subsidiō mittō**,  
3, **misi**, **missus** (*with a second*  
*dative*).

Sertorius, **Sertōrius**, **-rī**, M.

set on fire, **incendō**, 3, **-cendi**, **-cēnsus**.

set out, **proficiscor**, 3, **profectus**  
**sum**.

set sail, **nāvem** (**-ēs**) **solvō**, 3, **solvi**,  
**solūtus**.

settler, **colōnus**, **-ī**, M.

several, **complūrēs**, **-ēs**, **-a**.

shade, shadow, **umbra**, **-ae**, F.

she: *see he.*

ship, *nāvis*, -is, F.  
 shoot, ("fire") *tēlum* (*tēla*) *mittō*, 3, *misī*, *missus*.  
 shoot dead, *tēlō* (*tēlis*) *interficiō*, 3, -*fēcī*, -*fectus*.  
 shore, *litus*, -oris, N.  
 shortly, *brevī*.  
 should: *often to be translated by the gerundive; sometimes by the subjunctive (as in conditional sentences)*.  
 shout, *clāmō*, 1, -*āvī*, -*ātum* est.  
 sick, *aeger*, -gra, -grum.  
 sick, the, *aegrī*, -ōrum, M.  
 side:  
 from all sides, from every side, on all sides, on every side, *undique*.  
 sight, *cōspectus*, -ūs, M.  
 similar, *similis*, -is, -e.  
 since, *causal conj.*, *cum*.  
 sit, sit down, *sedeō*, 2, *sēdī*, *sessum* est.  
 skiff, *scapha*, -ae, F.  
 skill, *sollertia*, -ae, F.  
 sky, *caelum*, -ī, N.  
 slave, *servus*, -ī, M.  
 slay, *occidō*, 3, -*cīdī*, -*cisus*.  
 small, *parvus*, -a, -um.  
 smile, *rīdeō*, 2, *rīsī*, (*rīsus*).  
 Smith, *Faber*, -brī, M.  
 so, *tam*; *ita* (105). *See also* and so.  
 so as not to, *nē*.  
 so as to, *ut*, *quō*.  
 so great, so large, *tantus*, -a, -um.  
 so many, so numerous, *tot*, *indecl. adj.*  
 so that, *ut*, *quō*.  
 so that . . . not, (*purpose*) *nē*.  
 so that nobody, so that no one, *nē quis*.  
 so that nothing, *nē quid*.

soldier, *miles*, -itis, M. *See also* our soldiers.  
 some, some of, *pl. of quīdam, quaedam, quoddam*.  
 some one: *see* that some one.  
 something: *see under if*.  
 sometimes, *interdum*.  
 son, *filius*, -lī, M.  
 soon, *brevī*; *mox*.  
 sortie, *ēruptiō*, -ōnis, F.  
 Spain, *Hispania*, -ae, F.  
 Spaniards, the, *Hispanī*, -ōrum, M.  
 spare, *parcō*, 3, *pepercī* (*future partic. parsurus*).  
 Spartacus, *Spartacus*, -ī, M.  
 speed, *celeritās*, -ātis, F.  
 spirit, *animus*, -ī, M.  
 spot: *see place (noun)*.  
 spy upon, *speculor*, 1.  
 standard, *signum*, -ī, N.  
 Standish, *Standisius*, -sī, M.  
 start, *proficiscor*, 3, *profectus sum*; *contendō*, 3, -*tendī*, (-*tentus*).  
 start out, *proficiscor*, 3, *profectus sum*.  
 state, *civitas*, -ātis, F.  
 station, *collocō*, 1.  
 stay, *maneō*, 2, *mānsī*, *mānsum* est.  
 steal, *rapiō*, 2, *rapuī*, *raptus*.  
 still, ("nevertheless") *tamen*; ("up to this time") *adhūc*.  
 stone, *saxum*, -ī, N.  
 stop, *moror*, 1.  
 storm: *see take by storm*.  
 story, *fābula*, -ae, F.  
 stream, *rīvus*, -ī, M.  
 street, *via*, -ae, F.  
 strength, *pl. of vis*, —, F.  
 strong, *validus*, -a, -um.  
 subdue, *vincō*, 3, *viciī*, *victus*.

such, such great, such large, *tantus*,  
-a, -um.

sudden, *repentinus*, -a, -um.

suddenly, *subitō*.

suffering, *dolor*, -ōris, m.

sufficient, *satis* (*adv.*, used as *indecl. noun*).

suitable, *idōneus*, -a, -um.

summer, *aestās*, -ātis, f.

summon, *arcēssō*, 3, -īvi, -itus.

superior, *superior*, -ior, -ius.

supply, *cōpia*, -ae, f.

suppose, *arbitror*, 1; *putō*, 1.

surely, *profectō*.

surpass, *superō*, 1.

surrender, ("relinquish") *dēdō*, 3,  
-didi, -ditus.

surround, *circumveniō*, 4, -vērī,  
-ventus.

swiftly, *celeriter*.

swiftness, *celeritās*, -ātis, f.

swim, *nō*, 1, -āvī, -ātum est.

sword, *gladius*, -ī, m.

take, ("conduct" "carry") *dūcō*, 3,  
*dūxi*, ductus; *ferō*, ferre, *tulī*, lā-  
tus; *portō*, 1; by animals, ships,  
etc., *vehō*, 3, *vēxi*, vectus:  
("capture") *capiō*, 3, *cēpi*, cap-  
tus.

take by storm, *expugnō*, 1.

take place, *fiō*, fieri, factus sum.

talk, *loquor*, 3, *locūtus sum* (*with*  
*cum* and *abl.*).

tall, *altus*, -a, -um.

tarry, *moror*, 1.

teach, *doceō*, 2, -uī, doctus.

teacher, *magister*, -trī, m.

tell, *nārō*, 1; *dīcō*, 3, *dīxi*, dictus  
(5; 59, 90, 118). Both with *dat.*  
of the person spoken to.

tent, *tabernāculum*, -ī, n.

terrified, *territus*, -a, -um.

terrify, *terreō*, 2, -uī, -itus.

that, *pron.* (*demon.*) *ille*, *illa*, *illud*;  
*is*, *ea*, *id*; *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*: (*rel.*)  
*quī*, *quae*, *quod*.

that, *conj.*, *ut*, *quō*; with verbs of  
fearing, *nē*. Often marks indi-  
rect discourse or the complemen-  
tary *infin.*

that no one, *nē quis*.

that not, *nē*: with verbs of fearing,  
*ut*.

that some one, with verbs of fearing,  
*nē quis*.

the, usually untranslated: *is*, *ea*, *id* (6).

their: see he: (*reflex.*) *suus*, -a, -um.

their men, (*reflex.*) *suī*, -ōrum, m.

their own, (*reflex.*) *suus*, -a, -um  
placed BEFORE the word modified.

themselves: see himself.

then, *tum*.

there, *ibi*: with verbs of motion, *quō*.

therefore, *igitur*; *itaque*.

these: see this.

they: see he and their.

thing, *rēs*, *rei*, f.

think, *putō*, 1; *arbitror*, 1; *crēdō*, 3,  
*crēdidī*, *crēditus*.

thinking, *ratus*, -a, -um.

this, *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*; *is*, *ea*, *id*.

thoroughly frightened, thoroughly  
terrified, *perterritus*, -a, -um.

those: see that (*pron.*).

though, *quamquam*.

thousands, thousand, *mīlia*, -ium, n.

three, *trēs*, *trēs*, *tria*.

three times, *ter*.

through, through the help of, through  
the medium of, *per* with *acc.*

throw, *iaciō*, 3, *ieci*, *iactus*.

thus, ita, sic.

time, tempus, -oris, N.

at times, from time to time, interdum.

for a long time, diū.

one time, ōlim.

up to this time, adhūc.

tired, tired out, dēfessus, -a, -um.

to, ad with acc.; in with acc. *Marking a purpose clause: ad with acc.; causā with gen.; quī (rel.) or ut, with subjunctive.*

to-day, hodiē.

to-morrow, crās.

too, ("also") quoque.

too little, parum (*adv., used as indecl. noun*).

top (*speed*), summus, -a, -um.

torch, lūmen, -inis, N.

tower, turris, -is, F.

town, oppidum, -ī, N.

townspeople, oppidānī, -ōrum, M.

travel, iter faciō, 3, fēcī, factus.

tree, arbor, -oris, F.

troops, cōpiae, -ārum, F.

try, cōnor, I.

turn out, ēveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum est.

twice, bis.

two, the two, duo, duae, duo.

under, sub with abl.

understand, intellegō, 3, -lēxī, -lēctus.

unfavorable, inīquus, -a, -um.

unknown, ignōtus, -a, -um.

unobserved, clam.

until, dōnec.

unwilling, be, nōlō, nōlle, nōlūi.

up :

up to this time, adhūc.

upon, in with abl.; with verbs of motion (*excepting collocō and pōnō*), in with acc.

urge, hortor, I.

use, ūtor, 3, ūsus sum. *Pass. supplied in part by ūsui sum, esse, fui.*

use up, cōnsūmō, 3, cōnsūmpti, cōnsūmptus.

used, ("was accustomed," etc.), imperfect and perfect tenses of soleō, 2, solitus sum; pluperfect tense of cōnsuēscō, 3, -suēvī, (-suētus).

useful, be, ūsui sum, esse, fui.

very useful, be, magnō ūsui sum, esse, fui.

usually: use soleō, 2, solitus sum; perfect tense of cōnsuēscō, 3, -suēvī, (-suētus) (83).

valley, vallēs, -is, F.

valor, virtūs, -ūtis, F.

venture, audeō, 2, ausus sum.

very, adv., mark of the superlative degree. See also under useful.

very, the very, ipse, ipsa, ipsum.

vessel, nāvigium, -ī, N.; nāvis, -is, F.

Vesuvius, Vesuvius, -vī, M.

view, speculor, I.

violence, vis, —, F.

wage (*war*), gerō, 3, gessi, gestus.

wagon, carrus, -ī, M.

wait for, opperor, 4, oppertus sum; expectō, I.

wall, mūrus, -ī, M.

want, volō, velle, volui.

war, warfare, bellum, -ī, N.

warn, moneō, 2, -uī, -itus.

Washington, Vasingtō, -ōnis, M.

watch, speculor, I.

watchfulness, diligentia, -ae, F.

water, aqua, -ae, F.

wave, fluctus, -ūs, M.

way, *modus*, -ī, M.: ("road") *via*,  
-ae, F.

in this way, *sic*.

weapon, *tōlum*, -ī, N.

weary: *see* tired.

weep, *flēō*, 2, *flēvī*, *flētum* est.

weight, *pondus*, -eris, N.

well, *bene*.

what: *see* who (*interrog.*).

when, *cum*. *Clauses so introduced  
may often be rendered by an  
ablative absolute.*

where, *ubi*; *with verbs of motion*, *quō*.

whether, *introducing an indirect  
question*, *num*.

which: *see* who (*rel.*).

while, *dum*.

who, which, what (*interrog.*): *noun*,  
*quis*, *quid*; *adj.*, *quī*, *quae*, *quod*.

who, which, that (*rel.*), *quī*, *quae*,  
*quod*.

whole, the whole, *tōtus*, -a, -um.

why, *cūr*.

wife, *uxor*, -ōris, F.

willing, be, *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*.

win, *vincō*, 3, *vīcī*, *victus*.

wind, *ventus*, -ī, M.

window, *fenestra*, -ae, F.

wing (*of army*), *cornū*, -ūs, N.

winter, winter time, *hiems*, *hiemis*,  
F.

winter, *verb.* *hiemō*, 1, -āvī, -ātum  
est.

wish, *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*.

with, *cum* *with abl.* *See also* along  
with.

with the help of, *per* *with acc.*

withdraw, ("go away") *mē recipiō*  
(3, -cēpī, -ceptus; *mostly in the  
third person*, *sē recipere*):  
("take away") *redūcō*, 3, -dūxī,  
-ductus.

without, *sine* *with abl.*

wits, *ingenium*, -nī, N.

woman, *mulier*, -leris, F.

woods, the, *silva*, -ae, F. (*sing. or  
pl.*).

word, *verbum*, -ī, N.

work, *labōrō*, 1, -āvī, -ātum est.

worse, worst: *see* bad.

would: *often to be translated by the  
imperfect of customary past ac-  
tion; sometimes by the subjunctive  
(as in conditional sentences).*

wound, *vulnerō*, 1.

wounded, the, *vulnerātī*, -ōrum, M.

wretched, miser, -era, -erum.

write, *scribō*, 3, *scripsī*, *scriptus*.

year, *annus*, -ī, M.

yesterday, *herī*.

yet, ("however") *tamen*: ("up to  
this time") *adhūc*. *See also* as  
yet.

you, *tū*, *tuī*.

young man, youth, *iuvenis*, -is, M.

your, *tuus*, -a, -um; *vester*, -tra,  
-trum.

## INDEX

(Unless otherwise specified, all references are to page and footnote; *e.g.* 216. 18 signifies "page 216, footnote 18." Notes and Remarks in the body of a page are indicated by the abbreviations N. and Rem. respectively. To facilitate the use of the Index, all references to matter contained in the English-Latin Exercises are set in black-faced type.)

**ā ab:** combination with **-que**, avoided, 184. 7. *Cf.* **ob**.  
 "from the neighborhood of," 182. 1.  
 in Agency expressions, 235. Rem.  
 with abl. of Degree of Difference, 158. 5.

Abbreviations: list of, xv.

of first names of persons, 262. N. 1.

**abhinc:** use of, 251. N. 1.

Ablative:

Ablative Absolute:

rendering of, 223. Rem. 2; *cf.* 17. 18, 46. 2, 143. 2, 170. 3.  
 with object, 223. Rem. 1; *cf.* 44. 17.

of Accompaniment; without prep., 141. 10.

of adjs. of One Termination, 321 (2d) N.

of Agency, 235. Rem.

of Cause, 251; *cf.* 55. 10, 144. 5, 257. 3.

of Characteristic or Quality, 321; *cf.* 135. 2.

of Degree of Difference, 203; *cf.* 137. 3, 158. 5, 251. N. 1.

of **ego**, **suī**, and **tū**; with post-positive **-cum**, 211. 3.

of Gerund; use of, 215. N.

of I-Stems; **avis**, **collis**, **hostis**, **ignis**, **nāvis**, **nūbēs**, **ovis**, **piscis**, **secūris**, **vallēs**, 201. Rem. 2; **civis**, 261. Vocab.; **classis**, 242. Vocab.; **Cornivallis**, 251. Vocab.; **mēnsis**, 218. Vocab.  
*Cf.* 321 (2d) N.

of **locus**; without prep., 7. 4; *cf.* 315. 18.

of Manner, 225; *cf.* 57. 4, 115. 19, 155. 19.

of Means, 235. Rem., 294. Rem.  
 idiomatic renderings of; "at," 57. 6; "from," 143. 9; "in," 6. 10, 67. 6, 80. 2, 119. 5; "of," 77. 5; "on," 145. 5; "under," 57. 8; "upon," 59. 8, 101. 16.

of Place from Which:

"from the neighborhood of,"<sup>1</sup> 182. 1.

instead of expression indicating Place Where, 44. 6, 78. 18, 130. 5, 168. 2, 177. 10.

without prep., 7. 4; *cf.* 21. 3, 69. 17, 125. 5, 139. 5, 142. 3, 174. 12, 178. 9, 183. 9.

Town Names, **domus** and **rūs**,



## Ablative:

- 276; *cf.* 79. 21, 87. 12 (contrast 182. 1).  
 of Place Where; without prep., 7. 4, 315. 18; *cf.* 32. 16, 41. 15.  
 of Quality or Characteristic, 321; *cf.* 135. 2.  
 of Specification, 239, 288 (2d) Rule; *cf.* 37. 20, 126. 17.  
 of *suī*, *ego*, and *tū*; with post-positive -*cum*, 211. 3.  
 of Supine: use of, 288.  
 of Time When and Within Which, 199; *cf.* 62. 15, 99. 22; also 257. 10.  
 of Town Names, *domus*, and *rūs*, 276; *cf.* 79. 21, 87. 12 (contrast 182. 1).  
 of *tū*, *ego*, and *suī*; with post-positive -*cum*, 211. 3.  
 of Way by Which, 294; *cf.* 5. 13, 37. 5, 103. 17, 164. 13.  
 rendered as acc. of Extent of Time, 89. 10.  
 with *careō*, 68. 13, 134. 19.  
 with Certain Verbs, 270; *cf.* 95. 11, 171. 13.  
 with Comparatives, 335 ff.; *cf.* 158. 4 (contrast 101. 3, 119. 2, 154. 10).  
 with *contentus*, 101. 15.  
 with *potior*, 270, 288. Vocab.; *cf.* 95. 11.  
 with preps.: see *ā*, *ab*, *cum*, *ē*, *ex*, and *in*.  
 with *ūtor*, 270.  
 without prep.; *castris*, 218. 16, 332. 28; *locō*, *locis*, 7. 4, 315. 18; *silvā*, 323. 25. See also above under Ablative of Accompaniment, Place from Which, and Place Where.

## Absolute use:

- of comparatives and superlatives, 13. 11; *cf.* 131. 8, 260. 10, 332. 27.  
 of transitive verbs, 279. Rem.  
 See also Ablative Absolute.  
*absum*: form *āfutūrus*, 342. Vocab.  
*ac*: see *atque*.  
*accēdō*: construction with, 300. Vocab.  
 Accusative:  
 adverbial use of, 80. 12.  
*cf.* 259. N. 1. Also 91. 10, 142. 12.  
 idiomatic: *noctēs diēsque*, 28. 13.  
 lacking with infin. dependent upon *videor*, 245. N. 3.  
 object:  
 of partic. in abl. absol., 223. Rem. 1.  
 of supine in -*um*, 288. N.  
 with predicate acc., 203 (2d) Rule; *cf.* 259. N. 1.  
 of Extent of Space, 304. 15.  
 of Extent of Time: 199. N. 2, 236. N. 2.  
 rendering of, 123. 1.  
 with *abhinc*, 251. N.  
 with *nātus*, 236. N. 2.  
 of Gerund and Gerundive, 235 ff., 279; *cf.* 292 (top).  
 of I-Stems; in -*im*, 324. N. 1.  
 of Place to (and into) Which: 77. 12, 82. 15, 133. 3, 148. 1; *cf.* 85. 11.  
 Town Names, *domum*, and *rūs*, 276; *cf.* 79. 21, 87. 12, 341. 5 (contrast 16. 11, 174. 13).  
 of Supine, 288 (1st) Rule, 292 (top); *cf.* 95. 13, 131. 1.  
 Predicate, 203 (2d) Rule; *cf.* 245. N. 3, 259. N. 1, also 211. 6.

**Accusative:**

- with **cūrō**, 264. N.
- with **vincō**, 223. Vocab.

**ācer**: declined and compared, 351.  
use of abl. of, 321. N.

**ācriter**: compared, 352.

**ad**: with acc.:

- governed by **accōdō**, 300. Vocab.
- of gerund and gerundive, 235 ff., 279; cf. 292 (top).
- of person, 85. 11.
- rendering of, 133. 3, 148. 1.

**Adjectives:**

agreement of; mechanical, cf. 133. 11 (contrast 301. 5); with nearer noun, 71. 10; with predicate noun, 52. 5, 168. 3, 341. 14.

comparison of, 351 ff.

declension of, 349 ff., (**ūnus, alius**, etc.) 352 and N.

governing supine in **-ū**, 288 (2d) Rule.

in abl. absol. construction, 223. Rem. 1; cf. 143. 2.

in Quality or Characteristic expressions, 321 and (1st) N.

is; as adj., 356. N. 2.

masc. of, used as nouns, 202. 9, 228. 21, 238. 18; cf. 330. N.; also 6. 16.

neuter of, used as nouns, 5. 9.

of One Termination, 350; cf. 248. N. 1, 321 (2d) N.

Predicate, 245. N. 3, 259. N. 1.

rendered by adv. or phrase, 2. 16; cf. 90. 4, 204. Vocab. (in **columis**).

with gen. in **-ius** and dat. in **-ī**, 352 with N.

See also **imū**, **primū**, and **summū**, and Possessive Adjectives.

**adorior**: conjugation of, 372.

**Adverbs:**

comparison of, 352

used as indecl. nouns, 298. N. 1; cf. 297. Vocab., 300. Vocab.

See also **quō** and **ubi**.

**Africa**: map of, 146.

**Agency:**

contrasted with **Means**, 235. Rem.

Dative of, 235; in indirect discourse, 235 (1st) N.

expressed by the abl. with **ā**, **ab**, 235. Rem.

Intermediate, 329.

**ager**: declension of, 345.

Agreement: see under **Adjectives**, **Gerundive**, and **Pronouns**.

**alibi**: 177. 9.

**aliqui** (**aliquis**), declension and use of, 358, with NN.

**alius**: declension of, 352. N.; use of, 210. N. and Rem.

**alii** . . . **alii**, 20. 15; cf. 183. 5.

**alii** . . . **aliam**, 80. 5; cf. 177. 9.

**alter**: declension of, 352. N.

use of, 210. N.

**altior**: declension of, 350.

**altus**: comparison of, 351.

**amāns**: comparison of, 351; cf. 70. 9.

**ambō**: declension of, 353. N.

**amplius**: construction of clause unchanged by, 101. 3, 119. 2.

**animal**: declension of, 346 (324).

**ante**: used in connection with abl. of Degree of Difference, 209. Vocab.; cf. 251. N. 1.

**Antecedent:**

incorporated in rel. clause, 44. 13, 141. 7, 145. 12, 184. N. 3; cf. 42. 4, 163. 9.

suppressed, 135. 16, 161. 10; cf. 169. 4.

- Apposition:** 214. 21.  
**arbor:** declension of, 346.  
**arripiō:** contrasted with **capiō**, 277. N. 2.  
**Asia Minor:** map of, 179.  
**atque, ac:** use of the two forms, 216. N. 1.  
**audācter:** comparison of, 352.  
**audāx:** comparison of, 351 (248. Vocab.).  
     declension of, 350; *cf.* 248. N. 1.  
**audeō:** semi-deponent, 372 (223. Vocab.); *cf.* 213. N. 2.  
**audiō:** conjugation of, 368.  
**aut:** connecting questions; rendering of, 128. 7, 152. 5.  
**autem:** position in sentence, 246. 5. use with **cum** and **dum**, 218. 11.  
**auxilium:** declension of, 223. Vocab.; *cf.* 219. N. 2.  
**avis:** abl. of, 201. Rem. 2.  
  
**bonus:** comparison of, 351. declension of, 349.  
**bōs:** declension of, 348.  
**Brundisium:** declension of, see 345. N. 2; *cf.* 16. 4, 219. N. 2.  
  
**Cāius:** abbreviation and pronunciation of, 262. N. 1.  
**canis:** not an I-stem, 274. N. 2.  
**capiō:** see **arripiō**.  
**caput:** 47. 16; *cf.* 122. 18.  
**Cardinal Numerals:** 353 ff.  
**careō:** construction with, 68. 13; 134. 19.  
**Cases:** of indecl. nouns (and advs. so used), 298. N. 1.  
**causā:** not necessarily dependent upon a verb of motion, 248. Rem. 3.  
  
     postpositive, 248. Rem. 1.  
     with gen. of gerund and gerundive, 248, 279; of noun, 108. 8.  
**Cause:** expressed by  
     a **cum**-clause, 218. Vocab., 220.  
     a **quod**-clause, 55. 11, 62. 13; *cf.* 166. 3.  
     a relative clause, 170. 4.  
     the ablative case, 251.  
**celeriter:** comparison of, 352.  
**centuriō:** rank of, 126. 18.  
**certē:** contrasted with **perfectō**, 267 (2d) N.  
**certus:** in the idiom (**aliquem**) **certiōrem facere**, 259. Vocab. and N. 1.  
**cēteri:** force and use of, 210. N. and Rem.  
**Characteristic:** expressed by  
     a relative clause, 297; *cf.* 109. 5.  
     the ablative case, 321; *cf.* 135. 2.  
     the genitive case, 261; *cf.* 62. 14.  
**circiter:** use of, 242. Vocab.  
**City:** see **Town**.  
**cīvis:** abl. of, 261. Vocab.  
**classis:** abl. of, 242. Vocab.  
**Clauses:**  
     coördinate, definition of, 232. Rem.  
     dependent in indirect discourse; mood and tense in, 267, **Rule and N.**  
**Cnaeus:** abbreviation and pronunciation of, 262. N. 1.  
**coepti:** use of passive of, 66. 12; *cf.* 105. 14.  
**cohors:** size of, 129. 4.  
**collis:** abl. of, 201. Rem. 2.  
**collocō:** with **in** and **abl.**, 323. 32; *cf.* 266. 23, 287. 35; with **loc.**, 307. 26.  
**commūtō:** construction with, 94. 17.

Comparative: declension of, 350.  
 abl. with, 335 ff.; *cf.* 158. 14 (contrast 101. 3, 119. 2, 154. 10).  
 formed by prefixing *magis*, 352. N. 3.  
 in Purpose clauses, 291.  
 of *prope*: used as prep., 131. 8.  
 Comparison: of adjectives, 351 ff.;  
 of adverbs, 352.  
 by the use of *magis* and *maximē*, 352. N. 3; *cf.* 44. 11, 176. 3.  
 of the present participle, 351 (*amāns*); *cf.* 70. 9.  
 Complementary: see Infinitive.  
*complūrēs*: declension of, 350. N.  
 Compounds: of *sum*, 374. N.; *cf.* 58. 12, 101. 17.  
 Conditional Sentences:  
 classes of, 254, 338 ff.  
 English forms inexact, 257. 6.  
 unsymmetrical, 272. 5.  
*coniungō*: idiom *sē coniungere cum* and abl., 307. 33.  
 Conjugation of Verbs: 360 ff.  
 Conjunction: position of, in complex sentence, 211. 12.  
 Connective: negative, 232.  
 Consonant Stems: 346, 349.  
*cōnsuēscō*: use of, 273. *Vocab.*, 274. N. 1.  
*cōnsuētūdō*: construction with, 323. 5; *cf.* 308. N. 1.  
 Contrary to Fact: conditional sentences, 338 ff.  
 Conventional: see Formal.  
 Coördinate clause: defined, 232. *Rem.*  
*Cornivallis*: abl. of, 251. *Vocab.*  
*cornū*: declension of, 347 (324).  
 could: idiomatic rendering of pres. indicative of *possum*, 41. 7; *cf.* 326. 18. See also Subjunctive.

*cum*, conj.:  
*cum*-clause contrasted with *dum*-clause, 212. N.  
*cum*-clause replacing nom. of pres. partic., 211. 16; *cf.* 14. 8.  
 introducing causal clauses, 218. *Vocab.*, 220; *cf.* 211. 16.  
 position in complex sentence, 211. 12.  
 tenses of the subjunctive with, 219. N. 1; *cf.* 220. N. 1.  
 use of *autem* with, 218. 11.  
*cum*, prep.:  
 postpositive, 211. 3.  
 rendered "for," 94. 17.  
 See *commūtō* and *coniungō*.  
 Curio's Campaign in Africa: map of, 146.  
*cūrō*: construction with, 264. N.  
 Dates: 178. 4, 180. 9, 183. 2.  
 Dative:  
 ambiguous with the impersonal gerundive, 333. *Rem.*  
 of adjs. (*ūnus*, *alter*, etc.); in -ī, 352. N.  
 of Agency, 235; *cf.* 333. *Rem.* also 34. 21.  
 in indirect discourse, 235 (1st) N.  
 of Disadvantage: 136. 17; *cf.* 85. 16.  
 of gerund and gerundive, 308, 309.  
 of Indirect Object:  
 used in connection with a Dative of Service, 264. *Rem.*  
 with *auxilium ferō*, 228. 5;  
*bellum indicō*, 92. 7, 280. *Vocab.*; *dēdō*, 226. *Vocab.*;  
*dicō*, 299. 14, 331. 11; *ignem admovēō*, 293. 27; *nūntiō*, 223. *Vocab.*; *praesum*, 58. 12;  
*respondeō*, 342. *Vocab.*

## Dative:

with Certain Verbs, 229. Also  
333. Vocab. (*ignōscō*); 302.  
Vocab., 303. N. 1. (*imperō*);  
264. Vocab., 229. N. (*noceō*);  
239. Vocab. and N. 3 (*parcō*);  
230. Vocab. and N. 1, 23. 9,  
27. 13, 303. N. 1 (*persuādeō*).  
with impersonal pass. of, 332 ff.  
with gerund of intransitive  
verbs, 279. N.

## of Interest, 244.

used in connection with a Dative  
of Service, 264. Rem.; cf. 65.

4.

## of Possession, 216.

of Service, 264; cf. 273. Vocab.  
(*ūsui*); 333. Vocab. (*salūtī*);  
also 65. 4, 136. 3.

rendered "for"; 236. N. 1, 244.  
Rem.; cf. 136. 17; "upon,"  
280. Vocab., 92. 7; cf. 58. 12.

with Certain Verbs; see under  
Dative of Indirect Object above.

with *idōneus*, 236. Vocab. and N.  
1; with *similis*, 297. Vocab.;  
cf. 298. N. 3.

Declension: of Nouns, Adjectives,  
and Pronouns, 345 ff.

*dēdō*: construction with, 226. Vocab.

Degree of Difference: expressed by  
the abl., 203; cf. 137. 3, 158. 5,  
251. N. 1.

Deities: of the Romans, 15.

Demonstrative Pronouns: declension  
of, 356.

Dependent Clauses: see Subordinate  
Clauses.

Deponent Verbs: conjugation of,  
370 ff.; semi-deponent, 372; cf.  
213. N. 2.

future infinitive of, 207; cf. 226.  
Rem.

future participle of, 204.

gerundive of, 226 with Rem.

supine of, 287.

use of certain perfect participles  
of, 270. N., 310. Vocab.

Derivation: of *obsidiō*, 154. 13; of  
*postridiē*, 154. 5; of *trādō*, 11.  
4; of *trādūcō*, 91. 10; cf. 142.  
12.

*deus*: declension of, 348.

*dīcō*: construction with, 299. 14, 331.  
11.

form *dīc*, 260. 11.

personal passive of, 5. 17.

*diēs*: declension of, 347.

gender of, 347. N. 2.

Cf. also *noctēs diēsq̄ue*.

*difficilis*: superl. of, 352. N. 2 (298.  
N. 3).

*dignus*: governing a rel. clause, 86.  
4.

Diminutives: force of, cf. 169. 3.

*dissimilis*: superl. of, 352. N. 2  
(298. N. 3).

*diū*: comparison of, 352.

absolute use of comparative of,  
260. 10, 332. 27.

See also *iam diū*.

*dō*: conjugation of, 377.

*domus*: declension of, 348 with N.

locative case of, 247; cf. 348. N.

use of abl. and acc. sing. of, 276;  
cf. 87. 12 (contrast 16. 11, 174  
13).

*dūcō*: form *dūc*, 260. 11.

*dum*: *dum*-clause contrasted with  
*cum*-clause, 212. N.

use of *autem* with, 218. 11.

with present indicative, 212.

**duo**: declension of, 353.  
governing **ē**, **ex** with abl., 213. N. 1.  
**dux**: see **imperātor**.  
  
**-ē-**; in gen. and dat. sing. of Fifth Declension nouns, 347. N. 1.  
**ē**, **ex**: omitted with **locō**, **locīs**, 7. 4; *cf.* 315. 18.  
with abl., governed by numerals or **quidam**, 213. N. 1; by **ēgredior**, 327. *Vocab.*; by **quaerō**, 315. 3.  
**Eagle**: used as standard, 131. 16, 132, 162.  
**eōdō**: conjugation of, 378.  
**ego**: declension of, 355.  
abl. with postpositive **-cum**, 211. 3.  
forms of, used reflexively, 356, N. 1 (318. *Rem.* 2).  
gen. not used to express ownership, 319. *Rem.*  
plural: with force of sing., 161. 4.  
**ēgredior**: construction with, 327. *Vocab.*  
**Enclitics**: see **Postpositives**.  
**English-Latin Exercises**, 199 ff.  
**English-Latin Vocabulary**, 427 ff.  
**enim**: **neque** with, 127. 16.  
position in sentence, 246. 5.  
**Entrails**: a source of omens, 166. 1.  
**eō**, adv.: *cf.* 43. 18, 314. N.  
**eō**, verb: conjugation of, 374.  
**eōdem**: use of, 87. 16.  
**eques Rōmānus**: standing of, 125. 9.  
**esse**: omitted sometimes with future active infinitive and gerundive in indirect discourse, 222. 11, 234. 10.  
**et**: omitted, 180. 2.  
use in the composition of numerals, 345. N.

**etiam**: contrasted with **quoque**, 280. *Vocab.* and N.  
**exercitus**: declension of, 347.  
**Existence and Non-existence**: 297 with N.  
**Extent of Space**: expressed by the acc., 304. 15.  
**Extent of Time**: expressed by the acc., 199. N. 2; *cf.* 123. 1.  
with **abhinc**, 251. N. 1.  
with **nātus**, 236. N. 2.  
**extrēmus**: use of, 181. 5.  
  
**facile**: comparison of, 352.  
**facilis**: superl. of, 352. N. 2 (298 N. 3).  
**faciō**: form **fac**, 260. 11.  
**facultās**: construction with, 308. N. 1.  
**Falsity of assumption**: implied by conditional sentence, 339.  
**Fearing, Verbs of**: construction with, 258.  
**Feminine**:  
forms lacking in pronouns used as nouns, 357. N., 358 and NN.  
of nouns of the Fourth Declension, 347. N.; *cf.* 336. N. 2.  
**ferō**: conjugation of, 379.  
**auxilium ferō**: with dat., 228. 5.  
form **fer**, 260. 11.  
**fidō**: semi-deponent, 372 (213. N. 2).  
**Fifth or Ē-Declension**, 347.  
retention of **ē** in gen. and dat. sing., 347. N. 1.  
**filius**: declension of, 345 NN. 1 and 2; *cf.* 16. 4, 219. N. 2.  
**fiō**: conjugation of, 381.  
See **fit ut**.  
**First names of persons**: abbreviated, 262. N. 1.  
**First or Ā-Conjugation**, 360.

First or  $\bar{A}$ -Declension, 345.

nom. sing. in -ās, 23. 4; *cf.* 86. 12.

First Person Pronoun: see *ego*.

*fit ut*: 251. Vocab., 252. N. 3; *cf.* 74. 15, 111. 1.

Flags: use of, as standards, 162.

*fīōs*: declension of, 346.

Formal rendering:

of certain verbs with indirect obj., 229. N.

of *cōnsuēscō* and *soleō*, 213. N. 2; *cf.* 274. N. 1.

of future imperative, 342. N.

Forms: Summary of, 345.

*forte*: free rendering of, with verb, 85. 12.

*fortis*: comparison and declension of, 351.

*fortiter*: comparison of, 352.

Fourth or  $\bar{I}$ -Conjugation, 368.

Fourth or U-Declension, 347 (324).  
gender of nouns of, 347. N.; *cf.* 324. N. 2, 336. N. 2.

*fugiō*: form *fugitūrus*, 204. Rem.

Future Tense: see Imperative, Indicative, Infinitive, and Participle.

Gallia: map of, 124.

*gaudeō*: semi-deponent, 372 (213. N. 2).

Gender:

determined by predicate noun, 30. 6, 52. 5, 74. 12, 168. 3, 183. 10, 341. 14.

of *diēs*, 347. N. 2.

of impersonal expressions, 243. 16.

of indeclinable nouns (and advs. so used), 298. N. 1.

of nouns of the fourth declension, 347. N.; *cf.* 336. N. 2, 324. N. 2.

Genitive:

Objective, 70. 9, 74. 2.

of adjs. (*ūnus*, *alter*, etc.); in -ius, 352. N.

of Characteristic or Quality, 261; *cf.* 62. 14.

of Charge or Penalty, 47. 16; *cf.* 122. 18.

of *ego*, *suī*, and *tū*; not used to express ownership, 319. Rem.

of gerund and gerundive with *causā*, 247 ff., 279.

of nouns in -ius and -ium, 345. N. 2; *cf.* 16. 4, 219. N. 2.

of Quality or Characteristic, 261; *cf.* 62. 14.

of *suī*, *tū*, and *ego*; not used to express ownership, 319. Rem.

Partitive, 296; *cf.* 107. 17, 149. 13, 150. 10.

Possessive; renderings of, 138. 11, 159. 11, 180. 11, 181. 7.

rendered "for," 74. 2, 308. N. 1; *cf.* 329. 15; "in," *cf.* 323. 5;

"to," 70. 9, 308. N. 1. See also under Possessive Genitive above.

with *cōnsuetūdō*, 323. 5 (*cf.* 308. N. 1); *facultās*, 308. N. 1;

*similis*, 297. Vocab., 288. N. 3; *studium*, 329. 15.

Gerund:

abl. case; use, 215. and N., 308.

contrasted with gerundive, 215; with present partic., 215. Rem.

dat. case little used, 308.

forms of, 215.

in purpose clauses, with *ad* and *causā*, 279 with N. and Rem.

of transitive verbs used absolutely, 279. Rem.

summary of uses of, 308.

Gerundive:

- agreement with *suī* (pl.), 133. 11.
- ambiguous dat. with impersonal use of, 333. Rem.
- contrasted with gerund, 215.
- dat. case little used, 309.
- defective; 236. Rem. 3, 248. Rem. 2, 282. N.
- force of; apart from *sum*, 236. Rem. 2, 309; cf. 61. 8; with *sum*, 226, 255. Rem. 2, 309; cf. 128. 1, 171. 9.
- impersonal use of, 282. N.; cf. 333. Rem.
- in purpose clauses:
  - governed by *ad*, 235 ff., 248. Rem. 3; cf. 279. Rule.
  - governed by *causā*, 247, 248. Rem. 3; cf. 279.
  - use of *ad* and *causā* contrasted, 248. Rem. 3.
- of deponent verbs, 226 with Rem.
- of intransitive verbs (impers. only), 282. N., 309 (top); cf. 236. Rem. 3, 248. Rem. 2.
- omits *esse* sometimes in indirect discourse, 234. 10.
- renderings of; see force of (above).
- summary of uses of, 309 ff.
- with Dative of Agency, 235; cf. 333. Rem.
- Gods: of the Romans, 15.
- gracilis*: superl. of, 352. N. 2 (298. N. 3).
- habēō*: conjugation of, 362.
- hīc*: declension of, 356.
- Historical Infinitive: 174. 10, 177. 1.
- Historical Present (indicative): 135. 6.
- homō*: contrasted with *vir*, 204. N. 2.

- Hortatory Subjunctive: negative of, 305.
- hortor*: construction with, 251. Vocab.
- hortus*: declension of, 345.
- hostis*: abl. of, 201. Rem. 2.
- hūc*: use of, 255. N.
- humilis*: superl. of, 352. N. 2 (298. N. 3).
- humus*: locative case of, 247 (345. N. 3); cf. 109. 17.
- use of abl. and acc. sing. of, 276.
- Hundreds: declined in Latin, 306. 2 (354).
- idem*: declension of, 356.
- Identity: pronoun of, see *idem*.
- idōneus*: comparison of, 352. N. 3.
- force of dat. with, 236. N. 1.
- ignis*: declension of, 346; cf. 201. Rem. 2.
- ignōscō*: 333. Vocab.
- construction with, 229.
- ille*: declension of, 356.
- noun use of, 211. 18.
- Imperative:
  - Future, 341 ff.
  - Present; irregular forms of, 260. 11.
- imperātor*: contrasted with *dux*, 200 (2d) N.
- Imperfect Tense: see Indicative and Subjunctive.
- imperō*: construction with, 302. Vocab., 303. N. 1.; cf. 229.
- Impersonal:
  - expressions; gender of, 243. 16.
  - passive (including gerundive), 282 with N. and Rem., 332 ff.; cf. 1. 11, 8. 15, 12. 2.
- imūs*: use of, cf. 168. 8.
- See *inferior*.



**in**: with abl.; (*collocō*), 323. 32; *cf.* 266. 23, 287. 35; (*pōnō*), 266. 23, 302. 31; *cf.* 287. 35.  
omitted with *locō*, *locia*, 7. 4, 315. 18; *cf.* also 32. 16, 41. 15.  
with acc.; (*domum*), by exception, 16. 11, 174. 13.  
**incolumis**: contrasted with *tūtus*, 204. N. 3.  
use of, 204. **Vocab.**  
**Incorporation**: of antecedent in rel. clause, 44. 13, 141. 7, 145. 12; *cf.* 42. 4, 163. 9, 184. N. 3.  
**Indeclinable**:  
adjective, 310. **Vocab.** (*tot*).  
nouns (and advs. so used); syntax of, 298. N. 1.  
**Indefinite Pronouns**: 358 ff.  
See also indef. *quī* (*quis*), *quīdam*, and *quisquam*.  
**Indefinite Relative Pronoun**: 359  
**Indicative**:  
Future renders English present in conditions, 257. 6.  
**Imperfect Tense**:  
of Customary Past Action, 255. **Rem.** 2; *cf.* 7. 17, 150. 12.  
renderings of, 36. 7, 107. 7, 158. 8, 160. 14.  
with *iam diū*: force of, 10. 15.  
in Simple Conditional Sentences, 254.  
**Perfect Tense**: short forms of, 38. 1.  
**Pluperfect Tense**:  
rendered as a perf., 72. 1.  
short forms of, 170. 12, 171. 12.  
**Present Tense**:  
idiomatic: 104. 14 (*longum est*); 41. 7, *cf.* 326. 18 (*possum*).

in animated narration for perf. (Historical Present), 135. 6.  
of *inquam*; use of, 382. N.  
with *dum*, 212.  
**indicō**: *bellum indicō*, with dat., 280. **Vocab.**  
**Indirect Discourse**:  
Dative of Agency in, 235 (1st) N. dependent upon the personal pass. of *dicō* or the like, 5. 17.  
*esse* omitted sometimes with future active infin. or gerundive, 222. 11, 234. 10.  
governed by *videor*, lacks subject acc., 245. N. 3.  
governing verb implied merely, 128. 1, 160. 8, 170. 10, 174. 10; *cf.* 133. 13.  
• infinitive of; contrasted with complementary infin., 209. N.  
mood in subordinate clauses in, 267; *cf.* 61. 14.  
subject of; expressed, 211. 1 (contrast 245. N. 3).  
tense of infin. in, 207 ff.  
tense of subjunctive in subordinate clauses in, 267 (1st) N.; *cf.* 217. 1.  
use of reflexives in, 317 ff.; *cf.* 235 (1st) N., 275. 10.  
See also Infinitive.  
**Indirect Object**: see Dative.  
**Indirect Questions**: 312 ff.; *cf.* 126. 17.  
with *num*, 325. **Vocab.**  
**inferior**: comparison of, 351. *Cf.* *imius*.  
**Infinitive**:  
Future:  
formation and use of, 207 ff.; *cf.* 226. **Rem.**

## Infinitive

- of **possum**; lacking, 250. 7; *cf.* 23. 9.
- omits **esse** sometimes in indirect discourse, 222. 11.
- not used to express Purpose, 234. 3.
- Perfect:
  - formation and use of, 207 ff.
  - sequence of, 217. 1; *cf.* 267 (1st) N.
  - short forms of, 87. 8.
- Present:
  - Complementary, 209. N.
  - of **possum**; for lacking future, 250. 7; *cf.* 23. 9.
  - of **sum**; omitted sometimes with gerundive in indirect discourse, 234. 10.
  - used in place of the third person of perf. or pluperf. indicative (Historical Infinitive), 174. 10, 177. 1.
  - sequence of, 217. 1; *cf.* 267 (1st) N.
  - tenses and use of, 207 ff.
  - with **nesciō**; idiomatic, 241. 28; *cf.* 8. 2, 35. 17; with **sciō**, 23. 3.
  - See also Indirect Discourse.
- inquam**: 382.
  - use of present forms of, 382. N.
- Instrumentality: expressed by **per** and **acc.**, 329.
- Intensive Particle: 175. 7.
- Intensive Prefix: 25. 10, 145. 12; *cf.* 186.
- Intensive Pronoun: see **ipse**.
- Interest: Dative of, 244.
  - used in connection with a Dative of Service, 264. Rem.
- Intermediate Agency: expressed by **per** and **acc.**, 329.

## Interrogative Words:

- first in clause, 222. 25.
- not reinforced by **-ne**, 263. 13.
- See also interrog. **quī** (**quis**), **num**, **quōd**, and **ubi**.
- Intransitive Verbs: defined, 279.
  - passive of (including gerundive), impersonal only, 282. with N., 332 ff.; *cf.* 1. 11, 8. 15, 12. 2.
  - types of, 279. N.; *cf.* 270.
  - use of gerund of, 279 with N.; *cf.* 308.
- ipse**: declension of, 356.
  - contrasted with **sui**, 318. Rem. 1.
- is**: declension of, 355.
  - gen. of; contrasted with **suis**, 317.
  - used as adj., 356. N. 2.
- iste**: declension of, 356. N.
  - use of, 73. 4.
- I-Stems: 324, 346, 351.
  - abl. sing., of **avis**, **collis**, **hostis**, **ignis**, **nāvis**, **nūbēs**, **ovis**, **piscis**, **secūris**, **vallēs**, 201. Rem. 2; of **cīvis**, 261. Vocab.; of **classis**, 242. Vocab.; of **Cornivallis**, 251. Vocab.; of **mēnsis**, 218. Vocab. *Cf.* 321 (2d) N.
  - acc. in **-im**, 324. N. 1.
  - neuter, 201. c, 324 with N. 1.
  - summary of, 201.
- itaque**: position in sentence, 272. 24.
- iam diū**: force of, with imperfect tense, 10. 15.
- iubeō**: contrasted with **imperō**, 303. N. 1.
- iuvenis**: not an I-Stem, 274. N. 2.
- Latin-English Exercises, 1 ff.
- Latin-English Vocabulary, 385.
- legiō**: constitution of, 125. 14; *cf.* 139. 10.

- libenter**: comparison of, 352.  
 free rendering of, 77. 10, 79. 19, 93. 9; *cf.* 85. 12.
- List of Abbreviations, xv.
- List of Verb Constructions, 382.
- litus**: declension of, 346.
- Locative Case**: 247; *cf.* 178. 7, 276.  
 in -il, 247. Rem. 1; *cf.* 345. N. 2.  
 of **domus**, 247; *cf.* 348. N.; of  
**humus**, 247, 346. N. 3; *cf.* 109.  
 17; of **rūs**, 247, 248. N. 2,  
 346. N.  
 of Town names, 247 with Rem. 1;  
*cf.* 345. N. 2.  
 with **collocō**, 307. 26.
- locus**: abl. without prep., 7. 4; *cf.*  
 315. 18.
- longē**: comparison of, 352.
- longum est**: 104. 14.
- loquor**: construction with, 233. Vocab.
- M.**: abbreviation of **Mārcus**, 262.  
 N. 1.
- magis**: comparison of, 352.  
 marking the comparative degree,  
 352. N. 3.  
 See also **maximē**.
- magnus**: comparison of, 351.
- mālō**: conjugation of, 376.
- mālum**: declension of, 345.
- malus**: comparison of, 351.
- manus**: gender of, 336. Vocab. and  
 N. 2.
- Maps: Asia Minor, 179; Curio's  
 Campaign in Africa, 146; Gallia,  
 124.
- Mārcus**: abbreviation of, 262. N. 1.
- mare**: declension of, 346.
- Masculine**: of adjectives and participles;  
 used as nouns, 202. 9, 228. 21, 238. 18, 267. Vocab.;  
*cf.* 330. N. Also 6. 16, 66. 7.
- mātūrē**: comparison of, 352.
- maximē**: marking the superlative  
 degree, 352. N. 3; *cf.* 44. 11,  
 176. 3.  
 See **magis**.
- Means**: abl. of, 235. Rem.; *cf.*  
 294. Rem.
- mēnsa**: declension of, 345.
- mēnsis**: abl. of, 218. Vocab.
- meus**: order in phrase, 318 (2d) N.  
 reflexive use of, 318. Rem. 2.
- mille, milia**: declension and use of,  
 239. Vocab. and N. 1.
- minus**: comparison of, 352.  
 construction of clause uninfluenced  
 by, 154. 10.  
 governing the gen., 302. 16 (296 ff.).
- miser**: comparison of, 351.  
 declension of, 349.
- mittō**: conjugation of, 364.
- Mixed Stems**: 350.
- Modifier**: in Ablative of Quality or  
 Characteristic, 321. Rule and  
 N.
- mōns**: not abbreviated or capitalized,  
 307. 31.
- morior**: form **moritūrus**, 216. Vocab.
- moror**: conjugation of, 370.
- Motion**: verbs of, governing **ad** with  
 acc. of gerund or gerundive,  
 235 (2d) N., 292 (top); governing  
 supine in -um, 288. Rule  
 and N.
- multō**: use of, 244. Vocab., 245. N. 2.
- multus**: comparison of, 351.
- nam**: use of, 175. 7.
- Names**: first names of persons abbreviated,  
 262. N. 1.

Names:

See also Proper Names, Town Names, and River Names.

**nārrō**: construction with, 209. **Vocab.**

**nātus**: with Accusative of Extent of Time, 236. **N. 2.**

**nāvis**: abl. of, 201. **Rem. 2.**

**-ne**: attached to pronoun, 222. 26.

dividing words of a phrase, 231. 1.

not added to other interrogatives, 263. 13.

See also **nōnne**.

**nō**: followed by indef. **quī (quis)**, 255, 256. **NN. 1** and **2**; *cf.* 56. 1.

introducing clauses dependent upon verbs of Fearing, 258; *cf.* 255, 256. **N. 2.**

introducing Purpose clauses, 273.

**N.**; *cf.* 256. **N. 1.**

freely rendered in, 171. 10.

in dependence upon **hortor**, 251.

**Vocab.**; upon **imperō**, 302.

**Vocab.**; upon **persuādeō**, 230.

**Vocab.**

use contrasted with that of **ut nōn**, 273. **N.**

with Hortatory Subjunctive, 305.

**nē . . . quidem**: use of, 227. **N. 1.**

**nec**: see **neque**.

Negative:

Clauses:

of Purpose, 291. 1, 256. **N. 1**;  
*cf.* 273. **N.**

of Result, 273. **N.**

use of **quisquam** and **umquam** in, 233. **Vocab.**

Connective, 232; *cf.* 17. 8, 150. 13.

of Hortatory Subjunctive, 305.

**nēmō**: declension of, 210. **Vocab.**;

*cf.* 44. 17.

**nēmō est quī**, 297.

**neque, nec**: use of the two forms, 233. **N.**

combines negative and connective, 232; *cf.* 150. 13.

in combination with various post-positive words, 127. 16.

use of **quisquam** and **umquam** in connection with, 233. **Vocab.**

**nesciō**: with idiomatic infin., 241. 28; *cf.* 8. 2, 35. 17; *cf.* **sciō**.

Neuter:

gerundive of intransitive verbs, 282. **N.**; *cf.* 333. **Rem.**

impersonal expressions, 243. 16.

indeclinable nouns (and advs. so used), 298. **N. 1.**

**I-Stems**, 201. **c**; *cf.* 324.

**neuter**: declension of, 352. **N.**

**nēve**: 150. 13.

**Night**: watches of, 91. 17.

**nihil**: indecl. noun, 300. **Vocab.** and **N.**

construction with, 302. 24 (296).

**nisi**: followed by indef. **quī (quis)**, 255, 256. **N. 2.**

**noceō**: construction with, 229 with **N.** form **nocitūrus**, 264. **Vocab.**

**noctēs diēsque**: 28. 13.

**nōlō**: conjugation of, 376.

**Nominative**: Predicate, 203. **N.**; *cf.* 211. 6, 245. **N. 3**, 259. **N. 1.**

**nōn**: marking negative result, 273. **N.**

**Non-existence and Existence**: general expressions of, 297.

**nōnne**: use of, 266. 33; *cf.* 98. 4.

**noster**: masc. pl. of, used as noun, 228. 21.

order in phrase, 318 (2d) **N.**

reflexive use of, 318. **Rem. 2.**

**Nouns**: declension of; Regular, 345 **fi**; Irregular, 348.

## Nouns:

- abstract; dat. expressing Service, 264. Rule.  
 in apposition, 214. 21.  
 indeclinable; case use of, 298. N. 1.  
 make up abl. absol. construction, 222 ff.  
 masc. of adjs. and pronouns, used as, 202. 9, 228. 21, 238. 18, 330. N.; also 2. 1, 6. 16.  
 of the second declension, in -ius and -ium, 345. NN. 1 and 2; cf. 219. N. 2.  
 plural; with sing. adjs., 301. 5.  
 Predicate, 211. 6, 203. Rule and N.; cf. 245. N. 3.  
 determining gender, 341. 14; cf. 30. 6, 52. 5, 119. 5, 168. 3, 183. 10.  
 use of forms of ille as, 211. 18.  
 nūbēs: abl. of, 201. Rem. 2.  
 nūllus: declension of, 352. N.  
 num: followed by indef. quī (quis), 255, 256. N. 2.  
 introducing indirect question, 325. Vocab.  
 Numerals: 353 ff. (300, 305).  
 formed by subtraction, 354. N (300).  
 governing ē, ex with abl., 213. N. 1.  
 use of et in composition of, 354. N.  
 numerus: use of, 239. N. 2.  
 nūntiō: construction with, 223. Vocab.  
 ob: -que not combined with, 129. 5; cf. 184. 7.  
 Object:  
 Direct:  
 of participle in abl. absol. construction, 223. Rem. 1; cf. 44. 17, 175. 11.

of supine in -um, 288. N.  
 transitive verbs, used without, 279. Rem.

Indirect: see Dative of Indirect Object.

Objective Genitive, 70. 9, 74. 2.

obsidiō: derivation of, 154. 13.

Omens: 166. 1.

Omission of forms of sum:

in future active infinitive, 222. 11.

in repetitions, 243. 31, 307. 13, 326. 14, 335. 19.

with the gerundive in indirect discourse, 234. 10.

omnēs: rendering of, in connection with quī, 57. 8, 97. 10; cf. 58. 11.

One Termination: adjs. of, 350; cf. 248. N. 1, 321 (2d) N.

Ordinal Numerals: 353.

designated by figures, 183. 13.

ovis: abl. of, 201. Rem. 2.

pār: declension and use of, 321. Vocab. and NN.

parcō: construction with, 229, 239. N. 3.

Participle:

Future Active:

formation and use of (including deponents), 204 ff.; cf. 4. 3, 16. 15, 31. 7, 122. 11, 168. 1.

of absum, 342. Vocab.; fugiō, 204. Rem.; morior, 216. Vocab.; nuceō, 264. Vocab.; sum, 204.

omits esse sometimes in indirect discourse, 222. 11.

Perfect:

masc. pl. of; used as noun, 267. Vocab.; cf. 66. 7.

- Perfect:  
of certain deponents, substituted for present, 270. **N.**, 310. **Vocab.** (**veritus**); *cf.* 2. 17.  
rendered loosely as present, 7. 15, 86. 3, 155. 16.
- Predicate: 245. **N.** 3.
- Present: declension of, 349.  
comparison of: 351 (**amāns**); *cf.* 70. 9.  
contrasted with gerund, 215. **Rem.**  
in abl. absol. construction, 223. **Rem.** 1; *cf.* 44. 17, 175. 11.  
nominative case of, little used; replaced by **cum**-clause, 211. 16, 270. **Rem.**; *cf.* 14. 8.  
oblique cases, standing alone, 104. 3, 177. 4.  
with object in abl. absol. construction, 223. **Rem.** 1; *cf.* 44. 17, 175. 11.  
rendered by an indicative clause, 156. 9, 182. 2, 185. 7.
- Partitive Genitive: 296; *cf.* 107. 17, 149. 13, 150. 10.
- parum**: use of, 296 ff., 297. **Vocab.**
- parvus**: comparison of, 351.
- Passive:  
impersonal, 282 with **N.**, 332 ff.; *cf.* 1. 11, 8. 15, 12. 2.  
of transitive and intransitive verbs, 282.  
personal; governing indirect discourse, 5. 17; *cf.* **videor**, 245. **N.** 3.
- Past action; described by **dum** with present indicative, 212.
- patior**: conjugation of, 371.
- pauci**: rendering of, in connection with **quī**, *cf.* 58. 11.
- per**: with acc.; expressing Instrumentality or Intermediate Agency, 329.
- per-**: intensive prefix, 25. 10, 145. 12; *cf.* 186.
- Perfect Tense: of **cōnsuēscō**, 273. **Vocab.**, 274. **N.** 1.  
See Indicative, Infinitive, Participle, and Subjunctive.
- perfungor**: construction with, 171. 13; *cf.* 270.
- Personal Pronouns: declension of, 355 ff.  
See **ego**, **is**, and **tū**.
- persuādeō**: construction with, 230. **Vocab.** and **N.** 1, (229); *cf.* 23. 9, 27. 13, 303. **N.** 1.
- piger**: declension of, 349.
- piscis**: abl. of, 201. **Rem.** 2.
- Place from Which: see Ablative.
- Place to (and into) Which: see Accusative.
- Place Where: see Ablative. *Cf.* also Locative.
- Pluperfect Tense: of **cōnsuēscō**; use of, 274. **N.** 1.  
See Indicative and Subjunctive.
- Plural: of **ego**; with force of sing., 161. 4.
- plūs**: declension and use of, 350 with **Rem.** (298. **N.** 2).
- polliceor**: conjugation of, 370.
- pōnō**: with **in** and **abl.**, 266. 23, 302. 31; *cf.* 287. 35.
- Possession: dat. of, 215 ff.
- Possessive Adjectives:  
order in phrase, 318 (2d) **N.**; *cf.* 206. 17, 228. 32, 243. 15, 266. 31; also 11. 6, 85. 4.  
reflexive use of **meus**, **tuus**, **noster**, and **vester**, 318. **Rem.** 2.  
See **suus**.

- possum**: conjugation of, 373.  
 present indicative of; idiomatic use, 41. 7; *cf.* 326. 18.  
 present infinitive of; for future, 250. 7; *cf.* 23. 9.  
 rendering of, 1. 13. *Cf.* also 41. 7, 326. 18.  
 with **quam** and superl. of adj. or adv., 142. 5, 181. 14.
- Postpositives**:  
**causā**, 248. Rule and Rem. 1.  
**-cum**, 211. 3.  
**-que**; added to second word in phrase, 129. 5; *cf.* 184. 7.  
**tamen**, 219. N. 3.  
**tantum**, 276. N. 1.  
 use of **neque** with, 127. 16.
- postridīe**: derivation of, 154. 5.
- potior**: construction with, 288.  
**Vocab.** (270); *cf.* 95. 11.
- praesum**: conjugation of, 374. N.  
 construction with, 58. 12.
- Predicate**: see Adjectives, Nouns, and Participle.
- Prefixes**: list of, 186.  
**per-**, 25. 10, 145. 12.  
**re-**, 8. 5.
- Preposition**:  
 coalesceſſ with verb, yet governing acc., 91. 10, 142. 12.  
 not required with supine in **-um** in purpose expressions, 288. N.  
 omitted with abl. and acc. of Town Names, **domus**, and **rūs**, 276, 341. 5; *cf.* 79. 21, 87. 12 (contrast 16. 11, 174. 13, 182. 1); with abl. of **locus**, 7. 4; *cf.* 315. 18. For other omissions, see under Ablative.
- propius**, used as, 131. 8.
- que** not attached to **ob**, 129. 5; *cf.* 184. 7.  
 with abl. and acc. of gerund and gerundive, 308. NN. 2 and 3, 310. N.
- Present Tense**: of **inquam**; use of, 382. N.
- See Imperative, Indicative, Infinitive, Participle, and Subjunctive.
- primus**: use of, 22. 7, 76. 21, 89. 20, 177. 3.
- profectō**: contrasted with **certē**, 267 (ad) N.
- proficiſcor**: conjugation of, 371.
- Pronouns**: 355 ff.  
 agreeing with predicate noun, 52. 5, 168. 3, 341. 14. See also under rel. **quī**.
- prope**, adv.: comparison of, 352.  
 comparative of; used as prep., 131. 8.
- Proper Names**: in **-ius** and **-ium**; declension of, 345. NN. 1 and 2; *cf.* 219. N. 2.  
 of persons; first name abbreviated, 262. N. 1.  
 See also Town and River Names.
- prōsum**: conjugation of, 374. N.
- puer**: declension of, 345.
- Purpose**:  
 expressed by  
**ad** and **causā** with gerund or gerundive, 235 ff., 248, 279; *cf.* 292 (top), also 108. 8.  
**quō** with subjunctive, 291. Rule; *cf.* 101. 14.  
 relative with subjunctive, 199 ff.; *cf.* 278. 6.  
 supine in **-um**, 288; *cf.* 95. 13, 131. 1.  
**ut** and **nē** with subjunctive, 290;

Purpose:

- cf.* 255, 256. **N.** 1, 273. **N.**  
in dependence upon *hortor*,  
251. **Vocab.**; upon *imperō*,  
302. **Vocab.**; upon *persuādeō*, 230. **Vocab.**  
governing verb implied merely,  
138. 2.  
not expressed by infin., 234. 3.  
summary of methods of expressing,  
290 ff.  
tenses of subjunctive; force of,  
220. **N.** 1; *cf.* 258. **N.**  
use of indef. *quī* (*quis*) with *nē*,  
255, 256. **NN.** 1 and 2; *cf.* 56. 1.

*quaerō*: construction with, 315. 3.

Quality or Characteristic:

- expressed by abl., 321.  
expressed by gen., 261.

*quam*: with superl. (and *possum*),  
47. 14, 142. 5, 181. 14.

*-que*: not combined with *ob*, 129.  
5; *cf.* 184. 7.

Questions:

- anticipating answer "yes," 266. 33.  
Indirect, 312 ff.; *cf.* 126. 17.  
See also *aut*.

*quī*, rel.: declension of, 357.

- agreement with predicate noun, 30.  
6, 74. 12, 119. 5, 183. 10.  
in agreement, but rendered by  
gen., 57. 8; *cf.* 58. 11, 97. 10.  
See Relative Words; also Cause,  
Characteristic, Purpose, Result,  
and *dignus*.

*quī* (*quis*), indef.: declension of,  
358 with **N.**

- following *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num*,  
255, 256. **NN.** 1 and 2; *cf.* 56. 1.  
noun forms of, 358. **N.**

*quī* (*quis*), interrog.: declension of,  
357 and **N.**

*quicumque*: declension of, 359.

*quidam*: declension and use of, 359  
and **N.** 1.

governing *ē*, *ex* with abl., 213. **N.** 1.

*quisquam*: declension and use of,  
359 with **N.** 2, 233. **Vocab.**

*quisque*: declension and use of, 358  
(313. **Vocab.**).

*quō*, adv.: use of, 313. **Vocab.**, 314.  
**N.**

See also Relative Words.

*quō*, conj.: introducing purpose  
clause, 291; *cf.* 101. 14.

*quod*, conj.: force of subjunctive with,  
55. 11, 62. 13; *cf.* 166. 3.

*quoque*: contrasted with *etiam*, 280,  
**N.**

*rapīō*: conjugation of, 366.

*ratus*: use of, 270. **Rem.**

*re-*: force of, 8. 5; *cf.* 186.

*recipiō*: idiom *sē recipere*, 240. **N.**  
4; *cf.* 284. 24.

*redūcō*: contrasted with *sē recipere*,  
284. 24.

Reflexive: defined, 316.

of first and second persons, 318.

**Rem.** 2; *cf.* 356. **N.** 1.

of third person; see *suī* and *suus*.

Relative Words:

- antecedent incorporated in relative  
clause, 42. 4, 44. 13, 141. 7, 145.  
12, 184. 3; *cf.* 42. 4, 163. 9;  
suppressed, 135. 16, 161. 10, 169.  
4; *cf.* 163. 9.

first in clause, 246. 19.

introducing clause dependent upon  
*dignus*, 86. 4.

clause expressing Cause, 170. 4.



## Relative Words:

- clause of Characteristic, 297; *cf.* 109. 5.  
 clause of Purpose, 199 ff.; *cf.* 291; (ubi) 278. 6, 284. 13.  
 clause of Result, 174. 11.  
 not suppressed in Latin sentence, 206. 25.  
 replacing demonstrative word or personal pron. at beginning of new sentence, 228. 25, 286. 31; *cf.* 5. 3 and 8, 14. 3, 24. 1; (quō) 313. Vocab., 314. N.; *cf.* 323. 21, 332. 37; (ubi) 269. 32, 343. 11; *cf.* 287. 41, 312. 24 and 30.  
 See also *quī*, *ubi*, and Indefinite Relative Pronoun.  
*rēs*: declension of, 347.  
*respondeō*: construction with, 342. Vocab.  
 Result: expressed by  
 clause introduced by *ut* (negative *nōn*), 273 with N.  
 relative clause, 174. 11.  
 River Names: 324. N. 1.  
 Rome: designated as *urbs* simply, 48. 3.  
*rūs*: declension of, 248. Vocab. and N. 2 (346. N.).  
 abl. and acc. without prep., 276; *cf.* 341. 5.  
 locative case of, 247, 248. N. 2 (346. N.).

*salūti esse*: 333. Vocab.

*satis*: use of, 297. Vocab. and (1st) Rem.

*sciō*: with idiomatic infin., 23. 3; *cf.* *nesciō*.

*scribō*: special construction with, 138. 2.

Second or *Ē*-Conjugation, 362.

Second or O-Declension, 345 ff.

Second Person Pronoun: see *tū*.

*secūris*: abl. of, 201. Rem. 2.

*sed*: autem preferred to, 218. 11.

Semi-deponents, 372; *cf.* 213. N. 2.

Senatorial Order: 165. 11.

Sequence of Tenses: 219 ff.

in indirect discourse, 267 (1st) N.;

*cf.* 217. 1.

Service: Dative of, 264; *cf.* 273.

Vocab. (136. 3), 333. Vocab.; also 65. 4.

*sī*: followed by indef. *quī* (*quis*), 255, 256. N. 2; *cf.* 56. 1.

*cf.* also Conditional Sentences.

*similis*: comparison of, 351; *cf.* 298.

N. 3.

construction with, 297. Vocab., 298.

N. 3.

Simple Conditional Sentences: 254.

Singular: of *vīta*: rendered as pl., 39. 17.

*sīs*, *sultis*: literal force of, 224. N. 3.

*soleō*: semi-deponent, 372; *cf.* 213. N. 2.

*sōlus*: declension of, 352. N.

Specification: abl. of, 239, 288 (2d) Rule; *cf.* 37. 20, 126. 17.

Standards: of the Roman army, 130. 1, 131. 16, 132. 162.

*studium*: construction with, 329. 15.

Subject:

emphasized by use of pron., 214. 19.

of indirect discourse; expressed, 211. 1 (contrast 245. N. 3).

position of; in complex sentence, 211. 12; *cf.* 20. 17.

suppressed with *sunt quī*, etc., 297. N.

## Subjunctive:

Horatory; negative *nē*, 305.

in Causal clauses; (*cum*) 220;  
(*quod*) 55. 11, 62. 13; *cf.* 166.  
3; (rel.) 170. 4.

in clauses dependent on Verbs of  
Fearing, 258.

in Conditional Sentences, 254 (2d)  
Rule, 338 ff.

in dependent clauses in indirect  
discourse, 267; *cf.* 61. 14.

in Indirect Questions, 312 ff; *cf.*  
126. 17.

in Purpose clauses; see under Pur-  
pose.

in Relative clause dependent upon  
*dignus*, 86. 4.

in Relative clauses of Character-  
istic, 297; *cf.* 109. 5.

in Result clauses, 273; (rel.) 174.  
11.

rendered "could," 46. 16;  
"should," 255. Rem. 2; *cf.* 104  
18, 111. 3, 150. 11; "would,"  
255. Rem. 2; *cf.* 92. 13.

## Tenses of:

imperfect: force of, 220. N. 1,  
258 and N.

Law of Sequence, 219, 220. N;  
*cf.* 217. 1, 258 and N., 267  
and (1st) N., 313. N.

perfect; force and use of, 220.  
N. 2, 273. Rem.

pluperfect: force of, 220. N. 2.  
short forms, 3. 1, 12. 9, 135.  
16.

present: force of, 220. N. 1, 258  
with N.

with *fit ut*, 251. Vocab.

## Subordinate Clauses:

in indirect discourse, 267.

use of *suī* and *suus* in certain  
kinds of, 316 ff., 318 (1st) N.

*suī*: declension of, 355.

abl. of; with postpositive *-cum*,  
211. 3.

contrasted with *ipse*, 318. Rem. 1.  
gen. not used to express owner-  
ship, 319. Rem.

idioms: *sē coniungere cum* with  
abl., 307. 33; *sē recipere*, 240.  
N. 4; *cf.* 284. 24; *sē tenere* with  
abl., 218. 16, 232. 28, 323. 25.

use of; general, 316 ff.; ambigu-  
ous, 318 (1st) N.; in certain  
types of subordinate clauses, 316  
ff., 318 (1st) N.; *cf.* 235 (1st) N.

*sultis, sis*: literal force of, 224. N. 3.

*sum*: conjugation of, 373.

compounds of, 374. N.; *cf.* 101. 17.  
form *esse*; omitted sometimes with  
future active infin. and gerundive  
in indirect discourse, 222. 11,  
234. 10.

form *futūrus*, 204.

omitted in repetitions, 243. 31, 307.  
13, 326. 14, 335. 19.

*Cf.* also *nēmō est quī*, and *sunt*  
*quī*.

Summary of Forms, 345.

*summus*: use of, 104. 4.

See superior (*cf.* 230. N. 2).

*sunt quī*: 297.

superior: comparison of, 351.

Superlative: of adjs. and advs., 351 ff.  
absolute use of, 13. 11.

formed by prefixing *maximē*, 352.  
N. 3; *cf.* 44. 11, 176. 3.

in *-limus*, 352. N. 2 (298. N. 3).

renderings of, 129. 3, 184. 7.

with *quam* (and *possum*), 47. 14,  
142. 5, 181. 14.

**Supine**: formation of, 287.

in -ā, 288 with *Rem.*; *cf.* 126. 17.

in -um, 288. with *N.* and *Rem.*;

*cf.* 95. 13, 131. 1.

**suus**: ambiguous in its reference,

*cf.* 318 (1st) *N.*

contrasted with the gen. of *is*, 317.

function of, 319. *Rem.*

masc. pl. of, used as noun, 330. *N.*

order in phrase, 318 (2d) *N.*; *cf.*

206. 17, 228. 32, also 11. 6, 85. 4.

use of, general, 316 ff.; in certain

types of subordinate clauses, 316

ff., 318 (1st) *N.*; *cf.* 235 (1st) *N.*

with force of objective gen., 166.

3.

**tam**: use of, 273. *Vocab.*; *cf.* 310.

*N.* 3.

**tamen**: position in sentence and

clause, 219. *N.* 3.

**tantum**: usually postpositive, 276.

*N.* 1.

**Tenses**: sequence of, 219.

See Imperative, Indicative, Infinitive, Participle, and Subjunctive.

**terrā marique**: 41. 15.

**Third Declension**: Adjectives, 349 ff.;

Nouns, 346 ff.

See also I-Stems.

**Third or Ē-Conjugation**, 364 ff.,

366 ff.

**Third Person Pronoun**; see *is*.

**Third Person Reflexives**: see *sui* and *suus*.

**Three Terminations**: Adjs. of, 351.

**Time**:

Extent of; expressed by acc., 199.

*N.* 2, 236. *N.* 2; *cf.* 123. 1.

methods of measuring, 75, 91. 17;

*cf.* 74. 16.

**When or Within Which**; expressed

by abl., 199; *cf.* 62. 15, 99. 22,

also 257. 10.

*Cf.* also Dates.

**tot**: force of, 310. *N.* 3.

**tōtus**: declension of, 352. *N.*

modifying abl. lacking prep. in,

32. 16.

**Town Names**:

abl. and acc. without prep., 276;

*cf.* 79. 21 (contrast 182. 1).

**I-Stems**; acc. in -im, 324. *N.* 1.

locative case of, 247; *cf.* 276,

345. *N.* 2.

of second declension; in -ium,

345. *N.* 2; *cf.* 219. *Rem.* 2,

247. *Rem.* 1.

**trādō**: derivation of, 11. 4.

**trādūcō**: derivation of, and con-

struction with, 91. 10, 142. 12.

**Transitive Verbs**: defined, 279.

absolute use of, 279. *Rem.*

use of gerund of, 279. *Rem.*; *cf.* 308

use of gerundive of, 279. *Rule*;

*cf.* 309.

**trēs**: declension of, 353.

governing *ē*, *ex* with abl., 213. *N.* 1.

**tribūnus (militum)**: rank of, 126. 18

**tū**: declension of, 355.

abl. with postpositive -cum, 211. 3

forms of, used reflexively, 318

*Rem.* 2 (356. *N.* 1).

gen. not used to express owner

ship, 319. *Rem.*

**turris**: declension of, 346 (324).

**tūtō**: comparison of, 352.

**tūtus**: contrasted with *incolumis*,

204. *N.* 3.

**tuus**: order in phrase, 318 (2d) *N.*

reflexive use of, 318. *Rem.* 2.

**Two Terminations**: Adjs. of, 351.

U-Stems: see Fourth or U-Declension.

**ubi**: contrasted with **quō**, 314. **N.**  
relative use illustrated, 216. **N. 2.**  
See also Relative Words.

**ūllus**: declension of, 352. **N.**

**umquam**: use of, 233. **Vocab.**

**ūnus**: declension of, 352.  
governing **ē**, **ex** with **abl.**, 213.  
**N. 1.**

**urbs**: "the city," *i.e.* Rome, 48. 3.

**ūsui esse**, 273. **Vocab.**, 274. **N. 3;**  
*cf.* 136. 3.

**ut**: introducing Purpose clauses,  
290; governed by **hortor**, 251.  
**Vocab.**; by **imperō**, 302. **Vocab.**;  
by **persuādeō**, 230. **Vocab.**;  
governing verb implied merely,  
138. 2.

introducing Result clauses, 273  
with **N.**

with **fit**, etc., 251. **Vocab.**

with verbs of Fearing, 258.

**ut nōn**: contrasted with **nē**, 273. **N.**

**uter**: declension of, 352. **N.**

**ūtōr**: construction with, 270.  
supplemented by **ūsui esse**,  
274. **N. 3.**

Vague Future Conditional Sentences:  
254, 255. **Rem. 2.**

**vallēs**: declension of, 346.

**vēlis rēmisque**: 113. 19.

Verb Constructions: List of, 382.

Verbs: Regular, 360 ff.: Irregular,  
373 ff.

governing **abl.**, 270.

governing **dat.**, see Dative of Indi-  
rect Object.

of Fearing, 258; *cf.* 310. **N. 2.**

of Motion:

governing **ad** with **acc.** of **gerund**  
and **gerundive**, 235. **N.**, 292  
(**top**).

governing **supine** in **-um**, 288  
(1st) **Rule**, 292 (**top**).

**quō** with, 314. **N.**

of saying, thinking, etc.; personal  
passive of, 5. 17.

position in sentence; irregular, 293.  
9, 320. 4; *cf.* 266. 21.

See Intransitive and Transitive.

**vereor**: construction with, 310. **N. 2**  
(258).

**perf. partic.** of, 310. **Vocab.** (270.  
**Rem.**); *cf.* 2. 17.

**vērō**: position in sentence, 246. 5.

Vestal Virgins: 9.

**vester**: order in phrase, 318 (2d)  
**Rem.**

reflexive use of, 318. **Rem. 2.**

**videor**: indirect discourse with, 245.  
**N. 3.**

**vincō**: construction with, 223. **Vocab.**

**vir**: declension of, 345.

contrasted with **homō**, 204. **N. 2.**

**vis**: declension of, 348.

**vīta**: sing.; rendered as pl., 39. 17.

**vocāns**: declension of, 349.

Vocative: 345. **N. 1** (219. **N. 2**).

**vocō**: conjugation of, 360.

**volō**: conjugation of, 374.

Watches: of the night, 91. 17.

Way by Which: expressed by **abl.**,  
294; *cf.* 5. 13, 37. 5, 103. 17,  
164. 13.

Winter: little fighting during, 144.  
12; *cf.* 178. 5.

Word List, 186.





